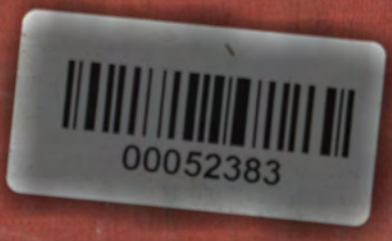

00052383

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 13 February, 2016

LAȝAMONS BRUT,

OR

CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN;

A POETICAL SEMI-SAXON PARAPHRASE

OF

THE BRUT OF WACE.

52383
a

NOW FIRST PUBLISHED FROM THE
COTTONIAN MANUSCRIPTS IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM;

ACCOMPANIED BY

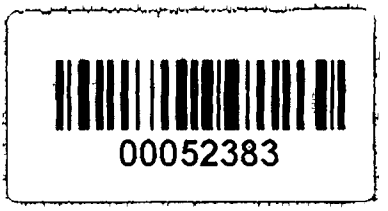
A LITERAL TRANSLATION, NOTES, AND A GRAMMATICAL GLOSSARY.

By SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H.,
KEEPER OF THE MSS. IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. II.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES OF LONDON.
1847.

891-1
Mad/Laz
52383



LAȝAMONS BRUT,

OR

CHRONICLE OF BRITAIN.

[v. 10230—10241.]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Luces þe leod-king: [f. 58. c. 1.]
leouuede wel longe.
twa and feowerti wintre:
mid muchere[1] winne.
her wes mete her wes drænc:
men þer of dræmden.
her wef unimete fare: [c. 2.]
a þiffere folc riche.
þif[2] heo gunnen driuen:
& forȝeten to fwiðe.
þat heom tæhte þe hehȝe mon:
þe gode bifcop Dunian.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Two and fourti winter: [f. 50ᵇ. c. 1.]
liuede Luces here.
here was mete and dringe:
and inoh of alle bliffe.
fo þat hii for-ȝeten:
þat tehte ham þe biffop Bafan[3].

'Luces the sovereign lived well long;' two and forty winters 'with much joy [lived Luces here]; here was meat, 'here was [and] drink,—'men thereof rejoiced [and enow of all bliss]; 'here was fare without measure among this rich folk. Thus they gan to drive,' 'and forgot too soon [so that they forgot] what the 'noble man [bishop Fagan] taught them, 'the good

[1] muchelere? muchele? [2] þus? [3] Fagan?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& Fagan hiſ iuære:	
þe while þe heo weorē here.	
Inne griðe þurh alle þīg:	Ine wele liuede þe king:
wunede Luces þe king.	ād god lif þorh alle þing.
þat cō þe ilke dæi:	þo cō þe ilke dai:
þat þe kīg dæd læi.	þat þe king dead lai.
leof him wes grið and ræd:	
inne Gleochæſtre he wes dæd.	ine Glouceſtre:
þær heȝe Bruttef:	Bruttef hine leide.
þene kīg bureden.	
Þa wes þe weorlde swa uorð iuaren:	So was þe worle forþ ivare:
seoððen ure drihte wes iboren.	ſuþþe vre drihte was ibore.
an hūdred ȝere and ſixti:	an hundred ȝer and ſixti:
þa þe kīg ſah to grunde.	þo þe king deide.
Seoððen Luces king wes dæd:	
her wunede a ſwiðe ſtrong red.	
ne bi-læfde he her neouðer:	Ne bilefde Luces þe king:
ſuſter ne broðe[1].	broþer ſoſter: ne no cun.
ne quene ne næh cun:	þat miht hiſ cund:
þe his caðel mihte heoldē.	after him habbe.
To Rome comen tiðende:	TO Rome come tidinge:
of Luceſ þon kinge.	of Luces þan kinge.
hu þe king wæs hære dæd:	hou þe king was here dead:

bishop Dunian, and Fagan, his companion, the while that they were here.' In 'peace [weal and good life] through all things dwelt [lived] 'Luces' the king, until that day came, that the king lay dead,—'peace and counsel were dear to him;'—in Gloucester 'he was dead; there' *the* 'noble' Britons 'buried' the king [laid him]. The world was 'then' so forth advanced since our Lord was born, an hundred years and sixty, when the king 'fell to ground [died]. 'After Luces the king was dead, here dwelt a most evil hap'; 'he left here neither [Luces the king left not] sister 'nor' brother, 'nor queen,' nor 'nigh [any] kinsman, who might 'hold [have] his possessions [after him]. To Rome came tidings of Luces the king, how the king was

[1] broðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
& i þiſſe londe naſ na ræd.	in þiſſe londe naſ no read.	
Heo makeden heore uerde:	Hii makede hire ferde:	
and ſenden to þiſſen ærde.	and ſende to þiſſe erþe.	
Seuarus wes heore hære-toȝe:	Seuarus was ouer ȝam icore:	*Seuarus.*
inne Rome he wes ibore.	ine Rome he was ibore.	
þe ferde wes ſwiðe ſtrōg:	þe ferde was ſwiþe ſtrong:	
þeo comen heo to þiſſe lond.	þat com to þiſſe lond.	*Anno gracie c°c°. iiij t°. Romanorum . xxi^us. Seuarus Brittaniam ſoſfatocinxit, a mare usque ad mare, per c. xxxii. milia paſſu-[u]m, et Eboraci obiit; cui Antonius, cognomento Caracalla, filius suus ſuccedens, regnavit annis vii^tem.*
Seuerius wende anan:	Seuare wende anon:	
to hæbbene þiſne kinedom.	habbe þiſne kinedom.	
ah Bruttes weoren biſie:	ae Bruttef weren kene:	
& ofte hine a-bæileden. [f.58^b. c.1.]	and faſte him wiþ-ſtode.	
ofte heo him wið fuhten:		
a feole cunne wiſen.		
Seuarus hine biðodte:	Seuare hine bi-þohte:	
whet he don miðte.	wat he don mihte.	
in his herede he makede grið:	he held ſo god griþ: [c. 2.]	
& lette awæi þat vniriht.	eche childe he wolde ſpeke wiþ.	
þat na man ne wurðe swa wod:		
ne witte bi-dæled.		
þat in his hirede breke grið:		
vppe leome & uppe lif.		
of nauere nane þīge:		
þat come to his cleopinge.		
þiſ iſeȝen Bruttes:	þiſ iſehȝē Bruttes:	
þe weoren swiðe biſie.		

here dead, 'and' in this land was no counsel. They made their host, and sent to this land; Severus was 'their leader [over them chosen],—in Rome he was born. The army was most strong; 'when they [that] came to this land, Severus weened anon to have this kingdom, but *the* Britons were 'busy [keen], and 'oft him harmed [fast him withstood]; 'oft they fought with him, in many kind of wise.' Severus bethought him what he might do; 'in his host he made peace [he held peace so good, he would speak with each child], 'and did away the wrong,—that no man should be so wild, nor *so* void of wit, that in his host should break *the* peace, upon *pain of* limb and upon life, of ever any thing that should come to his call.' *The* Britons

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þat Seuarus in hiſ hirede :/
hæfde hehliche grið.
& mong heom ſeoluē :/
vnimete seorȝen.
Bruttes fiȝē to-gæderes :/
fulle seoue þuſēd.
& ſpeken Seuarium wið :/
& ȝirden[1] his hiredes grið.
& he heom ȝette :/
& ȝef ȝiues swiðe gode.
þa wes Seuar[9] hired :/
selcuðliche iſtronged.
alle þe ær weoren buuen :/
he heom ſette bi-neoðen.
& muchele luue heold wið :/
alle þat ȝirnden his grið.
He uærde to Lunden :/
& heo hine vnder-fengē.
he uerde þurh þiſ kinelond :/
& ſette hit ī his aȝere hond.
& æuere heo fluȝen him bi-uoren :/
þe hiſ feond weoren.
Swa ſwide[3] he heom hænde :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat he was god louerd to his.
and a-mong ȝam ſeolue :/
was onimete care.
Hii wenden heom to-gadere :/
folle ſeoue þouſend.
and ſpeken þan king wiþ :/
& ȝeorden[2] his griþ.
and he ȝam ſone :/
ȝaf ȝeſtef ſwiþe gode.
þo wes Seuarus heap :/
mochel ibolded.
þaie þat her weore a-boue :/
he ham ſette bi-neoþe.
and mochel lofue held wiþ :/
alle þat ȝeornde his griþ.
He verde to Londene :/
and hii hine onderfenge.
he verde þorh al þis kinelond :/
and ſette hit on his owe hond.
and euere hii flowen him bi-fore :
þat nolde him abouwe.

saw this, who were most busy, that 'Severus in his host had perfect peace [he was good lord to his *men*], and among themselves [was] 'sorrow [care] unmeet. '*The* Britons [They] assembled together, full seven thousand, and spake with 'Severus [the king], and yearned his 'hosts' peace; and he '*it* granted them, and' gave [them soon] gifts most good. Then was Severus host 'wonderfully strengthened [much emboldened]; 'all [those] that ere were above, he set them beneath, and much love held with all that yearned his peace. He marched to London, and they received him; he proceeded through [all] this kingdom, and set it in his own hand; and ever they fled before him, who 'were his enemies [would not submit to

[1] ȝirnden? [2] ȝeornden? [3] ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat heo fluwē ouer Hunbre.		
heo fluȝē forð rihtes ⁊	[c. 2.]	Hii flowen forþ rihtes ⁊
þat heo comen to þā Peohtes.		þat i[1] comen to þan Peutef.
& heo heom vnder-fēgen ⁊		and hii heom onderfenge ⁊
& nomen heom to iuarē.		and nemen heom to ivere.
Heo makeden enne hehne cniht ⁊		Hii makede Fulgenus þe cniht ⁊
heore here-toȝe forð riht.		hire kine-louerd.
fæier cniht and hēde ⁊		
Fulgenes wes ihaten.		
he heom fcolde læden ⁊	10	
& he heon[2] fculde ræden.		
Enne ende of Scotlonde ⁊		On hende of Scotlonde ⁊
nom Fulgenes to his honde.		nam Fulgenus an honde.
þe ende him wes deore ⁊		
he hæhte Dæire.		*Deire.*
Sæuarus frō Scotte wærð[3] ⁊		Seuarus fram þat norþ ⁊
seoððe[4] aȝæn wēde.		fuþ aȝe wende.
& his folc lædde ⁊		and his folk ladde ⁊
in to Lundene.		in to Londene.
& Fulgenes vt of Scotlen[5] ⁊	20	and Fulgenus vt of Scotlond ⁊
muchel fcaðe makede.		mochel harm makede.
He leop in to Brutlond ⁊		Heo[6] leop in to Brutlond ⁊
mid muchele balu ræffen.		and mani harmes[7].

him]. 'So much he reduced them, that they fled over *the* Humber;' they fled forth-right until they came to the Peohtes, and they them received, and took them for companions. They made 'a noble [Fulgenes the] knight their 'leader [chief] 'forth-right, *a* fair knight and comely, *who* was named Fulgenes; he *it was* should lead them, and he *it was* should counsel them.' One end of Scotland Fulgenes took in 'his' hand; 'the end was dear to him,—it hight Dæire.' Severus from 'Scotland-ward [the north] marched back south, and led his folk into London; and Fulgenes out of Scotland made much harm. He leapt into Britain, 'with mickle baleful onset

[1] hii? [2] *R.* heom. [3] -ward? [4] soð? *Cf. vv.* 10691, 10761.
[5] Scotten? Scotlond? [6] He? [7] harmes wrohte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
æhte he nom men he ſloh ⁊	
he duden ſeorȝen inoht[1].	
& þuſ he uerde longe ⁊	and þus he verde longe ⁊
inne Scotlonde.	ine Scotlōde.
Þis iherde Seuarus ⁊	Þis ihorde Seuarus ⁊ [f. 51. c. 1.]
þe īne Rome wes kæiſere.	þat in Rome was kaiſere.
and seoððen hider al þa lond ⁊	and ſuþþe here al þat lond ⁊
ſtod an his aȝere heond.	ſtod on his owe hond.
þe kæiiſere ſende his ſeonde ⁊	þe kaiſer ſende his ſonde ⁊
ȝeōd feole londe.	ȝeond fale le[2] kinelondes.
lette him to beoden ⁊	and mani ſtrong worcman ⁊
swa monie of weorcmonnen.	come to þā kinge.
þat he lette mankien[3] ænne dic ⁊	he lette ȝam maki ane dich ſtrang ⁊
þe wæſ wunderliche deop.	ſwiþe deap and ſwiþe lang.
muche ād ſwiðe ſtronge ⁊	
biſides Scotlonde.	
from ſæ to ſæ eode þæ dich ⁊	fram ſéé to ſéé ȝeode þe dich ⁊
ælche oðere vnilich. [[f. 59. c. 1.]	alle oþer onilich.
Þe[4] vfenen he makede ſcid wal ⁊	Þar vppon he makede ſid wal ⁊
wunder ane cræftie.	ſwiþe crafti.
seoððen he ſette cnihtes ⁊	þare he ſette cnihtes ⁊
to witen hit dæies & nihtes.	to witien dai and nihtes.

[and many harms *wrought*]; 'goods he took, men he slew, he did sorrow enow;' and thus he fared long in Scotland. Severus heard this,—who was emperor of Rome, and afterwards all the land 'hither [here] stood in his own hand;—the emperor sent his messengers over many 'lands, *and* caused so many of workmen to be summoned to him, that he caused a dike to be made, that was wonderfully deep, [kingdoms, and many strong workmen came to the king; he caused them to make a strong dike, very deep and very long,] 'mickle, and very strong, beside Scotland';—from sea to sea went the dike, 'each [all] other unlike! Thereupon he made *a* broad wall, 'one wondrous [exceeding] crafty; 'afterwards [there] he set knights to guard 'it' day and night, *so* that never Peoht nor 'ever any' other man 'there-

[1] inoh? [2] *Sic.* [3] makien? [4] þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þ neu^{9}e Poht þer ouer ne com:	þat neuere Peut ne oþer man:
ne næuere nan oðer mon.	þar after ne com.
bute wha ſwa waldē ȝernen grið:	mid none ginne:
& ſpæken þan kæiſere wið.	bote for harm a-winne.
& wunien forð here:	
mid Seuare þan kæiſere.	
þat iherde Fulgenes:	þis ihorde Fulgenus:
þat þis weorc iuorðed wes.	þat þes dich was imaked þus.
þat he into þiſſe londe ne mihte:	þat he to londe þiſſe[1]:
ne dæies ne nihtes.	daies no nihtes.
Nuſte he þa nænne ræd:	Nuſte he þo nanne read:
þe him æuere þuhte god.	þat him euere þoht god.
he cleopede alle his dringches:	he cleope al his folk:
þat heo comen to huſtinge.	þat hii come to ſpeche.
heore kinge to ræden:	hire kīg to rede:
of his muchele neode.	of his mochele neode.
Heo him rædden to faren:	Hii raden hin[2] to vare:
riht into Ciſe.	riht in to Scice.
færliche he þider com:	cwicliche he þider com:
& fæire wes under-fon.	and fair he was onderfon.
He ſpac wið þan Peohtes:	þe king ſpac wiþ þan Peutes:
& ſwa muchel heom bi-hæhte.	and moche ȝam bi-hehte.
þat heo gædereden in þan ærde:	þat he gadere in þan erþ:

over [thereafter] might come, 'except whoso would yearn peace, and speak with the emperor, and dwell *thence*forth here with Severus the emperor [with no stratagem, but for to gain harm]. Fulgenes heard 'that [this], that this 'work [dike] was 'completed [made], *so* that he might not *come* 'in'to this land, by day nor night. He knew not then any counsel that ever seemed good to him; he called all his 'thanes [folk], that they should come to 'husting [conference], to counsel their king, in his mickle need. They advised him to fare right into Scythia; quickly he came thither, and fair [he] was received. 'He [The king] spake with the Peohtes, and 'so' much promised them, that 'they [he] gathered in the country *a* mickle

[1] to þiſſe londe ne mihte?

[2] him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mucle ſcip-ferde.	mochel ſip-ferde.
& ferden bi ſæ ſtronde:	and wende bi ſéé ſtronde:
into þiſſē londe.	into þiſſe londe.
He uerde riht to Euerwicke:	He verde riht to Euerwich:
Brutten þutte ſellic.	Bruttes þohte ſellich.
þa burh he anan bilæi:	þe borh he a-nan bi-lai: [c. 2.]
mid baldere ſtrengðe.	mid baldere ſtrengþe.
Seoððen he dude to witen:	Suþþe he dude to iwite:
þurh worde & þurh writen.	boþe bi word and bi write.
alle his freōden:	alle his frendes:
þe weoren in þiſſen londe.	þat were in þiſſe londe.
þat heo ſcolden wel don: [c. 2.]	þat hii ſolden wel don:
& alle comen him to.	and alle comen him to.
he heom wolden mucle wele:	
& wurðſcipe itæchen.	
& æuere to hiſ liue:	and euere to his lifue:
heo ſculden beon him leoue.	he ȝam wolde lofuie.
þis iherden Bruttes:	þis ihorde Bruttus:
þer fore heo weoren balde.	
& wēden from Seuere:	
þan Romæniſce kæiſere.	
moni þuſend Bruttes:	
Fulge[nes]. to Fulgenes.	an come to Fulgenus.
& he heō faire on-feng:	and he ȝam faire onderfeng:
& muche feoh bihæhte.	and mochel feo bi-hehte.

ship-army, and passed by *the* sea-strand into this land. He marched right to York,—to *the* Britons *it* seemed strange,—the burgh he anon besieged with bold strength. Afterwards he caused to be informed, 'through [both by] word and 'through [by] writ, all his friends that were in this land, that they should do well, and all to him come; 'he would *do* them much weal, and honor bestow,' and ever in his life 'they should be to him dear [he would love them]. *The* Britons heard this, 'therefore they were bold;' and 'many thousand Britons' 'went [came] 'from Severus, the Romanish emperor,' to Fulgenes; and he received them fair, and much

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þat iherde Sæuarus:	Þat ihorde Seuarus[1]:
þat Fugenes[2] dude þus.	þat Fulgenus dude þus.
he ſõnede uerde:	he ſomnede ferde:
of folke of þiſſẽ ærde.	
he uufde[3] touwærd Euerwic:	and to Euerwich wende.
to his fæi-ſiðe.	
Þa he to Euerwic com:	Þo he þider com:
Fulgenes hī weſ aforen on.	Fulgenus was afornon.
heo bigunnen fehten:	hii bi-gonne to fihte:
feondliche ſwiþe.	ſtarliche ſwiþe.
a ba hælue þer ful:	
folc unimete.	
Sæuare þer wes of-flæȝẽ:	þar was Seuare of-flaȝe:
& feole his Romwæren.	and moche of hi[4] folke.
Fulgenes wes iwunde:	Fulgenus was iwonded:
wunderliche ſære.	
þat i þaꝛ þriddẽ dæie:	
he ſarne dæd þolede.	þat he ſone deide.
Of Sæueres dæðe:	
Bruttus þer demden.	
sæiden heom bi-tweonen:	
þa þat tir ahten.	
Seuarus wes god cniht:	

wealth promised. Severus heard that, that Fulgenes did thus; he assembled *his* host 'of *the* folk of this land,' [and] 'he' marched 'toward [to] York, 'to his *own* destruction.' When he came 'to York [thither], Fulgenes was before 'him'; they began to fight most 'fiercely [strongly]; 'on both sides there fell folk without number.' There was Severus slain, and 'many [much] of his 'Romans [folk]. Fulgenes was wounded 'wondrously sore,' *so* that 'in the third day' he 'suffered sore death [soon died]. 'Of Severus death *the* Britons there judged; those who possessed authority said them between: "Severus was good knight, and he held (ruled) us

[1] *Written at first* Fulgenus, *but afterwards expunged.*
[2] *R.* Fulgenes.
[3] uufde?
[4] *R.* his.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& he heold us ſwiðe riht.
þæ while þe we hī walden herē:
ær we turnden to Fulgene.
þurh heore vuele ræde:
beien heo beoð dædde.
Nime we Sæuaruſſes lic:
& lede we hit into Eouuerwic.
& þær we hit ſculleð bi-burien:
mid muchelere bliſſe.
& forð ȝelden þa duȝeðe:
þe he us dude whilen.
Al weoren þa dæden:
al ſe heo idemden.
Sæuarus bi-lefde here tweien ſunen:
þus hæhten heore nomen.
[*B*]*aſian.* þe ældere hehte Baſiā:
[*Ge*]*zan.* þe ȝungere hæhte Gezan.
þe beiene heo weoren ibroðerē:
ah noht of are moder.
Baſianes moder:
wes of Brut-lōdes ærd.
& Gezanes moder:
of Romaniſce monnen.
Buttes nomen Baſian:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Bruttef nemen Seuare:
for þat he ȝam lofuede.
[f. 59b c. 1.] and ladde hine to Euerwich:
and þare hine burede.

SEuare hadde twei ſonef:
ſoch were hire names.
þe eldre hehte Baſian:
þe ȝeongre Geſan.
þeos weren broþers:
and noht of one moder.
Baſian his moder was Brut:
Geſanes Romain icud.
Bruttef neme Baſian:

most right, the while that we would serve him, before we turned to Fulgenes; through their evil counsel they both are dead!' 'Take we Severuses body, and carry we it into [The Britons took Severus, because that he loved them, and carried him to] York, and there 'we shall bury it, [him buried.] 'with much bliss, and for-yield (repay) the good, that he whilom did to us." The deeds (proceedings) were all as they determined.' Severus 'left here [had] two sons,—'thus hight [such were] their names; the elder hight Basian, the younger 'hight' Gezan. 'The both they [These] were brothers, but not of one mother. 'Basians [Basian his] mother was 'of Britains land [*a* Briton], 'and' Gezans 'mother' 'of Romanish men

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
& bitahten him þiſne kinedom.	and bi-tahte him þiſſne kinedom.	
& þa Romaniſce men :/	and þe Romaniſſe men :/	
to kīge makede Gezan.	to kinge makede Geſan.	
Bruttes weoren biſie :/		
& Baſian heo luueden.		
& þa Romaniſce men :/		
luueden swiþe Gezan.		
Þær aras muchel ballu :/	Þus arof muche wo :/	
bi-twenen þiſſen broðeren.	bi-twixte þe broþers.	
heo nomen here uerdē :/	hii gaderede verde :/	[f. 51ᵇ. c. 1.]
& comen to ſtal fehte.	and comen to ſihte.	
and þer þe king Baſian :/	and þar þe king Baſan :/	
sloh his broðer Gezan.	ſloh his broþer Geſan.	
& þat Romaniſce folc :/	and þe Romaniſſe folk :/	
fleh of þiſſen londe.	fleh of þiſſe londe.	
at[1] monie þer weoren ifalled :/	and manie þar were of-ſlawe :/	
i þan muchele fehte.	in þan mochele ſihte.	
I þiſſe londe wes a ȝung mon :/ [c. 2.]	In þis lond was a man :/	
vnder þon kinge Baſian.	onder þan kinge Baſan.	
Carrais wes ihaten hiſ nome :/	Carais was i-hote :/	*Carrais.*
þes wes a ſellich gume.		
His fader wes an unſtrong cniht :/		
ah þe ſune wes swiðe ſturne.	cniht ſwiþe ſterne.	

[*a* noble Roman]. *The* Britons took Basian, and delivered him this kingdom; and the Romanish men made Gezan king. 'The Britons were busy, and Basian they loved, and the Romanish men loved greatly Gezan.' 'There [Thus] arose much 'strife between these [woe betwixt the] brothers; they 'took their [gathered] forces, and came to battle; and there the king Basian slew his brother Gezan, and the Romanish folk fled from this land; 'but [and] many were there 'felled [slain] in the mickle fight. In this land was a 'young' man, under the king Basian; 'his name was called [*he* was named] Carrais,—'this was a subtle man! His father was a low person,' 'but the son was [*a* knight] most stern; 'that was the busiest man

[1] Ac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat wes þe biſegæſte mon:	
þe wunede inne Bruttene.	
of nane quike mõne:	of none cwike manne:
næuede he care nænne.	nadde he care nanne.
wa wes him þurh alle þing:	wo was him þorh alle þing:
þat Baſian wes Bruttene king.	þat Baſian was here king.
Baſian wes griðful kīg:	
& Carrais ne likede hit naþīg.	
Þa a þan ilke time:	Þo in þan ilke time:
verden bi ſæ rime.	verde bi ſéé rime.
vtlaȝen to iwitē:	vt-lawes to iwite:
fulle ſixti ſcipen.	folle ſixti ſipes.
Carraiſ hīe biðohte:	Carais hine bi-þohte:
of ane hindere cræfte.	of one luþer craftc.
þat he wolde ſone:	þat he wolde ſone:
faren into Rome.	wenden to Rome.
Forð he i-uuſde:	
& in to Rome ferde.	
& ſpac wið þane kæiſere:	and ſpeke wiþ þan kaiſere:
& wið þā Romaniſce here.	and wiþ Romaniſſe here.
& þuſ ſeide Carrais:	and þuſ ſaide Carais:
he wes swike fuliwis.	he was ſwike foliwis.
Hæil seo þu Cyrian:	Hail beo þou Cirian:
þe king þe græteð Baſian.	þe king þe greteþ Baſan.
and dæð þe ful wel to witen:	an ſeggeþ mid ſore:

that dwelt in Britain!' Of no man alive had he any care; woe was he through all things, that Basian was king 'of Britain [here]. 'Basian was peaceful king, and Carrais nothing liked it.' Then in the same time fared by the sea coast outlaws (pirates), to wit,—full sixty ships. Carrais bethought him of a 'subtle [wicked] craft, that he would soon proceed to Rome. 'Forth he went, and into Rome came,' and spake with the emperor, and with 'the' Romanish army; and thus said Carrais,—he was deceiver full surely! "Hail be thou, Cyrian! The king Basian thee greeteth, and 'doth thee full well to wit, both by word and by writ

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ba bi worden & bi writē.	þat he nele na more.
þat ne mæi he þe no mare fenden :/	vt of Brutlonde :/
þ galuel[1] of Bruttlonde.	eni feo þe fende.
for twien he haueð bigunnen :/	for twie hif fondefman :/
to fenden hit bi his monnen.	in fée haueþ bi-raifed.
i fæ heo funden vtlaȝen :/ [[f. 60. c. 1.]	
& habbeoð alle his men iflaȝen.	
& iræued al þat gærfume :/	
þe fcolde þe to cume.	
þa vt-laȝes beoð fwa ftronge :/	10 Vtlawes beoþ fo ftrong :/
bi watere & bi londe.	bi watere an bi londe.
þ ne mæi na man ouer fæ uaren :/	þat no man ne mai fare :/
bute mid fwiðe mucle care.	bote ȝif he wolle habbe care.
Ah ȝif þi wille weore :/	Ac ȝif þin wille were :/
þ þu woldeft me ihere.	þat þou woldeft me lene.
& bi-tachen me þine writen :/	twelfe of þine fipes :/
& fenden[2] me twælf fcipen.	and þin owene writes.
& hælden me to munde :/	
a þire aȝere hond.	
into fæ ic wolde faren :/	20 in to fée ich wolde fare :/
& flæn alle þa ut-laȝen.	and flean þai vtlawes.
& þi gauel þe fende :/	and þi feo þe fende :/
ut of Brutlonde.	vt of Brutlonde.

[sayeth with sorrow], that he 'may [will] no more send thee 'the tribute of [any fee out of] Britain; for twice 'he hath began to send it by his men; in *the* sea they found outlaws, and all his men *they* have slain; and robbed all the treasure, that should to thee come [his messenger in *the* sea hath been robbed]. 'The' outlaws are so strong, by water and by land, that no man may pass 'over sea,' unless 'with very much [he will have] care. But if thy will were, that thou wouldst 'me hear, and deliver me thy writs, and send me twelve ships [lend me twelve of thy ships, and thine own writs], 'and hold me in protection, in thine own hand,' to *the* sea I would go, and slay 'all' the outlaws, and send thee thy 'tribute [fee]

[1] *R.* gauel. [2] lenden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
For ich æm ennes cnihtes sune:	for ich ham on eorles sone: [c. 2.]
& cun ich habbe iwide:	and cun ich habbe wide.
haueð mi fader bi þære fæ:	
caſtel ſwiþe fæle.	
& cnihtes inowe:	
& men unifoȝe.	
allę heo wulleð to me draȝen:	alle hii wolleþ to me drawe:
to quellen þa ut-laȝen.	forte cwelle þeos vtlawes.
& þuſ ich wulle þurh mire hond:	and þus ich wolle þorh min hond:
witen þi feht[1] & þi lond.	wite þi feo an þi lond.
Cyrian. ¶ þiſ ihærde Cyrian:	þis ihorde þe kaiſer:
ſpeken þene swikeful mō.	and him paide ſwiþe wel.
& al he ȝette him:	
þat he him to ȝirde[2].	
writen he him bi-tehten:	writes him bi-tahte:
& wapnen him aræhte.	and wepne him a-rahte.
& forð hine ſenden:	and forþ hine gan ſende:
touward þiſſen londe.	into þiſſe londe.
Forð he ferde Cairais:	Forþ verde Carais:
þ he com to France.	þat he com to France.
æuere his writen he vnfeold:	euere he his writes onfeold:
þer he forð ferde.	aſe he forþ wende.
& ſeiden al þan monnen: [c. 2.]	

out of Britain. For I am 'a knights [an earls] son, and kindred I have wide; 'my father hath by the sea *a* castle most good, and knights enow, and men in plenty'; all they will draw to me, [for] to kill 'the [these] outlaws; and thus I will through my hand guard thy fee and thy land." 'Cyrian ['The emperor] heard 'the deceitful man speak' this, and 'all he to him granted, that he of him asked [*it* pleased him most well]; writs 'he' promised him, and weapons delivered to him, and forth 'sent [gan send] him 'toward [into] this land. Forth Carrais 'he' fared, until he came to France; ever his writs he unfolded, 'where [as] he forth passed, 'and said to all the men

[1] ſeh? [2] ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
what he i Rome hæhde biwunnen.	
& folc hī wende:	and folk him to wende:
an æuerælche ende.	on euereche ende.
Carrais com to fæ:	Carais com to fée:
mid felcuðe uolke.	mid mochelere folke
he hafde to iueren:	he hadde to ivere:
fif hundred rideren.	fif hundred rideres.
& folc he hafde a foten:	and folk he hadde a fote:
muchel and vnnimete.	moche and onimete.
Al þa fcipen bi fæ ftrōde:	Al þe fipes bi þe ftronde:
he nom to his honde.	he nom to his owe honde.
he uerde forð in fæ:	
uereden hine vðen.	
& he fone bi-com:	and fone he com:
ī to Brutlonde:	in to þiffe londe.
& anan bigō ræuinge:	and anon makede reuing:
uppen Bafian þene kinge.	vppe Bafian þan kinge.
Carrais nom his sonde:	Carais fende his fonde:
& sende ȝeond þiffe londe.	ȝeond alle þiffe lond.
bad ælcne ȝungne mon:	
þe weorces nalde ȝeomen.	
& æuere ælcne ut-laȝe:	and bad alle þe vtlawef:
þe his lond hadde bi-boȝen.	þat pais wolde habbe.
& auerælcne cnihtes sune:	and alle þe cnihtene fones:
þ his main wolde cuðen.	

Carra[

what he had in Rome obtained'; and folk came to him on every part. Carrais came to *the* sea, with 'wondrous [mickle] folk; he had for companions five hundred riders, and folk he had on foot much and without number. All the ships by 'sea [the] strand he took in his [own] hand; 'he proceeded forth on *the* sea, *the* waves conveyed him,' and soon he 'arrived [came] into 'Britain [this land], and anon 'began [made] ravage upon Basian the king. Carrais 'took his messengers, and sent [sent his messengers] over [all] this land, [and] bade 'each young man who would not heed work, and' 'every outlaw [all *the* outlaws] who 'had come to his land [peace would have], and 'every knights son [all the knights sons

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and ælcne wiðerfulne mon:	
þe god wolde biwinnen.	þat wolde habbe gariſome.
þat hī to ſcolden cǫmen:	þat hii to him ſolde come:
for golde ād gæirſume.	and habbe ȝiftes gode.
Þas weoren cuðe:	
wunder ane wide.	
& þa wiðerwarde:	
ſumnede uerde.	
heo comen to Carrais:	Þar wende to Carais:
þritti þuſend fuliwis.	þritti þuſend foliwis.
& heo uorð iwenden:	and he forþ wende:
bi þan ſæ ſtronde.	bi þan ſéé ſtronde.
Heo rupten heo ræfden:	Hii rupten hii refden:
noht heo ne bi-læfden.	noht hii ne blefden.
caſtles heo [nomen:] [f.60b. c.1.]	caſtles hii nemen:
Bruttes heo ſloȝen.	Bruttef hii ſlowen. [f.52. c.1.]
monie heo forbarnden:	
aðele Bruttus.	
heo uerden norh heo uerden æſt:	hii verden weſt: hii verden eſt:
al þat lond heo makeden weſt.	al þat lond hii makede weſt.
heo ferden into Scotlon:	hii verdē in to Scotlond:
þer heo ſcaðe worhten.	þar hii harm wrohte.
& aȝan to þiſſe londe:	and efte to þiſſe londe:
þas leoden heo for-uerden.	and þat folk ſlowen.

'who his strength would prove, and each valiant man,' who 'goods [treasure] would 'win [have], that [they] should to him come, 'for gold and for treasure [and have good gifts]. 'These *words* were made known wonderfully wide, and the factious assembled forces'; 'they [There] came to Carrais thirty thousand full certainly, and 'they [he] marched forth by the sea strand. They robbed, they ravaged, nought they left; castles they took, *the* Britons they slew; 'many noble Britons they burnt!' They fared 'north [west], they fared east, all the land they made waste; they marched into Scotland, where they wrought harm, and 'back [eft] to this land, [and] 'these [the] people 'they' 'destroyed [slew]. He 'took [sent]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
He nō ænne bifine[1] mon:	He ſende one man:
& ſende to Brutten.	into Brutlonde.
& þas word heō sæde:	and ſeide þat Caraiſ:
þe Carrais heom ſēde.	
Carrais þe ſtronge:	
wunieð inne comela.	wonede in comelan foliwiſ.
& ſend hei[2] bi-halues:	
& grætet wel Bruttes.	
ȝe buð godliche gum:	ȝif ȝe me wolleþ come to:
& ich eow wulle griðien.	ich ou wolle griþie.
& freoſcipe eow ȝiuen:	
& freōdſcipe halden.	
ȝif ȝe on eowre cuððe:	and ȝe on our[3] cuþþe:
king me wulleð makien.	king me wolleþ makie.
& Bruttus andſwereden:	And Bruttes anſwerede:
for[4] heo weoren aðele men.	aſe men trewe.
& ſeiden þurh alle þing:	þat hii nolde hire king:
þat heo nalden ſwiken heore king.	bi-ſwike for no þing.
for næuere quicne mon:	
swiken þene king Baſian.	
& þis word aȝæn com:	And þis word a-ȝein com:
to Carrais þon ſtronge.	to Carais þan ſtronge.
Carrais hine bi-þohte:	and he hine bi-þohte:

a 'busy' man, 'and sent' 'to *the* Britons [into Britain], and 'these words' said 'to them' that Carrais 'sent them; "Carrais the strong' 'dwelleth [dwelt] in tent (?) [full truly], 'and sendeth here apart, and greeteth well *the* Britons.'—'Ye are goodly men, and [If ye will come to me] I will you free, 'and freedom give you, and friendship hold,' if ye in your country will make me king." And *the* Britons answered, 'for they were noble [as true] men, 'and said through all things' that they would not [for any thing] betray their king; 'for never *any* man alive, *would they* betray the king Basian.' And this word came back to Carrais the strong, [and] 'Carrais [he]

[1] wiſne? *Cf. v.* 11872.
[2] her?
[3] ȝoure?
[4] *Written at first* forð, *but* ð *expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
whæt he don mæhte.	wat he don mihte.
bi twam wittre cnihten:	he ſende tweie cnihtes:
he ſende to þā Pohtes.	forþ to þe Peuteſ.
þa Pohtes weoren on londe:	
next Baſiane þan kinge.	
To heom com þa ſode[1]: [c. 2.]	
from Carrais þon ſtronge.	
& muchel heom bi-hæhte:	and moche ȝam bi-hehte:
of worliche æhte.	of worliche ●ode.
þa Pohtes weoren uuele:	þe Peutes a-non riþtes:
he[2] leoſeden heore aðele.	
heo ſworen forð rihtes:	
& treoðen heo plihten.	treuþe him plihte.
þat heo wolden Baſian:	þat hii wolde bi-ſwike:
inne fehte bi-ſwiken.	þane king in hiſ riche.
þis word com to Carrais:	þo þis com to Caraif:
þa wes he glad ful iwis.	he was glad foliwis.
forð riht he nom his ſonde:	he ſende his ſonde:
& ſende to þan kinge.	forþ to þā kinge.
& ſeide him forð rihtes:	and ſeide him forþ riht:
þat wið him he wolde fehte.	þat wiþ him he wolde fihte.
buten he him wolde rumen:	bote he wolde fleō:
& bi-læuen þæs riche.	vt of þis riche.

bethought him, what he might do; he sent 'by' two 'wise' knights [forth] to the Peohtes;—'the Peohtes were in *the* land next (nearest) to Basian the king. To them came the messengers from Carrais the strong,' and promised them much of worldly goods. The Peohtes 'were evil,—they losed their honor;—they swore' 'forth-right [anon right] 'and' truth 'they' [to him] plighted, that they would betray Basian [the king] in 'fight [his realm]. 'This word [When this] came to Carrais, 'then' was he glad full certainly; he 'took forth-right [sent forth] his messengers, 'and sent' to the king, and said to him forth-right, that with him he would fight, unless he would 'depart, and leave [flee out of] this realm. Then said 'the' king Basian,

[1] *R.* ſonde. [2] heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þa ſeide þe king Baſian:
ær ih[1] wulle dæd beon.
Wiþ innen ſeouen nihte:
heo comen to þan fihte.
bi-foren þere burh Eouerwic:
þat feht wes swiðe ſtorlic.
Þa heo ſcolden bezſt fehten:
þa fluȝen al þa Pohtes.
& heo Baſiā þe king
mid alle bilæfdē.
& Carrais him on þrong:
and mid ſpere him of-ſtong.
Br[u]ttes heo floȝen:
& moni hundred þer nomen.
Þa ſtod al þis lond:
a Carraiſ aȝere hond.
þa nom he al þa Peohtes:
& ſende in to Scotte.
& ȝif heō þere muchel lōd:
inne Scot-londen.
& heore cun wunede þære:
seoððen auere mare.
Þis word com to Rome:
her æfter ful ſone. [f. 61. c. 1.]

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII

Þo feide king Baſian:
her ich wolle dead beon.
Wiþ þan ſouenihte:
he com to þan fihte.
bi-fore þe borh of Euerwich:
þat fiht was ſwiþe ſtorlich. [c. 2.]
Þo hii ſolde beſte fihte:
þo flowen þe Peutes.
and hire king Baſian:
bi-lefde al one.
and Carais to þrong:
and mid on ſpere hine ſtong.
Bruttes hii flowen:
and mani hundred nemen.
Þo ſtod al þiſ lond:
in Carais hond.
Þo nam he alle þe Peutes:
and ſende to Scottes.
and ȝef ȝam þare mochel londe:
in Scot-leode:

Þes word com to Rome:
wel ſwiþe ſone.

"I will be dead first!" Within 'seven nights they [the se'nnight he] came to the fight, before the burgh [of] York,—the fight was most sturdy! When they should fight best, then fled 'all' the Peohtes, and 'they' left 'withall [alone] Basian 'the [their] king; and Carrais pressed towards 'him,' and with [a] spear him pierced. *The* Britons they slew, and many hundred 'there' captured. Then stood all this land in Carrais 'own' hand; then took he all the Peohtes, and sent 'into Scotland [to *the* Scots], and gave them there much land in Scotland; 'and their kin dwelt there afterwards evermore.' This word came to Rome, 'hereafter' 'full [exceeding] soon, how

[1] ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
hu Carrais hæfde iuaren:		ou Carais hadde ivare:
& Baſian þene king of-flæȝen.		and þane king of-ſlawe.
Heo ſomneden twa ferden:		Hii ſomnede twei ferdes:
of Romaniſce ærden.		of Romaniſſe erþe.
& nomen tweien eorles:		and ſende twie eorles:
þe weoren swiðe aðele.		
Allec hæhte þe an:		
weȝ wis & ſtrong mon.		
þe oðer wes icleoped þus:		
Liuius Gallꝰ.	10	Allec and Liuius Gallus.
Heo ferden of[1] Rome:		Hi verden vt of Rome:
& to þiſſe londe comen.		to þiſſe londe hii come.
þ heo bicomen:		
to Carrais þan kinge.		
Carrais heo of-floȝen:		Carais hii of-flowen:
his cnihtes heo nomen.		his cnihtes hii nomen.
þus þa Romaniſce mē:		
ræſden to leoden.		
& Allec nom to his honde:		and Allec nam to his hond:
muchel of þiſſe londe.	20	mochel of þis lond.
þat[2] ȝet þer weoren Buttus:		þe ȝet þar were Bruttes:
monie bi-hælues.		mani bi-halues.
þe caſtles heolden ſtronge:		þat caſtles heolde ſtronge:
burhȝes brade & longe.		borewes brode and longe.

Carrais had acted, and slain 'Basian' the king. They assembled two hosts of Romanish land, and 'took [sent] two earls, 'who were most noble.' Allec 'hight the one, *who* was *a* man wise and strong'; 'the other was called thus, [and] Livius Gallus. They marched 'from [out of] Rome, 'and' to this land [they] came; '*so* that they came up to Carrais the king;' Carrais they slew, his knights they captured. 'Thus the Romanish men attacked *the* people,' and Allec took in his hand much of this land. The yet there were many Britons apart, who held strong castles, *and* burghs broad and long. They caused *messengers* speedily to go south*ward* into Cornwall,

[1] *Written at first* ut. [2] þe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Heo lætten hiȝēdliche varen:
seoð into Cornwalen.
æfter Aſclepidiot:
þe wes i Cornwale duc:
he cō an hiȝenge:
& heo hine heouen to kinge.
þa ſomneden Bruttuf:
sele þeines.
hehte[1] alle þa cnihtes:
cumen to þan kinge.
and æuerælcne ohte mon:
biwīnen his aðelen.
heo budē heore uerde:
uppe niðinges bærde.
þa wes Allec þe king:
iliðē in to Lunden.
& Bruttene kīg:
sone him bæh æfter.
Hit wef an anne hæhȝe dæie:
halȝedē leoden.
wes Allec þe king:
in are temple. [c. 2.]
in Lundenne:
mid his Rom-leoden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

HI lette hiȝendliche vare:
suþ in to Cornwale.
hafter Eſclepidiot:
þat wef in Cornwale duck.
he com an hiȝenge:
and hii makede hine to kinge:

þo ſomnede he alle þe cnihtes:
for come to him feolue.

and he bannede his ferde:
of alle þis erþe.
and wende to Londene:
þar Allec þo wonede.

after Asclepidiot, who was in Cornwall duke;—he came in haste, and they 'raised [made] him to *be* king. Then assembled '*the* Britons, [he] ' good thanes!—bade ' all the knights [for] to come to 'the king [himself], ' and every brave man to win his honor;' 'they [and he] summoned 'their [his] forces, 'upon *pain of* nithings gesture*. [from all this land,] 'Then was Allec the king gone into London, [and went to London; there Allec then dwelt.] ' and *the* British king soon went after him. It was on a high-day (festival); *the* people made sacrifice; Allec the king was in a temple in London, with his Rome-folk.' Then heard [Allec] the king 'mickle [very

[1] hehten?

* *See Notes.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa iherde þe king:	Þo ihorde Allec þe king: [f. 52b, c. 1.]
mucle ludinge.	ſwiþe moche luding.
in Lundene:	
ſtureden þa leoden.	
Allec hī ut leop:	Allec him vp leop:
& his wepnen he igrap.	and his wepne igrop.
& al his Rom-leoden:	and al his Romleode:
þa i Lunðene[1] weoren.	þat in Londene were.
& comen ut of þere burh:	and wend ham vt:
& iſeȝen heom bi-hæluen.	and wonder ſiht iſehȝe.
iſeȝen heom bi-ſiden:	
ſillic heom þuhte.	
wha hæfde al þa mon-uerede:	
þidere iſende:	
Bᵘttes heom buȝē to:	Bruttes heom reſde to:
mid bittere ræſen.	mid ſwiþe gode wille.
Allec heo floȝen:	Allec hii flowen:
muche folc heo nomen.	mochel folk inomē[2].
& ſum ō uæſte bæh:	
in to þere burh[3]:	
& þe eorl Liuius:	And þe eorl Linus[4]:
in to Lundenne flæh.	fleoþ in to borwe.
lette luken þa ȝeten:	letten louke þe ȝates:

much] noise;—'the people stirred in London.' Allec him 'out [up] leapt, and his weapon 'he' grasped, and all his Rome-folk, that in London were; and *they* 'came [marched them] out 'of the burgh,' and saw 'them (the Britons) aside, [*a* marvellous sight.] 'saw them beside; strange *it* seemed to them who had all the host thither sent!' *The* Britons 'advanced [rushed] towards them with bitter 'onset [most good will]; Allec they slew, much folk they captured, 'and some quickly retreated into the burgh.' And the earl Lucius fled into 'London [*the* burgh]; caused the

[1] *R.* Lundene.
[2] hii nomen?
[3] *Written at first* burh fleh, *but the last word expuncted by the same hand.*
[4] *R.* Liuius.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& him ſeolf læð to walle.	and ſtide to walle.
and Bruttes þa burȝen:	and Bruttef Londone:
gunnen biriden.	gonne bi-ride.
& bi-leien þa burh:	
wel mid þe[1] bezſten.	
þe king Aſclepediot:	And Eſclepidiot:
þe wes cniht swiðe god.	þat was cniht ſwiþe god.
ſende his ſonde:	ſende his ſonde:
in to Scotlonde.	in to Scotlonde.
in to Muriane:	in to Moraine:
æfter mon-weore[2].	after man-ferde.
& æc in to wes[3] Wales:	and eke in to Wales:
æfter Wæl-Brutten.	after Walſe-Bruttes.
& swa he lette ſone uaren:	
soð in to Cornwalen.	
hæhte[4] ælcne mon of þan ærd:	and hin to his owe erþ:
þe hæfde on his chinne bærd.	þat ech man þat hadde beord.
uppe leome & vppē lif:	vppe lime and vppe lif:
to Lundene liðen.	to Londene wende.
Inne ſeouē nihte:	And alle hii come:
iſomned heo weoren.	in lutele time.
heo heolden to walle:	and reſde to walle:
mid wunderliche ſtrēgðe.	in euereche halue.

gates to be locked, and 'himself' went to *the* wall; and the Britons gan ride round 'the burgh [London], 'and besieged the burgh well with the best.' 'The king [And] Asclepidiot, who was knight most good, sent his messengers into Scotland, into Moray, after forces, and eke into Wales, after Welsh-Britons. And 'so he caused *others* soon to go south*ward*' into 'Cornwall [his own country]; 'ordered [that] each man 'of the land' that had beard 'on his chin,' upon *pain of* limb and upon life to proceed to London. 'In seven nights assembled they were; they [And they all came in little time, and] assaulted *the* walls 'with wondrous strength [on

[1] þe *is interlined.* [2] mon-weorede? [3] *Redundant?*
[4] *The last three letters of* hæhte *are sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& Liuius Gall⁹ :/	and Liuiuſ Gallus :/
goðliche werede. [f. 61ᵇ. c. 1.]	wel hine werede.
Bruttes a þan ende :/	Bruttes a þan ende :/
breken þa walles.	þe walles to-breke.
& iwenden binnen :/	and in hii wende :/
þa wes þa burh bi-wunnen.	þo waſ þe borh awonne.
& Liuius Gallus :/	And Liuiuſ Gallus :/
gæinde to anne caſtle.	wende to þan caſtle.
& þer binen him ræſde :/	
mid his Romaniſce uolke.	
& Bruttene king :/	
bæh to þæn caſtle.	
& lætte to læpen :/	and Bruttes leope to :/
alle þa Brut-leoden.	on euereche ſide.
Þa iſæh Liuius Gallus :/	
ꝥ his help weſ ſwiðe wac.	
þa leonede he ouer wal :/	
& lude gon cleopien.	
Aſclepidiot þene king :/	
Þu ært ſwiðe kene.	
ich wullen þe ſpeken wið :/	Liuius ȝeornde griþ :/
& ȝirne þe liues grið.	and þane king wolde ſpekē wiþ.
þat þu mid griðe me leten uaren :/	þo ſo ſeide Liuius :/
forð touward Rome.	Let me hine wende þus.

every side]; and Livius-Gallus 'goodly [well him] defended. *The* Britons at the end brake the walls, and 'within [in they] went;—then was the burgh won. And Livius Gallus retreated to 'a [the] castle, 'and there within he rushed, with his Romanish folk'; and '*the* British king marched to the castle, and caused all the British-folk to assault *it* [the Britons assaulted *it* on every side]. 'When Livius Gallus saw, that his help was very weak; then leaned he over *the* wall, and loud gan to call to Asclepidiot the king: "Thou art most keen,' 'I would speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life; that thou let me depart with peace forth toward Rome, and with me my people [Livius yearned peace, and would speak with the king; then thus said Livius: Let me hence depart thus, with the same folk]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& mid me mine leoden :/
þe ȝet beoð an liue.
& ich þe wulle swerien :/
vppen mine fweorde.
þat nulle ic nauere mare :/
aȝen cumen here.
Aſclepidiot iherde þat :/
þeos word him þuhte god.
& al hī iȝette :/
þat Gallus þer ȝerde[1].
Of þan caſtle heo ut foren :/
& aðef heo fworen.
& fwa heo gunnen wenden :/
uorð ut of Londen.
þa com Scottene king :/
ſcriðē to hirede.
& imætte Gallus :/
& his gumen alle.
Sone cleopede Columban :/
þe wes Scottene king.
Whar beo ȝe mine gumen :/
vt of Galwæiða.
whar beo ȝe mine men :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

mid þā ilke folke :/
þat ich habbe ȝet a-lifue.
and ich þe wolle fwe[rie :/]
vppen mine fwerde. [c. 2.]
þat nelle ich neuere more :/
aȝein comen here.
þo ſaide Eſclepidiot :/
þis he wel mot.

Of þan caſtle hii fore :/
and oþes him fwore.
and ſo hii gonne wende :/
vt of þiſſe londe.
þo com Scottene king :/
Eſclepidiot to helpe.
imette wiþ Liuius :/
and mid al his folke.
Sone cleopede Columban :/
þat was Scottene king.
Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihtes :/
ſleaþ alle forþ rihtes.

that yet 'are [I have] alive. And I will swear to thee, upon my sword, that I will never more again come here." Asclepidiot 'heard that, these words him seemed good; and all *he* him granted, that Gallus there asked [then said, this he well might *do*]. From the castle they 'out' went, and oaths 'they [to him] swore, and so they gan depart 'forth' out of 'London [this land]. Then came *the* king of Scots 'marching to *the* host [to *the* help of Asclepidiot], 'and' met [with] Gallus, and [with] all his 'men [folk]. Soon called Columban,—who was king of Scots: "Where be ye, my 'men [knights] 'out of Galloway? where be ye, my men out of Moray? where be ye, my Scots? Follow me beside. Here

[1] ȝernde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ut of Mureine.	
whar beo ȝe mine Scotteſ: [c. 2.]	
ſcriðeð me biſide.	
her we ſculleð wel whreken:	
ure wines deore.	
& ure uulle iuan:	
fallen to þā grunde.	
ȝif þe king Aſclipidiot:	
þe is cniht swiðe god.	
haueð heom ſpeken wið:	
& iȝefuen heō liues grið.	þoh hii griþ habbe:
nes ich noht þere:	nas ich noht at þe reade.
ne nan of mine iuaren[1].	
ne we hit nulleð[2] halden:	
for ure freōd heo habbeoð aqualde.	
Heo leiden heom bi-tweonen:	Hii name ſweordes ſtrange:
heore ſperen longe.	and hire ſpereſ longe.
& ladliche ſwiðe:	ſo þat loþliche ſwiþe:
feolē Rom-leoden.	fulle Romleode.
& Gallus heo nomē:	And Liuius hii neme:
& þat hafd him of-ſloȝen.	and þat hefd of-swipte.
& wurpen hine in ænne broc:	and worpen him in one broc:
þe þer heom bi ſtod.	þat þar bi ſtod.
& al þæt wal heo brohten:	

we shall well avenge our dear friends, and fell our full foes to the ground!' 'If the king Asclepidiot, who is knight most good, hath spoken with them, and given them lifes grace, *yet* I was not there, [Slay *them* all forthright, though they have grace *of life*; *for* I was not at the counsel."] 'nor any of my comrades, nor will we it hold, for our friends they have slaughtered.'" They laid between them [took strong swords and] their long spears, 'and [so that *they*] most hostilely felled *the* Rome-folk. And 'Gallus [Livius] they captured, and smote off 'from him' the head, and cast him in a brook that there by 'them' stood, 'and all the dead they brought into

[1] iueren? [2] *Written originally* wulleð, *but corrected by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
in to þan broke.		
þer Gallus i þan broke:		
at grunde waſ bi-buried.		
Þa wes þas þeode:	Þo was þeos þeode:	
iclanſed of Rom-leode.	iclanſed of Romleode.	
and Bruttes þan broke:	Bruttef þane broc:	
nome bi-tæhtē.	Galli cleopede.	
for Gallus wes iflaȝen þer bi:	for þat Liuius Gallus:	
hæhte hine nemni Galli.	was þar on i-pult þus.	*Galli.*
& a þere Ængliſce boc:	and [a] þe Engleſſe boc:	
he is ihatē Wale-broc.	he his ihote Welebroc.	*Walebroc.*
Nu ich habbe þe iraht:		
hu he hauede þene nome icaht.		
for nu and auere mare:	nou and euere more:	
is þe nome þere.	þe name ſtondeþ þare.	
Þa wes king Aſclepidiot:	Þo waſ king Eſclepidiot:	*Aſclepidiot.*
þe wes cniht swiðe god.	þat was cniht ſwiðe god.	
fulle ten ȝere:	fulle ten ȝere:	
mid Brutten heo luuuede here.	mid Bruttes he wonede here.	
seoððen his ende bicom:	þo com his ende:	
þat was uuele idon.	þat he ſolde wende.	
þ he ſculden swa raðe: [f. 62. c. 1.]		
uaren of þiſſen lif-daȝen.		
for he wes swiðe læfful:		

the brook;—there Gallus in the brook at *the* bottom was buried.' Then was this nation cleansed from *the* Rome-folk, and *the* Britons 'gave *a* name to the brook; because Gallus was slain thereby (near), bade it be named Galli [called the brook Galli, because that Livius Gallus was therein thus cast], and in the English books it is named Wal-brook. 'Now I have informed thee, how it had acquired the name, for' now and evermore the name 'is [standeth] there. Then was Asclepidiot king, who was knight most good; full ten years he 'lived [dwelt] here with *the* Britons; then came his end,—'that was evilly done,' that he should depart 'so soon from this life-day!—all *the* Britons loved him, because he was most just.' 'In

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	alle Brut luueden.	hii-ſmite[1] he was in fihte:
Rex Coel.	I Glouchæſtre wes an eorl:	mid on of Coel his cnihtes.
	of aðelene moncunne.	
	þe alre hæheſte iborne mon:	
	þe wunede inne Bruttene.	
Coel.	Coel wes ihaten:	þeos ilke Coel[2]:
	hæhſt of þan Brutten.	
	he wæs if Gloief cūne:	was of Gloi his cunne:
	þe Glochæſtre ahte.	þat hahte Glouceſtre. [f. 53. c. 1.]
	swa þat mid alle heore mihte:	
	heo comen to ane fihte.	
	Coel eorl i þan fihte ſtod:	
	& floh þene king Aſclepidiot.	
	Imong þiſſen imonge:	Amag[3] þiſſe motinge:
	com reouðe to þiſſe londe.	come oþere tidinge.
	swa þat þe kæiſere Dioclician:	so þat þe kaiſer Dioclecian:
	sende to þiſſe londe Maximiæn.	ſende hider Maximian.
	hider he com faren:	
	mid muchelere ferde.	
	þa he com to londe:	þo he com to Londene:
	Coel he uunde.	Coel þar he funde.
	mid compe hæfde biuunnen:	mid fihte he hadde awonne:
	þat he king waf him ſeolue.	þat he was king of londe.

Gloucester was an earl of noble race, the highest born man of all that dwelt in Britain; *he* was named Coel, highest of the Britons, he was of Gloies kindred, who possessed Gloucester; so that with all their might they came to a fight; Coel *the* earl stood in the fight, and slew the king Asclepidiot. [he was smitten in fight by one of Coel his knights; this same Coel was of his kin who possessed Gloucester.] Among (during) this business came 'sorrow to this land [other tidings], so that the emperor Dioclesian sent 'to this land [hither] Maximian;—'hither he arrived with *a* great army.' When he came to 'land [London], he found Coel [there]; with 'combat [fight he] had won that he was *become* king 'himself [of *the* land]. Coel

[1] i-ſmite? [2] *A line apparently is wanting.* [3] Amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Coel and Maximen :/
cuðliche ſpekē.
& freondſcipe makeden :/
i-uaſtened mid treoðen:
þa ſeide Maximien :/
mi broðer Dioclician.
haueð me al þa londes :/
bitaht a mire honde.
bi-twixe Mutgiu & Scotlonde :/
þat ic heo[1] ſcal þurh ſcriðen.
& alle þa ilke men for-don :/
þat luuieð þene criſtindom.
þa wes wa Coel :/
þe king wæs on Bruttene.
þat iſæhtneſſe[2] :/
mid treoðe hafde iſemed.
Coel heold hine ſtille :/ [c. 2.]
& Maxinien[3] dude his wille.
elcne criſtine mon :/
at þan hefde he bi-nom.
& þa wið-ſaken wolde criſtindom :/
he dude his markē him on.
þuſ ferde Maximien :/
he martrede ſēint[4] Alban.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Coel and Maximien :/
frendes bi-comen.

þo ſeide Maximian :/
mi broþer Dioclecian.
haueþ me alle þe londes :/
bi-tahte on mine honde.
bi-twixte Montagu and Scotlond :/
þat ich hii ſal þorh ride.
and alle þe men for-don :/
þat lofuieþ þane criſtendom.
þo was wo Coel :/
king of Bruttayne.
þat he ſahtneſſe :/
mid ſware hadde ifaſtned.
Coel heold hine ſtille :/
and Maximien dude his wille.
echne criſtene man :/
þat hefd him bi-nom.
and ȝif he wolde heþene beo :/
þanne mihte he libbe.
þus ferde Maxiniā[3] :/
he martrede ſeint Albon.

Dioclicianus cum Maximiano imperauit xx^ti anniſ, ex quibus posterioribus ix. annis inceſſabiliter crudeliſſime eccle-

and Maximian 'spake familiarly [became friends], 'and made friendship fastened with troth.' Then said Maximian: "My brother Dioclesian hath delivered me in mine hand all the lands betwixt 'Muntgiu [Montagu] and Scotland, that I shall through them 'pass [ride], and slay all 'those [the] men that love the Christendom. Then was Coel woe, 'who was' king of Britain, that [he] had fastened amity with 'troth [oath]. Coel held him still, and Maximian did his will; each Christian man 'he' took off [him] the head, and 'whoso would forsake Christendom, he put his mark on him [if he would be heathen, then might he live]. Thus fared Maximian,—

[1] heom? [2] he ſæhtneſſe? [3] *R.* Maximien, Maximian. [4] *R.* ſeint.

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
siam dei perſecuti ſunt. Sub	& ſeint Julien and ſcīt Aaron:	and ſeint Julien [and ſeint] Aaron:
[h]ac perſecucione	& tweien ancriſt[1] of Kærlion.	and tweie ancreos of Cairlion.
ſanctus Mauricius	Næs nan[2] biſcop næs nan clærk:	Nas no biſſop naf no cleorc:
cum ſociis	ne cniht neore he ſwa ſterc.	ne cniht nere he ſo ſtarc.
ſuis & ſanctus Julianus	bute he wid-ſoke[3] criſtindō:	bote he for-ſoke criſtendom:
& ſancta	þat he nes anan fordon.	þat he nas a-non for-don.
Baſiliſſa,	Þa þis wes al idon:	Þo þiſ was al idon:
cum fere	þa uerde forð Maximian.	þo ferde forþ Maximian.
x^cem militibus martiris. & mille	& Coel bi-læfde:	and Coel bi-lefde:
virginibus	king inne Bruttene.	king a þiſſere erþe.
coronati ſunt; quo	Þes king hæfuede enne dohter:	Þeos king hadde ane dohter:
tempore	þe wes him ſwiðe deore.	þat was him ſwiþe deore.
ſanctus Jeorgeus	& he al þis kinelond:	and he al þiſ kinelond: [c. 2.]
martirizatus eſt. Ea	bitahte þan maidene an hond.	bi-cwaþ þat maide an hond.
tempeſtate	for næfde he nan oðer child:	for nadde he no cnaue:
Sanctus Albanus in	þe mihte iþiſſen londe beō king.	þat mihte þat lond habbe.
Anglia,	þ mæide hehte Elene:	Þat maýde hehte Eleýne:
Sanctus Vincencius	seoððen heo wes quene.	suþþe ȝeo waf cwene.
in Iſſpannia, Sancta	i þan londe of Jeruſalem:	in þan lond of Jeruſalem:
Margareta	leoden to bliſſen.	leode to bliſſe.
in Antigia,	Þis maiden wes wel itæht:	Þat maide was wel itaht:
Sanctus Pantaleon	on bocken heo cuðe godne cræft.	ine boke godne craft.
in Nicomedea, paſſi	& wunede in þiſſe londe:	and wonede in þiſſe londe:
ſunt.		

he martyred saint Alban, and saint Julian, and saint Aaron, and two anchorites of Cærleon. *There* was no bishop, *there* was no clerk, nor knight —were he *ever* so strong, that he was not anon slain, unless he forsook Christendom. When this was all done, then marched forth Maximian, and left Coel king in 'Britain [this land]. This king had a daughter, who was to him very dear, and he 'delivered [bequeathed] to the 'maiden [maid] in hand all this kingdom; for he had no 'other child [boy], that might 'in this land be king [the land have]. The maid hight Helen,—subsequently she was queen in the land of Jerusalem, to *the* bliss of *the* people. 'This maiden [The maid] was well instructed, in books 'she knew' good craft, and dwelt

[1] ancref? [2] man *pr. m.* [3] wið-ſoke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid hire fader ſtronge.
Her æfter ſone:
þat word com to Rome.
þat Coel hæfden iquald:
Aſclepidiot þene king.
þa weorē Rom-leoden:
bliðe on heore mode.
for he hæfde an his daȝen:
muchel of heore cūne iflaȝen.
ȝet ne com Maximien: [f. 62b. c. 1.]
neuere to Rome aȝen.
þa nom Dioclicien:
ænne eoorl[1] wel idon.
þat wes þe ræhȝeſte mon:
þe wuden[2] inne Rome.
& hæfde moni lond:
ilæid under his hond.
nas na mā in his dæȝen:
þ durſten him derf makien.
þe kæiſere hine ſende:
into þiſſen londe.
in to þiſſen ærde:
mid vnimete uærde.
Suſtance[3] hehte þe eorl:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid hire fader ſtronge.
þar after ſone:
þat word com to Rome.
þat Coel adde icwelled:
Eſclepediot þane king.
þo were Romleode:
bliþe on hire mode.
for þat he hadde iſlehȝe:
moche of hire cunne.
ȝet nas Maximan:
noht icome to Rome aȝein.
þo nam Dioclecian:
on eorl wel idon.
he was þe boldeſte man:
þat wonede ine Rome.

nas no man in his daiȝe:
þat dorſte him derf makie.
þe kaiſer hine ſende:
mid onimete ferde.
Conſtance hehte þe eorl:

in this land with her strong father. Soon 'hereafter [thereafter] the word came to Rome, that Coel had killed Asclepidiot the king. Then were *the* Rome-folk blithe in their mood, because [that] he had 'in his day' slain much (many) of their kin. Yet Maximian 'never came [was not come] to Rome again. Then took Dioclesian a brave earl, 'who [he] was the boldest man that dwelt in Rome; 'and had laid (subdued) many lands under his hand'; was *there* no man in his day that durst make him*self* hardy. The emperor sent him 'into this land, into this country,' with innumerable host. Custance hight the earl; 'noblest of all knights [knight with

[1] *R.* eorl. [2] wunede? [3] *R.* Cuſtance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

æðeleſt alre cnihtē.
þis iherde Coel:
þ icumen wæs Cuſtance.
adræd he wes swiðe:
of hiſ ahȝene liue.
he nom forð rihtes:
six wiſe cnihtes.
to C^{o}tance heō ſende:
& wilcumede hine to lōde.
& he ſeolf him woldē ſpecken wiðe:
ȝef he him wolden ȝifuen grið. II
& Cuſtance him ſende æfter:
þat he come mid twalf cnihten.
to-ſomne heo comen:
to-gædere heo ſpeken ſone.
þa queð þe kin[1] Coel:
Cuſtance luſt me nu wel.
ich ſugge þe þurh alle þīng:
ich ſloh Aſclepidiot þene king.
þe hæfde þurh his wiðer-laȝen:
muchel of þine cunne of-ſlaȝen.
& mid ſtrengðe eow at-haldē wolde:
þ gauel of þiſſen londe.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

cniht mid þan beſte.
þis ihorde Coel:
þat icome was Conſtance her.
adred he was swiþe:
of his owene lifuc.
he nam forþrihtes:
ſix wiſe cnihteſ.
and to Conſtance ſende:
and wilcomede hine to londe. [wiþ:
and he wolde come and ſpeke him
ȝef he wolde ȝeue him griþ.
And Cuſtance him ſende after:
come mid twalf cnihteſ.
to-gadere hii comen:
and ſehte iworþen ſone. [f.53^{b}.c.1.]

the best]! Coel heard this, that Custance was come [here]; adread he was greatly, for his own life; he took forth-right six wise knights, [and] sent 'them' to Custance, and welcomed him to land; and *said that* he '*him*self' would [come and] speak with him, if he would give him peace. And Custance sent after him, 'that he should come [to come] with twelve knights; together they came, 'together they spake [and became reconciled] soon. 'Then quoth the king Coel: "Custance, listen now well to me. I say thee through all things *that* I slew Asclepidiot the king, who had through his evil laws slain much of thy kin, and would from you with strength withhold the tribute of this land; and much shame he did you,—

[1] king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& muchelne ſcome he eow ðude:
þe ræðer he dæd þolede.
for ich wes an of þan hæhſte:
þ ſwore eow herſumneſce. [c.2.]
to Romen þat we ſculden senden:
þ gauel of þiſſen londe.
þaſ aððes þe king bræc:
þer fore he if nu dæd.
Ah a-ſwike wit vnker ſihtes:
& lokien we to þan rihten.
& ich wullen halden to:
& halden þe for hærre.
& beon þe ful liðe:
& halden þe for lauerd.
& ælche ȝere þe ſendē:
þat gauel of Brutlonde.
þa anſwere Cuſtāce:
riche mon & swiðe bald.
Coel þu ært wis mon:
& wiſdom þe follewe8.
Beo nu godful kig:
& gumene þu beo lauerd[2].
& al ich þe ȝette:
swa þu hit ȝirneſt.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo ſeide Cuſtance:
to Coel þan kinke[1].
Coel þou art wiſman:
and wiſdom þe folweþ.
Beo nou god king:
and of þiſ londe louerd.

the sooner he suffered death! For I was one of the highest that swore to you obedience, that we should send to Rome the tribute of this land. These oaths the king brake,—therefore is he now dead. But cease we our fight, and look we to the right, and I will submit, and hold thee for master, and be to thee full obedient, and hold thee for lord, and each year send thee the tribute of Britain."' Then 'answered [said] Custance,—'noble man, and most bold [to Coel the king]: "Coel, thou art *a* wise man, and wisdom followeth thee. Be now *a* good king, and 'be thou' lord of 'men [this land]; 'and all I grant thee as thou it yearnest,' and I will with

[1] *R.* kinge.

[2] lauer, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ich wulle mid monſcipe :/	anc[1] ich wolle mid manſipe :/
þine monradene on-fon.	þi manradene onderfange.
for þu uf dedeſt[2] monſcipe and god :/	
þa þu floȝe Aſclepidiot.	
Mid muchelere wurſcipe :/	
sæht heo iwurðen.	
mid muchelere bliſce :/	Mid mochele bliſſe :/
heo wuneden in burȝen.	hii wonede ine borwe.
Ah nef hit buten ane while :/	Ac naf hit bute ane wile :/
þ þer com an oðer time.	þat com an oþer time.
neoren noht feouwerti daȝen :/	
allunge iuæreden.	
þat Coel þe king :/	þat Coel þe king :/
seoc lai an comlen.	ſeac was in comelan.
his hæfde ſwiðe oc :/	
& þe king wes wunderliche ſeoc.	
Seouen niht & ænne dæi :/	Soueniht and on dai :/
þe kīg swiðe seoc lai.	þe king ſwiþe ſeac lai.
hit heold hine bi þan ribben :/	
þat ne mihte he na leng libben.	
& he cleopede him to :/	and he cleopede him to :/
riche his þeines.	alle his wiſe cnihtes.
þat heo him ſculden ræden :/	[f.63. c. 1.] for to him reade :/
at ſwulchere neode.	at ſochere neode.

honor thy homage receive, 'for thou didst to us honor and good, when thou slewest Asclepidiot.'' With much worship they became friends,' with much bliss they dwelt in *the* burgh. But it was not but a while, that 'there' came another time (change of events); 'forty days were not wholly passed,' that Coel the king 'lay [was] sick in tent(?); 'his head ached greatly, and the king was wondrously sick.' Seven nights and one day the king lay very sick; 'it held him by the ribs, *so* that he might no longer live;' and he called to him 'his noble thanes, that they should [all his wise knights, for to] counsel him at such need, how he might dispose of Helen his daughter.

[1] *R.* and.

[2] *An* o *is written above the first* e, *by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

hu he mihte dihten:
Ælene his dohter.
þa heo hafden[1] al iſeid:
þ wes þe utemæſte raþ[2].
þat heo ȝeue Ælene:
Cuſtance to are quene.
& al his kineliche lond:
ſette in Cuſtances hond.
& Coel hī dude ſwa:
þe king wes inne Buttene.
þa nes þer nan oþer ræd:
bute Coel king iwarð dæd.
& Cuſtance hauede Ælene:
biwedded to quene.
þet wes þa wiſeſte wifman:
þa wunede a Buttene.
Cuſtance hauede his quene:
a child heom wes imene.
þa þat child wes iboren:
God sulf hit hauede icoren.
þer fore wes al bliþe:
þat wunede inne Bruttene.
þa comen to-ſomne:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hou he mihte dihte:
Eleyne his dohter.
And hii him radde alle:
in boure and in halle.
þat he hire ȝefue:
Cuſtance to cwene.
and al his kineworþe lond:
ſette Cuſtance an hond.
and Coel al dude:
aſe hii him radde.
þo nas þar non oþer read:
bote þe king iwarþ dead.
and Cuſtance adde Eleyne:
bi-wedded to cwene.
þat was þe wiſeſt womman:
þat wonede in londe.
Cuſtance adde bi his cwene:
a child ſwiþe ſcene.

'When they had all said (spoken), that was the final counsel [And they all counselled him, in bower and in hall], that he should give 'Helen [her] to Custance for 'a' queen, and all his royal land set in Custances hand;·and Coel 'he' did 'so,—'who was king in Britain [all as they advised him]. Then was there no other lot, but *that* 'Coel [the] king should die; and Custance had Helen wedded for queen, who was the wisest woman that dwelt in 'Britain [land]. Custance had [by] his queen, a child 'was in common to them [most fair]. 'When the child was born, God *him*self had chosen it, therefore was all *folk* blithe, that dwelt in Britain. Then came together world-prosperous men: they found the child *a* name most fair; they loved

[1] *R.* hafden. [2] ræd?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	weorld-feli men.	
	heo fūden þat child:	
	nome fwiðe hende.	
	heo luueden his licame:	
	& ȝeuen him his fader nome.	
	Cuſtaz[1] hæhte þe kīg:	Cuſtance hehte þe king:
Coſtantin.	& Coſtantin[2] hæhte þat child.	and þat child Conſtantin.
	þe lef wes on heorten:	þat leof was on erþe:
	alle Bᵘtlonden.	alle Brut-leode.
	his moder Elene:	
	wæs þiſſes londes quene.	
	þat child wæx and wel iþæh:	þe child wex and wel iþeh:
	Godes mildce him wes neh.	
	Bruttes him weoren liðe:	
	& he hom luuede fwiðe.	and Bruttes him lofuede fwiþe.
	heoweoren his moder cunnes men:	
	icomen heo wes of Brutten.	[3]his moder was a Brut. [c. 2.]
	& Cuſtanz his fader: [c. 2.]	and Conſtance his fader:
	inne Rome wes i-uoſtred.	in Rome was i-voſtred.
	al þat þet child mid æȝen iſæh:	al þat þe child iſeh:
	al hit to bæh.	al hit him to beh.
	þeo þ child wes uorð iuæred:	þo þat child was:
	& wes of twealf ȝere.	of fulle twealf ȝere.

his body, and gave him his fathers name.' Custance hight the king, and Constantin 'hight' the child, who was dear in 'heart [land] to all 'Britain [Britons];—'his mother Helen was queen of this land.' The child waxed, and well throve; 'Gods favor was nigh him; *the* Britons were obedient to him,' and 'he [the Britons] loved 'them [him] exceedingly. 'They were his mothers kinsmen;' 'she was born of Britons [his mother was a Briton], and Custance, his father, was fostered in Rome. All that the child saw 'with eyes,' all it submitted [to him]. When the child was 'forth advanced *in age*, and was' of [full] twelve years, *there* was 'no man in this land [none

[1] *R.* Cuſtanz. [2] Cōſtantin *pr. m.* [3] *One line, if not two, is here deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
nes na man i þis ærd:	naſ non of his helde:
þ weore of heortē ſwa hærd.	þat hadde þe ilke mihte.
þene Coſtantin wes wraðˑ	wane he were wroþ:
ne durſten na mon ſpeken him wiðˑ	ne dorſte no man ſpeke him wiþ.
& þenne he wes bliðe:	
he wes uule liðe.	
Swiðe he luuede[1] alcne cniht:	moche he lofde echne cniht:
þe wæs leof to dem̄ riht.	þat lofde for to ſegge riht.
& his Bruttiſce cun:	
swiðe hīe biho3eden.	
& his Romaniſce cun:	
wurðliche him radde.	
Þa þat child wes of þrittene[2] 3ere:	þo he was of þrittene 3ere:
þa iwærð his fader vnueren.	þo iwarþ his fader onviere.
þat wes þe uteneſten[3] ræd:	þat was þe latemiſte read:
þat Cuſtance þe kīg iwærð dæd.	þat Cuſtance iwarþ dead.
& Bruttus nome þat child:	And Bruttef an hi3eng:
& makeden heom þer of anne king.	makede Conſtantin king.
& Coſtantin þe 3unge king:	and Conſtantin heold þis lond:
mid wiſdome heold þis lond.	in his owene hond.
swulc he weore an ældˑ	alſe he were of heolde:
kingen alre baldeſt.	king alre boldeſt.
Þa wes a þen ilke time:	Þo was in þan dome:

Anno g[racie] .ccc.

of his age] that 'was of heart so hardy [had the same might]. When 'Constantin [he] was wrath, durst no man speak with him; and when he was blithe, he was full mild. Much he loved each knight who 'was lief to judge [loved for to say] right, 'and his British kin greatly him honored, and his Romanish kin worthily him counselled.' When 'the child [he] was of thirteen years, then became his father sick;—that was the final lot, that Custance the king should die. And *the* Britons 'took the child, and made them thereof a [quickly made Constantin] king; and Constantin, 'the young king,' held this land 'with wisdom [in his own hand], as if he were of age *a* king boldest of all! Then was in the 'same time [realm] an emperor 'in

[1] *The letters* de *are interlined.* [2] *The letters* ne *are interlined.* [3] *R.* utemeſten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
a kæiſere inne Rome.	an kaiſer at Rome.
Max[enz]. he wes ihæten Maxenz:	he was ihote [M]axenz:
þe wurſe hine luuede.	þe feōd hine lofuede.
þ wes þe forcuððeſte mon:	þat was þe forcouþeſt man:
þe quic wes on liue.	þat cwick were on erþe.
Al Rome he fordude:	Al Rome he for-dude:
þurh his muchele miſbode.	þorh his mochele miſbode.
alle þa heȝe men:	alle þe eȝe men:
þe[1] he hatede to dæðe.	he hatede to deaþe.
& alle þa hæne:	
miðh[2] harme he igrætte.	
þer weoren monie i Rome:	
riche & wel idone. [f. 63ᵇ. c. 1.]	
þe bi-læfden al þat leoden:	so þat þorh his ſconde:
& fluȝen of þan londe.	manie floȝe of þan londe.
for þan ſcamen & for þan biſemare:	for þan ſame and þe biſmare:
þe heom dude þe kæiſere.	þat heom dude þe kaiſer.
& comen to þiſſen londe:	an comen to þiſſe lond:
to Coſtāſtine[3] þā kinge.	to Conſtantin þan kinge.
& menden to him heore fær:	and menden hir for:
& heore forh-fiðes.	ou hii ilore hadde.
& þan vnimete ſcome:	and of þan onimete ſame:
& þenne muche grome.	and of þan mochele grame.

[at] Rome; he was named Maxenz,—the 'Worse [Fiend] loved him!—who was the wickedest man that was 'quick in life [alive on earth]. All Rome he destroyed through his mickle ill-rule; all the noble men he hated to death, 'and all the poor with harm he greeted.' 'There were many in Rome, rich and brave, who left all the 'folk, and [so that through his wickedness many] fled from the land, for (on account of) the shame and 'for' the disgrace that the emperor did to them, and came to this land, to Constantin the king, and told 'him' their grief, 'and their sorrowful haps [how they had *been* injured], and [of] the unmeet shame, and [of] the mickle injury

[1] *Redundant?* [2] mid? [3] *R.* Coſtātine.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe Maxenz heom hæuede idon:	þat Maxenz heom hadde idon: [f.54. c.1.]
& idriuen of heore lōde.	an of hire londe i-dreue.
For nuſten heo nenne king:	For nuſten hii to wā mene:
þe heo mihten to kennen.	
swa heo mihten to Coſtantine:	
for he wes of heore cunne.	bote to hire cunne.
ȝeorne heo hine beden:	ȝeorne hii him beode:
þat he heom ſcolden ræden.	þat he ȝam ſolde reade.
hu heo mihten awrækē:	
heore wanſiðes.	
vppe Maxenze:	
þe heore monſcipe hæfde auælled.	
Swa longe heo ræd ȝeornden:	
þat he heom ræd ȝette.	
þat he wolde riden:	
wið ræiȝere ſtrengðe.	
forð in to Rome:	
& þa riche biwinnen.	
& wreken heom on Maxenz:	
þe his cun hæfde i-ſcǣd.	Conſtantin bi-þohte:
& Coſtantī þe king gode:	wat he don mihte.
gaderede uærde.	he gaderede ferde:
vnimete folc:	of manian erþe.
mōianes cunnes.	
þe king gon to ridē:	þe king gan to ride:

that Maxenz had done them, and driven from their land. For they knew 'no king [not to whom to speak] 'that they might make *it* known' to, as they might to Constantin,' 'for he was of [except to] their kin. Earnestly they prayed him that he should them advise, 'how they might avenge their calamities upon Maxenz, who had laid low their honor. So long they yearned counsel, that he granted them counsel,—that he would ride with bold strength forth into Rome, and conquer the realm, and avenge them on Maxenz, who had injured his kin.' 'And Constantin the good king [Constantin bethought *him* what he might do; he] gathered *an* army, 'innumerable folk' of many a 'kind [land];—the king 'gan to ride toward

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
touward Rom-leoden.	toward Romleode.
þat he cō to Rome:	þat he com to Rome:
mid ræȝere ſtrengðe.	mid rehere ſtrengþe.
þe king wes swiðe god cniht:	þe king was ſwiþe god cniht:
& he ȝarkede his fiht.	and he ȝarkede his fiht.
& he Maxenz of-floh:	and he Maxēz of-sloh:
þer wes bliſſe inoh.	þar was wele i-noh.
þa weoren Rom-leoden:	
bliðen on heore þeoden.	
þa wes Coſtatī þe king: [c. 2.]	þo was Conſtantin þe king:
kæiſere of Rome. 11	kaiſer of Rome. [cwene.
and þer wes Elene þe halie quene:	and þar was Eleyne: þe holie
& hire þreo æmmes.	and hire þreo heames:
þe ældeſte hæhte Leonin:	þat þus were i-hote.
Traher. Marin. Trahern & Marī.	Traharn Marin and Leonin:
þe eorles weoren wel idone:	þeos were eorles wel idon.
Coſtantin heom bitæhte Rome.	Conſtantin ȝam bi-tahte:
to ræden þa leden:	al Romleode.
to dihten þere þeoden.	
& þa læuedi Ælene: 20	And Eleyne þe leafdi:
þa halie quene.	
to Jeruſalem wende:	to Jeruſalem wende.
mid richere genge.	
& ſpæc wid[1] þā elde:	and ſpac wiþ holde:

the Rome-folk, *so* that he came to Rome with fierce strength. The king was knight most good, and he made ready his fight, and he slew Maxenz,—there was 'bliss [weal] enow!—'then were *the* Rome-folk blithe in their land.' Then was Constantin the king emperor of Rome; and there was Helen, the holy queen, and her three uncles; 'the eldest hight Leonin,—Trahern, and Marin [that thus were named, Traharn, Marin, and Leonin];—'the [these] earls were brave! Constantin delivered to them 'Rome [all *the* Rome-folk], 'to counsel the people, *and* to govern the nation.' And the lady Helen, 'the holy queen,' went to Jerusalem 'with *a* rich retinue,' and spake with 'the' elders of the Jews that were bold; 'and she promised

[1] wiþ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
of þan Judean þe weoren balde.	of Jues þan[1] weren bolde.
& heo heom bihehte:	
swiðe mucle[2] æhte.	
þat heo hire fcolden ræden:	and hii hire gonne reade:
to vinden þa rode.	þat finde heo folde þe rode.
þe Crift ure lauerd:	þat Crift vre lou[9]d:
alifden on þes middelærd.	þar on was i-ftonge.
þeo Judeus heo fohten:	þo Judas hire fohte:
& þere quene heo itæhten.	and þe cwene bi-tahte.
þa wes heo fwa bliðe:	þo was ȝeo fo bliþe:
swa heo nes neuere ær on liue.	fo ȝeo nas neuere on liue.
& heo vele ȝere:	an ȝeo fale ȝer:
þurh þan[3] wunede[4] þere.	mid þan rode wonede þar.
þe while hire æem Leonin:	þe wile Leonyn hire heam:
wes in Rome mid Coftantin.	in Roma was mid Conftantin. [c. 2.]
Of þan broðeren he wes ældeft:	Of þan broþers he waf eldeft:
of wifdome alre feleft.	and wifeft and feleft.
nomen þa Romwifen:	nemen þe wife of Rome:
& wīman him ȝeuen.	and wimman him ȝefue.
of þan hehfte cunne:	of þan heheſte cunne:
of Romanifce monnen.	of Romaniffe manne.
þa wifman wes biwedded:	þe womman was i-wedded:
& Leonin heo hæfde to his bedde.	an hi-ladd to his bedde.

Anno gracie ccc°. ii°. Euſebius papa ſedit viij^to^. menſes. Sub huius tempore inuenta eſt crux domini, v°. Nonas Mai.

them very much wealth,' 'that they should [and they gan] counsel her 'to [that she should] find the Rood, 'on which [that] Christ our Lord 're-'deemed this middle-earth [was pierced thereon]. The Jews sought it, and delivered 'it' to the queen. Then was she so blithe, as she never was 'ere' in life, and she many years dwelt there 'by [with] the Rood, the while her uncle, Leonin, was in Rome with Constantin. Of the brothers he was eldest, 'of wisdom best of all [and wisest and best]; the wise *men* of Rome took and gave him *a* wife of the highest kin of Romanish men. The woman was wedded, and 'Leonin had her [led] to his bed; he did as

[1] þat?
[2] *Or* muche; *the MS. is doubtful.*
[3] þan rode?
[4] *The letters* de *are interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

he dude alſe hit is wune:
he ſtreonede hire on enne ſone.
þa þat child wes iboren:
þa funden heo him hehne nome.
heo hehten hine forð riht anan:
þene hæȝe Maximian.
& Coſtantin þe king:
luuede swiðe þat child.
þus hit ferde þære:
wurſ hit ferde here.
þa wes inne Walſce londe:
Octaues. a duc þe wes ſwiðe ſtrong.
Octaues he hehte:
he wes of heȝe cūne.
he cleopede to Brutlonde:
þ hit wes his icunde.
& al þat þe sæ bi-gæð:
Octaues wes ſwide[1] mah.
he nom muchele uærde:
& wenden ȝeond þiſſen ærde.
ærſt he ſloh þæ eorles:
& þrallede þæ chærles.
he heomelede þa reuen:
nalde he mænne[2] bi-lefuen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

he dude aſe hit his wone:
on hire he ſtrene one ſone.
þat child was ihote:
Maximian þe gode.
[f. 64. c. 1.] and Conſtantin þe king:
þat child louede þorh allę̂ þing.
þus hit eode þare:
worſe hit ferde here.
þo was in Walſe lōd
a duck þat was swiþe ſtrong.
Octaues he hehte:
he was of heȝe cunne.

it is usage, he begat on her a son. 'When the child was born, then foun they for him *a* noble name;' 'they called him forth-right anon [the chil was named] Maximian the 'noble [good]; and Constantin the king love the child 'greatly [through all things];—thus it fared there, *but* worse fared here. Then was in Welsh-land a duke who was most strong; Octaves he hight, he was of noble kin; 'he claimed Britain, that it was h territory, and all that the sea surroundeth. Octaves was most valian he took *a* great host, and marched over this land; first he slew the earl and enslaved the churls; he humbled the reeves, none would he leave';-

[1] ſwiðe?

[2] nænne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

al þiſ kineliche lond:
Octauus nom to his hond.
Þis word com to Coſtantin:
in Rome þer he wunede in.
hu Octauus hauede idon:
hiſ folc iflaȝen and ihon.
Særi wes þa Coſtantin:
& ſorhful ā heorte. [men:
for he ne mihte[1] nanes weies cu-
to þiſſere kineriche.
for he hauede al Rome-lond:
þe ſtod an his aȝere hond.
& his moder Elene:
him hafde iſend æfter.
Þa nom he Traher his æm:
& tæhte hine to rade.
& þis lond him bi-tahte:
biwinnen ȝef he hit mahte.
for him ſeolf Coſtantī:
ne com he nauere mare her ī.
Ah he nom folc & æhte:
& Traher bi-tehte.
mid muchelēr uerde: [c. 2.]
ſende hine to þiſſen ærde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

al þis kinelōd:
Octaues nam to his honde.
Þis word com to Conſtantin:
in Rome þar he wonede in.
ou Octaues adde idon:
his folk i-ſlaȝe and an-hon.
Sori was þo Conſtantin:
and ſorhfulle on heorte.
for he ne mihte none weies come:
to þiſſe kineriche.
for he hadde al Rome-lond:
þat ſtod in his owē hond.
and his moder Eleyne:
he hadde iſende after.
Þo nam he his moder heam:
Traharn ihote.
and þis lond him bi-tahte:
awinnet of[2] he mihte.
bi-tahte him mochele ferde:
for lede to þiſſe erþe.

all this 'kingly land [kingdom] Octaves took in his hand. This word came to Constantin, in Rome wherein he dwelt, how Octaves had done, his folk slain and hung. Sorry was then Constantin, and sorrowful in heart, because he might *in* no wise come to this kingdom; for he had all Rome-land, which stood in his own hand, and his mother Helen 'him [he] had sent after. Then took he 'Trahern his [his mothers] uncle, [named Trahern,] 'and betook him to counsel,' and delivered him this land, if he it might win;—'for Constantin himself never more came he herein. But he took folk and wealth, and' delivered 'to Trahern [him], 'with' *a* great force; 'sent

[1] *This word is added in the margin by a later hand.* [2] awinne hit ȝif?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& for he wes his moder æm:	
ȝef he mihte Octauus flæn.	
& he mihte fwa wel don:	
halde him feolf þiſne dō.	
Traher forð wende:	Traharn forþ wende:
toward þiſſen londe.	in to þiſſe londe.
mid ferde mid þan mæſte:	mid ferde þan meſte: [f. 54ᵇ. c. 1.]
he com to Portchæſtre.	he com to Portcheſtre.
Þa Bruttes weoren swiðe whæte:	
& heolden fæſten heore ȝæte.	
& Traher heom fæht wið: [grið.	Þe Brut in þan þrid dai:
& þæne þridde dæi heo ȝerden[1]	griþ of him beode.
& Traher ferde binnen:	and Traharn wende wiþ ine:
& Portchæſtre wes biwunne.	þus was þe borh a-wonne.
& þonnene he gon wende:	And þanene he gan wende:
riht to Winchæſtre.	into Wincheſtre.
& Octauus wes icumen bi-uoren:	and Octauef was icome bi-vore:
in to þære burhȝe.	into þare borwe.
to-gædere heo comen:	to-gadere hii comen:
heo fæhten & floȝen.	hii fohte hii flowen.
þ flæht ne mihte:	
na mare beon i fihte.	
He ifæh his muchelne lure:	Traharn ifeh his mochele lure:

him [for to lead] to this land; 'and for he was his mothers uncle, if he might slay Octaves, and he might do so well,—to hold himself this realm.' Trahern forth proceeded 'toward [into] this land; with *an* army 'with' the most (greatest) he came to Portchester. The Britons 'were exceeding brave, and held fast their gates, and Trahern fought with them, and' [in] the third day 'they' 'yearned [prayed] peace [of him]; and Trahern marched within, 'and Portchester [thus was the burgh] won. And thence he gan proceed 'right to [into] Winchester; and Octaves was come before into the burgh. Together they came; they fought 'and [they] slew, '*so* that no greater slaughter might be in fight'! 'He [Trahern] saw his

[1] ȝernden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& nom him oðerne cure.	
& ferde bi nihte:	and wende awe[1] bi nihte.
to þære fæ rihte.	
Ær Bruttes hit mihtē iwitē:	
his ferde wes al iſcipen.	
& forð heo gunnen wenden:	into Scotlonde:
i Scot-londe.	mid his ferde ſtronge.
& [he al Scotlond:]	and he al Scotlond:
iwon to his aȝere hōd.	wan to his owene hond.
& he wende ouer Humbre:	and he wende ouer Humbre:
mid hæhȝere ſtrēgðe.	mid reȝere ſtrengþe.
& in þiſſere Bruttene:	
burȝes he aweſte.	
Octauus þ iherde:	Octaues þis ihorde:
þe king wes an ærde.	and him to-ȝeines wende.
& he mid his folke:	
þiderward fuſde.	
to-gadere heo comen: [f. 64b. c. 1.]	to-gadere hii comen:
& fuhtē ful ſone.	and fohte wel ſone.
Nu hæfde Traher:	Nou hadde Traharn:
swiðe muchel folc þer.	moche folk igadered.
Scottes & Peohtes:	of Scottes of Peutef:
& Romaniſce cnihtes.	of Romaniſſe cnihteſ.

great loss, 'and took him *an*other choice,' and departed [away] by night 'right to the sea. Ere *the* Britons might know it, his host was all shipped, and forth they gan proceed' into Scotland [with his strong army], and [he all Scotland] won to his own hand; and he passed over *the* Humber with great strength, 'and he ravaged *the* burghs in this Britain.' Octaves heard 'that [this], 'who was king in *the* land,' and 'he with his folk thitherward marched [advanced against him];—together they came, and fought 'full [well] soon. Now Trahern had 'very' much folk 'there [assembled, of] Scots, 'and [of] Peohtes, 'and [of] Romanish knights. 'Trahern fought

[1] awei?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Traher feht wiþ Octaues :/	
& he hine ſone ouercō.	
Scottes huuen up muchelne ræm :/	Traharn his folk remede :/
& Octaues folc nam flē.	and þe oþ[9] gonne to fleonde.
& Romaniſce beornes :/	
flo3en þa Bruttes.	
Þa wes Octaues wa :/	
& he wende to þere ſæ.	Octaues wende to þar ſéé :/
bi þere sæ ſtronde :/	
þer he ſcipen funde.	þar he ſip funde.
in to þane ſcipen he laþ :/	he and þritti cnihteſ :/
& in to Norwæi3e he draf.	to Norwei wende.
nafde he of his fihte :/	
bute an & þritti cnihtes.	
& alle þa oðere weoren inomen :/	and alle þe oþer weren inome :/
& Traheres men bi-cumen.	and Traharn his men bi-come.
& fiftene þuſend iflæ3en :/	and fiftene þuſend iflawe :/
& idon of heore lif-da3en.	and idon of lif-dai3e.
Þa wes in Norweo3ē ærd :/	Þo waſ in Norweie his erþ :/
[Com]pert. a king þe hæhte Compert.	a king þat hehte Compert.
Octaues him ſpæc wiþ :/	
& 3ernde mildeliche his griþ.	
& ſeide him hu Traher :/	Octaues him tolde ou Traharn :/
mid teone hine hauede iflæmed.	hine hadde iflemid.

with Octaves, and he soon overcame him'; '*the* Scots raised up *a* great shout [Trahern his folk shouted], and 'Octaves folk took flight [the others gan to flee]; 'and *the* Romanish men slew the Britons. Then was Octaves woe, and' 'he [Octaves] proceeded to the sea, 'by the sea strand' there he found *a* ship; 'into the ship he went, and into Norway he drove [he and thirty knights went to Norway]. 'He had but one and thirty knights *out* of his fight,' and all the others were captured, and became 'Traherns [Traharn his] men, and fifteen thousand *were* slain, and deprived of 'their' life-day. Then was in 'Norwegian [Norway his] land a king that hight Compert. Octaves 'spake with him, and mildly asked his favor, and' 'said [told] to him how Trahern 'with injury' had banished him:—"And if thou

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ȝif þu me wult wlſtē:	And ȝef þou me woldeſt helpe:
mid muchele þine ferden.	
þat ich maȝen aȝæn cumē:	
to mine kineriche.	to winne mine riche. [c. 2.]
ich þe wulle luuien:	ich þe wolde lofuie:
& halden þe for lauerd.	euere in mine lifue.
mid fæhte & mid ſibbe:	and þe for louerd holde:
þa while þ ich libbe.	wile þat ich libbe.
& after mine dæiȝen:	
mine duȝeðe þe bi-tachen.	
þa ænswærede Compert:	þo anſwerede Compert:
þe king wes of þā ærd. [c. 2.]	þat king was of þilke erþ.
þu fælt in þiſſe ȝere:	þou falt al þis ȝer:
beon mid me hære.	beo mid me her.
& deornliche ſende:	an deorneliche ſende:
in to Brutlonde.	in to Brutlonde.
mid weorden and mid writen:	
bi monnen þe heom cunnen witen.	
& ſenden þine ſonden:	
to þine bezſte freonden.	
bi-hæten seoluer & gold:	
muchel æhte & lond.	
ȝif ai mon mihte Traher king:	ȝif eni man mihte Traharn king:
tuhten to dæðe.	[lace: bringe to deaþe.
mid drenche oðer mid dweomer-	
oðer mid ſteles bite.	

'wilt [wouldst] me help 'with thy powerful army, that I may again come' to [win] my kingdom, I will thee love [ever in my life], and hold thee for lord 'with amity and with peace, the' while that I live; and after my day, deliver to thee my people.'" Then answered Compert, who was king of 'the [that] land: "Thou shalt 'in [all] this year be with me here, and send secretly into Britain, 'with word and with writ, by men that can understand them; and send thy messengers to thy best friends, promise silver and gold, much wealth and land'; if any man might bring Trahern *the* king to death 'with draught (poison), or with magic, or with steels

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
oðer mid æie crafte :	
bi-winnen him his mahte.	
þēne mihtes þu aȝen faren :	
mucle þe laſſe weoren þi kare.	
þēne wlle i[1] þe aȝan bringen :	
& makiē þe to kingē.	
Al dude Octaues :	Al dude Octaues :
Compertes lare.	Compert his lore.
sende his fōde :	
in to þiſſe londe.	
þurh þan ilke crafte :	
þe Compert king hī tæhte.	
& Traher wes on Bruttene :	
king swiðe bliðe.	
næfde he of Octaue :	
caræ næuer nane.	
na mare þeh he nær̄ iboren :	
oðer i watere forloren.	
Traher wes i Lundene :	
bliðe mid his leoden.	
fulle ſeouen nihte :	
bliðe mid his cnihten.	
þa wes i Kent an eorl :	Ine Kent was on eorl :
Aldolf. Aldolf i-haten.	Eldol ihote.

bite (wound), or with any craft deprive him of his might, then mightest thou return,—much the less were thy care,—then would I thee back bring, and make thee king."' Octaves did all 'Comperts [Compert his] instruction; '*he* sent his messengers into this land through the same craft that king Compert taught him. And Trahern was in Britain king most blithe; he had never any care of Octaves, no more than if he were not born, or in water destroyed (drowned)! Trahern was in London, blithe with his people; full seven nights blithe with his knights. Then' was in Kent an earl, named

[1] ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

feond he wes þes kinges :/
for Octaues þingē.
ofte he ferde to þan kinge :/
& hernede[1] tiðinge.
Chæpmen bunden heore ware :/
þa wolde þe king faren.
Aldolf ferde him bi-foren :/
mid feower hundred cnihten.
& leop ut of ane wode :/
wunder wel iwepned.
Traher king he þer fond :/
& mid ſpere hine ſtong.
& hiſ muchele uerde :/
ſette to fleonde.
& Aldolf heom after droh :/
and muchel folc he þer of-ſloh.
& seððen he uerde in to Kent :/
in to ane ſtronge caſtle.
& ſende an hiȝinge :/
after Octaue þan kinge.
& he anan cō :/
to þiſſere kineriche.
to kinge he wes vnder-fon :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

he lofde lute þis kinge :/
for Octaues his þinge.
ofte he verde to þan kinge :/
hercnie tidinge.
þo ſeide me him ware :/
þat þe king wolde vare.
[f.65.c.1.]Eldol wende him bi-vore :/
mid fif hundred cnihteſ.
and leop ut of one wodc :/
wonder wel iwepnid.
Traharn king he þar fond :/
and mid on ſpere hine þorh ſtong.
and alle his men :/
ſette to flende.
and Eldol after droh :/
and mochel folk he þere ſloh.
And ſuþþe he wende into Kent :/
in to one caſtle.
and ſende an hiȝenge :/
after Octaues þan kinge.
And he an hiȝenge :/
com to his riche.
to king he was onder-fon :/

Aldolf; 'enemy he was of the [he loved little this] king, on account of Octaves [his] affair; oft he went to the king, 'and hearkened [to hearken] tidings. 'Chapmen bound their ware; then [Then said men to him where that] would the king fare. Aldolf went before him with 'four [five] hundred knights, and leapt out of 'a wood, wondrously well weaponed. Trahern *the* king he there found, and with [a] spear pierced him [through]; and 'his great host [all his men] set to flight. And Aldolf pursued after 'them,' and much folk he there slew; and afterwards he marched into Kent, into a 'strong' castle, and sent speedily after Octaves the king. And he 'anon [in haste] came 'this kingdom [his realm]; he was received as king,—'then [that]

[1] hercnede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa þuhte hit hin wes[1] idon.
Heo[2] ferde ȝeond þas þeoden:
& floh þa Romleoden.
þa hælne & þa riche:
alle heo[2] floh iliche.
whar swa he mihte hine kēnen:
ne læuede he nauer ænne.
& twa & twēti ȝere:
he wuneden seoððen here.
inne griðe & inne friðe:
mid freond-scipe of Brutten.
þa þe he wes wel ald mon:
þa com him uuel on.
þ vuel hine heold stronge:
ah he þreowede longe.
þe king hine bi-ðohte:
what he don mihte.
whā he mihte bi-tæchen:
al his kineriche.
and al his duȝeðe:
æft[2] his dæie.
Mid carte he for to Lundene:
& sette his hustīge.
eorles þer comen:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat him þohte wel idon.
He verde oueral þeos þeode:
and floh þe Romleode.
þe pore and þe riche: [f. 55. c. 1.]
alle he floh iliche.
ware so he mihte eni kenne:
ne lefde he neuere anne.
and two and twenti ȝere:
he wonede sulle here.
þo he was wel hold man:
þo com him vuel an.
hit heolde hine so strong:
þat he ne mihte libbe longe.
þe kng[3] hine bi-þohte:
wat he don mihte.
wan he mihte bi-take:
al his kineriche.
He lette cleopie his heȝe men:
to one grete speche.

seemed 'it' to him well done. He passed over [all] this land, and slew the Rome-folk; the poor and the rich, all he slew alike; wheresoever he might 'him [any] ken, he left never one. And two and twenty years he afterwards dwelt here, 'in peace and in quietness, with friendship of *the* Britons.' When 'that' he was *a* well old man, then came on him sickness; 'the sickness [it] held him [so] strongly, 'but he suffered [that he might not live] long. The king bethought him what he might do; to whom he might deliver all his kingdom, 'and all his people, after his day.' 'With *a* cart he went to London, and set his husting [He caused his noble men to be called to a

[1] him wel? [2] he? [3] *R.* king.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
riche & wel idone.	
& alle þa wife:	
þe wuneden on Bruttene. [c. 2.]	
Þa þe king heom hauede ifæid:	Þo þe king hadde i-ſeid:
& bæd heom ræden him ræd.	he bad ȝam reade him read.
whæm he mihte bi-tæche:	wan he mihte bi-take:
al his kine-riche.	al his kineriche.
for nefde he nenne ſune:	for he nadde bote one dohter:
þe his land mihte hælden.	
ne child bute ane dohter:	
þe him wes swiðe deore.	þat he lofuede deore.
& hire he wolde bi-tachē:	and hire he wolde bi-take:
al his kineriche.	al his kine-riche.
& ȝefuen hire lauerd:	and ȝefue hire louerd:
þene hæhſte mon of þis ærd.	þan beſte of þis erþ.
Summe him ræden a-nan:	Somme him radde on[1]:
þat he heo ȝeuen þan eorle Conan.	þat he hire ȝefue eorl Conan.
he wes wif and riche:	
him heo he mihte bitæche.	
oðere þer weoren:	oþer þar weren:
þe þif nalden ihæren.	þat þis nolde i-heren.
I Cornwale wes an eorl god:	In Cornwale was an eorl god:
þe wes ihaten Cradoc.	he was i-hote Cradoc. *Cra[doc].*
he ſtod up i þan huſtīge:	he ſtod vp a-non riht:

great conference]; 'there came earls, rich and brave, and all the wise *men* that dwelt in Britain.' When the king had said 'to them,' 'and [he] bade them advise him counsel, to whom he might give all his kingdom; for he had 'no son, who might hold his land, nor child' but a daughter, 'who was to him most [that he loved] dear; and on her he would bestow all his kingdom, and give her *for* lord (husband), the 'highest man [best] of this land. Some him counselled anon, that he should give her to 'the' earl Conan; he was wise and rich, to him he might deliver her; others there were, who would not this hear. In Cornwall was an earl good, 'who [he] was named Cradoc; he stood up 'in the husting [anon right], and 'thus spake

[1] anon?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and þus ſpæc wiþ þan kinge.	and þeof word ſaide.
Hercne me Octaue:	
hercne me kinelauerd.	Hercne me min louerd:
no here ich nenne godne ræd:	ne ihere ich nanne godne read.
þe þe ȝet beo iſæd.	
ȝif þu bi-tacheſt Conan:	ȝef þou bi-takeſt Conan:
þine kineriche.	þine kineriche.
þat word comeþ ſone:	þat word comeþ ſone:
vorþ into Rome.	forþ in to Rome.
Helena. For nu is Ælene:	For nou his Eleyne:
Jeruſalem quene.	Jeruſalem hiſ cwene.
Coſtan[tin]. & þe king Coſtantin:	and þe king Conſtantin: [c. 2.]
& alle his cnihtes mid him.	and alle his cnihtes mid him.
& dæd hiſ þe riche Leonin:	and dead his þe riche Leonin:
& his broþer Marī.	and his broþ[9] Marin.
& Maximien þe ȝunge cniht:	and Maximian þe ȝonge cniht:
i Rome haldeþ muchel fiht.	in Rome holdeþ ſtrong fiht.
& Traher i þiſſe londe:	
mid ſpere wes of-ſtungen.	
& ælche dæi inne Rome: [f. 65[b]. c. 1.]	
Maximien þe wel idone.	
haldeþ swiþe muchel iwin:	
wiþ Gracien & wiþ Valantin.	
& Coſtantī þe king:	and Conſtantin þe king:
of us ne þencheþ naþing.	of vs ne þencheþ no þing.

with the king [said these words]: "Hearken to me, 'Octaves, hearken to me,' 'sovereign [my lord]; I hear no good counsel 'that yet is said to thee'. If thou givest to Conan thy kingdom, the tidings will come soon forth into Rome; for now is Helen 'of Jerusalem [Jerusalem his] queen; and the king Constantin, and all his knights with him; and dead is the powerful Leonin, and his brother Marin; and Maximian, the young knight, in Rome holdeth 'mickle [strong] fight, 'and Trahern in this land was slain with spear. And each day in Rome Maximian the brave maintaineth very great contest with Gracien and with Valantin'; and Constantin the king of us thinketh nothing, and thus are we of Britain 'of friends [clean]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& þus we beoð of Bruttene:	and þus we beoþ of Bruttes:
freonden biræued.	clene bi-reued.
Bute þu wifliche bitæche:	Bote þou wifliche bi-take:
þine kineriche.	þine kineriche.
wulleð Romleode:	wolleþ Romleode:
cumen to þiffere þeode.	come to þiffe.....
& for-uaren vf mid fehte:	and for-fare vs mid fihte:
& ure freōd wallen[1].	and houre freondef falle.
& maken vnfæhte:	
& binimē us ure irihten.	
þenne þu beoft forð faren:	wan þou hart forþ fare:
ne beon we næuere buten caren.	ne we[2] ham wiþ-ſtonde.
Ah ſend into Rome:	Ac ſende into Rome:
æfter Maximien þā wel idone.	after Maximian wel idon.
he is fwiðe hende gume:	he his fwiþe riche gome:
& he wes Leonines ſune.	and he his Leonines ſone.
his fader wes Ælenen æm:	his fader was Eleyne heam:
he is of aðele cunne.	of Bruttene cunde[3].
& ȝif him þine dohter:	and ȝef him hine dohter
þa þe is fwiðe deore.	þat þe his swiþe deore.
& make hīe to kinge:	and make hine to kinge:
& þine dohter to q̄ne.	þi dohter to cwene.
þenne maȝe we libben:	þanne mawe we libbe:
mid fæhte & mid ſibben.	mid ſehte and mid ſibbe.

bereaved. Except thou wisely bestowest thy kingdom, the Rome-folk will come to this country, and destroy us with fight, and fell our friends, 'and make strife, and take from us our right'; when thou art dead, we 'shall never be without care [shall not be able to withstand them]. But send into Rome, after Maximian 'the' brave; he is *a* man most 'fair [powerful], and he 'was [is] Leonins son; his father was Helens uncle, 'he is of noble [of British] race. And give him thy daughter, who is to thee most dear, and make him king, 'and' thy daughter queen; then may we live

[1] ivallen? [2] ne mawe we?

[3] *Written at first* kinge cunde, *but the former word expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& a to ure liue :/
witen ure leoden.
mid winne & mid wurðſcipe :/
mid muchele wiſdome.
Þa aras Conan :/
& ſtod biuorē þan kinge.
he wes wunderliche wraþ :/
for þeos ſpeche him wes laþ.
he ſpæc aȝen Cradoc :/
alſe he hine wolde fordon.
Ah ne rohte næuere Cradoc :/
of al þat Conan eorl ſpæc. [c. 2.]
for al þat huſtinge :/
þe wes biuoren þan kinge.
bi-luueden Cradockes ræd :/
for heo iſeȝen þat hit wes neod.
Þu[1] cleopede Octaues :/
Brutlondes lauerd.
Hail ſeo þu Caradoc[2] :/

herfore þu ſcælt habben :/
wurhſcipe muchele.
Lǣ me Mauric þinne sune :/
þe is a ſwiðe wis gume.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and euere to vre lifue :/
witie oure freondes.
mid winne and mid worſipe :/
and mid wiſdome.
Þo aros Conan :/
and ſtot to-vore þan kinge.
he was wonderliche wroþ :/
for þeos ſpeche him was loþ.

Ac ne rohte neuere Cradoc :/
of Conanes wraþþe.

for alle lofde Cradokeſ read :/
for hit was wiſliche iſeid.
Þo cleopede Octaues :/
king of Brutayne. [f. 55ᵇ. c. 1.]
Hail beo þou Cradoc :/
wel beo þou Cradoc.
her vore þou ſalt habbe :/
worſipe heȝe.
Lean me Mauric þine ſone :/
þat [is] a ſwiþe wif gome.

with amity and with friendship, and ever in our lives defend our 'people [friends] with joy and with worship, [and] with 'much' wisdom." Then arose Conan, and stood before the king; he was wondrously wrath, for this speech was hateful to him; 'he spake against Cradoc as *if* he would him destroy.' But Cradoc recked never of 'all that earl Conan spake [Conans wrath]; for all 'the husting that was before the king' approved Cradocs counsel, for 'they saw that it was need [it was wisely said]. Then called Octaves, 'Britains lord [king of Britain]: "Hail be thou, Cradoc! [Well be thou, Cradoc!] Herefore thou shalt have 'great [high] worship. Lend me Maurice thy son, who is a man most wise, to go in

[1] Þa ?

[2] *A line is here deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

to uarē a mire neode :/
in to Rom-þeode.
æfter Maximiane :/
þane richen & þane kene.
þæt he cume swiðe :/
þe while þe ich beo on liue.
And ich him wulle bitæchen :/
mine kine-riche.
and mine dohter Orien :/
to habben to quene.
& ic wulle Maurike :/
mede bi-tæchen.
ich ȝeue him Norhhūberlond :/
here mid mire aȝere hond.
þis ich him bitæchen :/
of mine kine-riche.
wið þan þe he me brīge :/
Maximien þæ hende.
Al swa þe king ȝirde[1] :/
Mauric hit him ȝette.
he ferde uord[2] rihtes :/
mid þreom wife cnihtef.
þ he com to Rome :/
to Maximiene.
þer wes muchel vnfrið :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

to wende in mine neode :/
touward Romleode.
after Maximian :/
þe riche and þe kene man.
þat he come fwiþe :/
wile ich ham a-lifue.
And ich him wolle bi-teche :/
mine kineriche.
... mine dohter Oriene :/ *Oriene.*
to habbe to cwene.
And ich wolle Mauric :/
mede bi-take.
ich him ȝefue Norþhomberlond :/
here mid min owe hond.

wiþ þan þat he me brīge :/
Maximian þan hende.

Mauric verde vorþ riht :/
mid þreo wife cnihtes.
forte þat he come :/
to Maximian to Rome.

my need 'into [toward] Rome-land, after Maximian, the rich and the keen [man], that he come quickly, 'the' while 'that' I 'be [am] alive. And I will deliver to him my kingdom, and my daughter Oriene to have for queen. And I will bestow reward on Maurice; I give him Northumberland here with mine own hand; 'this I bestow on him *out* of my kingdom,' on condition that he bring me Maximian the fair." 'All as the king desired Maurice it granted him'; 'he [Maurice] proceeded forth-right with three wise knights until [that] he came to Maximian at Rome. 'There was mickle strife; in

[1] ȝirnde ?
[2] uorð ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
in al þā londe nas na griþ.	
,ah mid vnfriþe þer wes muchel win:	þar was fiht an lutel[1] win: [tin.
mid Gracien & mid Ualantin.	bi-twixte him Gracien and Valen-
heo duden Maximiene:	hii dude Maximian:
vnimete teone[2].	onimete teone. [nome:
muchēl lond heo hæfden binomē:	moche lond hii hadde hine bi-
ære þider come Maurich þe gume.	þo com Mauric þe gome.
Sone swa Maximiane i-fæh:	[f. 66. c. 1.] Sone so Maximian ifeh:
swa he him to bæh.	he to hī beh.
& fæire hine igrætte:	
mid guþfulle worden.	
& he iradliche:	
lædde hine to ræde.	
& he þus spæc:	and he þus spac:
wunderliche feire.	wonderliche faire.
Hercne Maximian:	Hercne me Maximian:
þu ært of muche cunne.	þou hart of mochele cunne.
þu weore Elene æmes sune:	
of hæhȝe cunne þu ært icumen.	
Ær ich hider uore:	Er ich hider verde:
nis hit nawhit ȝære.	nis hit noht ȝare.
Octaues ure king:	
i Lundene heold his husting.	Octauef heold his speche[3].

all the land was no peace, but with strife' there was [fight and] great conflict 'with [betwixt him] Gracien and 'with' Valentin. They did to Maximian injury unmeet; much land they had taken [from him] 'ere [when] the man Maurice 'thither' came. So soon as Maximian saw *him*, he came to him, 'and greeted him fair with goodly words; and he (Maurice) prudently led him to counsel,' and he thus spake wondrously fair: "Hearken [to me], Maximian, thou art of great race; 'thou wert Helens uncles son, of noble lineage thou art come.' Ere I hither came,—it is 'no whit [not] of yore,—Octaves, 'our king, in London' held his 'husting [conference];

[1] mochel?
[2] *The last two letters of* teone *are by second hand sup. ras.*
[3] *A line is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þ huſtinge wes god:	
hit wes witene-imot.	
vnhæle & ælde:	for vneale and heolde:
hæueð þene king vnbalded.	haueþ hine on-balded.
þer wes moni cniht god:	þar was mani cniht god:
& þe king heom æxede ræd.	and [þe] king am axede read.
wham he mihte bitæchen:	wam he mihte bi-take:
his dohter & his riche.	his dohter and his riche. [c. 2.]
& alle his doȝeðe:	and alle his folk:
æfter his dæie.	after his daie.
þreo eorles anan:	þreo eorles anon:
icure þe eorl Canaan[1].	choſe þan eorl Conan.
þat me ſculde him Brutlond:	
bitachen al on his hond.	
& þa fæire Oriene:	
þes kinges dohter to q̄ne.	
Conanes eorldom:	
Kent is ihaten.	
& mi fader if an icorren eorl:	and mi fader Cradoc:
Cornwalen lauerd.	
he is ihaten Caradoc:	
he is of þine cunne.	
& ich hatte Mauric:	
þe mæſte of his childeren.	
þa heo hæfden a-nan:	

'the husting was good, it was *a* meeting of councillors,' [for] sickness and age hath enfeebled the king [him]. There was many *a* good knight; and the king asked counsel of them, on whom he might bestow his daughter and his realm, and all his folk after his day. Three earls anon chose the earl Conan; 'that Britain should be delivered to him all in his hand, and the fair Oriene, the kings daughter, for queen. Conans earldom is named Kent.' And my father 'is a chosen earl, lord of Cornwall; he is named' Cradoc; 'he is of thy kindred; and I hight Maurice, the eldest of his children. When they had anon thus chosen Conan, then leapt up my father

[1] *R.* Conaan.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þus icoren Conan.	
þa lep mi fader up:	
swulc hit an liun weore.	
& wiþ-ſeide þene cure:	þane read wiþ-ſtod.
bi-foren ure kinge.	
þer wes swiþe muchel dune: [c. 2.]	
þeines þer dremden.	
& mi fader Caredoc:	and Cradoc makede luſt:
makede luſt & þus ſpæc.	and to þan king ſpac þus.
While wes Elene:	
Cuſtances quene.	
Ælene hæfde enne æm:	
þe æðele wes on londe.	
he wes i-haten Leonin:	
uorð he ferde mid Coſtantin.	
Traher hæhte his broðer:	
& Marin þe oðer.	
T"her i þiſſen londe:	
wes iflæȝen mid worȝnge[1].	
Conanes fader hine ſloh:	
þat wes swiþe muchel woh.	
for her[2] king wende:	
þat heo weoren ifreonde.	
Luſteð wel B"ttes:	Luſteþ wel Bruttus:
þe her beoð bi-hælues.	þat her beoþ bi-haluef.

as if it were a lion, and' opposed the 'choice [counsel], 'before our king. There was exceeding great din; thanes there clamored'; and 'my father' Cradoc made silence, and thus spake [to the king]: '"Awhile was Helen Custances queen; Helen had an uncle, who was noble in land; he was named Leonin, forth he fared with Constantin. Trahern hight his brother, and Marin the other. Trahern in this land was slain with wrong; Conans father slew him,—that was very great injury, for Trahern *the* king weened that they were friends.' Listen well, Britons, that are here beside.

[1] wronge?

[2] Traher?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Leonī hadde ænne sune:
& inne Rome he wuneð.
Maximien he hatte:
of þan aðele cunne.
Sēde we to Rome:
& haten hine cumen sone.
& in ure hustīge:
hæhuen hine to kinge.
& þa feire Oriene:
bithæchen him to q̄ne.
þenne maȝen we libben:
mid fæhten & mid fibben.
þus spæc mi fader Caradoc:
biforē þan folke.
þa andswerede þe king:
hit wes him swiðe iqueme.
& alle his beornen:
þe wunieð on Brutene.
bute Conaan wes swiðe wræð:
for þe cure him wes læð.
Cleope nu to ræde:
þine rædȝiuen gode.
& sæie me her of andswere:
for nu to marwen ich wulle faren.
þa wes Maximien:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Leonin hafde ane sone:
and in Rome he woneþ.
Maximian hi-hote:
of Bruttene cunne.
To þe ich ham isend:
þorþ hire alre read.
þat þou come to him:
ād he þe wole make king.
and his dohter Oriene:
to habbe to cwene.

Maxi-m[ien].

þo was Maximian:

Leonin had a son, and in Rome he dwelleth; 'he hight [named] Maximian; of 'the noble [British] race. 'Send we to Rome, and pray him to come soon, and in our husting raise him to *be* king, and the fair [To thee I am sent through counsel of them all, that thou shouldest come to him, and he will make thee king, and his daughter] Oriene 'bestow on him [to have] for queen; 'then may we live with amity and with friendship." Thus spake my father Cradoc before the folk. Then answered the king; it was most pleasing to him, and to all his men that dwell in Britain; but Conan was very wrath, for the choice to him was odious. Call now to counsel thy good councillors, and say me here of answer, for now to-morrow I will

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
forþiſſe worde swide[1] fæin. [f. 66b. c. 1.]	for þiſſe worde ſwiþe fain.
he cleope his ræd3iuen :/	he cleopede to reade :/
& eoden to rune.	alle his wife.
þe ræd wes sone iræd :/	þe read was ſone irad :/
al swa Mauric hit bad.	for do þat Mauric hine bad.
Stille iwende ſone :/	Stille he wende ſone :/
Maximien of Rome.	Maximian of Rome.
i þan seouen nihte :/	in þan ſouenihte :/
mid alle his cnihten.	mid alle his cnihtes.
wenden þa Rō-leoden :/	
þat he wolde to heore vn-neode.	
þ he wolden fehten :/ [cnihtes[2].	
a3an Valentin & Gracian mid his	
for a heo weoren auaren[3] :/	
of Maximian & of his hirde.	
Ah anan heo[4] wende :/	Ac anon he wende :/
toward þiſſen londe.	touward þiſſe londe.
& ſwa he gon liðen :/	and ſo he gon liþe :/
into Londēne.	into Londene.
faiir-lac he gon brīge :/	fair-lock he gan bringe :/
Octaue þan kingē.	Octaues þan kinge.
& þe king him for[5] 3ef :/	and þe king þar vore him 3af :/

depart."' Then was Maximian most glad for these tidings; he called [all] his 'councillors [wise men] 'and went' to counsel; the counsel was soon advised all as [for to do what] Maurice 'it [him] prayed. Secretly [he] went soon, Maximian, *out* of Rome; *with*in the se'nnight with all his knights; 'the Rome-folk weened that he would *go* to their harm, that he would fight against Valentin and Gracien with his knights, for ever they were afraid (?) of Maximian and of his troops.' But anon he proceeded toward this land, and so he arrived in London; presents he gan bring to Octaves the king, and the king him [therefore] gave his daughter for queen.

[1] swiðe?

[2] *These three last words are, apparently, superfluous, and repeated from a previous line. A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. shows there is some error here.*

[3] auæred? [4] he? [5] *Some attempt has been made to erase this word.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
his dohter to quene.	his dohter to cwene.
þa wes king Maximien:	þo was king Maximian:
hit þuhte Bruttes i-don wel.	hit þohte Bruttes wel idon.
And Conaan eorl mid wraððen:	And Conan eorl mid wreþþe:
wende to Scotten.	wende to Scottes.
& monie Scottes him buȝen to:	and he þare:
& ane burh bigūnen.	ane borh makede.
næs þa in al þan ende:	
burh al swa hende.	
þa þeo burh wes al imaked:	
mid muchelere ſtrengðe.	
he ſette hire æne nome:	
æft[2] him seoluen.	
ofte he ræd hire þurh & þurh:	hofte he rod þorh:
& hehte heo Cuninges-burh.	and hehte hine Conanes-borh. [f.56.c.1.]
nu and æuere mare:	nou and euere more:
þe nome ſtondeð þere.	þe name ſtondeþ þare.
Conaan ladde ferde:	Conan ladde ferde:
in þan norð ærde.	in þan norþ ende.
he hatede Maximien:	he hatete Maximian:
þat abohte momi[1] mon.	þat a-bohte mani man.
þa wiſe men of þiſſe londe: [c.2.]	þe wiſe of þiſſe londe:
þe luueden þas leoden.	
makeden huſtinge:	makede paiſinge.

Then was Maximian king; it seemed to the Britons done well. And earl Conan with wrath went to *the* Scots; 'and many Scots came to him,' and 'began [he there made] a burgh; 'in all the world then was not *a* burgh so fair! When the burgh was all made, with much strength, he set on it a name after himself'; oft he rode 'it through and' through, and named it Conans-burgh; now and evermore the name standeth there. Conan led *an* army in*to* the north country; he hated Maximian,—that many *a* man bought *dear*! The wise 'men' of this land, 'who loved this people,' made '*a* husting [peace] 'betwixt Conan and the king'; 'there they became [and

[1] *R.* moni.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
bitwexen Conaan & þan kinge.	
þer heo iwurðen fæhte:	and makede heom iſehte:
& þer heo iwurðen ſomme.	and cuſte wel ilome.
& makede[1] i þiſſen londe grið:	
god mid þan bezſte.	
& þe king him bihæhte a-nan:	And þe king him bi-hehte a-non:
to makiene riche mon.	to maki him a riche man.
swa he dude ſeoððen:	
þet abohte moni mon.	
mid grþe[2] he wuneden here:	mid griþe hii wonede here:
fulle fif ȝere.	folle fif ȝere.
þa hefde Maximien:	þo hadde Maximian:
gærſume vninete[3].	onime[4] gariſom.
for he næfde of his londe:	for he nadde of his londe:
na gauel iſende to Rome.	no feo iſend to Rome.
þa þo fif ȝer weoren agan:	þo þe fif ȝer were a-gon:
þa fæide Maximian.	þo ſeide Maximian.
þ he wolde ouer ſæ uaren:	þat he wolde ouer ſéé:
& fehten wið þan Frenſcen.	and fihte wiþ þan Frence.
& ȝif he þere mihte ſpedē:	and ȝif he þare mihte ſpede:
toward Rome he wolde riden.	to Rome he wolde ride.
to wreken his teone:	to wreken his teone:
on Gracien and on Vàlentin.	of Valentin and Gracien.

made them] reconciled, and 'there they became friends [kissed well often], 'and made peace in this land, good with the best.' And the king promised him anon to make [him a] rich man; 'so he did afterwards,—that many *a* man bought *dear*!'—with peace 'he [they] dwelt here full five years. Then had Maximian immense treasure, for he had of his land no 'tribute [fee] sent to Rome. When the five years were gone, then said Maximian, that he would 'pass' over sea, and fight with the French; and if he there might speed, to 'ward' Rome he would ride, to avenge his wrongs on Gracien and 'on' Valentin, 'who had done to him many injuries in Rome.' Thus

[1] *The last two letters of* makede *are interlined.*
[2] *R.* griðe.
[3] *R.* vnimete.
[4] *R.* onimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þe monie him hæfdē idone :/
teonen inne Rome.
Þus spæc Maximien :/
uor him wes to murie.
for þif lond wes þa swiðe god :/
& he hit hæfde al vnder fot.
& him ne ſtod æie to naþing :/
for dæd wes Octaues þe kīg.
Maximien bæd ferde :/
feorliche ſtore.
þe king hafde kene men :/
& vnimete gærſume.
forð he gon wenden :/
ut of þiſſen londen.
forð he gon liðen :/
ut of þiſſen leoden. [clond :/
he makede him ſeluen muchel
ne iſæh he nauere æft þis lond.
Ouer ſæ he wende :/
and wel com to londe. [f. 67. c. 1.]
[in ane londe] ſwiðe riche :/
þe hehte Armoriche.
Þa ſcipen urnen a ðen lond :/
þat folc wenden uppe ſtrond.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þus ſpac Maximian :/
for him was to murie.
for þis lond was ſo god :/
and he hit hal[1] onder fot.
and him ne ſtod eȝe of no þing :/
for dead was Octaues þe king.
Maximian bad ferde :/
wonderliche ſtore.
þe king hadde kene men :/
and onimete gariſome.
forþ he gan wende :/
vt of þiſſe londe.
[don :/
he makede him ſeolf mochel to
ne come he neuere her a-ȝein.
Ouer ſéé he wende :/
and wel com to londe. [c. 2.]
in one londe ſwiþe riche :/
þat þo hehte Armoriche.

spake Maximian, for he was too merry, because this land was 'then most [so] good, and he 'had [held] it 'all' under foot, and he stood in awe of nothing, for dead was Octaves the king. Maximian summoned *an* army, wondrously strong; the king had keen men, and immense treasure; forth he gan proceed out of this land, 'forth he gan pass out of this country';—he made for himself much 'disgrace [to do], he never 'eft saw this land [again came here]! Over sea he went, and came well to land, [in a land] most rich, that hight Armoriche. 'The ships run on the land; the folk went upon *the* strand'; they began a castle good with the best; they

[1] hald? hadde hal?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
heo bigunnen ænne caſtel :/	Hii bi-gonne anne caſtel :/
god mid þā bæzſten.	god mid þan beſte.
heo riden ȝeond þæn leode :/	hii reoden ȝeond þe leode :/
& nomen þer muchele prude.	and neme mochel prude.
heo funden herre-feng inoh :/	
& lædden to heore ferde.	
& æc heo nomen wummen :/	and eke hii nemen wiſmen :/
wunder ane monie.	wonderliche manie.
& duden þat heo wolden :/	and dude wat iwolde[1] :/
ȝeond Ærmoriche londe.	oueral þan londe.
Humbald. Þis iherde Humbald :/	Þis ihorde Humbald :/
þe wes wes[2] lauerd i þa lond.	þat was þare louerd.
hu þe king Mæximien :/	hou þe king Maximian :/
amerde his riche.	a-morde his riche.
Humbald ſende ſonde :/	Humbald ſende ſonde :/
ȝeond al þan londen.	oueral his kinelonde.
þer he æine freond hæfde :/	þar he eny freond hadde :/
þe him helpen wolde.	þat him helpe wolde.
& þohte þat he wælde :/	and þohte þat he wolde :/
heom driuen of hiſ londe.	him driue of his londe.
Heo comen bi dæie lihte :/	Hii comē bi dai lihte :/
to ane ſtronge fihte.	to one ſtrange fihte.
Bruttes heom ouꝰ comen :/	Bruttef heom ouercomen :/
& Humbald heo ſloȝen.	and Humbald hii ſlowen.
& fiftene þuſende þer weoren iſla- [ȝen :/	and fiftene þuſend :/

rode over the country, and took 'there' much booty; 'they found spoil enow, and led to their host'; and eke they seized 'a wonder [wondrously] many women, and did what they would 'over Armoriche [all the] land. Humbald heard this, who was lord 'in the land [there], how the king Maximian ravaged his realm. Humbald sent messengers over all 'the land [his kingdom], where he had any friend that would him help, and thought that he would drive 'them [him] from his land. They came by day-light to a strong fight; *the* Britons overcame them, and Humbald they slew;

[1] hii wolde?

[2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	þar weren of-flaȝe.
Þa þif feht wes idon:	Þo þis fiht was idon:
þa wende Maximien.	þo wende Maximian aȝein.
aȝen in to herberȝe:	to his herborewe:
to reſten hine ſeolue.	to reſte him ſeolue.
A marȝen þa hit dæi wes:	A morwe þo hit dai waſ:
duȝeðen heom gereden.	
heo wenden to þere heȝe burh:	
þe Nāſtes[1] is ihaten.	to Nantes he wende.
ne fundē heo þer inne:	ne funde[2] þar ine:
noht of mǒncunne.	noht of mankunne.
þe heom wiðð wolde ſtonden:	þe him wolde wiþ-ſtonde.
& þa burh heolden.	
al hit wæs awæi iflozen:	ac alle hii were awei iflowe:
and of þan londe ibozen. [c.2.]	and of þan londe itowe.
buten a lute wifmen:	bote ane feue wifmen:
þe weoren þer wiðð innen.	þat were þar wiþ ine.
Þa burh nom Maximien:	Þe borh nam Maximian:
& ſette mid his monnen.	and dude þar on his men.
þeo cleopede Maximien:	þo cleopede Maximian:
to þan eorle Conaan.	to þā eorl Conan.
Conaan þu ært god cniht:	Conan þou hart god cniht: [f.56ᵇ.c.1.]
þu hæfueſt[3] ihalden wel mi fiht:	þou haueſt iholde wel mi fiht.

and fifteen thousand there were slain, 'and deprived of life-day.' When this fight was done, then went Maximian back 'into [to his] quarters, to rest himself. On the morrow when it was day, '*the* people made them ready'; 'they marched to the noble burgh that is named Nantes [to Nantes he marched]; 'they' found therein nought of mankind that would withstand 'them [him], 'and hold the burgh,' [but] all 'it was [they were] away flown, and from the land departed, except a few women who were there within. Maximian took the burgh, and 'set with [placed therein] his men; then called Maximian to the earl Conan: "Conan, thou art good knight, thou hast maintained well my fight, 'and' I will bestow on thee much re-

[1] Nantes? [2] funde he? [3] hæhueſt *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ich þe wulle mede :/	ich þe wolle mede :/
muchele bitæche.	mochel bi-the[1].
for þu hæfueſt[2] al Brutlōd :/	for þou haddeſt al Butlond[3] :/
i þire aȝere hond.	in þin owene hond.
ȝif ich hit nere :/	ȝef ich hit nere :/
þu weore king þere.	þou were king þere.
and þe eorl Caredoc :/	
þe is of mine cunne.	
ȝet hit mai ilimpe :/	
hit is þe an vnðonke.	
Ah loke wulche wæſtres[4] :/	Ac loke woche wateres :/
& wunliche londeſ.	and woche riche londes.
whulche wurðliche wude :/	woche faire wodes :/
whulche wilde deores.	
whul[5] liðe londe :/	
on to libbenne.	ine for to wonie.
þiſ lond hehten Armoriche :/	þis lond hette Armoriche :/
þis ich þe bitæche.	þis ich þe bi-teche.
& muchele mare her to :/	and mochel mo þer to :/
ȝif ich hit mæi ifo.	ȝef ich mote libbe.
her of þu ſcalt beō king :/	her of þou ſalt beo king :/
& þas riche aȝen.	and þeof riche oȝe.
Vt ich wullen driuen :/	Vt ich wolle driue :/
al þat ich finde on liue.	al þat ich finde a-lifue.
ȝungen and alde :/	ȝonge and holde :/

ward; for thou haddest all Britain in thine own hand; if I were it not, thou wouldst be king there; 'and yet it may pertain to the earl Cradoc, who is of my kin,—it is to thee displeasing.'—But look what waters, and 'fair [what rich] lands; what 'noble [fair] woods, 'what wild deer; what pleasant land 'to live in [for to dwell in]! This land hight Armoriche; this I bestow on thee, and much more 'hereto [thereto], if I 'it may get [may live]; hereof thou shalt be king, and this realm possess. Out I will drive all that I find alive, young and old, out of this land; 'and whoso I

[1] bi-teche? [2] hæfdeſt? [3] *R.* Brutlond. [4] wætres? [5] whulche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
vt of þiſſe londe.	vt of þiſſe londe.
and wulcne ſwa ich mai here ifon:	
i þan ſtude he beoð fordon.	
& ſende ich wulle to Aðionærd:	And ſende ich wolle to Yþenard:
þe is min aȝene ſtiward.	þat his min owe ſtiward.
eorl he is treowe:	
for æuer[1] he is aðneowe.	
for hī ich habbe wel bi-tæht:	
Brutlōd to witene.	
& he me ſla[2] ſenden:	þat he me ſal ſende:
in to þiſſe londe.	into þiſſe londe.
wapmen and wifmen:	
of wel feole cræften.	
cnihtes & þeines: [f. 67ᵇ. c. 1.]	
& al heore ſweines.	
ſixti hundred cnihtē:	sixti hundred cnihtes:
þe gode beon to fihten.	þat gode beon to fihte.
ten hundred þeines:	ten hundred þeines:
seoue þuſend ſweines.	ſceoue þuſend ſweines.
seoue þuſend burh-mē:	sceoue þuſend borhmē:
þe fæle beon on æhte.	þat riche beoþ and wiſe.
þritti þuſend wifmen:	þritti þuſend wifmen:
þe wel beon ifūden.	þat wel beon ifunde.
þenne þiſ folc bið hider icumen:	Wane þis folk his hider icome:
& heo[3] ſtude habbeð inumen.	and habbeþ hire ſtude inome.

here may take, on the spot he shall be slain.' And send I will to 'Athionard [Ythenard], who is mine own steward,—'earl he is true, for ever he is ready; for to him I have well delivered Britain, to guard *it*,'—'and [that] he shall send to me, into this land, 'men and women of well many crafts; knights and thanes, and all their swains;' sixty hundred knights, who are good in fight; ten hundred thanes; seven thousand swains; seven thousand burghers, who are 'good in wealth [rich and wise]; thirty thousand women, who are well found (of good condition). When this folk is

[1] æue, *pr. m.* [2] ſcal? [3] heore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þenne biþ al þis fæire lond:
iſet Brutten an hond.
æfter þine leoden:
bi-tæche heom name.
[1]Brutlond þat laſſe.
Nu and auere mare:
þe nom̄ ſtondeþ þere.
& þus Armoriche nome:
niþer wæs auælled.
swa þat næuere mare:
ne biþ he aræred.
Conaan þeof ȝeue afeng:
& iwraþ[4] þeos kinges freond.
mid muchelere wurþſcipe:
& wel heo hit heolden.
And þe king ſende:
in to þiſſe londe.
& hæhte Aþionard:
þe biwuſte Brutlondes ærd.
þat he him ſwiþe ſende:
þ folc of Brutlonde.
& folc of ælche cræfte:
ſundri ſcipen bitæhte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þan his al þis faire lond:
iſet Bruttes an hond.
hafter ȝam mid iwiſſe:

cleope hit Brutlond þe laſſe.
Nou and euere more:
þe name ſtondeþ þare.
and þus Armoricheſ name:
adun was a-falled. [c. 2.]
so þat neuere more:
ne worþet[2] arered.
Conan þeos ȝeft onderfend[3]:
and iwarþ þis kinges freōd.

And þe king ſende:
in to þiſſe londe.
and hehte Ẏþenard:
Brutlondes ſtiward.
and[5] he him ſwiþe ſende:
þat folk þat he ȝornde.

hither arrived, and hath taken their abode, then shall all this fair land be set in *the* hand of Britons; after 'thy people give them name [them surely call it] Britain the Less." Now and evermore the name standeth there; and thus Armoriches name was cast down, so that never more it shall be raised. Conan received this gift, and became this kings friend, 'with much honor, and well they it held.' And the king sent into this land, and bade Athionard, 'who had charge of Britains land [Britains steward], that he should send quickly to him the folk 'of Britain [that he desired]; 'and to folk of each craft should deliver sundry ships, and among

[1] *A line, apparently, is wanting here.*
[2] worþe hit?
[3] onderfeng?
[4] iwarð?
[5] þat?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& mong þan wifmonnen:	
wepmon næuer enne.	
buten þa feoluen fcipmē:	
þe heom fcullen læden.	
Al eoden þeos ræd:	Al ȝeode þes read:
swa þe king hæfde ifeid.	afe þe king hadde ifed.
& Conaan þer heold to:	and Conan þar to heold:
mid hæhȝere ftrengðe.	mid heȝere ftrengþe.
& þe kīg ferde: [c. 2.]	And þe king wende forþ:
uorð toward France.	in toward France.
& bi-ȝæt al þ kine-lond:	and bi-ȝet al þat kinelond:
& fette hit on his aȝere hond.	to hif owene hond.
& þeōne he gon liðen:	and þanene he gan wende:
in to Lohernne.	into Loherenne.
al þat lond he bi-ȝæt:	and al þat lond he bi-ȝet:
swa he dude Liuieine æc.	fo he dude Loueine heck.
swa he gon liðe:	so he gan wende:
in to Lumbardie.	in to Lombardie.
al þat lond he bi-ȝæt:	al þat lond he bi-ȝeat:
þær wes Caradoc dæd.	þar was Cradoc dead.
þa hauede Mauric his fune:	so fori was his fone:
sorȝen inowe.	
nes þer nan oðer ræd:	
buten þe Mavric iwærð dæd.	þat he deiȝede eke.
To Rome wende Maximiæn:	To Rome wende Maximian:
uppe Valentin & vppen Gracien.	vppe Valentin and Gracien.

the women never one man, except the selfsame shipmen who should conduct them.' This counsel all proceeded as the king had said, and Conan held thereto with great strength. And the king went forth [in] toward France, and won all the kingdom, 'and set it' in his own hand; and thence he gan march into Loraine, [and] all the land he obtained, as he did also Lovaine; so he gan proceed into Lumbardy; all the land he conquered,—there was Cradoc dead; 'then had Maurice his son sorrow enow; there was no other hap but that Maurice should die [so sore was his son, that he died also]! To Rome went Maximian, upon (against) Valentin

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
i fehte he nō þene oðer:	ine fihte hii[1] neme þan oþer;
þa ȝirnde grið þa oðer.	þo ȝeornde griþ þe oþer.
cnihtes heo weoren hende:	cnihtes hii weren hende:
þe king heom dude i bende.	þe king ham dude in bende.
& he anan ſone:	and he anon ſone:
ahnede hī al Rome.	ohnede al Rome.
þ word com to Conaan:	þat word com to Conan:
hu iuaren hæfde Maximiæn.	ou ifare hadde Maximian.
& þ Caradoc wes dæd:	and þat Cradoc was dead:
inne Lūbardie.	
& al ſwa Mauric his sune:	and his ſone Mauric eck.
for muchele farineſſe.	
þa nom[2] þe eorl Conaan:	þo nam þe eorl Conan:
ænne ſwiðe wiſne mon.	ane ſwiþe wiſne man.
& ſende to þiſſen londe:	and ſende to þiſſe londe: [f. 57. c. 1.]
Adionard. to Adionard þā ſtronge.	to Ẏþenard þan ſtronge.
þe wes ſtiward ſwiðe biſi:	
inne þiſſi[3] Bruttene.	
To Adionard me brohten writ:	To Ẏþenard me brohte writ:
þ dæd wes his broðer.	þat dead was his broþer:
Caradoc þe mære:	Cradoc þe more:
& Mauric his ſune deore.	and Mauric his ſone deore.
þa næfde Caradoc i þiſ ærd:	þo nadde Cradoc in þis erþ:
broðer bute Adionard.	broþer bote Ẏþenarþ.

and 'upon' Gracien; in fight he captured the one, then yearned the other peace. Knights they were fair; the king placed them in bonds, and he anon soon obtained 'to him' all Rome. The word came to Conan, how Maximian had fared; and that Cradoc was dead 'in Lumbardy,' and 'also [eke] his son Maurice, 'for much sorrow.' Then took the earl Conan an exceeding wise man, and sent to this land, to Athionard the strong; 'who was steward most busy in this Britain.' To Athionard men brought writ, that dead was his brother Cradoc the great, and Maurice his son dear;—then had Cradoc in this land no brother but Athionard; and he

[1] he ? [2] inom *pr. m., but* i *erased.* [3] þiſſe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& he forð riht nom an hiſ hond:
al Caradokeſ lond.
þa iherden þa Frence men:
þ at Rome wes Maximien.
& Cradoc wes dæd:
þa nomen þa Frence ænne ræd.
þat heo wolden flæme:
Conaan þene kene.
vt of þan londe:
þe Maximian him ȝæf an honde.
þe is bi-halues France:
& Bruttaine is ihaten[1].
& Conaan ne ȝiſde na grið:
ah feſtliche heom feht wið.
& wel he makede his caſtles:
treowe & ſwiðe uæſte.
& alle his beornen he wes leof:
þe comen of þiſſen londe.
For alle he hæfde þa cnihtes:
þe Maximien hī bi-hehte.
& ec þa eorles:
& þa ſweines & þa cheorles.
& alle þa burh-men:
þa him bi-hehte Maximien.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and he forþriht nom:
al Cradoc his lond.
[[f.68. a.1.]
þo ihorde þe Frence men:
þat at Rome waſ Maximian.
and Cradoc was dead:
þo nemen hii anne read.
þat hii wolde Conan:
driue vt of londe.

And Conan ne ȝeornde no griþ:
ac faſtliche ham faht wiþ.
and wel he makede his caſtles:
treuliche and faſte.
and alle hine lofuede:
þat come of þiſſe londe.
For alle he hadde þe cnihtes:
þat Maximian hine bi-hehte.
and eke þe eorles:
þe ſweines and þe cheorles.
and alle þe borh-men:
þat him bi-hahte Maximian.

forth-right took 'in his hand' all 'Cradocs [Cradoc his] land. When the Frenchmen heard that Maximian was at Rome, and Cradoc was dead, then took 'the French [they] a counsel, that they would drive Conan 'the keen' out of 'the' land 'that Maximian gave him in hand, that is beside France, and is named Bretagne.' And Conan asked not any peace, but fought with them stoutly; and well he made his castles, 'true [truely] and 'most' fast; and 'to all his men he was dear [all loved him], that came from this land. For he had all the knights that Maximian promised him, and eke the earls, 'and' the swains and the churls, and all the burghers that Maxi-

[1] bi-haten, *pr. m., but* b *erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Wifmen neuede he noht feole ⁊	Wimmen nafde[1] noht fale ⁊
buten fiftene hundred.	bote fiftene hūdred.
for wifmen nolden noht liðen ⁊	for þe wifmen nolde noht wende ⁊
vt of þiſſen londe.	vt of þiſſe londe.
buten þe eorl Adionard ⁊	bote þe eorl Ẏþenard ⁊
þe wes þe hæhſte i þis ærd.	þat was þe ſtrengeſt in þiſ erþ.
walde heore borh beon ⁊ [bi-teon.	wolde hire borh beon ⁊
þat heo ſcolden heore while wel	þat hii ſolde hire wile wel bi-teon.
Þa hæhuede Adionard ⁊	to þan eorle Ẏþenard.
ænne dohter swiðe deore. 10	ane dohter ſwiþe deore.
heo hæfde al þat hære-word ⁊	ȝeo hadde al þat here-word ⁊ [c. 2.]
of þan maidenē of þiſ ærd.	of alle þe maẏdene.
Vreſele. þeo wimman wes on ſele ⁊	þe womman waſ ſeale ⁊
heo hæhte Vrſele.	ȝeo hehte Vrſele.
Conaan ſende to þiſ ærd ⁊	Conan ſende to þis erþ ⁊
to þan eorle Adionærd.	Þo hadde Ẏþenard ⁊
& bed þat he him ȝeue ⁊	and [bede] þat he him ȝefue ⁊
his dohter to quene.	his dohter to cwene.
Adionard ȝæf andſwere ⁊	Ẏþenard ȝef anſwere ⁊
wurðſcipe habbe he þer fore. [c. 2.]	worſipe habbe[2] þar vore.
Monſcipe habbe Conaan ⁊ 20	
þat he mire dohter wel on.	
nu to dæi a ſeouen nihten ⁊	Nou to dai a ſcoueniht ⁊
ich heo ſenden him bi mine cnihten.	ich hire ſende ſoþ riht.

mian promised him. Women had he not many, but (only) fifteen hundred, for [the] women would not go out of this land, unless the earl Athionard, who was the 'highest [strongest] in this land, would be their surety, that they should their time well employ. Then had Athionard a daughter very dear; of [all] the maidens 'of this land' she had (bore away) all the fame; the woman was fortunate; she hight Ursele. Conan sent to this country, to the earl Athionard, and bade that he should give him his daughter for queen. Athionard gave answer,—worship have he therefore!—"'Honor have Conan, that he well grants to my daughter!' Now to-day a se'nnight

[1] nafde he?

[2] habbe he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& alle þa wimmen:	and alle þe wifmen:
þe him ȝef mi lauerd Maximien.	þat him ȝef Maximian.
þider heo ſcullen liðen:	þider hii ſolde wende:
ȝif heo wulleð libben.	ȝef hii wolde libbe:
oðer ich heom wullen alle for-don:	oþer ich ȝeom alle wolle for-don:
& bi þan tittē an-hon.	and bi þan tyttes for-hon.
Þa ȝarkede Adionard:	Þo ȝarkede Iþenard:
þiſſes londef lauerd.	þat was þeos londes ſtiward.
his dohter Urſæle:	his dohter Vrſele:
þe wimman wes wel ſæle.	þat was a maide ſele.
he þohte heo to ſende:	he þohte here to ſende:
ou[?] fæ ſtrames.	ouer ſéé ſtremes.
in to Bruttaine lōde:	into Brutaines londe:
to Conaan þan ſtronge.	to Conan þan ſtronge.
Þa iherden þa wimmen:	Þo ihorde þe wifmē:
wide ȝeond þas Brúttene.	oueral þan londe.
þat me wolde ſenden:	þat me wolde ſende:
Vrſeine[1] to[2] þan londe.	Vrſele of londe.
hire comen to inoȝe:	hire come to i-nowe.
monie & vnifoȝe.	manie an onifoȝe.
þ̄ wolden mid here uarē:	þat wolde mid hire fare:
to þan kinge Conaane.	to þan kinge Conane.
ſwiðe feole heo bi-ſohte:	ſwiþe fale hire bi-ſohte:
ma þeone heo rohten.	mo þane ȝeo rohte.

Vreſel[*e*].

I will send her 'to him `by my knights [right sooth], and all the women that 'my lord' Maximian gave him; thither they shall go, if they `will [would] live, or *else* I will kill them all, and hang up by the teats!" Then Athionard, `lord of this land [who was this lands steward], made ready his daughter Ursele, who was `woman [a maid] 'well' good; he thought to send over sea streams into Bretagnes land, to Conan the strong. When the women heard `wide over this Britain [over all the land], that men would send Ursele from 'the' land, enow came to her, many and numerous, who would go with her to the king Conan; very many besought her, more than she cared

[1] *R.* Vrsele. [2] of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa þe dæi wes icumen:	Þo þe dai was icome:
þe Adionard hafde inumen.	þat Ydenard adde inome.
þ forð ſcolde uaren:	þat forþ ſolde fare:
þat mæiden Vreſele.	þat maide Vrſele.
þa hafden to iwiten:	ȝeo hadde to iwite:
ſeouen and twenti ſcepen.	ſceouene and twenti ſipes.
alle heo weoren iſunde:	alle hii weren iſunde:
i þere burh of Lunden.	in þare borh of Londene.
Inne þere Temeſe:	In þare Temeſe:
heo teuhten heore ſeiles.	hii drowen vp ſeiles.
wind heo hæfden wunſum:	wynd hii hafde wonſō:
weder mid þan bezſten.	weder mid þan beſte. [f.57b. c.1.]
& heo ſeiledē forð:	and hii ſeileden:
þ inne ſæ heo comen.	forte hii to ſéé come.
þa vmbe ſtunde:	þo bi on lutel ſtunde:
ne fæȝe heo nohtof londe. [f.68b. c.1.]	ne ſehȝe hii noht of londe.
Þa araſ heom a wind:	Þo aros heom a wind:
a þere wiðer ſide.	in þare wiþer ſide:
ſwurken vnder ſunnen:	þirkede vnder ſonne:
sweorte weolcnen.	þuſtrede þe wolkne.
haȝel & ræin þer aræs:	reyn and hawel þar a-ros:
þe hit i-ſeh him agras.	þat hit iſeh ſore a-groſ.
vðen þer urnē.	waȝef þar arne:
tunes[1] ſwulche þer burnen.	ſtreme þar vrne.

for. When the day was come that Athionard had taken (appointed), that the 'maiden [maid] Ursele should forth proceed, 'then' had [she] to wit seven and twenty ships; they were all safe in the burgh of London. In the Thames they drew [up] 'their' sails; wind they had fair, weather with the best; and they sailed 'forth,' until they came 'in [to] *the* sea; then after [a little] while, they saw nought of land. Then arose to them a wind on the contrary side; 'swart clouds [the welkin] darkened [*and* blackened] under the sun; hail and rain there arose,—whoso it saw, became [sorely] alarmed;—*the* waves there ran 'as if towns there were burning

[1] *The two first letters of this word are on an erasure.* *Cf.* v. 4577. *vol.* i. *p.* 195.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
bordes þer breken:	bordes þar breken:
vimmen[1] gūnen wepen.	wimmen þar wepen.
Þa ſcipen þa urnen bi-uoren:	Þe ſipes þat vrne bi-vore:
twelue þer weoren for-loren.	twealfe þar were for-lore.
þa oðere weoren al to-driuen:	
& forð mid þere ſæ iliðen.	
nes þer na ſteores-mon:	nas þar no ſtereſmā:
þat æuere aht cuðe þer on.	þat er ohte couþe.
Nes næuere na mon iboren:	Nas neuere no man ibore:
ne of nane londe icoren.	ne in none londe icore.
þ hæleð weore ſwa ſtærc:	
ne ſwa hærd iheorted.	
þe iherde þeſne weop:	þat i-horde þane cri:
& þisne wunderliche ræm.	
& cleopien[2] to þan halhȝen:	hou hii gradde to þan halwes.
mid hæhȝere ſteuene.	
þ his heorte neore færi:	þat his heorte ne mihte beo ſori:
for þan vnimete ſorhȝen.	for þane deolfulle cri.
Seoððen þis world wes aſtald:	
& monnen an honde iſælde.	
ne com nauere wurſe hap:	
to nane wummānē.	
Summe þe ſcipen wundē:	Somme of þaie ſipes:

[*the* streams there flowed]; boards there brake; *the* women 'gan [there] weep. Of the ships that ran before, twelve there were lost; 'the others were all driven in pieces, and carried forth by the sea'; there was no steersman that 'therein' aught ever could *help*. Never was 'there' any man born, nor 'of [in] any land chosen, 'who were champion so stark, or so hard hearted,' who should have heard 'this weeping, and this wondrous shout, and calling [the cry, how they called] to the Saints 'with high voice,' that his heart 'were not [might not be] sorry for the 'measureless sorrow [doleful cry]! 'Since this world was made, and given to men in hand, never came worse hap to any women!' Some of the ships rode 'forth' with the storm,—full

[1] summen, *pr. m.* [2] cleopung?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
forð mid þan wederen.	wonde mid þan wedere.
fulle fiftene:	fulle feftene:
i þan ane wes Oriene[1].	þan[2] on was Vrſele.
þe sæ wes wunder ane wod:	þe ſee was wonderliche wod:
and ladliche iwraððed.	and þe ſéé wraþþede.
& þa ſcipen[3]	and þe ſéé[4] walkede:
i þere wildere ſæ:	in þare ſéé wilde.
æuere norð forð riht:	euere norþ forþriht:
þreo dæies & þreo niht.	þreo daies and þreo nihit.
Melga. *Wanis.* þa weoren ut of Norweiȝen:	þo weren of Noreweie:
tweien eorles iuarē.	eorles ivaren tweie.
Mælgam & Wanis: [c. 2.]	Melga an Wanis:
heo weoren kene ful iwis.	hii weren kene foliwis.
of Denemarke & of Norweiȝe:	hii were vtlaȝet[5] beie:
heo weoren iqueðen vt-laȝen.	in Denemarche and Noreweie.
& heo ferden bi ſæ ſiden:	and hii ferde bi þare ſide[6]:
vnimete wide.	onimete wide.
Heo i-cneowen wel a þan wolcnē:	Hii cneowe bi þe wolkne:
þaſ wederes cuſtes.	þeos wedereſ cuſtes.
heo droȝen to ane ait-londe:	and droȝen to on ÿllond:
þer heo leoðe hafueden.	þar hii lioþe hadde. [c. 2.]
Wanis wes in Hungrie:	Wanis was in Hongri:
þer he harm worhte.	þar he harm wrohte.

fifteen;—in the one was Ursele;—the sea was wondrously wild, and 'bitterly [the sea] enraged, and the ships [labored] in the wild sea, ever north*ward* forth-right, three days and three nights. Then had gone two earls 'out of [from] Norway, Melga and Wanis,—they were keen full certainly;—'of [in] Denmark and Norway they were outlaws 'declared [both], and they proceeded by [the] sea-side, widely without bounds. They knew 'well' 'in [by] the welkin this weathers (storms) indications; 'they [and] drew to an island, where they had refuge. Wanis was (had been) in Hungary, where he harm wrought; Melga was in Scythia, where he made

[1] Urſele? [2] in þan? [3] *A word seems to be deficient.*
[4] ſipes? [5] vtlaȝes? [6] þare ſéé ſide?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Mælga wes inne Scife:	Melga was in Scice:
þer he ſcaðe makede.	þar he ſcaþe makede.
þat he ne mihte i þan londe:	
na lengere at-ſtonde.	
& of Norweiȝe iflemed:	
þer heo fiht þoledẽ.	
& inne ſæ heo weoren iuaren:	and þus in ſee hii weren ivare:
uulle ſeoue ȝeren.	fulle ſoue ȝere.
& ſwa heo leien i þan æit-londe:	and ſo hii leie in þat yllond:
& iſeȝen þat weder ſtronge.	and iſehȝe þat weder ſtrōg.
iſeȝen ſcipen an & an:	Hii ſehe ſipes on and on:
while ma while nan.	wile mo wile non.
þeonne feowere þenne fiue:	þan foure þan fifue:
fellic heom þuhten a þiſſẽ liue.	wonder heom þohte in þiſſe lifue.
whæt weoren þa ȝemere ſcipen:	wat weren þe ilke ſipef:
þa ȝeond þa ſæ weolkẽ.	þat þus in ſéé walkedc.
Þe wind gond[1] aliðen:	Þe wīd gan a-legge:
& þat weder leoðede.	an þat weder ſofti.
& Wanis iſæh i þere ſæ:	
þa ſcipen wandrien.	
& þus ſpæc þere:	and Melga ſeide þare:
wið Malgan his iuere.	to his ivere.
Forð wit nu ſwuðe:	Vare we nou blifue:
& after heom biliue.	hafter heom ſwiþe.

scathe; *so* that he might not in the land any longer remain; and driven from Norway, where they sustained *a* battle; and [thus] on *the* sea they had fared full seven years; and so they lay in the island, and saw the strong storm. [They] saw *the* ships *by* one and one—awhile more, awhile none,—then four, then five,—wonder *it* seemed to them in this life, what 'the wretched [*those*] ships were, that [thus] 'over the [on *the*] sea tossed! The wind gan to abate, and the weather 'assuaged [to soften]; 'and Wanis saw the ships wandering in the sea,' and 'thus spake there with [Melga said there to] 'Melga' his companion: "Go we now soon, 'and' after

[1] gon?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid gode fiftene ſcipen :/	
faren we heom æfter.	
mid ure bezſten cnihten :/	mid oure beſte cnihteſ :/
þe gode beon to fihten.	þat gode beon to fihte.
& leten ælle ure oðere ſcipen :/	
ure herberwe bi-witen. [f. 69. c. 1.]	
for þiſ is ſum riche king :/	for-þis[1] ſom riche king :/
rædes bi-dæled.	reades bi-dealed.
þe wolde mid his folke :/	þat wolde mid hiſ folk :/
uaren to ſumme londe.	faren to ſomme londe.
& haueð þeos wīd & þeos weder :/	and haueþ þis wind and þis weder :/
a wiðer him i-ſtondē.	a wiþer him i-ſtonde.
þ wa is him aliue :/	þat wo his ham a-lifue.
nuwe[2] him to biliue.	wende we to blifue.
& ȝif hit wule Appolin :/	For ȝef hit wole Appolin :/
þat if deore lauerd min.	þe his deore louerd min.
þat we maȝen mid fihte :/	
biwinnen hine & his cnihtes.	
& heo ne beō of ure laȝen :/	
we ſcullen him dō of lif-dæȝen.	
& ſwa we ſcullen nimen a hond :/	we ſolle nimen of heom :/
heore ſeoluer & heore gold.	hire ſeoluer and hire gold.
& faren to ure inne :/	and fare to vre ine :/
& ȝeolpen for þere winne.	and ȝelpen of þan winne.

them quickly! 'With fifteen good ships fare we after them,' with our best knights, that are good in fight, 'and let all our other ships guard our harbour'; for this 'is' some rich king, void of counsel, who would with his folk proceed to some land, and hath encountered this wind and this weather adverse to him, *so* that woe 'he is [they are] alive! Go we to 'him' quickly! 'And [For] if Appolin wills it, who is my lord dear, 'that we may with fight conquer him and his knights, and they be not of our law, we shall deprive him of life-day, and so' we shall take 'in hand [from them] their silver and their gold; and come to our inn (place of refuge), and boast 'for

[1] þis is?

[2] wende we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Forð heo wenden mid flode:	Forþ iwende[1] mid flode:
fiftene fcipē gode. [ȝen:	fiftene fipes gode.
þe ftrengefte þe weoren a þan dæ-	þe ftrengeft þat weren in þat daȝe:
& fulled mid vt-laȝen.	ifulled mid vtlaȝef.
& a-nan of-token fif fcipē:	and of-toke fif fipes:
of wimmonnen afulled.	of wifmen ifulled.
Seolcuð heom þuhte:	Wonder heom þohte: [f. 58. c. 1.]
what hit beō mahte.	wat hit beon mihte.
& heo cleopeden heom ō:	and hii cleopede him[2] on:
nes þer nan ændfwere.	ac anfwere naf þar nō.
for al weoren þa wimmen:	for alle were þe wifmen:
awald to þan deðe.	a-wild to þan deaþe.
To heom heo droȝen:	To heō idrowen[3]:
and þaf fif fcipen nomen.	and þeos fipes nomen.
and furðer heo iwenden:	and forþere hii wēde:
& niȝene heo iuengen.	and niȝe fipes onderfēge.
and heo mid þan feowertene fcipen:	and hii mid þane fourtene fipes:
ferden to þā londe.	ferde to londe.
Seoððen þis worlde wef aftald:	Suþþe þef worle was aftald:
nes hit neowhær itald.	nas hit nohwere itald.
on fonge no on fpelle:	
ne miðte hit na mon telle.	
þ weoren æi wimman:	þat euere eni wifmen:

[of] the booty!" Forth they went with *the* flood, fifteen ships good; the strongest that were in that day, 'and' filled with outlaws; and 'anon' overtook five ships filled with women. 'Strange [Wonder] *it* seemed to them, what it might be; and they called to them, [but] answer was there none, for all the women were destroyed to the death. To them they drew, and these 'five' ships took; and further they went, and nine [ships] 'they' captured, and they with the fourteen ships returned to 'the' land. Since this world was made, was it nowhere told 'in song nor in story, nor might any man tell it,' that [ever] any women 'were' so 'wretchedly [ruefully] treated,

[1] hii wende? [2] ham? [3] hii drowen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
swa wræccheliche atoȝene.	[c. 2.] ſo reuliche a-towen.
ne swa reoliche:	
inne ſæ for-radde.	
Melga nom Oriene[1]:	Melga nam Vrſele:
þa ſcolden beon quene.	þat ſolde beō cwene.
& ſcome hire bi-hedde:	and ſame hire hedde:
& ladde heo to his bedde.	and nom hire to his bedde.
þa þe heðene mon:	
hæfuede on hire hiſ wille idō.	
heȝæf heo his his[2] hired-mōnē ſone:	
to makien to heore.	
& ſūme heo heom ſalden:	And alle þe oþer men:
for ſeoluer for gold.	choſe of þiſ wifmen.
& monie & vnifoȝe:	
heo þer of-floȝen.	
& ſumme heo heō drēgte:	and ſomme hii adreinte:
in þere ſæ deope.	in þare ſéé deope.
& ſūme heo godd wið-ſoken:	and ſomme god for-ſoke:
& to haðeneſcipe token.	and to heþenſipe toke.
& þus heo weoren for-radde:	and þus hii were for-rad:
mid reowðe þan mæſte.	mid reuþe þan meſte.
Melga and Wanis:	Melga and Wanis:
ihurden ſuggē ful iwis.	ihorde ſegge foliwis.
þat þas Bruttene:	þat þeos Brutaine:

'nor so piteously in *the* sea betrayed.' Melga took Ursele, that should be queen, and offered her shame, and 'led [took] her to his bed; 'when the heathen man had done on her his will, he gave her to his followers soon, to make as whore.' And 'some they them sold for silver *and* for gold, and many and innumerable there they slew [all the other men chose of these women]; and some they 'them' drowned in the deep sea, and some 'they' forsook God, and took to heathendom. And thus they were betrayed with sorrow the most! Melga and Wanis heard say full truly, that this Britain was

[1] Urſele?

[2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
wes of cnihte bi-dæled.	was cnihtes bi-reifed.
for Conaan hauede swiðe monie:	for Conan hadde manie:
ilæd to Armoriche.	ilad to Armoriche.
& Maximiæn ladde to Rome:	and Maximian to Rome:
monie & wel idone.	manie wel idone.
swa wes þis kinelond:	an ſo waſ al þiſ kinelond:
of folke ſwiðe vnſtrong.	of folke ſwiþe onſtrong.
Melga & Wanis:	Melga and Wanis:
iwenden in to Scotten.	iwende into Scottes.
þ lond heo þurh arnden:	þat lond iþorh[1] harnde:
& herȝeden & barnden.	and ſloȝe and barnde.
þa ahte heo nomen:	
þ folc heo of-ſloȝen.	
& ſwa heo wenden hiderward:	and ſo hii wende hiderward:
ouer þere Humber.	
hermes heo worhten:	
and hene lond makeden.	and pore lond makede.
þiſ iherden Bruttes:	þis ihorde Bruttes: [c.2.]
and weoren þer fore færi[2].	and were ſwiþe sori.
heore ſonde heo mon[3] sone:	heore fonde hii ſende ſone:
& ſenden touward Rome.	forþ toward Rome.
Heo grætten Maximian:	Hii grette Maximian:
and talden him of Melgan. [f. 69b. c. 1.]	and tolde him of Melga.
& of Waniſ his iuere:	and of Wanes his ivere:

bereaved of knights; for Conan had led 'very' many to Armoriche, and Maximian '*had* led' to Rome many 'and' brave; [and] so was [all] this kingdom of folk most weak. Melga and Wanis proceeded to *the* Scots; the land they through-ran, and 'harried [slew] and burnt, 'the wealth they took, the folk they slew'; and so they marched hitherward 'over the Humber, harms they wrought,' and made *the* land poor. This heard *the* Britons, and were 'therefore [most] sorry; their messengers they 'took [sent forth] soon, 'and sent' toward Rome. They greeted Maximian, and told him of Melga, and of Wanis his companion, what they did here,

[1] hii þorh? [2] fære *pr. m.* [3] nomen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

whet heo duden heꝛ.
& beden hine heom ræden:
oðer ælles heo weoren dæde.
Maximien wef sari:
for fwulche tiðende.
& anā dude ut of bende:
Gracien þene hende.
anan fwa he him to cō:
þus he cleopede him on.
Gracien bicum mi mon:
& þu fcelt feoðden wel don.
& ich þe wullē fenden:
in to Brutlonde.
ich wulle al þat kinelond:
bi-techē þe a þire hond.
& þu fcalt beon mi ftiward:
swa wes þe eorl Adionard.
& ȝif þu wult wel don:
ich wulle þe makien riche mon.
and driuen of mire þeoden:
vncuðe leoden.
Þa andfwerede Gracien:
mid griðfulle worden.
Al ich wulle wurchen:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

wat hii duden here.
and beden him ȝam reade:
oþer elles iweren[1] deade.
Maximian was fori:
for foche tidinge.
and anon dude vt of bende:
Gracien þe hende.

Graciē bi-com mi man:
and þou falt fwiþe wel don.
and ich þe wolle fende:
into Brutlonde.
and here al þat kinelond:
ich bi-take in þine hond.
and þou falt beo mi ftiward:
afe was þe eorl Ẏþenard.
And ȝef þou wolt wel don:
ich wolle maki þe riche man.
and drif of mine þeode:
oncouþe leode.
Þo anfwerede Gracien:
mid godfolle worde.
Al ich wolle werechen:

and prayed him to counsel them, or else they should die. Maximian was sorry for such tidings, and anon released Gracien the fair out of bonds. 'Anon as he came to him, thus he called to him:' "Gracien, become my man, and thou shalt 'then' do [most] well; and I will thee send into Britain, [and here] all the kingdom I 'will' give 'to thee' in thine hand, and thou shalt be my steward, as the earl Athionard was. And if thou wilt do well, I will make thee rich man, and drive from my country foreign people." Then answered Gracien with peaceful [goodly] words: "All I will

[1] hii weren?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
after þine willen.	after þine wille.
liðen wuder ſwa þu wult:	wende woder þat þou wolt:
& halden þe for lauerd.	and holde þe for louerd.
þe aðes weoren iſworene:	þe oþes weren iſwore:
& æft heo weoren for-lorne.	and hefte hii were for-lore.
Maximien þe keiſere:	Maximian þe kaiſere:
bæd swiðe muchelne here.	gaderede moche here.
& he chæſ of þan iwihte:	and ten þuſend cnihtes:
ten þuſend cnihten.	tock Gracien forþrihtes.
& makede Graciē:	
gumene ælder.	
& ſwa heo gunnen wenden:	And Gracien wende:
ī to þiſſen londe.	into þiſſe londe.
& her he fæht ful iwis:	and here he ouer-com:
wið Melga & wið Wanis.	Melga an Wanes ſon.
þ wes ſwiðe wel idon:	
þ he heo[1] æt compe ouer-com.	
& draf heom ouer ſæ ſtronde:	[c. 2.]and drof heom ouer ſéé ſtronde:
in to Ẏrlonde.	in to Ẏrlonde.
& ſeoððen ferde ȝeond þiſ lond:	
swa him weſ alre leofueſt.	
& þe kæiſere Maximiæn:	And þe kaiſer Maximian:
inne Rome wes hæh mon.	in Rome was heh mā.

work after thy will; go 'whereso [whither that] thou wilt, and hold thee for lord." The oaths were sworn, and eft they were broken! Maximian the emperor gathered 'very' great host, and 'he chose of the brave [Gracien took forth-right] ten thousand knights, 'and made Gracien *their* chieftain.' And 'so they gan proceed [Gracien proceeded] into this land, and here 'he fought full surely with [soon overcame] Melga and 'with' Wanis; —'that was done most well, that he in combat should overcome them!' —and drove them over sea-strand into Ireland; 'and afterwards marched over this land as to him was liefest of all.' And the emperor Maximian in Rome was high (chief) man, and [he] had Valentin inclosed 'well' fast

[1] heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& hæuede Valentin wel uafte.	and he hadde Valentin faſte:
bi-cluſed in ane caſtle.	bi-clufed in an caſtle.
Þa hafuede[1] Valentin & Gracien:	Þo hadde Valentin and Gracien: [f. 58b. c. 1.]
inne Rome muchel cun.	in Rome hadde[2] mochel cun.
& iſeȝen þene enne broðer:	and iſehȝen þan anne broþer:
idæled from þen oðer.	idealed frā þan oþer.
Heo ſenden heore ſonde:	Hii ſende hire ſonde:
in to Puille londe.	into Poillonde.
& heo ſenden to Gradie:	
þan duc of Lumbardie.	into Alemaine and Lombardie:
& in to Alemaine:	
to aðelen þan folke.	
and in to feole londe:	and oþer mani londes.
þæ læien þer abeoten.	
& beden of heore ærde:	and gaderede ferde:
alle gaderen værde.	of manian erþe.
& to ane iſette dæie ſone:	and to one iſet dai ſone:
cumen abeotē Rome.	come aboute Rome.
& wreken uppen Maximien:	and wreken vppe Maximian:
Valentin & Gratien.	Valentin and Gracien.
Her of n^{o}te na þing:	Her of noht nuſte:
Maximiē þe riche king.	Maximian þe riche.
ah he wunede inne Rome:	

in a castle. Then (at that time) had Valentin and Gracien much kindred in Rome, and *they* saw the one brother separated from the other. They sent their messengers into Puille-land (Apulia?), 'and they sent' 'to Gradie, the duke of Lumbardy, and into Alemaine [into Alemaine (Germany) and Lombardy], 'to the noble folk,' and 'into many [many other] lands, 'that lay thereabout'; and 'bade all to gather forces from their country [gathered forces from many a country], and at a set day soon to come about Rome, and avenge Valentin and Gracien upon Maximian. Maximian the rich 'king' knew nothing hereof, 'but he dwelt in Rome with much splendor.

[1] *A second hand has struck out the letters* ue, *and substituted* e *above for* a.
[2] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid muchele riche-dome.
Vmbe lutle virſte:
þa comen þa uerden.
al abeoten Rome:
riden ſeouen kinges.
heo to-brekē Rome wal:
& eoden in ou⁹ al.
Rome burh heo nomē:
& Maximien heo floȝen.
& duden vt Valentin:
& alle his iueren mid him.
of þan ſtronge caſtle:
& keiſer hine makede.
& nomen heore fōde:
& ſenden to þiſſe londe.
& ſenden Gratien word:
whæt þer wes iwurðen.
& Gratien forð riht anan:
ahnede þiſne kinedom.
þiſne kinedom haueden Gratien:
þe ær ahte Maximien.
& Valentin of Rome:
ahte þa riche.
þus riht þurh swulne ræd:
wes Maximien dæd.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þare come ſoue kinges:
and breke Rome walles.
and þane borh nemen:
and Maximian of-floȝen.
and dude vt Valentin:
[f. 70. c. 1.] and alle his veref mid him.
of þan ſtronge caſtle:
and kaiſer hine makede.
And nemen hire ſonde:
and ſende to þiſſe londe.
and ſende Gracien word:
hou hit was iworþe.
And Gracien forþriht anon:
ohnede þiſne kinedom.
and Valentin þe riche:
hadde al Rome.
þus riht þorh ſochne read:
was Maximian dead.

After a little time, then came the host; all about Rome' 'rode [there came] seven kings; [and] 'they' brake Rome walls and 'marched in over all,' 'Rome-burgh [the burgh] 'they' took, and Maximian 'they' slew, and released Valentin, and all his companions with him, from the strong castle, and made him emperor. And took their messengers and sent to this land, and sent Gracien word 'what there [how it] was done. And Gracien forthright anon possessed this kingdom; 'this kingdom had Gracien, that ere had Maximian'; and Valentin [the rich] 'possessed the realm of [had all] Rome. Thus right through such counsel was Maximian dead, and Gracien

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and Gracien wes king her:
þat wes cuð wel iwar.
Wið innen ane ȝere:
nes þer firſt na mare.
iwraðᵉ þe kīg Gracien:
gumene forcuðeſt.
al he for-uerde þiſ lond:
þa leoden him weoren laðe.
þa riche he for-uerde:
þa wræcche he drof of ærde.
ne durſte þa riche þeines:
nowhær him cumen to-ȝeines.
ah alle heo hine fluȝen:
and alle heo hine bibuȝē.
Þa weoren in Æſt Ængle:
æðele iborne cheorles.
twene ibroðeren:
itwinnes heo weoren.
Ethelbald. þe oðer hehte Eðelbald:
Alfwald. & þe oðer Ælfwald.
Heo iſehȝen on feole ſtuden:
hou þe kīg þiſ lond fordude.
þas cheorles heom bi-þohten:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Gracien was king her:
þat was cuþ wel iwar.
Wiþ[1] one ȝere:
nas þar forſt na more.
iwarþ þe king Gracien:
manne for-couþeſt.
al he for-ferde þiſ lond:
and alle hī hatede.

Þo were in Eſt Engelond:
twei boldde cheorles.
broþereſ hii were:
of one beor-time.
þe on hehte Eþelbald:
þe oþer Alfwald.
Hii iſehȝen in eche ſtude: [c. 2.]
hou þe king þis lond for-dude.
þeos cheorles heom biþohte:

was king here,—that was known every where. Within a year,—there was no more (longer) space,—the king Gracien became most wicked of men; he destroyed all this land, 'the people were hateful to him [and all him hated]; 'the rich he destroyed, the poor he drove from land; the rich thanes durst not anywhere come against him, but all they fled *from* him, and all they avoided him.' Then were in 'East-Ængle [East-England] two 'brothers' noble-born [bold] churls, 'twins [brothers] they were [of one birth]; the one hight Ethelbald, 'and' the other Ælfwald. They saw in 'many places [each place] how the king destroyed this land. These churls bethought

[1] Wiþ ine?

[2] iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
whæt heo don mihtē.	wat he[1] don mihte.
& ſpeken heom ful ſtille:	and ſpeken wel ſtille:
þ̄ þene king heo walden quellē.	þa hii hine wolde a-cwelle.
& ſēden in Æſt Ængle: [c. 2.]	
wide ȝeond þan londe.	
& ſumnede on ærde:	Hii gaderede to-gaderes:
ſeouen hundred cheorles.	ſoue hundred cheorles.
& ſeiden þurh alle þīg:	and ſeide þorh alle þing:
þ̄ heo walden bi-ſechen þene king.	þat hii wolde ſeche þane king.
& bidden hine mildce:	and bidde him milce:
þurh þene milde godd.	þorþ þane god milde.
þ̄ he þurh his mihte:	þat he þorh his mihte:
heolde heom to rihte.	heolde ham to rihte.
Ah Ælfwald & his bᵒðer:	Ac Alfwalf[2] and his broþer:
al heo þuhten oðer.	al hii þohte an oþer.
heo uerden ſwiðe warliche:	
mid wūſūme ladeſ.	
& ælc bær an honde:	ech bar on his honde:
ænne faȝel ſtronge.	ane ſtaf ſtronge.
and biſiden heo gunnen heongē:	and bi-ſide honge:
cniues ſwiðe longe.	cnifes ſwiþe longe.
vnder heore barme:	
to ſcilden heom wið hærme.	

them what they might do, and spake 'them' 'full [well] still; that 'the king [him] they would kill; 'and sent to East-Ængle, wide over the land, and' 'assembled in *the* country [They gathered together] seven hundred churls, and said through all things that they would seek the king, and ask his grace, through God the mild, that he through his might should hold them in right. But Ælfwald and his brother they thought all another *thing*; 'they fared most warily with winsome looks, and' each bare in [his] hand a strong staf, and by *their* sides 'they gan hang [hung] very long knives, 'under their bosom, to shield them from harm'; and so they 'forth'

[1] hii?

[2] *R.* Alfwald.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ſwa heo forð ferden :	
alle i-ſunde.	
& vmben are mile :	and ſo iwende[1] one mile :
heo ræſtē ane while.	and reſte one wile.
& au[9]ælcne hired-gume :	
feire heo igrætten.	
& mildeliche þurh alle þing :	and euere amag[2] oþer þing :
fræinedē whær weoren þe king.	hii axede ware were þe king.
& hiredmen heom tahtē :	And hiredmen heom tahte :
whær heo hine finden mæhten.	ware hii hine finde mihte.
whær he wes ī anne wude :	war he huntede in on wode :
in ane wilderne.	in an wilderne.
æfter ane bare :	huntede one wilde bor :
he hine a-bohte ful ſære.	þat he boht wel for.
þa cheorles wenden to þan wuden :	þe cheorles wende to þan wode :
& warliche heō hudden.	and warliche heom hudde.
alle bute tweien :	al bote tweie :
toward þan kīge heo weoren beien.	þat to þan king wende.
and iuunden þene kīg :	And hii funde þane king :
þær he wes an flæting.	þar he was an hontyng.
& him to cleopeden :	and hii him cleopede :
quiçkere ſtæuene.	mid ſwiþe loude ſtemne.
Hiderward lauerd king :	Com hider louerd king :

proceeded 'all in safety, and after' a mile 'they [and] rested a while. And 'every courtier they greeted fair, and' 'mildly through all [ever among other] things [they] asked where the king was. And *the* courtiers taught them where they might find him, where he 'was [hunted] in a wood, in a wilderness, 'after [hunted] a 'wild' boar,—he bought 'him full [that well] sore! The churls went to the wood, and warily hid them, all except two;—'toward the king they were both [that to the king proceeded]. And [they] found the king where he was a-hunting; and [they] called to him with 'quick [very loud] voice: [Come] hither'ward,' lord king, [and] we will to

[1] hii wende?

[2] amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

we þe wulleð cuðen a wunderlic and we þe wolleþ teche.
þing. [f. 70b. c. 1.]

of ane fwulche bare: of one wilde bore:
þe her is bi-halues. þat her his bi-fidē.
vnder ane berhȝe: vnder one borewe:
þer he burh hafueð i-chofen. þar he him reſteþ. [f. 59. c. 1.]
ne iherde we næuere on liue:
tellen of fwulche fwine.
ȝif þu þider wult riden: ȝef þou þider wolt ride:
þer he þe abideð. þar he þe abideþ.
Þer fore wes þe king glad: Her fore was þe king glad:
& þiderwærd wes swiðe ræd. and þiderwardes he rod.
& þa cheorles him biuoren: and þe cheorles him bi-fore:
beien to-gædere. beine to-gadere.
Þa cheorles up þreowē: Þe cheorles vp þreuwen:
þene king heo icneowen. þā king icnewen[1].
& heo hine niðer fetten: and hine adun þreuwe:
& al hine to-heowen. ad[2] al hine to-hewe.
Þus Gratien þe king: Þus Gracien þe king:
for ut an flæting. vt wende an hontīge.
Sone hit wes ouer al ifeid: Sone hit was ouer al ifeid:
þat þe luðere king wes dæd. þat þe luþer king was dead.
þa weoren inne Bruttene: þo was gladniſſe:
bliſſen inowe. iſiȝe to londe.

thee 'make known [teach] a wondrous thing,' of 'such a [a wild] boar, that here is aside under a mount, where he 'hath chosen *his* lair [he him resteth];—'never heard we tell alive of such *a* swine!'—if thou wilt thither ride, where he abideth thee." The king was 'therefore [herefore] glad, and 'thitherward was ready [thitherwards he rode]; and the churls before him, both together. The churls started up, the king they knew, and 'they' threw him down, and hewed him all in pieces. Thus Gracien the king went out a-hunting! Soon it was over all said, that the wicked king was dead; then 'were in Britain blisses enow [was gladness come to-land],

[1] hii cnewen? [2] *R.* and.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ah ſone þer æfter:		ac ſone þer hafter:
ſorȝen heō weoren ȝiueðen.		ſorhþe was riue.
Þa wes æuer ælc cheorl:		Þo was eche cheorl:
al ſwa bald alſe an eorl.		ſo bolde ſo an eorl.
& alle þa gadelīges:		and alle þe gadelinges:
alſe heo weoren ſunen kinges.		aſe hit were kinges.
Þis word com to wel iwhare:		
hu þe king wes iuaren.		
comen fæ-liðende men:		
uorð into Irlonde.	10	
& funden þer ful iwis:		Comē men foliwis:
Melga & Wanis.		to Melga and Wanis.
& talden heom tiðende:		and ȝam tidinge tolde:
al of þiſſen londe.		al of þiſſe londe.
hu hit al wes iuaren:		ou hit al was ivare:
& þ cheorles næfdē nane kare.		and þe cheorles nadde none care:
& hefden al þis kine-lond:		and was al þat kinelond:
iſet a cheorlene hond.		hii-ſette in cheorlene hond.
Þa weoren glade ful iwis:		Þo weren glade foliwis:
Wanis. Melga & Wanis.	20	Melga and Wanis.
& ſeiden þ heo walden:		and ſeide þat hii wolde:
toward þiſſen londe.	[c. 2.]	toward þiſſe londe.
Mid muchelere uerde:		Mid mochele ferde:
heo comen to þiſſen ærde.		icome[1] to þiſ erþe.

but soon thereafter 'sorrows were given to them [sorrow was rife]! Then was 'every [each] churl as bold as an earl, and all the gadelings as '*if* they [it] were 'sons of' kings! 'This word came every where, how the king had fared. Seafaring' men came 'forth into Ireland and found there' full truly [to] Melga and Wanis, and told them tidings all of this land, how it all was done; and that *the* churls had no care, and 'had [was] set all 'this [the] kingdom in churlish hand. Then were glad full certainly Melga and Wanis, and said that they would *go* toward this land.

[1] hii come?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
heo hæfden of Gutlonde:	hii hadde of Gutlond:
ut-laȝen ſtronge.	vtlaȝes ſwiþe ſtrong.
of Neorewæi & of Denemarke:	of Denemarche and of Noreweie:
men swiðe ſtarke.	men ſwiþe kene.
& of Yrlonde:	and of Yrlonde:
Gillemaur þene ſtronge.	Gillomaur þan ſtronge.
of Scottene heo hafdē:	
alle þa hæhſtē.	
& of Galeweoðe:	
gumen ſwiðe kene.	
& ſwa heo gunnen wenden:	And ſo hii gonne wende:
ut to Norðhūberlond.	in to þan norþ ende.
ahten heo nomen:	hii barnden hii ſlowen: [c. 2.]
folc heo þer ſloȝen.	
caſtles heo arardē:	
& ahneden þa arde.	
þa burhȝen heo nomen:	borwes hii nomen.
& al þ heo neh comē.	
Þa iſeȝen Bruttes:	Þo iſehȝen Bruttes:
þ balu wes on lōde.	þat wo was in londe.
nuſten heo nænne ræd:	nadde hii nadne[1] read:
heo wenden alle wurðen dæd.	hii wende alle beo dead.
Sondē heo nomen ſone:	Sonde hii neme ſone:

With *a* great army they came to this country; they had of Gothland outlaws [most] strong, of Norway and of Denmark men most 'bold [keen], and of Ireland Gillemaur the strong; 'of Scotland they had all the highest, and of Galloway men most keen.' And so they gan wend 'out [in]to 'Northumberland; goods they took, folk there [the north end; they burnt] they slew; 'castles they areared, and took possession of the land; the' boroughs they seized, 'and all that they came nigh.' When *the* Britons saw that 'bale [woe] was in *the* land, they 'knew [had] no counsel, they weened all to be dead. Messengers they took soon, and sent 'toward [to]

[1] *R.* nanne.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ſenden toward Rome.
& beden heore are:
þa & auere mære.
ȝif heo heom wolde helpen:
to hæȝere neode.
a to heore liue:
heo walden heom[2] liðe.
& luue to heom halden:
ȝif heo heom helpen wolden.
þis word wes iſend:
bi write ſwiðe deore[3].
& þat writ wes irad:
imæg[4] þan Rom-leden.
þa ſpeken ſone:
þæ wiſſeſte of Rome.
Bi vfelen iwurhten:
ſculden we heom to wenden.
for Gratien heo floȝen:
his men heo for-foren.
& neoðeles we heom ſcullen ſendē:
ferde of þiſſen ærde.
of þiſſen ænde:
ænne ælpi verde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ſende to Rome.
and beden hire ore:
þo and euere more[1].
ȝef hii ȝam wolde helpe:
to þan ilke neode.
and euere wil hii lifde:
lofue ȝam hi wolde.

þis word was iſende:
bi writ ſwiþe deorne.
and þat writ was irad:
a-mang Romleode.
þo ſpekē ſone:
þe wiſeſt of Rome.
Mid luþer wille:
ſolde we ȝam helpe.
Gracien iſlowe[5]:
and of houre men inowe.
and noþeles we ham ſolle [ſende]:
cnihtes i-nowe.

Rome, and prayed their favor, then and evermore, if they would them help at 'great [that] need, [and] ever 'in their lives [while they lived] they would 'be obedient to [love] them, 'and love to them hold, if they them would help.' This word was sent by *a* writ most secret, and the writ was read among 'the' Rome-folk. Then spake soon the wisest of Rome: "'By evil desert [With ill will] should we 'go to [help] them, 'for' Gracien they slew, [and] 'his [of our] men 'they destroyed [enow]. And nevertheless we shall send them 'forces of this land, [knights enow."] a little troop of this country."

[1] *In the MS. the words* beden hire hore *are written by negligence a second time, after* more.

[2] beon heom? [3] deorne? [4] imæng? [5] hii ſlowe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
Vt heo ſendē of Rome :/	Vt hii ſende of Rome :/	
cnihtes wel idone.	cnihteſ wel idone.	
fif and twenti hundred :/ [f. 71. c. 1.]	fif and twenti hundred :/	
comen in to Lūden.	come to Londene.	
& buden al þa ferde :/	and gadere al þe ferde :/	
of Brutlondeſ ærde.	of Brutlondeſ erþe.	
& ferden forð ful iwis :/	and verden forþ foliwis :/	
to Melga & Wanis.	to Melga and to Wanis.	
& heo fehten heom wið :/	and hii fohten heom wiþ :/	
& floȝen heore uerde.	and flowen hire ferde.	
& heo fulf mid ærhſcipe :/	and hii mid harþſipe :/	
arndē to heolde.	to þan wode flowe.	
& letten flæn heore folc :/	and lette flean hire folk :/	
heore vnimete uerde.	in euereche ſiſe[1].	
& heo feolf liðden forð :/	and hii flowe forþ :/	
biuoren Scotlonde.	bi norþe Scotlonde.	
& Febus heom æfter :/	and Phebus him[2] hafter :/	*Febus.*
mid hiſ Romaniſce cnihten.	mid Romaniſſe cnihtes.	
ah heo ne mihten for nane þīgen :/	ac he ne mihte for noþing :/	
Melgan iuīden.	Melga i-finde.	
& heo bi-gunnen feorlic :/	And hii bi-gonne verlich :/	
ane swiðe deope dich.	anne ſwiþe deope dicħ. [f. 59ᵇ. c. 1.]	
& þer ouen on ouer al :/	and þar vp on oueral :/	

They sent out of Rome brave knights; five and twenty hundred came 'in'to London, and gathered all the host of Britains land, and marched forth full surely to Melga and [to] Wanis; and they fought with them, and slew their forces; and they '*them*selves' with difficulty fled to 'hold [the wood]; and caused their folk to be slain, 'their innumerable host [on every side]. And they '*them*selves' 'proceeded [fled] forth 'before [by north of] Scotland, and Febus after them, with 'his' Romanish knights, —but 'they [he] might not for any thing find Melga. And they began quickly a ditch exceeding deep, and thereupon over all a 'strong' stone

[1] ſide?

[2] ham?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ænne ſtrongne ſtanene wal.	one ſtonene wal.
bi þere ſæ ſtronde:	bi þare ſéć ſtronde:
bi-ſide Scotlonde.	biſides Scotlond.
þer weoren æuere iwuned:	þar were euere iwoned:
þe vt-laȝen to londen cumen.	vtlawes to londe come.
& seoððe heo heom dihten:	and ſuþþe he hit dihte:
to bi-witen þa dich mid cnihten.	to witie hine mid cnihtes.
þa dic & þa wal weoren ȝare:	þe dich and þe wal weren ȝare:
þa næfde Bruttes nane kare.	þo nadde Bruttef nanne care.
aȝan heo gūnen wenden:	aȝen hii gonne wende:
to þare burh of Lūden.	to þare borh of Londene.
& Febus of Rome:	And Phebus of Rome:
huſtinge bad ſone.	heold þar ſpeche ſone.
þer com moni richę mō:	þar com mani riche eorl:
to þan huſtinge anan.	
moni cniht moni eorl:	
moni þein mōi cheorl.	mani cniht mani cheorl.
moni riche burh-mon:	mani riche borh-man:
þer wende beon bliðe anan.	þat wende beo bliþe anon.
þa ſorhfulle weoren an heortē:	þat sorþfolle eoden:
ær þe dæi weoren agan.	her þe dai a-gon were.
Febus þe feire cniht:	Phebus þe faire cniht:
lette beoden his ferde uorð riht.	bed his ferde forþriht.
þ heo comen to huſtinge:	

wall by the sea-strand beside Scotland, where 'the' outlaws were ever accustomed to come to *the* land. And afterwards 'they [he] prepared 'them [it] to guard 'the ditch [it] with knights. The ditch and the wall were ready (completed), then had *the* Britons no care; back they gan wend to the burgh of London. And Febus of Rome 'assembled *a* husting [held there *a* conference] soon; there came many *a* rich 'man [earl] 'to the husting anon'; many knight, 'many earl, many thane,' many churl, many rich burgher 'there [that] weened to be blithe anon, who 'were 'in heart [departed] sorrowful ere the day were passed. Febus the fair knight 'caused his host to be assembled [bade his host] forth-right, '*so* that they should come to husting with all their troops; and the swains at

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid alle heore þringe.	
& þa ſweines at hærberwē :/ [c. 2.]	
letten heore horſ[1] wel ȝærwen.	
& makien þa heorſ al ſwa ȝare :/	make hire hors alle ȝare :/
ſwa heo ſculden forð faren.	aſe hii ſolde anon vare.
& al þat folc duden þuſ :/	
ſwa hit hæhte Febus.	
& ſwa heo gunnen wenden :/	
to heore huſtinge.	
þa þat folc wes al icumen :/	
& ælc hiſ ſtude hafde inomen.	
þa hehte me luſten :/	
inne Lundene.	
þa ſtod him up Febus :/	þo ſtod vp Phebus :/
þe riche cniht and ſeide þuſ.	þe riche cniht and ſaide þus.
Luſteð me nu Bruttes :/	Luſteþ me nou me[2] Bruttes :/
þe her beoð bihalueſ.	þat here beoþ bi-halues.
ich habbe eow to ſuggen :/	
ſoð word of Rome.	
ȝe uſ ſende ſonde :/	ȝeo vs ſende ſonde :/
in to ure londe.	in to Rome londe.
of þare ſorhȝe ful iwis :/	of þane wo foliwis :/
þe eow duden Melgan & Wanis.	þat ou dude Melga and Wanis.

their quarters to cause their horses (?) to be well prepared; and' to make 'the [their] horses all 'as' ready, as *if* they should 'forth [anon] march. 'And all the folk did thus as Febus commanded it, and so they gan proceed to their husting. When the folk was all come, and each had taken his place, then silence was commanded in London.' Then stood 'him' up Febus, the rich knight, and said thus: "Listen to me now, Britons, that here are beside; 'I have to say to you sooth words from Rome.' Ye sent us messengers into 'our [Rome] land, of the 'sorrow [woe] full truly that Melga and Wanis did to you. 'And I with my army came to this country,'

[1] *Sic MS.*

[2] *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& ich mid mire ferde ⁊	
com to þiſſen ærde.	
& ich habbe eower iuā ⁊	and ich habbe ȝoure fon ⁊
iualled to þan grunde.	afulled to þan grunde.
& iſlemed ut of ærde ⁊	and iſlemid vt of erþe ⁊
Melgan buten uærde.	Melga boute ferde.
Nu we maȝen to ȝere ⁊	Nou we maȝe to ȝere ⁊
careles wunien here.	careles wonie here.
of þare ilke uerde ⁊	
þe iſlaȝen iſ on ærde.	
ȝe uſ habbeð ofte imaked wrað ⁊	Ac ȝe vs habbeþ ofte imaked wroþ ⁊
þer uore inne Rome ȝe beoð lað.	þar fore in Rome ȝe beoþ loþ.
for ofte ȝe uſ habbeð at-halden ⁊	for ofte ȝeo habbeþ at-holde ⁊ [c. 2.]
þat gauel of þiſſen londe.	þat feo of oure londe.
& æc we[1] habbeoð ufele idon ⁊	and eke ȝe habbeþ vuel idon ⁊
iflæȝe þene king Gratien.	iflaȝe þane kīg Gracien.
& ofte ȝe uſ bi-hateð ⁊	and ofte ȝe vſ bi-hoteþ ⁊
treoðe to halden.	treuþe to holde.
& æuere a þan ænde ⁊	ac euere a þan endc ⁊
ȝe wakieð an hōde.	ȝeo wakieþ an honde.
We habbeð for eower luuē ⁊	We habbeþ for oure loue ⁊
iloſed ure leoden.	ilore of vre leode.
cnihtes i þiſſen londe ⁊	cnihteſ iñ þiſſe londe ⁊
an hundred þuſende.	an hundred þuþend[2].
seoððen Juliuſ Ceſar ⁊ [f. 71ᵇ. c. 1.]	

and I have felled your foes to the ground, and driven out of *the* land Melga, without *his* host. Now may we at present dwell here careless 'of that host which is slain in *the* land.' [But] ye have oft made us wrath, therefore in Rome ye are odious! For oft ye have withheld from us the 'tribute [fee] of 'this [your] land, and eke ye have done evil,—slain the king Gracien; and oft ye promise us to hold troth, 'and [but] ever in the end ye weaken in hand (break pledge). We have for your love lost [of] our people, a hun-

[1] ȝe?

[2] *R.* þuſend.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ærſt bicō her.	
ah ſwa we ibiden are:	ac ſo ic ibide ore:
nulle we no mare.	nolle we ſo na more.
ah we wulleð ſone:	ac we wolleþ ſone:
uaren in to Rome.	wende aȝen to Rome.
& bi-tachē eow þiſ kine-lond:	and bi-take ȝou þis kinelond:
& haldeð hit on eowre hond.	to ȝoure owene hond.
& bruked hit mid vnne[1]:	and broukeþ hit wel euere:
for nulle we nauere mare:	for vs ne ſe ȝeo neuere.
aȝan cōmen here.	
We habbeð of þiſſe londe:	
ihaued monie þuſend punde.	
þa we habbeð her bi-ſoht:	
ah heo beoð ful deore aboht.	
we beoð ofte hider ifaren:	
mid wandreðe & mid fare.	
& nu ȝe maȝen wel don:	
bifecheð eow wepnen a-nan.	
& werieð eow ſeoluē:	werieþ nou ȝou ſeolue:
wið vncuðe leoden.	wiþ oncouþe leode.
Neoren eower ælderen:	Nere ȝoure heldre:
aðelene cæppen.	ſtaleworþe cnihtes.
heōne to Rome al þ lond:	hinene to Rome:

dred thousand knights in this land 'since Julius Cæsar first arrived here.' But as 'we [I] pray for grace we will [so] no more! But we will soon go 'unto [back to] Rome, and deliver you this kingdom; 'and hold *ye* it' in your [own] hand, and possess it 'with joy [well ever], for 'we will never more again come here [us ye see never*more*]. 'We have had of this land many thousand pounds, that we have here acquired, but they are full dear bought, *for* oft we are (have) hither come, with trouble and with sorrow. And now ye may do well; procure to you weapons anon, and' defend [now] yourselves against foreign folk. Were not your ancestors 'noble fellows

[1] *The first letter of* vnne *is sup. ras. R.* wunne, *as in f.* 140. *c.* 1. *A line is also here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ſtod on heore aȝere hond.	ſtod at hire dome.
& al þat lond þat heo iſeȝen:	al þat hii i-ſeh of lond:
ſone heo hit bi-wunne.	hii wonne to hire oȝe hond.
al heo hit biwunnen:	al þif hi bi-wonne:
mid heore ahte wæpnen.	mid hire main ſtronge.
Ah makieð in eowre londe:	
caſtles ſwiðe ſtronge.	
and werieð eowre þeode:	
wið vncuðe leode.	
& wunieð her hal and hæil:	wonieþ here niht an dai:
& habbeð alle godne dæie.	and nou ich wolle fare min way.
Þa þeos word weoren [isæid]:	Þo þeos wordes weren iſeid:
þa wes her a ſtrōg ræd.	þo was þar a ſtron[1] read.
næs nauere þe mon iboren:	nas neuere þe man ibore:
inne nare burhȝe.	in none borewe.
þe auere mihte tellen:	þat al mihte [telle]:
þurh nane ſpellen.	mid worde no mid ſpelle.
of þere muchele ſærinæſſe:	half þe foriniſſe:
þa iſiȝen wes to folke.	þat i-ſeȝe waſ to londe.
Þa weoren inne Lundenne:	
laðliche iberen. [c. 2.]	
þer wes wop: þer wes rop:	þar was wop þar was cri:

[strong knights]? hence to Rome 'all the land' stood 'in [at] their 'own hand [will]; 'and' all 'the [of] land that they saw, 'soon' they won 'it' [to their own hand]; all they 'it [this] won with their 'brave weapons [strong might]. 'But make *ye* in your land castles very strong, and defend your country against foreign folk; and' dwell here 'whole and hale [night and day], and 'have *ye* all good day! [now I will go my way]." When these words were said, then was 'here [there] an evil chance; never was the man born in any burgh, that 'ever [all] might tell, 'through any [with word nor with] story, 'of the great [half the] sorrow that was come on *the* 'folk [land]! 'Then were in London dreadful cries'; there was weeping, there was 'lament [cry], and sorrow 'unmeet [too much], 'when

[1] ſtrong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
& reoðen vnimete.	and rouþe to falè.	
þa þeo Rom-leoden:		
riden toward fcipene.		
& Bruttes bilafdē:		
innè þiffe londe.		
mid vnimete reoðe:		
ne cuðe heo ræd nænne.		
þas tiðinde ful iwis:	þes tidinge foliwis:	
iherde Melga & Wanis.	hi-horde Melga and Wanis.	*Melga. Wanis.*
heo hefden ane verde:	hii [hadde] hane ferde:	
of vnimete folke.	of onimetè folke. [f. 60. c. 1.]	
& heo gunnen wenden:	and hii gonne wende:	
in to Norh-hūberlond.	into Norþhumberlonde.	
ȝeōnd þ lond heo arnden:	oueral hii arde[1]:	
and flozen & barnden.	and flowen and barnde.	
& swa heo forð wenden:	and so hii forþ wende:	
þat heo comen to þan walle.	þat hii comen to þan walle.	
þeo þa Rom-leoden:	þat þe Romleode:	
hæfden aræred.	hadde þar arered.	
Bruttef weoren wið innen:	Bruttes were wiþ inè:	
mid fwiðe feole monnen.	mid fwiþe fale māne.	
& Melga wið vten:	and Melga wiþ houte:	
& ȝeorne wes abutē.	and ȝeorne was a-boute.	
hu he mihte aȝeinnen:	hou he mihte a-winne:	
þ he weorē bimnen[2].	þat he were wiþ ine.	

the Rome-folk rode toward *their* ships, and left *the* Britons in this land, with sorrow unmeet;—they knew no counsel!' Melga and Wanis heard these tidings full certainly; they had an army of innumerable folk, and they gan wend into Northumberland; over [all] 'the land' they ran, and slew and burnt, and so they forth proceeded until they came to the wall that the Rome-folk had [there] areared. *The* Britons were within, with very many men, and Melga without, and earnestly was about how he might win *so* that he were within. They 'rushed to the wall, *the* bold thanes';

[1] arnde?

[2] *R.* binnen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Heo ræſden to þan walle:	
ræiȝe þeines.	
ſomned alle þa uerde:	Hii gaderede al þe ferde:
ſcole cunnen ærde.	of mani cunnes erþe.
þa dich wes ſwiðe wid & deop:	þe dich was ſwiþe wid and deòp:
& þa ferde to-leop.	and þe ferde to-leop.
& Bruttes weoren igærede:	And Bruttus weren igadered:
& þene wal weoredon.	and þane wal werede.
heo ſcuten in: heo ſcuten ut:	hii ſoten in hii ſoten vt:
ſcalkes þer feollen.	mani man þar folle.
arwen fluȝen ouer wal:	harwe floȝe oueral:
al abuten ouer al.	al abou[1] þe wal.
swa þicke wes heore uæræ:	
swulc hit haȝel wæren. [Buttes:	
þat for þa arewen ne mihte þa	þar fore ne mihte Bruttuf:
ȝemen manes[2] fihtes.	hire wal ȝime.
ah a-dun of þan walle:	
iwendē heo alle.	
& ſetten to fleme:	hii ſette to fleonde:
feondliche ſwide[3]. [f.72.c.1.]	feondeliche ſwiþe.
& þa oðer breken þane wal:	And þe oþer breken þane wal:
& eoden binnen ouer al.	and eoden in oueral.
& after heo droȝen:	and after droȝen:

gathered all the force of many kind of land;—the ditch was very wide and deep, and the host to*ward it* leapt. And *the* Britons were 'prepared [gathered], and defended the wall; they shot in, they shot out,—'men [many *a* man] there fell,—*the* arrows flew over '*the* wall [all] all about 'over all [the wall]; 'so thick was their flight, as if it were hail,' '*so* that for the arrows [therefore] 'the' Britons might not 'maintain any fight [guard their wall], 'but down from the wall they all went, and' [they] began to flee exceeding quickly. And the others brake the wall, and passed 'with'in over all, and after 'they' pursued, and 'greatly them [many there]

[1] aboute? [2] nanes? [3] ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& fwuðe heom floȝen.	and mani þar of-floȝen.
heo floȝen þer muchel wunder:	and floȝe þare mochel wonder:
twa & fifti hundred.	two an twenti hundred.
al of Brutten feoluē:	al of feolue Bruttef:
wið uten þan Scotten.	wiþ houte þe Scottef.
& wið utten þan Dænfcæn:	and wiþ houte Denfe:
þa inne þere dic bi-læfden.	þat in þan dich leie.
þus iþæh þif kinelōd:	þus i-þeh þif kinelond:
a þere Bruttene hond.	ine Bruttene hond.
Whæren Bruttes:	Wile were Bruttus:
cnihtes icorene.	icnowe gode cnihtes.
ah nu heo weoren alle:	ac nou hii beoþ wel neh:
fwiðe for-lorene.	a-falle to þan grunde. [c. 2.]
ne beoþ heo neuere hæȝe:	þat ne worþ hii neuere hehere:
buten heo hælp habben.	bote hii help habbe.
of oðere moncunne:	of oþer mancunne:
for heo feolf ne cunne.	for heom feolf noht ne conne.
þuf ferde ful iwif:	þus ferde foliwis:
Melga & Wanif.	Melga and Wanis.
þa Bruttes of Lundene:	þe Bruttes of Londene:
to Rome fende fone.	to Rome fende fonde.
bedē heom fwiðe cumen,	and beden fwiþe come:
& don alfe heo ær weoren iwuned.	and do alse hii were iwoned.
þat heo arædde þis lond:	þat hii a-redde þif lond:

slew; 'they [and] slew there great wonder,—two and 'fifty [twenty] hundred, all of *the* Britons *them*selves, without the Scots, and without the Danes, who in the ditch 'remained [lay]. Thus throve this kingdom in 'the' Britons hands. [Whilom] *the* Britons were 'chosen [known good] knights, but now they 'were all greatly deteriorated; [are well nigh fallen to the ground, *so* that] they never will 'be high [become higher], unless they have help of other men, for 'they' *of* [them]selves can not [aught]!—Thus fared full truly Melga and Wanis. The Britons of London sent 'soon [messengers] to Rome, [and] bade them come quickly, and do as they 'ere' were accustomed, that they should rule this land, and take

52383

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& nomen hit al to heore hond.	and neme hit to hire owe hond.
for heom heo hit vðē:	
bet þane þan vncuðen.	
Þa ȝeuen heo þuf anfwære:	Þo ȝefuen hii foch anfwere:
Nulle we nauere þider faren.	Nolle we neuere þider fare.
to þolien þat fwuc[1] & þ iwin:	
aȝæn þat heðene cun.	
for þat if goddes wiðer-fake:	
Wanif ihaten.	
& Melgan his iuere:	
nulle we nauere cumen þere.	
þ if al þe ende:	þat his al þe ende:
nulle we þuder wende.	nolle we þider wende.
an oðer halue we habbeoð:	
mare þene we maȝen an-hebben.	
Nes þer nā oðer andfwere:	Nas þar non oþer anfwere:
& þas fondēgunnē aȝæn faren. [c. 2.]	þe fondes gonne aȝen fare.
¶ Þa heo aȝan comen:	Þo hii aȝen come:
þa Bruttes from Rome.	þe Bruttus fram Rome.
þa tiðinde talden:	þe tidinges tolde:
þe Romleoden heom falden.	þat hii ham helpe nolde.
þa wes Lundene folc:	þo was Londenes folk:
mid forȝen ibunden.	mid moche wo ibunde.

it 'all' to their [own] hand, 'for they would grant it to them better (rather) than to the strangers.' Then gave they 'thus [such] answer: "We will never go thither 'to endure the toil and the conflict against the heathen race,—for that *man* is Gods enemy named Wanis, and Melga his companion, —we will never come there'; that is all the end (conclusion), we will not thither go; 'on *an*other side we have more than we may up-hold.'" Was there no other answer, 'and' 'these [the] messengers gan return. When they came back, the Britons from Rome, *they* told the tidings that '*the* Rome-folk gave them [they would not them help];—then was 'London

[1] fwinc?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa wes þer an ærchebiſcop:
þat wes hali mon igod[1].
& mid godde ſwiðe hæh:
Guencelin ihatē.
He ſende his ſonde:
ȝeond alle Brutlonde.
æfter alle þan clæreken:
þe godes lare cuðen.
alle þaie ihade gumen:
hiȝendliche him to comen.
& heo ful ſone:
to Lundene comen.
Þuſ Guencelin heom ſpæc wið:
Mid uſ wunien godes grið.
þat if on latī ful iwis:
þat me ſæið Pax vob.
& heo heo[3] him ſeiden forn to:
Et cum ſpũ tuo.
Þa bi-gon he lar-ſpæl:
& of gode ſpæc ſwide[4] wel.
A þan daȝen þat[5] ſeit[6] Pauwel:
weſ þe ærchebiſcop ſtol.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þo was þar an archebiſſop:
þat was holy man and god.
and mid god ſwiþe heh:
Gwenſelin i-hote.
He ſende his ſonde:
oueral Brutlonde.
after alle þe clerekes:
þat godes lore couþe.
alle þe hodede gomes:
hiȝenliche to him come.
and hii fol ſone:
to londe[2] come.
Þus Gwencelin heom ſpac wiþ:
Mid vs wonie godes griþ.
þo bi-gan he lorſpel:
and heō likede ſwiþe wel.
In þan daiȝe at ſeint Poul:
was þe archebiſſopes ſtolle.

Guen-[celin].

[Londons] folk with 'sorrow [much woe] bound! Then was there an archbishop, who was *a* holy man and good, and most high with God, named Guencelin. He sent his messengers over all Britain, after all the clerks that knew Gods lore, all the hooded men, speedily to come to him; and they full soon to London came. Thus spake Guencelin with them: "With us dwell Gods grace!"—'that is in Latin full truly what men say "Pax vobis!" And they said again to him, "Et cum spiritu tuo!"' Then began he *a* discourse, and 'of good spake [*it* liked to them] most well. In those days

[1] & god?
[2] Londene?
[3] *Redundant?*
[4] ſwiðe?
[5] *Written at first* þant, *but* n *expuncted.* *R.* at?
[6] *R.* ſeint.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& wel feole ȝere:	
þe ærchebiſcopes weoren þere.	
ah seoððen þa ſcīt Auſtin com:	ac ſuþþe ſeint Auſtin com:
hit wes to Cantuare-buri idon.	he was to Cantelburi idon. [f. 60ᵛ. c. 1.]
Nu ſeide Guencelin:	Nou ſeide Gwencelin:
þa wes þa heolie mon.	þat was þe holie man.
Luſteð lauerdindes[1]:	Luſteþ louerdlinges:
of ure tiðendeſ.	of houre tidinges.
þa þes haðene mon:	lo[2] þiſ heþene man:
þe if ihatē Melgan.	þat his ihote Melga.
& Waniſ & heore uerde:	and Wanis his i-vere:
habbeð ibroht to þiſſen ærde.	habbeþ ibrohte to þiſ erþe.
& wulleð þeſne criſtindom:	and wolleþ þiſne criſtendom:
al for-faren & for-don.	wolleþ[3] for-fare and for-don.
& ich wulle habben leue:	And ich wolle habbe lefue:
forð ich wulle liðen.	hinene to wende.
& ouer ſæ wenden: [f. 72ᵇ. c. 1.]	
to ſūme hæȝe kinge.	to ſomme hehȝe kinge:
& bidde þane hæȝe king:	
þat hæ[4] uf hælpen þurh alle þing.	and feche helpinge.
& ȝif ich mai iuīden:	And ȝef ich mai iſinde:
to ſpeken wið ſwulche kinge.	to ſpeke wiþ ſoche king.
þenne wulle ich wel fain:	þan wolle ich wel fain:

the archbishops stool was 'then' at Saint Pauls, 'and well many years the archbishops were there,' but since 'that' Saint Austin came, it was removed to Canterbury. Now said Guencelin, who was the holy man: "Listen, lordings, of our tidings, that this heathen man who is named Melga, and Wanis 'and their host [his comrade] have brought to this land, and will 'all' destroy and annul this Christendom. And I will have (take) leave; 'forth I will go [hence to depart], 'and over sea pass' to some high king, 'and pray the high king,' 'that he help us through all things [and seek help]. And if I may find to speak with such king, then

[1] lauerdinges? [2] þat? [3] *Redundant.* [4] *R.* he.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

cumen hidere aȝæin.
oðer alleſ næuere mare:
nulle ich cummen here.
& ȝe bidden for me:
on eower bare cneowen.
& habbeð alle godne dæi:
cumē ich wulle ȝif ich mai.
Þa wes þat folc færi:
& forhful on heorte.
ne biden nauere Brutware:
an heore liue ſwulche care.
Forð wende Guencelin:
& his clærkes mid him.
riht forð to þere ſæ:
þær heom fæl þuhten.
Scipen heo þer funden:
& ſone in wenden.
& heo ful ſone:
ou? sæ comen.
in to Bruttaine:
þer foren heo weoren faine.
þa þe king Maximien:
ȝæf þan eorle Conaan.
ah dæd weſ þa Maximiæn:
swa wes þe kīg Conaan.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

come hider a-ȝein.
oþer elles neuere more:
nelle ich comen here.
And ȝeo bidde for me:
vppe ȝoure bare cnouwes.
and habbeþ alle godne dai:
ich wolle come wane ich mai.
Þo was þat folk fori:
and forþfolle on heorte.
nadden hii neuere here:
ſo mochel care.
Forþ wende Gwencelin:
and his clerkes mid him.
riht to þare ſéé:
þar heom beſt þohte.
Sipes hii funden:
and ouer ſéé comē.
into Brutaine:
þat Conan hadde wile.

will I well fain come hither again, or else nevermore will I come here. And pray ye for me 'on [upon] your bare knees; and have *ye* all good day, I will come *back* 'if [when] I may." Then was the folk sorry, and sorrowful in heart; '*the* Britons [they] never had 'in their lives such [ere so much] care! Forth went Guencelin, and his clerks with him, right 'forth' to the sea,—where *it* seemed best to them. Ships 'there' they found, and 'soon in went, and they full soon' over sea came into Bretagne,—'therefore they were fain,'—that 'the king Maximian gave the earl Conan [Conan awhile had], 'but dead was then Maximian, so was the king Conan.' But

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
[*Aldro*]*ein.* Ah Aldroein hæhte his ſune:	Ac Aldroim heh[1] hehte his ſone:
þe wes of Conaan icumen.	þat was of Conan icome.
Brutaine þ lond:	he hadde þo Brutaines lond:
he hafde al in his hond.	al in his owe hond.
Armoriche hæhte þat lond:	
ah þene nome hit loſede an hond.	
Androgien[2] wes þer king:	Aldroim was þare king:
vnder him wes moni hæh dring.	and hadde mani herdling.
Guencelin to þan kinge com: [c. 2.]	Gwencelin to þan king come:
& he hine lette wel a-fon. [fot:	and he lette hine faire vnder-fon.
þe ærchebiſcop feol to þes kinges þar þe archebiſſop: [c. 2.]	
& bæd hine biðenche uppen godd.	fulle to þis kinges fot.
Lauer[3] king Aldroein:	and ſeide louerd Aldroim:
ofte þe wurðe godd fæin.	ofte þe worþe god fain. [ſone:
Iþench þ þu weore Conaanes ſune:	Bi-þenche þat þou were Conanes
of Bᵘtten þu ært al icumen.	al of Bruttef icome.
ich æm icumen to ſpeken þe wið:	and ich ham icome to þeode:
& ȝeornnen þe liues grið.	for oure mochele neode.
In to ure londe beoð icumen:	þar beoþ to oure londe icome:
twæine hæþene gumen.	tweie heþene gomes.
Melga & Wanis:	Melga and Wanis:
muchel ufel heo doh us.	mochel wo hii doþ vs.

his son hight Aldroein, who was of Conan begotten; he had [then] 'Bretagne the [Bertagnes] land all in his [own] hand. 'Armoriche hight the land, but the name it lost in hand.' Aldroein was there king; 'under him was [and had] many 'noble thane [subjects]. Guencelin came to the king, and he caused him to be 'well [fairly] received; [there] the archbishop fell to 'the [this] kings feet, and 'prayed him to think upon God [said]: "Lord 'king,' Aldroein, oft may God be gracious to thee! Bethink that thou wert Conans son, of Britons 'thou art' all descended. [And] I am come to 'speak with thee, and yearn of thee grace of life [*thy* land, for our great need]. 'In'to our land [there] are come two heathen men, Melga and Wanis; much 'evil [woe] they do to us. They have of our land all

[1] *Redundant.* [2] *R.* Aldroein. [3] Lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo habbeoð of ure londe:
al þene norð ende.
& fwiðe we beoð auæred:
þ heo nu nabben mare.
& ȝet heo þencheð ufele don:
to fallen þæne criſtindom.
& turne to heðeneſſe:
þa hæȝe & þa læſſe.
For þi fader nom of Brutlonde:
alle þa cnihtes ſtronge.
& moni þuſend ladde to Rome:
Maximien þe wel idone.
& nu liggeð of-flaȝen:
þa heo bilæfden an ure daȝen.
& þus is Brutlondes ærd:
of folke bidæled.
Sonde we ſende to Rome:
& bedē þ heo comen.
and heo uf habbeoð worð[2] iſend:
bi vre ſond-monnen.
þat we don þ bezſte þat we muȝen:
for nulleð heo nauer māre cūmen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hii habbeþ of oure londe:
al þane norþ ende.
and we beoþ adrad fore:
leſte he[1] habbe nou more.
And hii þencheþ mochel vuel don:
to falle þane criſtendom:
and teorne to heþenniſſe:
þe more and þe laſſe.
For þi fader nam al þe ſtrengþe:
of Brutlond.
and mani þuſend ladde:
Maximian to Rome.
and nou liggeþ of-flaȝe:
þat hii blefde bi hire daȝe.
and þus his Brutlond:
of cnihtes bi-reifed.
Sonde we ſende to Rome:
and bede þat hii comen.
and hii anſwerede wordes ſore:
þathiinolleþþatlondhelpenamore.

the north end, and 'greatly [sorely] we are 'afraid that [adread lest] they now should have more. And 'yet' they think [much] evil to do, to destroy the Christendom, and turn to heathendom the 'high [greater] and the less. For thy father took all the 'strong knights [strength] of Britain, and Maximian 'the brave' led many thousands to Rome, and now lie slain what they left 'in our [by their] days; and thus is 'Britains land [Britain] of 'folk [knights] bereaved. Messengers we sent to Rome, and prayed that they should come; and they 'have sent word to us [answered sore words] 'by our messengers,' that 'we should do the best that we might, for' they would 'never more come [no more help the land]; but 'order [bid]

[1] hii?

[2] word?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ah hateð us bi-winnen:	ac biddeþ vs a-winne:
hælp ȝif we cunnen.	help ȝef we conne.
& habbeð iqueðen us ſcere:	and habbeþ icweþe vs ſcere:
nu & auere mare.	nou and euere more.
Ah wel mæi dō hu hit ga: [f. 73. c. 1.]	Ac wel mai don ou ẖit go:
for wræcches we beoð æuere ma.	for wrecches we beoþ euere mo.
Whilen weoren Bruttes:	Wile weren Bruttes:
þa bezſte men of londe.	þe beſt mē on lond. [f. 61. c. 1.]
al þ heo bigunnen:	al þat hi bi-gonne:
al heo hit biwūnen.	al hii hit a-wonne.
Nu heo beoð ouercumen:	Nou beoþ hii ouercome:
æiðer iflaȝen & inomen.	and iflawe and inome.
& awæi ivaren mid Maximian:	
& mid þi uader Conaan.	
þ mif[1] þer bileued wel neh nan:	þat nis þar bi-leffed non:
þ auere beo æi tale on.	þat euere eni tale beo on.
Ah þu ært of uſ cunne:	Ac þou har of houre cunne:
of us naue þu nane ſūne.	
help us nu for þu miht:	helpes nou mid winne.
ælles we habbeoð muchel pliht.	
Þus ſpæc þe ærchebiſcop:	Þus ſpac þe archebiſſop:
þ Aldroein king hit vnder-ſtod.	þat Aldroin king hit vnderſtod.
þe king gon ſiche ſare:	and he gan ſike ſore:

us to obtain help if we can; and have declared us quit now and evermore. But well may do (*it* is sufficient?) how *so* it goes, for wretches we are evermore! Awhile were Britons the best men 'of [on] land; all that they began, they it all won. Now they are overcome, 'either [and] slain, and captured, 'and away departed with Maximian,' with thy father Conan,' *so* that there is not left 'well nigh' one, that ever should be of any estimation. But thou art of our kin; 'of us thou hast no fault;' help 'us' now, 'for thou mightest [with joy], 'else we have mickle danger.'" Thus spake the archbishop, *so* that Aldroein *the* king understood it; [and] 'the king [he] gan sorely to sigh, [*so* that there] tears 'gan to' glide 'from him,' and

[1] *R.* nif.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

him gunnen glide teores.
& urnen his æȝene:
þat his hired-men hit iſeȝen.
Þa ȝæf þe king andſwære:
& wiþ Guencelin he ſpæc þus þēr.
Ich eow wulle helpen:
mid hæȝere ſtrēgðe.
ich þe wullen bitæchen:
twa þuſend cnihtes.
þat ſcullen beon þa bezſte:
þæ wunieð inne Brutene.
& Coſtātin minne broðer:
swulcne nat ich nænne oðer.
swa wid swa if þes dæi liht:
nat ich nenne betere cnihte.
ne nat ich a wærulde riche:
cniht his iliche.
makieð hine lauerd:
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.
Þa axede Aldroein þe king:
his deore broðe[1] Coſtantin.
& he forð rihtes: [c. 2.]
bitahte him þa cnihtes.
Forð ferde Coſtantin:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat þar glide teres.
and vrnen his eȝene:
þat al hit i-ſeȝe.
Þo ȝaf þe king anſwere:
and wiþ Gwencelin ſpac þus þarè.
Ich ou wole helpe:
mid heȝere ſtrengþe.
ich þe wolle bi-take:
two þouſend cnihtes.
þat ſollen beo þe beſte:
þat wonieþ in londe.
and Conſtantin mine broþer:
ſoch not ich non oþer.
not ich nanne betere cniht:
in þiſſe worle riche.
makeþ hine louerd:
of al Brutlondes erþ.
Þo cleopede Aldroim þe king:
his leofue broþer Conſtantin.
and he forþrihtes:
bi-tock him þeos cnihteſ.
Forþ wende Conſtantin: *Coſtan[tin].*

his eyes ran, *so* that 'his courtiers [all] saw it. Then gave the king answer, and with Guencelin 'he' spake thus there: "I will help you with great strength; I will deliver to thee two thousand knights, that shall be the best that dwell in 'Britain [land], and Constantin my brother,—I know not such another; 'as wide as is this daylight,' I know not any better knight, 'nor know I' in [this] worlds realm 'knight his like (equal)';—make *ye* him lord 'over [of] all Britains land." Then 'asked [called] Aldroein the king his dear brother Constantin, and he forth-right delivered him 'the [these] knights. Forth went Constantin, and the archbishop with him;

[1] *R.* broðere.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& þe ærchebiſcop mid him.	and þe archebiſſop mid him.
& þe king him ſeolf walde uaren:	and þe king him ſeolf wolde fare:
ah[1] of Frenſce monnen he hæfde	ac of þe Frence he hadde care.
Hiderward wende: [kare.	Hider ward wende:
Coſtantin þe hende.	Conſtantin þe ende.
and al his uerde iſund:	and alle his mid i-ſunde:
at Totteneis heo cōen a lond.	at Totenas comen a lond.
þeder[2] com þe ohte mō:	þider come þeos cnihtes:
wælla wel wes he ibon.	alle wel idiht.
& mid him twa þuſend cnihten:	
ſwulche na king ne æhte.	
Forð heo gunnen liðen:	Forþ hii gonne wende:
in to Lundenne.	into Londene. [c. 2.]
and ſenden æfter cnihtē:	and ſende after cnihteſ:
ȝeōd þ kineriche.	ouer al þan londe.
and æuerælc oht mon:	and euerech oht man:
þ hiȝenliche come anan.	hiȝenliche come a-non.
þet iherde Brutteſ:	þat ihorde Bruttus:
þer heo wuneden i þan puttes.	þar hii wonede in puttes.
inne eorðē & inne ſtockes:	in eorþe and in ſtockeſ:
heo hudeden[3] heō alſe brockes.	hii hudde ham aſe brockes.
i wuðe i wilderne:	
inne hæðe & inne uærne.	
þ ne mihte wel neh na man:	þat ne mihte wel neh no mā:

and the king himself would go (have gone), but of [the] French'men' he had care (anxiety). Hitherward proceeded Constantin the fair, and all his 'host' in safety; at Totnes 'they' came ashore; thither came the 'bold man,—well was he brave!—and with him two thousand knights such *as* no king possessed [these knights, all well dight]. Forth they gan march into London, and sent after knights over [all] the 'kingdom [land], and every brave man, 'that' speedily 'he should come [to come] anon. *The* Britons heard that,-where they dwelt in 'the' pits; in earth and in stocks they hid them as (like) badgers, 'in wood *and* in wilderness, in heath and in fern,' *so*

[1] & *pr. m.* [2] þeoder *pr. m.* [3] huddeden *pr. m., but* d *expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
nenne Brut iuinden.	nanne Brut finde.
buten heo weoren in caſtle:	bote he were in caſtle:
oðer ẏ burhȝe icluſed uaſte.	bi-cluſed ſwiþe faſte.
þat[1] heo iherden of þiſſen worde:	þo hii horde þis word:
þ Coſtantī wef an ærde.	þat Conſtantin was in eorþ.
þa comen ut of munten:	þo com þar vt of wilderne:
moni þuſend monnē.	mani þuſend manne.
heo leopen ut of þan wuden:	
swulc hit deor weoren.	
Liðen toward Lundenne:	Wende toward Londene:
moni hundred þuſend.	mani þuſend manne.
bi ſtraten & bi waldē:	
al hit forð hælden.	
& þa æhte wifmen: [[f. 73b. c. 1.]	and ſtilleworþe wifmen:
wæþmōnef claðes duden heom on.	wepmenne cloþef dude heom on.
& heo forð wenden:	and alle forþ geinde:
towward þere uerde.	toward þare ferde.
þa iſæh þe eorl Coſtantin:	þo i-ſeh þe eorl Conſtantin:
al þis folc cumen to him.	al þis folk come to him.
þa wes he ſwa bliðe:	þo was he ſo bliþe:
ſwa he nes næuer ær an liue.	ſo he nas neuere on lifue.
Forð heo nomen heore wæi:	Forþ hii nemen hire wai:
twa niht & enne dæi.	two niht and one dai.

that well nigh no man might find any Briton, except 'they [he] were in castle 'or in burgh' inclosed [most] fast. When they heard 'of' this word, that Constantin was in *the* land, then came out of '*the* mounts [wilderness] many thousand men; 'they leapt out of the wood as if it were deer.' Many 'hundred' thousand [men] marched toward London, 'by street and by weald all it forth pressed;' and 'the brave [peaceful] women put on them mens clothes, and 'they [all] forth journeyed toward the army. When the earl Constantin saw all this folk come to him, then was he so blithe as he was never 'ere' in life. Forth they took their way two nights and a day,

[1] þa?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þ heo comen ful iwis :	þat hii come foliwis :
to Melga & Wanif.	þar was Melga and Wanis.
To-gadere heo ræſden :	To-gadere hii reſde :
mid ræȝe ſtrengðe.	mid reȝere ſtrengþe.
fuhten feodliche[1] :	
feollen þa uæie.	
ær þe dæi weorē agan :	her þe dai was agon :
iflaȝen wes Waniſ & Melgan.	iflaȝe was Melgan and Wanis.
& Peohtes inowe :	and Peutes inowe :
& Scottef vnifohȝe.	and Scottef onnifowe.
Denſce & Noreniſce :	Denſe and Norweniſſe.
Galewaȝes & Irreiſce.	Galeweies and Yriſſe.
þa while þat þe dæi wes liht :	þe wile þat þe dai waſ liht :
ilæſte auere þis flæht.	euere ilaſte þat fiht.
þa com hit to þan æuen-time :	þo hit com to þan eue-time :
þa cleopeden þe æorl Coſtantin.	þo ſaide þe eorl Conſtantin.
& bad þa wæi-witᵊe :	þat wei-wittie :
for-ærnen þa watᵊes.	hernde to þe wateref.
and ſnelle men toward þære ſæ :	and ſnelle men to þe ſéé : [f. 61ᵇ, c. 1.]
þet þer heom ſculden ſechen.	for to heom kepe.
þe mon þe ifeȝen þat gomen :	þe man þe ifchȝe þe game :
hu forð gengden þa quenen.	ou forþ geinde þe cwenes.

so that they came full truly 'to [where was] Melga and Wanis. Together they rushed with stern strength, 'fought fiercely,—the fated fell!' Ere the day 'were [was] gone, slain was Wanis and Melgan, and Peohtes enow, and Scots without number, Danes and Norwegians, Galloways and Irish. The while that the day was light lasted ever 'this slaughter [the fight]. When it came to the eventime, then 'called [said] the earl Constantin, 'and bade' that guides should ride to the waters, and active men 'toward [to] the sea, 'that should seek them there [for to guard them]. The man that saw (should have seen) the game, how the women forth marched over woods and 'over' fields, 'over hills and over dales [towns

[1] feondliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ȝeond wudes & ȝend feldes:	ȝeond wodes and feldes:
ȝeond hulles & ȝeond heldes.	tounes and teldes.
whær ſwa heo funden:	war ſo ifunde[1]:
æine mon at-wūden.	eni man at-wonde.
þe weore mid Melga:	þat were mid Melga:
þan hæðene kinga.	þan heþene kinge.
þa quenen lude loȝen:	þe cwenes loude lowe:
& al hine to-droȝen.	and al hine drowe.
& beden for þere ſeole:	
þ hire neuere fæl nere.	
þus þa Bruttiſce quenen:	þus þe Bruttesſe cwenes:
moni þuſend aq"lden.	[c. 2.] mani þuſend cwelde.
& þuſ heo areden þæſne kinedon[2]:	and þus hii aredde þiſne kinedom:
of Wanis & of Melgan.	of Wanis and of Melgan.
& Coſtantin þe ohte:	And Conſtātin þe hahte:
ferde to Selechæſtre.	wende to Cireceſtre.
& heold his huſtinge:	hand heold þar his ſpeche:
of alle his Brut þringen.	mid bolde his Bruttes.
alle þa Bruttes:	
buȝen to þan mote.	
& nomen Coſtantin aðeling:	Brutteſ nemen þeos aþeling:
and makeden hine Bruttene kīg.	and makede Conſtantin king.
muchel wes þa murðe:	moche was þo þe murþe:

and coverts], wheresoever they found any man escaped, that were with Melga, the heathen king, the women loud laughed, and tore him all in pieces, 'and prayed for the soul, that never should good be to it.' Thus the British women killed many thousands, and thus they freed this kingdom of Wanis and of Melga. And Constantin the brave marched to 'Silchester [Cirencester], and held [there] his 'husting [conference] 'of all his British thanes [with his bold Britons], 'all the' Britons 'came to the meeting, and' took 'Constantin *the* [this] noble, and made 'him [Constantin] king 'of Britain',—much was [then] the mirth that was among men.

[1] hii funde ?

[2] *R.* kinedom.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þ wæs a mancunne.
& ſeoððen heo him ȝefuen wif:
wunder ane hende.
i-boren of þan hæſten:
of Bruttene þan alre bezſten.
Of þiſſen hæȝe wiue:
Coſtantin hæfuede.
ine þiſſere leode:
þreo ſunen lutle.
Hæfde þe æreſte ſune:
wel neh hiſ fader nome.
Coſtantin hæhte þe king:
Coſtanz. Coſtanz hæhte þat child.
þa þis child wes iwaxen:
þ hit cuðe riden.
þa lette hiſ fader hit munekien:
þurh luðere mönene ræde.
& þ child munec wes:
inne Winchæſtre.
Aft[9] him wes iboren an oðer:
þe wes þe midleſte broðer.
Aurelius. he wes ihaten Aureli[9]:
his to-nome hæhte Ambroſi[9].
þa wes alre laſt iboren:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat was mid mancunne.
And hii him ȝeuen a wif:
þat was swiþe hende.
ibore of þan heheſt:
of al Brutleode.
Bi þiſſere wifue:
Conſtantin hadde.
þreo ſones lutle:
ine þiſſe londe.
Hadde the ereſt ſone:
wel neh þe fader name.
Conſtantin hehte þe king:
and þe child Conſtance.
þo þat child waſ iwox:
þat hit couþe ride.
þo lette his fader hine monaki:
þorh luþer mannef lore.
and þat child monek was:
in Wincheſtre.
After him was an oþer:
þat was þe middel broþer.
he was ihote Aurelius: [c.2.]
his toname was Ambroſius.
þo was alre laſte ibore:

And 'afterwards' they gave him [a] wife, 'one wondrous [that was exceeding] fair, born of the highest, of 'Britain the best of all [all Britons]. By this 'noble' wife Constantin had in this land three little sons. The first son had well nigh 'his [the] fathers name; Constantin hight the king, 'Constance hight the child [and the child Constance]. When this child was waxed, that it could ride, then his father caused 'it [him] to be made *a* monk, through counsel of wicked men; and the child was *a* monk in Winchester. After him was born another, who was the middle brother; he was named Aurelius, his surname 'hight [was] Ambrosius. Then was last of all born a child that was well 'chosen [disposed]; he was named

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
a child þat wes wel icoren.	a child þat was wel itowe.	
he wes ihaten Vther:	he was ihote Vter:	*Vther.*
his aðelen weore ſtore.	his dedes weren gode.	
he wes þe ȝungeſte broðer:		
ah he leouede lēgere þane þa oðere.		
Guencelin þe ærchebiſcop:	Gwencelin þe archebiſſop:	
þe toward gode weſ ful god.	þat touward god was ſwiþe god.	
he bi-wuſte þa twa childere:	bi-wuſte þeos children:	
for luue of þan kinge.	for leue[1] of þan kinge.	
Ah wale þat heore fader: [f.74.c.1.]	Ac wolawo þat hire fader:	
na lengere ne moſte libben.	no lengere ne moſte libbe.	
for he hafde gode laȝen:	for he hadde gode lawes:	
þa while þe he luuede.	þe wile þat he lifuede.	
alī he nes king here:	ac he nas king here:	
buten twælf ȝere.	bote twealf ȝere.	
& feoðden wæs þæ king dæd:	and þo was þe king dead:	
hercne nu þurh wulcne ræd.	hercne nou þorh woche read.	
He hafde in his huſe ænne Poht:	He hadde in his houſe one Peut:	
hende cniht and ſwi[2] aht.	a cniht ſwiþe kene.	
he uerde mid þan kinge:		
& mid alle his dringē.		
nanes weies oðer:	mid þan king he nas non oþer:	
bute al ſwa hiſ bºðer.	bote aſe hit were his broþer.	

Uther, his 'virtues [deeds] were 'strong [good]; 'he was the youngest brother, but he lived longer than the others.' Guencelin the archbishop, who toward God was 'full [most] good, 'he' took charge of 'the two [these] children, for love of the king. But alas! that their father might live no longer!—for he had good laws the while that he lived; but he was king here but twelve years, and then was the king dead,—hearken now through what chance. He had in his house a Peoht, 'fair knight and most brave [a knight most keen]; he 'fared [was] with the king, 'and with all his thanes by' no other 'wise' but as [it were] his brother. Then became

[1] loue?

[2] ſwiþe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa iwarð he ſwa riche:	Þo iwarþ he ſo riche:
al his iferen vniliche.	alle oþer oniliche.
Þa þohtē he to ſwiken:	Þo þohte he to ſwike:
Coſtantin þene richen.	þane king in his riche.
he com biuoren þan kinge:	he com bi-fore þan kinge:
& feol an his cneowen.	and ful on his cnowes.
& þus leh[1] þa leod-ſwike:	
biuoren his lauerd[2].	
Lauer[3] king cū uorð riht:	Louerd king forþ riht:
Cadal. & ſpec wið Cadal þīne cniht.	ſpec wiþ Cadal þine cniht.
& ic þe wulle tællē:	and ich þe wolle telle:
of uncuðe ſpællen.	of oncouþe ſpelles.
ſwulc þu næuere ære:	soch þou neuere er:
an ærde ne herdeſt.	an erþe ne hordeſt.
Þa araſ þe king Coſtantī:	Þo aros þe king Conſtantin:
& eode forð ut mid him.	and eode forþ mid him.
ah wale þat hit nuſten:	ac walawo þat hit nuſte:
Coſtantines cnihtes.	Conſtantin his cnihtes.
Heo eoden ſwa longe forð ward:	So lond[4] hii eode forþward:
þat heo comē in ænne orchærd.	þat hii come in on horechard.
Þa ſeide þa ſwike þere:	þe[5] ſeide þe ſwike þare:
lauerd beon wit heř.	louerd beo wer[6] ere. [f.62.c.1.]
Þe ſwike ſet adun:	Þe ſwike ſat adun:

he so potent, to all 'his companions [others] unlike; then thought he to betray 'Constantin the powerful [the king in his realm]. He came before the king, and fell on his knees, 'and thus lied the traitor before his lord:' "Lord king, 'come' forth-right, 'and' speak with Cadal thy knight, and I will thee tell of strange speeches, such *as* thou never ere on earth heardest." Then arose the king Constantin, and went forth 'out' with him. But alas! that 'Constantins [Constantin his] kinights knew it not! They proceeded so long forward that they came in an orchard. Then said the traitor there: "Lord, be we here." The traitor sat down, as *if* he would

[1] leoh *pr. m., but* o *erased.* [2] lauer *pr. m.* [3] Lauerd?
[4] long? [5] þo? [6] we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
alſe he wolde holdē run.	alſe he wolde run.
& he bah to þan kinge:	and beh to þan kinge:
alſe mon dæð of runīge.	aſe man deþ rouning.
He igrap ænne cnif ſwiðe long:	He igrop ane knif wel long:
& þene kīg þer mid of-ſtong. [c. 2.]	þe king þar mid he of-ſtong.
in to þere heorte:	in to þare heorte:
& he hī ſeolf at-ſterte.	and him ſeolf atſtorte.
þer þe king dæd læi:	þar þe king dead lai:
& þe ſwike fleh awæi.	and þe ſwike fleþ awai.
þat word com to herede:	þat word coman ſone:
hu þe king iuaren hafde:	ou þe king ivare hadde.
þa weſ muchel reoðe:	þo was mochel rouþe:
& rumede[1] to folke.	ifalle to folke.
þa weoren Brutteſ:	
biſie an þonke.	
heo nᵒten þurh nane þinge:	þo nuſte Bruttus þorh noþing:
whet heo mihten to kinge.	wat hii mihte do after king.
for þas kinges ſunen tweien:	for þeos kinges ſonef beiene[2]:
lutlen heo weoren beien.	lutle weren beiene.
Ambroſie cuðe vnneðe:	Ambroſie cuþ oneþe:
riden an horſe.	ride vppe horſe.
& Vther his broðer:	and Vther his broþer:
þa ȝæt ſæc hiſ moder.	þe ȝet ſoc his moder.

'hold secret discourse [whisper], and 'he' approached to the king, as *a* man doth 'in' whispering. He grasped a knife 'very [well] long, 'and' the king therewith [he] pierced into the heart; and 'he' himself escaped, —there the king dead lay, and the traitor fled away. The tidings came 'to court [soon], how the king had fared; then was mickle sorrow 'spread [fallen] to *the* folk. Then 'were' *the* Britons 'busy in thought, they' knew not through anything what they might '*have* for [do after *a*] king, for 'the [this] kings two sons, little 'they' were both. Ambrosie could scarcely ride 'on [upon] horse, and Uther, his brother, the yet (still) sucked his mother;

[1] irumed?

[2] tweien?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& Coſtance þe aldeſte :/
wef i Winchæſtre.
munec claðes he hauede an :/
alſe an of his iueren.
Þa comen to Lundēne :/
al þif leodiſce folc.
to heore huſtinge :/
& to ræden heō of kinge.
wulche weis heo mihten don :/
& heu heo mihtē taken on.
& wulc an of þiſſen children :/
heo mihtē habben to kinge.
Þa curen þas leoden :/
Aureliæn Ambroſiā.
to habben to kinge ouer heō[1].
Þ iherde Uortiger :/
ȝæp mō & ſwide[2] war.
imong þan eorlen he ſtod :/
& faſtliche hit wiðſoc.
& he þus ſæide :/
soð þæh hit nære.
Ich eow wulle ræden :/
ræd mid þan bezſten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þe heldeſte monek was :/
ine Wincheſtre.

Þo comen to Londene :/
alle þeos Bruttes.
to one ſpeking :/
for reade ȝam of kinge.
woche weies hii mihte don :/
and ou hii mihte taken on.
and woche of þiſſe childrene :/
hii mihte maken to king.
Þo choſen þeof leoden :/
Aurelia Ambroſie to abbe to kinge.

Þat ihorde Vortiger :/
ȝep man and ſwiþe war.
amag[3] þeos eorles he ſtod :/
and faſteliche wiþſock.
and þus ſaide :/
ſoþ þoh hit neore.
Ich ou wolle reade :/
read mid þan beſte.

and 'Constance' the eldest was [monk] in Winchester; 'monks clothes he had on, as one of his companions.' Then came to London all 'this landfolk [these Britons], to 'their husting [a conference], 'and [for] to advise them of *a* king, what wise they might do, and how they might take on, and which 'one 'of these children they might 'have [make] for king. Then chose this people Aurelie Ambrosie, to have for king 'over them.' That heard Vortiger, *a* crafty man and most wary; among 'the [these] earls he stood, and firmly withstood 'it,' and 'he' thus said,—sooth though it were not: "I will advise you counsel with the best; abide *a* fortnight, and come 'we'

[1] *A line here seems wanting.* [2] ſwiðe? [3] amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
abideð feouwertene niht:' [f. 74b. c. 1.]	abideþ fourtene niht:' [c. 2.]
& cumen we æft her riht.	and comeþ eft hider riht.
& ich eow wullen ſuggen:'	and ich ou wolle ſegge:'
ſoðdere[1] wordes.	ſoþere wordes.
þat mid eower eȝenen ȝe ſcullen iſeō:'	þat mid ȝoure ehene ȝeo ſolle iſeo:'
& eowre while wel bi-teon.	and ȝoure wile wel beo teo[2].
þiſ ilke we ſcullen ibiden:'	þis ilke we ſolle abide:'
& to ure londe þa while riden.	and to oure homes ride.
& halden grið & halden vrið:'	
freoliche on ærde.	
Al duden þat hird:'	Alle dude þat folk:'
ſwa Uortiger demde.	ſo Vortiger demde.
& he him ſeolf wende:'	and he him ſeolf wende:'
al ſe he walde to his londe.	al ſo he wolde of londe.
& turnde riht þene wæi:'	and tornde riht þane way:'
þe in to Wīchæſtre lai.	þat touward Wincheſtre lai.
Vortiger hafde Waliſc lond:'	Vortiger hadde Walſ lond:'
ꝥ haluendæl an his hond.	haluendeal in his hond.
feouwerti cnihtes gode:'	fourti cnihtes gode:'
he hauede on his hirede.	he hadde to i-vere.
He wende to Winchæſtre:'	He wende to Wincheſtre:'
þer he Coſtanz funde.	þar he Conſtance wiſte.
& ſpæc wið þæne abbod:'	and bad leue of þe abbod:'

eft right 'here [hither], and I will say to you sooth words, *so* that with your eyes ye shall see, and your while well bestow; this same *time* we shall abide, and to our 'land [homes] 'the while' ride, 'and hold amity and hold peace, freely in land.'" All the folk did as Vortiger deemed; and he himself went as *if* he would *go* 'to his [from] land, and turned right the way that 'into [toward] Winchester lay. Vortiger had Welshland 'the' half-part in his hand; forty knights good he had 'in his retinue [for companions]. He proceeded to Winchester, where he 'found [knew] Constance, and 'spake with [asked leave of] the abbot 'who governed the monastery where

[1] ſoððere?

[2] be-teo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe þat mūſter biwat.	
þer Coſtanz wes munec:	
þas kinges ſune of Bruttene.	
He wende in to þan muneſtre:	
mid mildere ſpeche.	
he fæide þat he wolde:	
ſpeken wiþ Coſtance.	for ſpeke mid þan childe.
þe abbed hit him uðe:	
& he hine ladde to ſpæc-huſe.	
þus ſpæc Vortiger:	þus ſpac Vortiger:
wiþ þene munec þa þær.	wiþ þan childe þo þer.
Cuſtanz hærene minne ræd:	Conſtance herene mine read:
for nu if þi fader dæd.	nou his þi fader dead.
þer is Ambroſie þi broðer:	þar his Aurelie þi broþer:.
& Vther þe oðer.	and Vther þe oþer.
Nu habbeð þa ælde:	Nou habbeþ alle Bruttes:
þa aðeleſte an londe.	
icorē Aurilien: [c. 2.]	Aurelie hii-choſe to kinge.
his to-nome if Ābroſien.	
ȝif heo maȝen þurh alle þīg:	
heo wulleð makien hine king.	
& Vðer þi broðer:	
sukeð ȝet his moder.	
Ah ic heom habbe wiþ-fæid:	Ac ich ham habbe wiþ-ſed:

Constance was monk, the kings son of Britain. He went into the monastery with mild speech; he said that he would' [for to] speak with 'Constance [the child]. 'The abbot granted it to him, and he led him to *the* speech-house.' Thus spake Vortiger with the 'monk [child] then there: "Constance, hearken my counsel, 'for' now is thy father dead. There is 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] thy brother, and Uther the other. Now have 'the elders [all *the* Britons], 'the noblest in land,' chosen Aurelie,—'his surname is Ambrosie,—if they may through all things they will make him' [for] king; 'and Uther, thy brother, yet sucketh his mother.' But I have opposed them, and think to 'forsake [withsay], for I have been steward of all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& for-ſake þenche.	and wiþſegge þenche.
for ich habben ibeon ſtiward:	for ich habbe i-beo ſtiward:
of al Brutlōdes ærd.	of al Brutlondes erþ.
& eorl ich æm riche:	and eorl ich ham riche:
mine iueren vniliche.	mine ·veref oniliche.
& ich habbe Walſce lond:	
haluēdæl in mire hond.	
mare ich habþe ane:	more ich habbe one:
þane þa oðere al clæne.	þane þe oþer alle cleane.
Ich æm icome to þe:	Ich ham icome to þe:
for monne leofueſt ært tu me.	for manne lefueſt hart þou me.
ȝif þu wult me ſwærie aðes:	ȝef þou me wolt ſwerie oþes:
ich wulle don of þe þas claðes.	ich wolle don of þes cloþes. [f.62b.c.1.]
ȝif þu wult æchen mi lond:	ȝef þou wolt eche mi lond:
& þin ræd don in mire hond.	and þi read do in mine hond.
& makien me þinne ſtiward:	and makie me þin ſtiward:
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.	of al Brutlondeſ erþ.
& þurh mine ræde:	
don al þine dæde.	
& þu wulle me an hōd plihtē:	and wolt me an hond plihte:
þ ich hit ſcal al dihtē.	þat ich hit al ſal dihte.
ich þe wulle þurh alle þing:	ich þe wolle þorh alle þing:
makien Brutlondes kīg.	makie Brutlondeſ king.
Þes munec ſæt wel ſtille:	Þis monek was wel ſtille:
þa ſpæche him eode an wille.	þeos ſpeche him eode at wille.

Britains land, and earl I am potent, unlike to my companions, 'and I have Welshland half-part in my hand'; more I have alone than the others all clean. I am come to thee, for dearest of men thou art to me; if thou wilt swear to me oaths, I will take off 'thee' these clothes, if thou wilt increase my land, and thy counsel place in my hand, and make me thy steward 'over [of] all Britains land, 'and through my counsel do all thy deeds,' and *if* 'thou' wilt pledge me in hand, that I shall rule it all, I will through all things make thee Britains king." This monk 'sate [was] well still, 'the [this] speech went to him at (at his) will. Then answered

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa andſwarede þe munec :/	þo anſwerede þe monek :/
mid muchelere liſte.	mid ſwiþe gode wille.
Wel wurðe þe Vortiger :/	Wel worþe þe Vortiger :/
þat þu ært icumen her.	þat þou euere come her.
ȝif auere mare cumeð þæ dæi :/	ȝef euere more come þe dai :/
þ ich king beon mæi.	þat ich king beon mai.
al mi ræd & al mi lond :/	al mi read and mi lond :/
ich wulle don i þire hond. [f. 75. c. 1.]	ich wolle don in þine hond.
& al þat þu wult don :/	
mine men hit ſcullen vnder-uon.	
& aðes ich þe ſwerie :/	and ich þe wolle ſwerie :/
þat þis ich wulle uorien.	þat ich þe ſwike ncolle.
Þuf ſeide þe munec :/	Þus ſaide þe monek :/
he murnede ſwiðe.	he mornede ſwiþe.
hu hit al weore :/	ou hit allef were :/
þat he[1] munec neore.	monek þat he nere.
for him weorē blake claðes :/	for him were blake cloþes :/
wunder ane laðe.	wonderliche loþe.
Vortiger [wes] ȝæp[2] & war :/	Vortiger was ȝep and war :/
þat he cuðe[3] wel iwar.	þat he tahte wel þar.
he nom ane cape :/	he nam one cloke :/
of his ane cnihte.	of his one cnihte.
on þene munec he heo dude :/	and on þe monek he hire dude :/

the monk with 'much delight [exceeding good will]: "Well worth thee, Vortiger, that thou 'art come [ever came] here; if evermore cometh the day that I may be king, all my counsel and 'all' my land I will place in thine hand, 'and all that thou wilt do, my men shall accept it.' And 'oaths' I [will] swear to thee, that 'this I will further [I will not deceive thee]." Thus said the monk; he mourned greatly how else it were, that he were monk; for to him were black clothes wondrously odious. Vortiger was crafty and wary,—that he 'made known everywhere [well shewed there],—he took a 'cape [cloak] of a knight of his, [and] on the monk he

[1] *This word is inserted by a later hand.* [2] wæp *pr. m.* [3] cuðde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ladde hine ut of þan ſtude.	and ladde hine vt in þe ſtude.
he nom ænne ſwein anan ⁊	and nam one ſwein a-non ⁊
and þa blake claðes dude him on.	and þe blake cloþes dude him on.
& heold rune wið þane ſwæin ⁊	and heold roun wiþ þe ſwein ⁊
swulc hit þe munec weore.	alſe hit þe monek were.
Munekes eoden vpward ⁊	Monekes eoden vpward ⁊
munekes eoden dunward.	monekes eodes[1] dunward.
iſeȝe[2] bi þan weien ⁊	hii ſehen bi þe wowes ⁊
þane ſwein mid munec claðen.	þe ſwein mid monekes cloþes.
þe hod[3] hongede adun ⁊	
alſe he hudde his crune.	
wende æche oðer ⁊	alle hii wende ⁊
þat hit weoren[4] heore broðer.	þat hit hire broþer were. [c. 2.]
þe þer fæt ſwa fære ⁊	þat alle þan dai-lihte ⁊
i þa ſpæc-huſe.	ſete in ſpec-huſe.
a þan dæi-lihte ⁊	
imong alle þan cnihten.	
Heo comen to heore abbede ⁊	þe monekes eode to hire abbod ⁊
& hine gretten þurh gode.	and hine grette þorh god.
Lauerd benedicite ⁊	Louerd benedicite ⁊
we beoð icumen biuoren þe.	we beoþ icome to-vore þe.
for ſellic uſ þuncheð ⁊	for wonder vs þincheþ ⁊

put it, and led him out of the place; 'he [and] took a swain anon, and the black clothes put on him, and held secret discourse with the swain, as *if* it were the monk. Monks passed upward, monks passed downward; they saw by the 'way [walls] the swain with monks clothes; 'the hood hanged down as *if* he hid his crown'; 'each one [they all] weened that it were their brother, who 'there' sate 'so sorry' in 'the' speech-house, 'in [all] the daylight, 'among all the knights.' 'They came [The monks went] to their abbot, and greeted him in Gods *name*: "Lord, benedicite, we are come before thee, for 'strange [wonder] *it* seemeth to us what Vortiger thinketh in

[1] *R.* eoden.
[2] heo ſeȝen?
[3] *Inserted in the margin by a later hand.*
[4] n *is struck out sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
whet Vortiger þencheð.	wat Vortiger þencheþ.
in ure ſpæc-huſe:	in vre ſpec-houſe:
þer he ſpel haldeð.	*þare he ſpel holdeþ.*
þurh ut þeſne dæi:	[[c. 2.] *þorh vt þiſne dai:*
na munec þer in cumen ne maie.	*no monek þare ine come ne mai.*
buten Coſtanz ane:	
& þa cnihtes al clane.	
sære we adredeð:	sore we a-dredeþ:
þat heo him miſ-ræden.	þat he him miſ-reade.
þa anſwerede þe abbed:	þo anſwerede þe abbod:
Næi ac heo him radeð god.	Nai ac he redeþ him god.
biddeð hine haldē his hod:	biddeþ hine holde his hod:
for nu is his fader dæd.	for nou his his fader dead.
Vortiger þer abed:	Vortiger þa . abod:
þe while Coſtance awæi rad.	wile Conſtance awai rod.
Vortiger up araſ:	Vortiger forþrihtes:
of þan mūſtere vt lað.	
& alle his cnihtes:	mid alle his cnihtes.
ut wenden ford[1] rihtes.	vt wende a-non:
Munekes þer urnen þider anan:	and monekes Conſtance ſohten.
wenden to uinde Coſtance.	
þa iſeȝen heo þa claðes:	þo iſehȝen hii þe cloþes:
liggen bi þan waȝes.	ligge bi þe wowes.

our speech-house, where he holdeth discourse; throughout this day no monk may come therein, 'except Constance alone, and the knights all clean.' Sore we dread, that 'they [he] him 'miscounsel [miscounsels].'" Then answered the abbot; "Nay, but 'they counsel [he counselleth] him good; '*they* bid [*he* biddeth] him hold his hood (holy order), for now is his father dead." Vortiger there abode 'the' while Constance away rode. Vortiger 'up arose, from the monastery departed' 'and [with] all his knights out went [anon] forth-right. [And] *the* monks 'there ran thither anon, *they* weened to find [sought] Constance; when they saw the clothes lie by the walls, then each

[1] ford?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa ælcā to oðer:	þo ech to oþer:
mænden of heore broðer.	mende hire broþer.
þe abbed an horſe leop:	þe abbod vppe his horſe leop:
& æfter Uortiger rad.	and after Vortiger rod.
& ſone gon of-ærne:	and ſone gan of-herne:
þe eorl Uortigerne.	þane eorl Vortigerne.
þuf ſeide þe abbed:	þus ſpac þe abbod:
to Vortigerne þer he rad.	to Vortiger þar he rod.
Seie me þu wode cniht:	Sai me þou wode cniht:
whi deſt þu swa muchel vnriht.	wi deſt þou ſo moche onriht.
þu bi-nineſt[1] us ure broðer:	þat bi-nemeſt vs houre broþer:
let hine & nim þene oðer.	bi-lef and nim on oþer.
nim Ābroſie þat child:	nim Aurelie þorh alle þing:
& make of him ænne king.	and make þar of anne king.
& newrað þu noht Sæint Benediht:	ne wraþþe þou noht ſeint Benediht:
ne do þu him nā vnriht.	ne do þou him non onriht. [f.63.c.1.]
þiſ iherde Uortige[2]:	þis ihorde Vortiger:
he wes ȝæp & ſwiðe iwar.	he was ȝep and ſwiþe war.
sone he aȝan com:	sone he aȝein com:
& þe abbed he nom.	ād þan abbod he nom.
& swor bi his hōdē:	and ſwor bi his honde:
þat he hine wolde an-hongē. [f. 75b. c. 1.]	þat he hine wolde an-honge.
buten he him plihte:	bote he wolde onhodi:

to other lamented their brother. The abbot leapt 'on [upon his] horse, and after Vortiger rode, and soon gan overtake the earl Vortiger. Thus 'said [spake] the abbot to Vortiger where he rode: "Say me, thou mad knight, why dost thou so great wrong? 'Thou [that] takest from us our brother;—leave 'him,' and take 'the other [another]. Take 'Ambrosie the child [Aurelie, through all things], and make 'of him [thereof] a king, 'and' anger thou not Saint Benedict, nor do thou to him any wrong!" Vortiger heard this,—he was crafty and very wary;—soon he came back, and the abbot he took, and swore by his hand, that he would him hang, unless 'he

[1] *R.* bi-nimeſt. [2] *R.* Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þ he wolden vorð rihtes.	
vnhadien Coſtanz:	
þas kinges ſone of þiſ londe.	þane kingeſ ſone of londe.
& for ſwulchere neode:	and for ſoche neode:
he ſculden beō kīg of þiſſere þeode.	he ſolde be king of þeode.
Þe abbed ne durſte nan oðer:	Þe abbod ne dorſte non oþer:
þar he vnhadede his broðer.	þar he on-hodede his broþ.
& þat child ȝef þan abbede an hond:	and þe child ȝuf þe abbod an hond:
twenti ſulhene lond.	twente ſolȝene lond.
& ſeoðden heo liðeden forð:	and suþþe hii wende forþ:
in to Lūdēne.	into Londene.
Vortiger þe hæȝe:	Vortiger anon rihtes:
for-bad his hired-monnen.	for-bead alle his cnihtes.
þet heo nane manne ne tælden:	þat non of ȝam ne tolde:
whæt heo hæfden on anwolde.	wat he hadde on anwolde.
Vortiger i Lundene læi:	Vortiger ine Londene lai:
þ com þe ilke iſæte dæi.	forte com þe ilke i-ſette dai.
þat ſculden to huſtinge cumen:	þat ſolde to ſpeche come:
þa cnihtes of þiſſen londe.	þe cnihtes of þiſ lōde.
To þan dæie heo comen:	To þan daie come:
monie & vniuoȝe.	manie and onifoȝe.
heo redden heo runden:	hii radden hii rouneden:
ræiȝe þa beornes.	riche þes beorneſ.
þat Ambroſie heo wolden habben:	þat hii wolde Aurelie:

him pledged, that' he would 'forth-right' unhood 'Constance' the kings son of 'this' land, and for such need he should be king of 'this' country. The abbot durst no other; there he unhooded his brother, and the child gave the abbot in hand twenty ploughlands; and afterwards they proceeded forth into London. Vortiger 'the high [anon right] forbade 'his attendants [all his knights], that 'they to no man [none of them] should tell, what 'they [he] had in design. Vortiger lay in London, until the same set (appointed) day came, that the knights of this land should come to 'husting [conference]. At the day 'they' came, many and numerous; they counselled, they communed, 'the stern [these powerful] warriors, that they would have 'Ambrosie [Au-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& to kinge hæbben.	habbe to kinge.
for Vther wes to lutel:	
þa ȝet he moſte ſuken.	
& munec wes Coſtanz:	
þe ældeſt wes of heō.	
& heo nalden for nane þīge:	
munec makiei[1] to kinge.	
þis iherde Vortige[2]:	þis ihorde Vortiger:
þe wes ȝæp [&] ſwuðe iwar.	he was wis and ſwiþe war.
& an uotē leop:	and an fot leop:
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	alſe hit a lẏon were.
Nuſten þa Bruttes na whon: [c.2.]	nuſte þar non:
whæt Vortiger hæfde idon.	wat Vortiger hadde idon.
he hæfde in ane bure:	
Coſtanz þene deore.	
wel ibaðed & iſcrud:	
& ſeoððen mid twælf cnihten ihud.	
þa ſpæc þuſ Vortiger:	þo ſpac Vortiger:
he wes of ȝæpſcipe war.	þat was ȝep an war.
Luſteð lauerd þinges:	Luſteþ louerdlinges:
þe while þe ich ſpeke of kinges.	þe wile ich ſpeke of kinges.
Ich wes i Winchæſtre:	Ich was ine Wincheſtre:
þer ich wel ſpedde.	þar ich wel ſpedde.
ich ſpæc wið þene abbed:	ich ſpac wiþ þan abbod:

relie], 'and raise' for king; 'for Uther was too little,—the yet he might suck,—and Constance was monk, who was eldest of them; and they would not for anything make *a* monk king.' Vortiger heard this, 'who [he] was crafty and most wary, and leapt on foot as *if* it were a lion. None 'of the Britons' [there] knew what Vortiger had done. 'He had in a chamber Constance the dear, well bathed and clothed, and afterwards hid with twelve knights.' Then 'thus' spake Vortiger,—'he [who] was 'of craft [crafty and] wary: "Listen, lordings, the while 'that' I speak of kings. I was in Winchester, where I well sped; I spake with the abbot, who is *a* holy

[1] *R.* makien. [2] *R.* Vortiger.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat is hali man i god[1].	þat his holi man and god.
& ſeiden him þa neode:	and tolde him þe neode: [c. 2]
þe icumen if to þiſſere þeode.	þat icome waſ to þeode.
of Coſtantines dæðe:	of Conſtātines deaþe:
þer fore him is vnneðe.	þat him fore a-þohte.
& of Coſtance þan childe:	
þe he hæfde ihalden.	
& ich bad hine for gode:	And ich him bad for lofue of god:
don þat child of hade.	don Conſtance of his hod.
& for ſwulchere neode:	and for ſoche neode:
king he ſcolde beon on þeode.	king he ſolde beo of þeode.
& þe abbed nom his ræd:	And þe abbod nam his read:
& dude al þat ich hine bed.	and dude al þat ich hine bad.
& here ich habbe hiſ munekeſ:	and here ich habbe his monekes:
þe gode beoð and mære.	
þat ſculleð witneſſe beren:	for ſegge þat ſoþe.
eowe alle biuoren.	
Leo wær here if þat ilke child:	Lo war his þe child ȝong:
makiē we her of enne king.	make we þar of one king.
& her ich halde crune:	and here ich holde croune:
þa þer to bi-houeð.	þat þar to bi-houeþ.
& þat þis wule wið-ſuggen:	and þe þis wole wiþ-ſegge:
he hit ſcal abuggē.	he hit ſal a-bugge.

man and good, and 'said [told] him the need that 'is [was] come to 'this' nation by Constantins death,—'therefore he is uneasy [that seemed to him sore],—'and of Constance the child, that he had holden.' And I bade him for [love of] God, to take off 'the childs [Constance his] hood, and for such need he should be king 'in [of] *the* country. And the abbot took his counsel, and did all that I bade him; and here I have his monks, 'who are good and chief,' 'who shall witness bear before you all [for to say the sooth]. Lo! where 'here' is the 'same' [young] child, make we 'hereof [thereof] a king, and here I hold *the* crown that thereto behoveth; and who*so* will this withsay, he shall it buy *dear*!" Vortiger was

[1] & god?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Vortiger wes ſwiðe ſtrong:	
þe hæhſte mon of Brutlōd.	
nes þer nauer nan ſwa hæh:	[f. 76. c. 1.] Naf þar neuere man ſo bold:
þat his quides durſte halſien.	þat þis wolde wiþ-telle.
Wes i þere ilke wike:	
þe ærchebiſcop forð iwiten.	
nef þer nan biſcop:	nas þar nō biſſop:
þ forð on hiſ wæi ne ſcoc.	
na munec ne nan abbed:	
þ he an his wæi ne rad.	þat ſone a-wai ne rod.
for heo ne durſtē for gode:	for hii ne dorſte for god:
don þer þa miſbode.	don þare þan miſbod.
nime þane munec child:	
& makien Brutlondes king.	
þiſ iſæh Vortig[9]:	þis i-ſeh Vortiger:
of ufele he wes wel iwar.	of alle vuele he was war.
up he gon ſtonden:	vp he gan ſtonde:
þe crune he nom an honden.	þe croune he nam an honde.
he ſetten heo vppe Coſtance:	and ſette hire vppe Conſtance:
þat him wes on þonke.	þat him was i-cweme.
Nes næuere na mam[1]:	Nas þar neuere no man:
þ don þer mihte criſtindom.	þat don þar mihte criſtendom.
þ mihte bleſſinge:	þat mihte bleſſinge:

most strong, the highest man of Britain'; was there never 'any [man] so bold that 'his words durst deprecate [this would deny]. 'In the same town was the archbishop dead'; *and* there was no bishop that 'forth on his way did not pass, nor monk nor any abbot,' that 'he on his way [soon away] did not ride, for they durst not for *fear of* God do there the wrong, 'to take the monk child, and make *him* Britains king.' Vortiger saw this,—of [all] evil he was 'well' ware; up he gan to stand, the crown he took in hand, [and] 'he' set it upon Constance,—that was to him 'in thought [pleasing]. Was there never any man that might there do Christendom, that might do

[1] *R.* man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

don in þan kinge.
bute Vortiger ane:
hit dude for alle clane.
þe frume wes vnhende:
& al swa wes[1] þe ænde.
he for-lette goddes had:
þer fore he forȝen ibad.
Þus wes kīg Costance:
& Vortiger wes hif stiward.
Constanz al his kinelond: 10
sette i Vortigeres hōd.
& al he dude an londe:
swa him sulf wolde.
Þa isæh Uortiger:
of muclen vfele he wes wær.
Þ Costanz þe kinġ:
ne cuðe of londe[3] na þing.
for he nesde ileorned:
nauer nane lare.
buten in hif munstre: 20
Þ munec scolde drigen.
Vortiger Þ isæh: [c. 2.]
þe wurse him wes ful neh.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

don vppe þan kinge.
bote Vortiger one:
hit dude for alle cleane.
þat forme was on-hende:
soch was þe hende.
he for-let godes hod:
þar vore sorewe he a-baod[2].
Þus was he king of þis erþ:
and Vortiger his stiward.
Constance al his kinelond: [f.63b. c.1.
sette in Vortigernes hond.

Þo isch Vortiger:
of moche vuele he was war.
þat Constance þe king:
ne couþe of londe noþing.
for he nadde hii-leornid[4]:
in neuere none lore.
bote wat he solde dreie:
a-mag[5] his iveres.

blessing [up]on the king, but Vortiger alone did it clean for all! The beginning was unfair, 'and also [such] was the end; he deserted Gods hood (holy order), therefore he had sorrow! Thus was 'Constance [he] king [of this land], and Vortiger 'was' his steward. Constance set all his kingdom in Vortigers hand, 'and he did all in *the* land, as *he* himself would.' Then saw Vortiger,—of much evil he was ware,—that Constance the king knew nothing of land (government?), for he had not learnt [in] ever any learning, except what 'a monk [he] should perform 'in his monastery, [among his comrades]. 'Vortiger saw that,—the Worse was

[1] *The last letter of* wes *is sup. ras.*
[2] abod?
[3] *This word is sup. ras.*
[4] *R.* i-leornid.
[5] amang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

ofte he hine bi-ðohte:
wæht he don mahte.
hu he mihte mid læſinge:
iquemen þan kinge.
Nu þu miht iheren:
hu þes ſwiken him gon uaren.
Weoren of Brutlonde:
þa bezſte alle dæde.
nu weoren þas kingeſ broðeren:
beien ful lutle.
& Guēcelin ærchebiſcop:
þer bi-forē wes dæd.
& him fulf þiſſes londes king:
of þare laȝe ne cuðe na þing.
Vortiger þiſ i-ſah:
& he to þan kinge bæh.
mid mildere ſpæche:
his lauerd he gon gretē.
Hal ſeo þu Coſtanz:
Brutlondes lauerd.
Ich æm icumen þe þuf næh:
for muchelere neode.
for ſuggen þe tiðende:
þe beoð icume to londe.
of ſwiðe muchele plihte:
nu þe bi-houeð mihte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ofte he hine bi-þohte:
wat he don mihte.
ou he mihte mid leſinge:
icweme þan kinge.
Nou þou miht ihere:
ou he gan vare.
Weren of Brutlonde:
þe beſte alle deade.
nou were þes kinges broþerf:
beiene lutle.
and Gwencelin þe archebiſſop:
þar bi-vore was dead.
and him seolf þes londes king:
of laȝe ne couþe noþing.
Vortiger þis iſeh:
and he to þan kinge beh.
mid mildere ſpeche:
he gan his louerd grete.
Haȳl beo þou Conſtance:
Bruttene louerd.
Ich ham icome þe þus neh:
for mochelere neode.
for ſegge þe tidingde:
þat icome beoþ to londe.
of swiþe mochele plihte:
nou þe bi-oueþ mihte.

full nigh him!—oft he bethought him what he might do, how he might with leasing please the king. Now thou mayest hear; how 'this traitor [he] gan 'him' fare. The best *men* of Britain were all dead; now were the kings brothers both 'full' little, and Guencelin [the] archbishop therebefore was dead, and this lands king himself of 'the' law knew nothing. Vortiger saw this, and he came to the king, with mild speech his lord he gan greet: "Hail be thou, Constance, Britains lord! I am come thus nigh thee for much need, for to say to thee tidings that are come to land, of very great danger. Now thee behoveth might, now weapons behove thee to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
nu þe bi-houeð wepnen:	nou þe bi-houeþ wepne:
to werie þinē þeodē.	to witie þine cunde.
Her beoð chæpmen icumen:	Her beoþ chepmen icome:
of oðere londen alſe hit is iwune.	of oþer londe alſe hit his wonc.
heo habbeoð ibroht to me:	
tol for heore æhte.	
and heo habbeoð me itald:	hii habbeþ me itold:
& treowðen iplihte.	wiþ forþere[1] ſpelle.
þ þe king of Norewæiȝe:	þat þe king of Norweie:
neowenliche wule hider uarē.	neuwenliche wole hider fare.
& þere Dēſemōne king:	and þe king of Denemarche: [c. 2.]
þaſ Denen wulle atſechen.	þeos Denes wole ſeche.
& þe king of Ruſie:	and þe king of Ruſie:
ræhȝeſt alre cnihten. [f. 76b, c. 1.]	reȝeſt alre cnihte.
& þe kīg of Gutlonde:	and þe king of Scotlond:
mid ferde ſwiðe ſtronge.	mid mochelere ferde.
& þe king of Friſe:	and þe king of Friſÿe:
þer uore me a-griſeð.	her vore me agriſeþ.
þa tiðende beoð ſtronge:	þeof tidinge beoþ ſtronge:
þe icumen beoð to londe.	þat icome beoþ to londe.
her uore ich æm ſwiðe adred:	her vore ich ham adrad:
for ne con ich nēne godne ræd.	for ne can ich nanne godne read.
buten we moten mid mihtē:	bote we mote mid mihte:
ſēden æfter cnihten.	ſende after cnihtes.

defend thy country. Here are chapmen arrived from other lands, as it is *the* custom; 'they have brought to me toll for their goods, and' they have told me, 'and plighted troth [with sooth speech], that the king of Norway will newly fare hither, and the 'Danish king [king of Denmark] these Danes will seek, and the king of Russia, sternest of all knights, and the king of 'Gothland [Scotland] with host 'most strong [great], and the king of Frise,—'therefore [herefore] *it* alarmeth me. 'The [These] tidings are evil that are come to land; herefore I am 'most' adread, for I know no good counsel, unless we may with might send after knights, that are good and strong, and

[1] ſoþere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat beon gode & ſtronge :/
& þat wel cunnen a londe.
& ſetten þine caſtles :/
mid kene monnen.
& ſwa þu miht þi kinelond :/
werien wiþ vnleoden.
& þīne wurhſcipe halden :/
mid hæȝere ſtrenþe.
For niſ nan kine-lond :/
na ſwa brad næ swa long.
þat ne biþ ſone inomen :/
ȝif þær biþ to lute gumen.
þenne anſwerede þe king :/
of londe ne cuþe he naþing.
Vortiger þu ært ſtiward :/
ouer al Brutlondes ærd.
& þu hit ſcalt waldē :/
æft[9] þine willen.
Send after cnihten :/
þe gode beon to fihtē.
& nim al i þire hond :/
mine caſtlef & mi lon[1].
& do al þine iwille :/
& ich wulle beon ſtille.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat beo gode and ſtronge :/
and wel conne a londe.
and fulle þine caſtles :/
mid wel gode cnihteſ.
and ſo þou miht þin kinelōd :/
werie wiþ onleode.

For nis þar no kinelond :/
ne beo hit neuere ſo ſtrong.
þat ne worþ ſone inome :/
ȝef þar beoþ to feue gomes.
þo anſwerede þe king :/
þat of londe ne couþe noþing.

Send after cnihtes :/
þat gode beon to fihte.
and nim al in þine hond :/
mine caſtles and min lond.
and do al þine wille :/
and ich wolle wonie ſtille.

'that' are well able in land; and 'set [fill] thy castles with 'keen men [well good knights], and so thou mightest defend thy kingdom against foreigners, 'and maintain thy worship with high strength.' For there is no kingdom, 'so broad nor so long [be it ever so strong], that will not soon be taken if there are too few warriors." Then answered the king,—[that] of land 'he' knew nothing,—" 'Vortiger, thou art steward over all Britains land, and thou shalt it rule after thy will.' Send after knights that are good in fight; and take all in thine hand, my castles and my land, and do all thy will, and I will be still, except 'the single [one only] thing, [that] I will

[1] lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
bute þe an læpi þing:	bote on alpi þing:
ich wulle beon icleoped king.	þat ich wolle beo icleoped king.
þa loh Uortiger:	þo loh Vortiger:
he wes of vfele fwi[1] iwær.	þat was of vuele war.
nes he nauere swa bliðe:	nas he neuere fo bliþe:
ær on his liue.	her on his lifue.
Uortiger nam læue:	Vortiger nam lefue:
& forð he gon liðe. [[c. 2.]	and forþ he gan wende.
& fwa he uorð ferde[2] al þ lond:	and fo he þorh ferde:
	al Brutlȯdes[3] erþe.
	alle þe caftles and þat lond:
he fette an hif aȝere hond.	he fette in his owene hond. [f. 64. c. 1.]
& þe monraddene he nom:	
æuere æwher he com.	
& fwa he nō his sonde:	And fuþþe he nam his fonde:
& fende to Scotlonde.	and fende to Scotlond.
& hæhte þa Pohtes:	and hehte þe befte cnihtes:
þa alre bezfte cnihtes.	þat were a-mag[4] þe Peutes.
þreo hundred him cumen to:	þreo hundred him come to:
& he heon[5] wolde wel don.	and he ȝam wolde wel fon.
And þa cnihtes him to come:	And þeos cnihtes comen:
þer æfter wel fone.	to him riht fone.

be called king." Then laughed Vortiger,—'he [that] was of evil 'most' ware,—was he never so blithe ere in his life! Vortiger took leave, and forth he gan pass, and so he [proceeded through all Britains land; all the castles and] 'all' the land he set in his own hand, 'and the fealty he took ever where he came.' And 'so [afterwards] he took his messengers, and sent to Scotland, and ordered 'the Peohtes, the knights best of all [the best knights that were among the Peutes], three hundred to come to him, and he would well 'do to [receive] them. And 'the [these] knights came to him

[1] fwiþe?

[2] *Thus written at first, but* ferde *afterwards expuncted. A line and half are evidently deficient.*

[3] *R.* Brutlondes.

[4] amang?

[5] heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII
þus ſpæc þe ſwikefulle gume:	þus ſpac þe falſe gome:
Cnihtes ȝe beoð wulcume.	Cnihtes ȝe beoþ welcome.
ich habbe i mire hond:	ich habbe in mine hond:
al þiſ kinewurðe lond.	al þis kineworþe lond.
mid me ȝe ſcullen liðen:	mid me ȝeo ſolle wonie:
for ich eow wullen luuien.	and ich ou wolle lofuie.
& ich eow wullen bringe:	
bi-uoren ure kinge.	
ȝe ſcullen habbe ſeoluer & gold:	
þe bezſte horſ of þiſ lond.	
claðes & fæire wif:	
eore wille ich wulle driȝen.	
ȝe ſculleð beon me leofue:	ȝeo ſollen beo me leofue:
for þa Bruttes me beoð laðe.	for Bruttus beoþ me loþe.
lude & ſtille:	loude and ſtille:
ich wulle.[1]	ich wolle don oure wille.
ȝif ȝe wulleð in londe:	ȝef ȝeo wolleþ oueral:
halden me for lauerd.	holde me for loud.
þa forð rihtes:	þo forþrihtes:
anſwarede þa cnihtes.	anſweredé þe cnihtes.
Al we wulleð:	Don we hit wolle:
don þine iwille.	al þine wille.
& heo gunnen wenden:	and hii gonne wende:
to Coſtace[2] þan kinge.	to Conſtance þan kinge.

'thereafter' 'well [right] soon; thus spake the 'traitorous [false] man: "Knights, ye are welcome. I have in my hand all this regal land; with me ye shall 'go [dwell], and I will you love, 'and I will you bring before our king; ye shall have silver and gold, the best horses of this land, clothes, and fair wives; your will I will perform.' Ye shall be to me dear, for 'the' Britons are hateful to me; loud and still I will [do your will], if ye will 'in land [over all] hold me for lord." Then forth-right answered the knights: "We will [it] do all thy will"; and they gan proceed to Constance

[1] *Half a line is here wanting, which the other text supplies.* [2] *R.* Coftance.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

To þan kinge com Uortiger :/
of ufele he wes wel war.
& feide him of hif dæde :/
hu he idon hæuede.
& her ich habbe Peohtef :/
þa fcullen beō hired-cnihtes.
and alle ich habbe þine cafles[1] :/
swiðe wel bitæht.
& þas uncuðe cnihtes :/
bi-uoren uf fcullen fihten.
Al þe king bi-lufde :/
swa Fortiger hoȝede.
ah wale þat nufte þa king :/
of his þohte naðing.
ne of his fwikedome :/
þe he dude þer æfter fone.
Þas cnihtes weorē an hirede :/
hæhliche iwurðed.
fulle twa ȝere :/
mid þan kīge heo wuneden þere.
& Uortiger þe ftiward :/
wes heore alre lauerd.
A he feide þat Bruttes :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þo faide Vortiger :/
þat was fwiþe wis and war.
[f. 77. c. 1.] Alle þine caftles :/
ich habbe wel iftored.
and þeos oncouþe cnihtes :/
folle bi-vore vs fihte.
And al þe king lifde :/
þat Vortiger faide.
ac wolawo þat nufte þe king :/
of his þohte noþing.
ne of his fwikedome :/
þat he dude þar after fone.
Þeof cnihtef wonede þare :/
folle two ȝere.
and Vortiger þe ftiward :/ [c. 2.]
was hire alre louerd.

the king. 'To the king came [Then said] Vortiger,—'of evil he was well ware [that was most wise and wary],—' and said him of his deed, how he had done.—"And here I have *the* Peohtes, who shall be household knights; and' I have 'most' well stored all thy castles; and these foreign knights shall before us fight." The king commended all 'as [that] Vortiger 'purposed [said], but alas! that the king knew nothing of his thoughts, nor of his treachery, that he did soon thereafter! These knights 'were in court highly honored'; full two years 'with the king they' dwelt there, and Vortiger the steward was lord of them all. 'Ever' he said that *the*

[1] *R.* caftles.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
neoren noht to nuttes.	
ah[1] he ſeide þat þa Peohtes ſ	
weoren gode cnihtes.	
A weoren Bruttes ſ	
godes bidaled.	
& þa Peohtes walden ſ	
al þat heo wolden.	
heo hafden drænc heo hafden mete ſ	
heo hafden muchel bliſſe æke.	
Vortiger heom ſalde ſ	Vortiger ȝam ſolde ſ
al þat heo wolden.	al þat hii wolde.
	and eke he ȝam ȝef ſ
	ȝiftes ſwiþe riche.
& heom wef[2] al ſwa leof ſ	ſo þat he ham waf ſo lef ſ
ſwa heore aȝene lif.	alſe hire oȝe lif.
ſwa þat heo al ſpeken ſ	and hii ſtille ſpeken ſ
þer heo heore mete ætē.	þar þat hii ſeten.
þat Uortiger weoren wurðe ſ	þat Vortiger were worþe ſ
to walden þas þeode.	to welde þeos riche.
þurh ut alle þinges ſ	þorh vt alle þinges ſ
bæt þene swulche þreo kingeſ.	bet þane ſoche þreo kinges.
Vortiger ȝef þissen gumen ſ	
ſwiðe muchele gærſūe.	
þa ilomp hit on ane dæie ſ	þo bi-fulled[3] in hon dai ſ

Britons were not of use, but he said that the Peohtes were good knights. Ever were *the* Britons deprived of goods, and the Peohtes wielded all that they would. They had drink, they had meat, they had eke much bliss.' Vortiger granted them all that they would, and [eke he gave them gifts most rich, so that he] was to them as dear as their own life; 'so that [and] they 'all [stilly] spake, where [that] they 'ate their meat [sate], that Vortiger were worthy to govern this realm throughout all things, better than three such kings! 'Vortiger gave these men very much

[1] a?

[2] *The last two letters of* wef *are by second hand sup. ras.*

[3] bi-fulle hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þa Uortiger at his inne laie.	þat Vortiger at his hinne lai.
he nom[1] his tweiene cnihtef:	he fende tweie cnihtes:
& fende æfter þan Peohtef.	after þeos Peutes.
hæhten heom cumen her: [c. 2.]	þat hii folde alle:
for alle heo fculden æten þer.	heote mid him soolue[2].
To him comen þa cnihtes:	And anon forþrihtes:
to hif inne forð rihtes.	to him come þeos cnihtes.
he uondede heom mid worde:	he fondede ȝam mid wordes:
alfe heo feten at borde.	alfe hii fete at þe bordes.
he lette heom bringen fchenches:	
of feole cunne drēches.	
heo drunken heo dremdē:	hii dronke hii dremde:
dæi þer forð eode.	þe dai forþ eode.
þa heo weoꝛ fwa drunken:	So lang i[3] weren þere:
þ wakeden heore fconken.	þat hii dronge were.
þa fpæc Uortiger:	þo fpac Vortiger:
þ he hæfde iþoht ær.	þat he hadde iþoht her.
Hercneð nu me cnihtef:	Hercneþ nou cnihtes:
ich wulle fuggen eow uorð rihtes.	ich wolle telle ou foþrihtes.
of mire muchele forȝen:	of þane mochele forewe:
þ ich fore[4] habbe imurned.	þat ich for ou habbe.
þe kīg me bi-tahte þif ard:	

treasure.' Then befell it on a day, that Vortiger lay at his inn; he 'took his' two knights 'and' sent after 'the [these] Peohtes; 'bade them come here, for they all should eat there [that they should all eat with himself. And anon] forth-right 'the [these] knights came to him, 'to his inn'; he tried them with words as they sate at [the] board, 'he caused draughts to be brought them of many kinds of drinks'; they drank, they revelled, [the] day 'there' forth passed. 'When they were so drunk that their shanks weakened [So long they were there, that they were drunk], then spake Vortiger what he had previously thought: "Hearken now 'to me,' knights, I will 'say [tell] to you 'forth-right [right sooth] of 'my [the] mickle sorrow that I for [you] have 'mourned. The king delivered

[1] inom *pr. m., but* i *erased.* [2] seolue? [3] hii? [4] for eow?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

for to beon hiſ ſtiward.
ȝe beoð me on liue:
alre mönen leoſt[1].
ah nabbe ich æhtē:
to ȝiue mine cnihten.
for þes king æh al þiſ lond:
and he if ȝung & þæh ſtrong.
and al ic him mot ȝelden:
þat ich nime of hiſ londe.
& ȝif ich hiſ for-leoſe:
ich ſal laȝe þoliē.
& mine ahten ich habbe iſpēd:
for ich eo[3] wulle iquemen.
& nu ich mot heonene uarē:
feor to ſumme kinge.
heren him mid fæhte:
& bi-winnen mid him ahte.
ne mæi i[4] noht for muchele ſcome:
habben here þeſne wone.
ah forð ich mot liðen:
to uncuðe leoden.
&ȝifauere cumeð þe dæi: [f.77b. c.1.]
þ ich æhten bi-ȝiten mæi.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ȝeo beoþ me on lifue:
cnihteſ alre leofueſt.
ac nabbe ich more to ȝefue:
ne ȝou for to holde.
for þe king haht al þat lond:
and he his[2] ȝong and ſwiþe [ſtrong.
ȝef ich his god miſ-ſpene:
ich mot laȝe þolie. [[f.64b. c.1.]
and mine hæhte ich habbe iſpened:
for ich ou wolde cweme.
And nou ich mot of londe fare:
for to ſomme kinge.
and ȝef euere comeþ þe dai:
þat ich hæhte bi-ȝete mai.

me this land for to be his steward.' Ye are to me liefest of all 'men [knights] alive, but I have not 'wealth [more] to give 'my knights [nor you for to maintain], for 'this [the] king possesses all 'this [the] land, and he is young and 'also [most] strong, ' and all I must yield to him that I take of his land; and' if I 'destroy [mis-spend] his [goods], I 'shall [must] suffer *the* law; and mine *own* wealth I have spent, because I would please you. And now I must 'depart hence [go from *the* land] far to some king, ' serve him with peace, and gain wealth with him; I may not for much shame have here this abode, but forth I must go to foreign lands.' And if the day shall ever come, that I may acquire wealth, and I may so well thrive, that

[1] leofueſt? [2] *Sic MS.* [3] eow? [4] ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and ich maȝen ſwa wel iþeon ⁊	and ich mawe ſo wel iþeon ⁊
þat ȝe cumen a londe þer ich beon.	þat ȝe come in londe war ich beon.
ich eow wulle wel biwiten ⁊	ich ou wolle wel bi-wite ⁊
mid muchelere wurðſcipe.	mid mochelere manſipe.
and habbeoð alle godne dæi ⁊	and habbeþ alle godne dai ⁊
to niht ich wulle faren awæi.	to niht ich wolle varen awai.
hit bið a muchele wæne ⁊	
whær ȝe i-ſeon me auere mare.	
Nuſten noht þas cnihtes ⁊	Nuſte noht þe cnihtes ⁊
[1] wæt þe ſwike þohte.	wat þe ſwike þohte.
Vortiger wes fæc ⁊	
for her he hiſ lauerd bi-ſwæc.	
& þe cnihtes heolden hit for ſoh ⁊	
þat þe ſwike fæide.	
Fortiger hæhte his sweines ⁊	Vortiger hehte his ſweines ⁊
sadeli his blonken.	ſadeli his ſtedes.
& nemnede twalf ſcalkes ⁊	and nam twealf cnihtes ⁊
to laden mid him ſeoluen.	forþ mid him ſeolue.
to horſen heo eoden ⁊	to horſe hii eoden ⁊
ſwulc heo wolden of þeoden.	alſe hii wolde of þeode.
þat iſeoȝen þa Peohtes ⁊	þis iſehȝe þe Peutes ⁊
þa for-drunkene cnihtes.	þe fordronkene cnihtes.

ye come in *the* land where I am, I will well reward you with much worship. And have *now* all good day, *for* to-night I will go away; 'it is a great doubt whether ye see me evermore.' "—'These [The] knights knew not what the traitor thought. 'Vortiger was treacherous, for here he betrayed his lord, and the knights held it for sooth, what the traitor said.' Vortiger ordered his swains to saddle his steeds, and 'named [took] twelve 'men to lead [knights forth] with himself; to horse they went as *if* they would *depart* from *the* land. The Peohtes saw 'that [this],—the drunken knights,—'how Vortiger would depart; herefore they had much

[1] *This and the two following lines are written by the first hand out of order, but marked for transposition. A second hand has struck them out in the text, and recopied them in the margin in the order above given.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
hu Vortiger wolde uaren: [kare.	
her uore heo hæfden muchelne	
heo eodē to ræden:	
heo eoden to rune.	
alle heo menden heore lif:	
for Vortiger heom wes swa leof.	
& þus ſeiden þa Peohtes:	and to hire herre hii ſede:
þa drūkene cnihtes.	
Whæt maȝe we nu to rade:	Wat his vs nou to reade.
whæ ſcal us nu rædē.	
wha ſcal us ſeden:	wo ſal vs nou ſcrude:
wha ſcal uf ſcruden.	wo ſal vs nou veode.
wha ſcal an hirede:	
beon ure lauerd.	
Nu Vortiger if iuaren:	Nou Vortiger his a-fare:
alle we mote ſuſen. [c.2.]	and we ibroht in mochel care.
nulle we for nane þinge:	nole we for none þinge:
munec habbe to kinge.	monek habbe to kinge.
Ah wulle we wel don:	
forð riht faren we him to.	
diȝelliche & ſtille:	
& don al ure iwille.	
in to hif bure:	
& drincken of his beore.	
þenne we habbeð idrunkē:	

care; they went to counsel, they went to communing; all they lamented their life (exceedingly), because Vortiger was so dear to them.' And 'thus said the Peohtes [to their chief they said], 'the drunken knights': "What 'may we [is to us] now in counsel? 'who shall us now advise?' who shall us 'feed [now clothe], who shall us 'clothe [now feed], 'who shall be our lord at court?' Now Vortiger is gone, 'we all must depart [and we *are* brought in mickle care];—we will not for anything have *a* monk for king! 'But we will do well, forth-right go we to him, secretly and still, and do all our will, into his chamber, and drink of his beer. When we have drunk,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

dreme we lude.
& ſumme ſculleð to þere dure:
mid ſweorden ſtoden[1] þer biuoren.
& ſumme forð rihtes:
nimen þene king & hiſ cnihtes.
& ſlæn[2] of þa hafden:
& we ſeolf hired haben.
& leten ſone of-ærnen:
uræ lauerd Uortigerne.
& ſeoððen þurh alle þinge:
hæbben hine to kinge.
þenne mah we libben:
swa uſ bið alre leofueſt.
Wenden þa cnihtes:
to þan kinge forð rihtes.
eoden heo alle:
þurh ut þære halle.
in to þaſ kingeſ bure:
þer he ſæt bi fure.
Nes þer nan þat word ſpæc:
bute Gille Callæt.
þuſ he wið þæne kinge ſpæc:
ſwiken he þohte þet[3].
Luſt me nu leod-kīg:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Wende þes cnihtes:
to þan kinge forþrihtes.
ȝeoden þes cnihteſ alle:
þorh vt þare halle.
in to þe kinges boure:
þar he ſat bi þan fure.

loudly revel we; and some shall *go* to the door, *and* with swords stand therebefore, and some forth-right take the king and his knights, and smite off the heads *of them*, and we *our*selves have *the* court; and cause soon our lord Vortiger to be overtaken, and afterwards through all things raise him to *be* king;—then may we live as to us is liefest of all.'" 'The [These] knights proceeded to the king forth-right; 'they [these knights] all went throughout the hall into the kings chamber, where he sate by *the* fire. 'There was none that spake *a* word except Gille Callæt; thus he spake with

[1] ſtonden?
[2] *The second letter of* ſlæn *is by second hand, sup. ras.*
[3] þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

nulle ich þe liȝen naðing.
we habbeoð ibeon an hirede:
hæhliche iwurðed.
þurh þinne ſtiwærd:
þe haueð iwiten al þiſ ærd.
he uſ haueð wel iued:
he uſ haueð wel iſcrud.
& to ſoðe ich ſugge þe mai:
mid him we æten nu to dæi. [f. 78. c. 1.]
ah fare uſ of-þuncheð:
nefden we noht to drinken.
& nu we beoð in þine bure:
ȝef uſ drinken of þine beore.
Þa ȝæf þe kīg anſware:
þ ſcal beon eowre laſte kare.
for ȝe ſculleð habben to drinken:
þa while þe eow god þunche.
Me heom brohte drinken:
& heo gunnen dremen.
þuſ fæide Gille Calæt:
to þere dure he wes ful wæt.
Whær beo ȝe cnihtes:
ſturieð eow forð rihtes.
& heo þene king igripen: And hii þane king igrepe:
& his hæfde of ſmiten. and þat heued of ſmite.

the king *whom* he there thought to betray: "Listen to me now, monarch; I will nothing lie to thee. We have been in court highly honored through thy steward, who hath governed all this land; he hath us well fed, he hath us well clothed. And in sooth I may say to thee, with him we ate now to-day, but sore *it* us grieveth, we had nought to drink, and now we are in thy chamber, give us drink of thy beer." Then gave the king answer: "That shall be your least care, for ye shall have to drink the while that you think good." Men brought them drink, and they gan to revel; thus said Gille Callæt,—at the door he was full active: "Where be ye, knights? Bestir you forth-right!" ' And they seized the king, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& alle his cnihtes :/
heo flo3en forð rihtes.
& nomen ænne fondes-mon :/
and fenden toward Lūden.
þat he fwiðe fculde ærne :/
æfter Uortigerne.
þ he fwiðe comen :/
& þene kinedom nome.
for þat wufte he þurh alle þīg :/
iflæȝen wes Coftanz þe king.
Þet iharde Uortigerne :/
þe fwike wes ful derne.
þuf he hæhte þene fondes-mon :/
aȝan forð riht anan.
& hat heom wel bi-witen :/
al ure wurð-fcipen.
þ nauer anne wende :/
ut of þan ænde.
ah alle me abiden :/
a þ ich cune[3] riden.
& fwa ich wulle dele :/
þif lond uf alle imæne.
Forð wende þe fondes-mon :/ [c. 2.]
and Vortiger nom anan.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and alle his cnihtes :/
hii flo3en forþ rihtef.
And nemen ane fondefman :/
and fende to Londen.
þat he fwiþe folde ernne :/ [c. 2.]
after Vortigerne.
þat he fwiþe come :/
and þane kinedom nome.
for þat wite þou þorh alle :/
hii-fle3e[1] we habbeþ þane king.
Þat ihorde Vortigerne :/
þat fwike was fol deorne.
þus a[2] hehte þane fondes-man :/
aȝen forþrihtef a-non.
and bidde þat non ne wende :/
vt of þan ende.
ac alle me a-bide :/
forte ich come ride.
and þan ich wolle deale :/
þis lond vs imene.
Forþ wede[4] þe fondefman :/
and Vortiger fende a-non.

off his head, and all his knights they slew forth-right. And took a messenger, and sent to' ward' London, that he should ride quickly after Vortiger, that he should come speedily, and take the kingdom, for that 'he should know [know thou] through all 'things,' slain 'was [we have] 'Constance' the king. Vortiger heard that, who was traitor full secret; thus he ordered the messenger back forth-right anon, and 'bade [bid] 'them well to keep all our worship,' that 'never one [none] depart out of the place, but all abide me, until that I arrive, and 'so [then] I will divide this land among us 'all.'" Forth went the messenger, and Vortiger

[1] *R.* i-fle3e. [2] he? [3] cume? [4] *R.* wende.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& ſende ȝeond Lũden :/
& to huſtinge hehte heom.
ræðen & ful ſone :/
þ heo alle comen.
Icumen[1] weoren þa burmen :/
þe ſwiðe balde weoren.
þa ſpæc Vortigerne :/
þe ſwike wes ful deorne.
swiðe he gon to wepen :/
& ſæriliche ſiken.
ah hit wes an hafde :/
& noht an his heorte.
þa axeden hine þa burhmen :/
þe ſwiðe balde weoren.
Lauerd Vortigerne :/
whæht if þ þu murneſt.
nert þu na wimman :/
ſwa fære to wepeñ.
þa anſwarede Vortigerne :/
þe wes ſwike ful deorne.
Ich eow wulle telle :/
for reoliche ſpelle.
of muche færneſſe :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ouer al þan londe :/
þat þar a-boute were.
and hehte ȝam ſone :/
þat hii to him come.
þo icomen were borhmen :/
þat were ſwiþe bolde.
þo ſpac Vortigerne :/
þat ſwike was wel deorne.
swiþe he gan wepe :/
and biterliche ſike.
ac hit was on his heued :/
and noht on his heorte.
þo axede þe borhmen :/
þat ſwiþe bolde weren.
Louerd Vortigerne :/
wi his þat þou wepeſt.
nert þou no wifman :/
ſo ſore to ſike.
þo anſwerede Vortigerne :/
þat ſwike was fol deorne.
Ich ȝou telle :/
rouþliche ſpelles.
of mochele ſorineſſe :/

'took [sent] anon 'and sent' over 'London [all the lands that there were about], and ordered them 'quickly and full' soon, that they 'all' should come to 'husting [him]. When 'the' burgh-men were come, who were most bold, then spake Vortiger, who was traitor 'full [well] secret;—much he gan to weep, and 'sorrowfully [bitterly] to sigh, but it was in [his] head, and not in his heart. Then asked 'him' the burgh-men, who were most bold: "Lord Vortiger, 'what [why] is that thou 'mournest [weepest]? Thou art no woman so sore to 'weep [sigh]." Then answered Vortiger, who was traitor full secret: "I 'will' tell you piteous speeches,

[1] þa icumen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þe iſiȝen if to londe.
Ich habbe iðif ærd ibeon:
eower kingef ſtiwærd.
& iſpæken hin[1] wið:
& iluued hine ſwa mi lif.
Ah nalde he at þan ende:
nænne ræd luuien.

he luuede þa Peohteſt[3]: 10
þa vncuðe cnihtes.
& uf nalde he god don:
ne neower feire vnderfon.
ah heom he wes liðe:
a to heore liue.
Ne mihte ic of þan kinge:
habben ſcipinge.
ich ſpende mine ahte:
þa wile þa heo ilaſte.
& feoððē ich nam leue: 20
to mine londe liðe. [f. 78b. c. 1.]
and þenne ich hæfde mine gauel:
cumen aȝan to hirede.
þa iſæhȝen þa Peohtes:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat iſeȝe his to londe.
Ich habbe þane king iloued:
more þan mi ſeolue.
And[2] nolde he aþan ende: [f. 65. c. 1.]
noht hit onderſtonde.
ne non of dedes:
don after reade.
he louede þe Peuteſ:
þe oncouþe cnihtes.

of much calamity that is come to *the* land. I have 'been in this realm your kings steward, and spoken with him, and' loved 'him as my life [the king more than myself]. But he would not at the end 'any counsel approve, [understand it, nor do any deeds after counsel]; he loved the Peohtes, the foreign knights, 'and he would not do good to us, nor anywhere fair receive, but to them he was gracious, ever in their lives. I might not of the king have remuneration (or wages); I spent my wealth, the while that it lasted, and afterwards I took leave to go to my land, and when I had my tribute, come again to court. When the Peohtes saw that the king had no

[1] him? [2] Ac? [3] *R.* Peohtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat þe king nefde nane cnihtes.	
neo nauere nænne cunef mō :/	
þe heo[1] wolden oht fore don.	
heo nomen heore uore :/	hii nemē hire vore :/
in to þas kīges bure.	into þe kingef boure.
ich fuggen eow þurh alle þing :/	ich fegge ȝou þorh alle þing :/
iflæȝen heo habbeoð þæne king.	hii habbeþ i-flaȝe vre king.
& þencheð þifne kine-dom :/	and þenches[2] þifne kinedom.
& uf allc for-don.	and vs alle for-don.
& wulleð forð rihte :/	
makien king of ane Peohte.	
Ah ic wes hif ftiward :/	Ac ich was his ftiward :/
wæken[3] ich wulle minne lauerd.	wreken ich wolle min louerd.
& æueræche oht mon :/	and euerech oht mon :/
hælpen me þ to don.	helpe þat to don.
on ich wulle mid mine gærē :/	
& forð riht ich wulle uaren.	
Wenden ut of Lunden :/	Wenden vt of Londene :/
cnihtes þritti hundred.	cnihtes þritti hundred.
heo riden & heo arnden :/	hii riden and hii ernde :/
forð mid Vortigerne.	forþ mid Vortigerne.
þat heo nehlæhten :/	þat hii nehleþte :/
þer weoren þa Peohtes.	þar wonede þes Peutes.
& he nom enne of his cnihtes :/	

knights, nor ever any kind of man that would aught for them do,' they took their course into the kings chamber. I say you through all things, they have slain 'the [our] king, and think to destroy this kingdom and us all, 'and will forth-right make *them* king of a Peoht.' But I was his steward; avenge I will my lord; and every brave man help 'me' to do that! 'On I will with my gear, and forth-right I will go.'" Thirty hundred knights marched out of London; they rode and they ran, forth with Vortiger, until they approached where 'the [these] Peohtes 'were [dwelt]. 'And he

[1] heom? [2] þencheþ? [3] wræken?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ſende to þan Peohten.	
& ſeide heō þat he com:	
ȝif heo hine wolden vnder-uon[1].	
Þa Peohtes weorē bliðe:	
for heore[2] fæi-fiðe.	
& heo nomen heore gode gærē:	
nef þer neowðer ſceld ne ſpære.	
Vortiger forð rihteſ:	Vortiger and his cnihtes:
wepnede alle hiſ cnihtes.	wepnede ȝam forþ rihteſ.
& comē þa Peohtes:	þare come þe Peutes:
& bruhten hæued þas kingeſ.	and brohte heued þeos kinges.
Þa Vortiger þis hæued iſæh: [c.2.]	Þo Vortiger þis heued i-ſeh:
þa hælde he to grūde ful neh.	þo helde he to grunde neh.
swulc he hafuede mod-kare:	alſe he hadde mod-care:
meſt of alre monne.	meſt of alle māne.
mid hiſ lechen he gon liȝē:	mid his[3] he gan liþe:
hiſ heorte wes ful bliðe.	his heorte was wel bliþe.
þa ſeide Vortigerne:	þo ſaide Vortigerne:
þe ſwike weſ ful deorne.	þat ſwike was deorne.
Aueræle oht mon:	Euer ech oht man:
mid ſweorde leggeð heom on.	mid ſweorde legge heom an.

took one of his knights, and sent to the Peohtes, and said to them that he came, if they would him receive. The Peohtes were blithe for their murder (that they had committed), and they took their good gear,—there was neither shield nor spear.' Vortiger 'weaponed all his knights [and his knights weaponed them] forth-right, 'and' the Peohtes [there] came, and brought *the* head of the king. When Vortiger saw this head, then fell he 'full' nigh to *the* ground, as *if* he had grief most of all men; with his countenance he gan lie, *but* his heart was 'full [well] blithe. Then said Vortiger, who was traitor 'full' secret: "Every brave

[1] vnde-uon *pr. m.*

[2] *This seems a harsh construction. Perhaps we should read* þes kinges fæi-ſiče, —the kings death.

[3] *A word is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& wrækeð wel an ærde:	and wrekeþ wel on erþe:
þe feorȝe of ure lauerd.	þe forewe of vre louerd.
Nænne heo ne nomen:	Nanne hii ne nemen:
ah alle heo heom floȝen.	ac alle hii floȝē.
& to þan inne wende:	and to þan hinne wende:
in to Winchæſtre.	in to Wincheſtre. [c. 2.]
& floȝen heore ſweines:	and floȝē þare of hire folk:
& heore burh-þeīeſ.	al þat hii funde.
heore cokes & heore cnaues:	
alle heo duden of lif-dæȝen.	
þus ferden þa tiðinde:	þus ferde þe tydinge:
of Coſtanz þan kinge.	of Conſtance þan kinge.
& þa weorlde-wis mon:	þe worle-wiſemen:
þa oðere childre bi-wuſten.	þe oþer children wiſte.
for heo hafden care of Vortiger:	for drede of Vortiger:
heo nomen Ambroſie & Vðer.	hii neme Aurelie and Vther.
& landen[1] heom ouer ſæ:	and ladde heom ouer ſéé:
in to þere laſſe Brutene.	in to þe laſſe Britayne.
& fæire heom bi-tahten:	and ȝam bi-tahte:
Bidiz[2] þan kinge.	Biduz þan kinge.
& he heom feire vnder-fēg:	and he ȝam faire vnder-feng:
he wes heore cun & heore freond.	for he was hire cun.
& mid muchelere liſte:	

man lay on them with sword, and avenge well in *the* land the sorrow of our lord!" None they captured, but all they 'them' slew; and proceeded to the inn, into Winchester, and slew 'their swains, and their chamber-servants, their cooks, and their boys, all they deprived of life-day [there of their folk all that they found]. Thus fared the tidings of Constance the king. 'And' the worldly-wise men took charge of the other children; for 'they had care [dread] of Vortiger they took 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and led them over sea, into the Less Britain, and delivered them 'fairly' to Biduz the king. And he them fairly received, [for] he was their kin 'and their friend, and with much joy the children he brought up'; and

[1] ladden?

[2] Budiz *man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa childere he biwuſte.		
and ſwa wel fele ȝere:		and ſo fale ȝere:
mid him heo weoren þere.		þe childerne wonede þere.
Vortiger. Vortiger a þiſſen londe:		Vortiger in þiſſe londe:
wes ihoue to kinge.		waſ ihoue to kinge.
alle þa Brut[1] ſtronge:		and þe borewes ſtronge:
ſtoden an his honde.		ſtode on his honde.
fif & twenti ȝeren:	[f. 79. c. 1.]	fife and twenti ȝere:
he wes king heꝛ̄.		he was king here.
He wes wod he wes wild:		
he wes ræh he wes bald.		
of alle þinge he hæfde his iwille:		Of alle þinges he hadde his wille:
bute þa Peohteſ neoren		bute þat Peuteſ nere neuere ſtille.
ah eouere heo wenden:	[ſtille.	
ȝeond þene norh enden.		
& hunden[2] þiſ kinelond:		ac euere hii hiende his kinelond:
mid hærmen vnimete.		mid harme onimete.
& wreken heore cun inoh:		and wreken hire cun inoh:
þat Vortiger here of-ſloh.		þat Vortiger here of-ſloh.
Vnder þan comen tiðende:		Vnder þan com tidinge:
in to þiſſen londe.		in to þiſſe londe.
þat Aurelien wes cniht:		þat Aurelie was cniht:
þe Ambroſiæn wes ihæten.		on mid þan beſte.
& al swa wes Vther:		and al ſo was Vther:

so 'well' many years 'with him they were [the children dwelt] there. Vortiger in this land was raised to *be* king; 'all [and] the strong burghs stood in his hand; five and twenty years he was king here. 'He was mad, he was wild, he was cruel, he was bold'; of all things he had his will, except 'the [that] Peohtes were never still, but ever they 'advanced over the north end, and' afflicted 'this [his] kingdom with prodigious harm, and avenged their kin enow, whom Vortiger slew here. In the mean *time* came tidings into this land, that Aurelie was knight, 'who was named Ambrosie [one with the best], and also was Uther, 'good knight and most [knight most wise and]

[1] burȝhes?

[2] *Sic pr. m.*; henden *sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
god cniht & swiðe iwar.	cniht ſwiþe wis and war.
and wolden comen to þiſſen londe:	and wolde come to þiſſe londe:
& leden here ſwiðe ſtronge.	mid ferde ſtronge.
þis wes feole ſiðe iqueðe:	
ofte iquidded.	
ofte comen tiðinde:	Ofte com þcos tidinge:
to Vortiger þā kinge.	to Vortiger þan kinge.
þer fore him ofte ſcomede:	þar fore he ofte ſamede:
& his heorte gromede.	and his heorte gramede.
for men hit ſæiden wel iwhær:	for men hit ſaide wel i-war: [f. 65ᵇ. c. 1.]
Nu cumed[1] Ambroſie & Vther.	Nou comeþ Aurelie and Vther.
and wulleð wrækē Coſtance:	and wolleþ wreke Conſtance an
þene king of þiſ lōd.	þat was king in þiſſe lond. [hond:
nuf[2] þer coſt nan oðer:	niſ þar coſt non oþer:
wærken[3] heo wulleþ heore broðer.	wreke hii wolleþ hire broþer.
and flæn Vortigerne:	
& to duſte hine for-berne.	
þuſ heo wulleð al þiſ lond:	
ſetten an heore aȝere hond.	
Swa quiddeden ælche dæi:	þus cwiddede eche dai:
al þat verden æfter wæi.	al þat ȝeode bi þan wai.
Uortiger hine biðohte: [c. 2.]	Vortiger hine bi-þohte:
whæt he don mihte.	wat he don mihte.

wary, and would come to this land, 'and lead [with] *an* army 'most 'strong. 'This was many times *a* saying oft repeated'; oft came [these] tidings to Vortiger the king; therefore '*it* oft shamed him, [he oft was ashamed], and his heart angered, for men said it everywhere:—"Now will come 'Ambrosie [Aurelie] and Uther, and will avenge [soon] Constance, 'the [who was] king 'of [in] this land; there is no other course, avenge they will their brother, 'and slay Vortiger, and burn him to dust; thus they will set all this land in their own hand!'" 'So [Thus] spake each day all that passed by [the] way. Vortiger bethought him what he might do, and thought to send messengers

[1] cumeð? [2] niſ? [3] wrækeu?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& þohte ſende ſende[1] fonde:
into oðere londe.
æft[2] vncuðe cnihten:
ba hine biwiten mihten.
and þohte to beō wær:
wið Ambroſie & wid[2] Vther.
Vnder þan comen tiðende:
to Vortiger þan kinge.
þ ouer ſæ weoren icumen:
ſwiðe ſelcuðe gumen.
inne þere Temeſe:
to londe heo weorē icūmen.
þreo ſcipen gode:
comen mid þan flode.
þreo hundred cnihten:
alſe hit weoren kingeſ.
wið uten þan ſcipen-mōnen:
þe weoren þer wið innē.
þiſ weoren þa færeſte men:
þat auere her comen.
ah heo weore hæðene:
þ wes hærm þa mare.
Uortiger heom ſende to:
and axede hu heo weoren idon.
ȝif heo grið ſohten:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þohte ſende ſōde:
in to oþer londe.
after vncouþe cnihtes:
þat hine bi-witie mihte.

Vnder þan com tydinge:
to Vortiger þan kinge.
þat ouer ſéé weren icome:
ſwiþe ſelliche gomes.

þreo ſipes gode:
i-come were mid þan flode.
þar on þreo hundred cnihtes:
alſe hit were kempes.

þes weren þe faireſte men:
þat euere come here.
ac hii weren heþene:
þat was har[3] þe more.

into other lands, after foreign knights, who might him defend; 'and thought to be wary against Ambrosie and Uther.' In the mean *time* came tidings to Vortiger the king, that over sea were come men exceeding strange; 'in the Thames to land they were come'; three ships good 'came [were come] with the flood, [therein] three hundred knights, 'kings [champions] as it were, 'without (besides) the shipmen who were there within.' These were the fairest men that ever here came, but they were heathens,—that was the more harm! 'Vortiger sent to them, and asked how they were disposed

[1] *Sic MS.* [2] wiþ? [3] harm?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& of hif freond-ſcipe rohtē.
Heo wiſliche andſwerden:
swa heo wel cuðen.
& ſeiden þ heo walden:
ſpeken wið þan kinge.
& leofliche him heren:
& hælden hine for hærre.
and swa heo gunnen wenden:
forð to þan kinge.
Þa wes Uortigerne þa kīg:
in Cantuarie-buri.
þer he mid his hirede:
hæhliche ſpilede.
þer þas cnihtes comē:
bi-forē þan folc-kinge.
Sone ſwa heo hine imetten:
fæire heo hine igrætten.
& ſeiden þat heo him wolden:
hæren i þiſſe londe.
ȝif he heom wolde:
mid rihten at-halden.
Þa andſwerede Vortig[9]:
of elchen vuele he wes war.
An alle mine iliue:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

[f. 79b. c. 1.] Þeos comen to þan kinge:
and faire hine grette.
and ſeide þat hii wolde:
him ſarui in his lōde.
ȝis[1] vs þou wolle:
mid rihte at-holde.
Þo anſwerede Vortiger:
þat of eche vuele he was war.
In al mine lifue:

.....Vortigerni..... venerunt

(their business); if they sought peace, and recked of his friendship? They answered wisely, as well they knew, and said that they would speak with the king, and lovingly him serve, and hold him for lord; and so they gan wend forth to the king. Then was Vortiger the king in Canterbury, where he with his court nobly diverted *themselves*; there these knights came before the sovereign.' 'As soon as they met him, they [These came to the king, and] greeted him fair, and said that they would serve him in 'this [his] land, if 'he would them [thou wouldest us] with right retain. Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil he was ware,—"In all

[1] ȝif?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
[Saxon]es in Bri[tanni]am, scilicet Hen[ges et Hors], cum tribus na[vibus], anno gratie qua[drage]ntesimo xl°. xx°.	þe ich iluued habbe.	þat ich ileued habbe:
	bi dæie no bi nihtes: [cnihtes.	bi dai no bi nihte:
	ne fæh ich nauere ær fwulche	ne feh ich foche cnihtes.
	for eouwer cumē ich æm bliðe:	for ȝou ich ham bliþe:
	& mid me ȝe fcullē bilæfuen.	and mid me ȝe folle bi-lefue.
	& eouwer wille ich wulle driȝen:	
	bi mine quicke liuen.	
	Ah of eou ich wulle iwiten:	Ac forft ich wolle wite:
	þurh foðen eouwer wurðfcipen.	for ȝoure mochele worfipe.
	whahæt cnihtē ȝe feon:	wat cnihtes beo ȝeo: [c. 2.]
	& whænnenen ȝe icumen beon.	and wanene ȝeo i-comen beo.
	& whar ȝe wullen beon treowe:	
	alde & æc neowe.	
	þa anfwerede þe oðer:	þo anfwerede þe oþer:
	þat wes þe aldeft broðer.	þat was þe elder broþer.
	Luft me nu lauerd king:	
	& ich þe wullen cuðen.	
	what cnihtes we beoð:	
	& whanene we icumen feoð.	
	Ich hatte Hēges:	Ich hatte Hengeft:
	Horf is mi broðer.	Hors hatte min broþer.
	we beoð of Alemaīne:	we beoþ of Alemaine:
	aðeleft alre londe.	of one riche londe.
	of þat ilken ænde:	of þan ilke hende:
	þe Angles if ihaten.	þat Englis hif ihote.

my life that I have lived, by day nor by night saw I 'never ere' such knights; for 'your arrival [you] I am blithe, and with me ye shall remain, 'and your will I will perform, by my quick life!' But [first] I would of you learn, 'through [for] your 'sooth [mickle] worship, what knights ye be, and whence ye are come, 'and whether ye will be true, old and eke new?'" Then answered the one who was the eldest brother: "Listen to me now, lord king, and I will make known to you what knights we are, and whence we are come.' I hight Hengest; Hors 'is [hight] my brother; we are of Alemaine, 'a land noblest of all [of a rich land], of the same end that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Beoð in ure londe :	Beoþ in vre londe :
felcuðe tiðende.	wonder þenges gonde.
vmbe fiftene ȝer :	bi eche fiftene ȝer :
þat folc hī[1] iſomned.	þat folk his i-ſomned.
al ure iledene folc :	and werpeþ þare hire lotes :
& heore loten werpeð.	ſo[2] to londes ſeche :
vppen þan þe hit faled[3] :	vt[4] wan þat lot falleþ :
he ſcal uaren of londe.	he mot neod wende.
bilæuen ſcullen þa fiue : [c. 2.]	
þa ſexte ſcal forð liðe.	
ut of þan leode :	
to ucuðe[5] londe.	
ne beo he na ſwa leof mon :	ne beo he noht ſo riche :
uorð he ſcal liðen.	he mot lond ſeche.
For þer if folc ſwiðe muchel :	
mære þene heo walden.	
þa wif fareð mid childe :	Forþe wifues goþ þar emid childe :
ſwa þe deor wilde.	alſe þe deor wilde.
æueralche ȝere :	bi euereche ȝere :
heo bereð child þere.	hii goþ mid childe þere.
þ beoð an uf feole :	þat lot on vs ful :
þat we færen ſcolden.	þat we faren ſolde.
ne mihte we bilæue :	ne moſte we bi-lefue :

Angles is named. In our land are 'strange tidings; after [many good things; by each] fifteen years the folk is assembled, 'all our nation-folk,' and cast [there] their lots [for to seek *other* lands]; upon whom 'that it [the lot] falleth, he 'shall depart from *the* land [must needs depart]. 'The five shall remain, the sixth shall forth proceed out of the country to *a* foreign land'; be he 'man' ever so 'loved [rich], he 'shall forth depart [must seek *other* land]. For 'there is folk very much, more than they would' (desire); the women go [there] with child as the wild deer, [by] every year they 'bear [go with] child there! 'That is fallen [The lot fell] on us, that we

[1] is? [2] for? [3] faleð? [4] vp? [5] uncuðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
for liue ne for dæðe.	for life ne for deaþe.
ne for nauer nane þinge:	
for þan folc-kinge.	
þus we uerden þere:	þus hit fareþ þere:
& for þi beoð nu here.	þar fore we beoþ nou here.
to fechen vnder luſte:	
lond & godne lauerd.	
Nu þu hæfueſt iherd lauerd kig[1]:	Nou þou haueſt ihord louerd king:
soð of uſ þurh alle þig[2].	ſoþ of vs and no leſing.
Þa āſwærede Vortiger:	Þo ſaide Vortiger:
of alc an vfele he wes war.	þat was wis and ſwiþe war.
Ich ileue þe cniht:	
þ þu me ſugge ſoð riht.	
& wulche beoð æoure i-leuen:	And woche beoþ ȝoure bi-léue:
þ ȝe on ileueð.	þat ȝeo an bi-léfeþ.
& eoure leofue godd:	
þe ȝe to luted[3].	
Þa andſwarede Hængeſ:	
cnihtene alre fæireſt.	
nis in al þiſ kine-lond:	
cniht ſwa muchel ne[4] ſwa ſtrong.	
We habbeð godes gode:	We habbeþ godes gode:

should depart; we might not remain, for life nor for death, 'nor for ever anything, for *fear of* the sovereign. Thus 'we fared [it fareth] there, 'and' therefore are [we] now here, 'to seek under heaven land and good lord.' Now thou hast heard, lord king, sooth of us 'through all things, [and no leasing].'' Then 'answered [said] Vortiger,—'of each evil he was ware [who was wise and most wary],—"'I believe thee, knight, that thou sayest to me right sooth'. And what are your creeds, that ye in believe, 'and your dear god, whom ye worship?'' Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights,—in all this kingdom is not *a* knight so tall nor so strong:'—

[1] king? [2] þing? [3] luteð?
[4] *The words* muchel ne *are sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe we luuieð an ure mode.	þat we louieð in mode.
þa we habbeð hope to:	
& heoreð heom mid mid[1] mihte.	
þe an hæhte Phebuſ:	þe on hatte Phebus:
þe oðer Saturn[9].	þe oþer Saturnus.
þe þridde hæhte Wodē:	þe þride hatte Woden:
þ̄ if an weoli godd.	þat was a mihti þing.
þe feorðe hæh[2] Jupit[9]: [f.80. c.1.]	þe feorþe hatte Jubiter:
of alle þīge he if whar.	of alle þinges he his war. [f.66. c.1.]
þe fifte hæhte Mercuri[9]:	þe fifþe hatte Merchuri[9]:
þat uſ[3] þe hæhſte ouer uſ.	þat his þe heheſt ouer vs.
þæ fæxte hæhte Appollin:	þe fixte hatte Appolin:
þ̄ if a godd wel idon.	þat his a god of gret win.
þe ſeoðueðe hatte Teruagant:	þe fouеþe hatte Teruagant:
an hæh godd in ure lon[4].	an heh god in vre lond.
ȝet we habbeð anne læuedi:	ȝet we habbeþ an leafdi:
þe hæh is & mæhti.	þat heh his and mihti.
heh heo is & hali:	
hired-men heo luuieð for þi.	
heo if ihate Fræa:	ȝeo hif i-hote Frea:
wel heo heom dihteð.	heredmen hire louieþ.
Ah for alle ure goden deore:	To alle þeos godes:
þa we ſcullen hæren.	we worſipe wercheþ.

"We have good gods, whom we love in 'our' mind, 'whom we have hope in, and serve them with might.' The one hight Phebus; the second Saturnus; the third hight Woden, who 'is [was] a mighty 'god [thing]; the fourth hight Jupiter, of all things he is aware; the fifth hight Mercurius, who is the highest over us; the sixth hight Appolin, who is a god 'brave [of great power]; the seventh hight Tervagant, a high god in our land. Yet (in addition) we have a lady, who is high and mighty, 'high she is and holy, therefore courtiers love her,'—she is named Frea,—'well she them treateth [courtiers her love]. 'But among all our dear gods whom we shall serve, [To all these gods we work worship, and for their love these

[1] *Redundant.* [2] hæhte? [3] *R.* if. [4] lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Woden hehde þa hæhſte laȝe:	and for hire loue:
an ure ælderne dæȝen.	þeos daȝes we heom ȝefue.
he heom wes leof:	Mone we ȝefue monedaȳ:
æfne al ſwa heore lif.	Tȳdea we ȝefue tiſdei.
he wes heore walden[1]:	Woden we ȝefue wendeſdei:
and heom[2] wurðſcipe duden.	þane þonre we ȝefue þoriſdai.
þene feorðe dæi i þere wike:	Frea þane fridaȳ:
heo ȝifuen him to wurðſcipe.	Saturnus þan ſatereſdai.
þa þunre heo ȝiuen þūref dæi:	
for þi þat heo heom helpen mæi.	
Freon heore læfdi: 11	
heo ȝiuen hire fridæi.	
Saturnuſ. Saturnus heo ȝiuen ſætterdæi:	
þene Sunne heo ȝiuen ſonedæi.	
Monenen heo ȝifuenen monedæi:	
Tidea heo ȝeuen tiſdæi.	
þuſ ſeide Hægeſt[3]:	þus ſaide Hengeſt:
cnihten alre hendeſt.	cniht alre hendeſt.
þa anſwerede Vortig[9]:	þo anſwerede Vortiger:
of ælchen vfel he wæs wær. 20	of alle harme he was war.
Cnihtes ȝe beoð me leofue:	Cnihtes ȝeo beoþ me leofue:
ah þaſ tiðende me beoð laðe.	ac ȝoure bilcfues me beoþ loþe.

days we give them.] 'Woden had the highest law in our elders days; he was dear to them even as their life, he was their ruler, and did to them worship; the fourth day in the week they gave him for *his* honor. To the Thunder (Jupiter) they gave Thursday, because that it may help them; to Frea, their lady, they gave her Friday; to Saturnus they gave Saturday; to the Sun they gave Sunday; to *the* Moon they gave Monday; to Tidea they gave Tuesday [To *the* Moon we give Monday; to Tydea we give Tuesday; to Woden we give Wednesday; to the Thunder we give Thursday; to Frea the Friday; to Saturnus the Saturday].'' Thus said Hengest, fairest of all knights. Then answered Vortiger,—of 'each evil [all harm] he was ware,—" Knights, ye are dear to me, but 'these tidings

[1] waldend? [2] heo him? [3] Hængeſt?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
eouwer ileuen[1] beoð vnwrafte:	
ȝe ne ileoueð noht an criftre[2].	
ah ȝe ileoueð a þene wurfe: [c. 2.]	
þe godd feolf awariede.	
eoure godes ne beoð nohtes:	
in helle heo niðer liggeð. [hælde:	
Ah neoðeles ich wulle eou at-	Ac ich wolle ou at-holde:
an mine anwalde.	in min anwolde.
for norð beoð þa Peohtes:	for norþ beoþ þe Peutes:
swiðe ohte cnihtef.	wiþe ohte cnihtes.
þe ofte ledeð in mine londe:	
ferde fwiðe ftronge.	
& ofte dod[3] me muchele fcome:	þat ofte doþ me fame:
& þerfore ich habbe grome.	and þar vore ich habbe grame.
& ȝif ȝe me wulleð wræken:	And ȝef ȝe wolleþ me wreke:
& heore hæfden me biȝeten.	of [hire] wiþere dedes.
ich eou wullen ȝeuen lond:	ich ȝou wolle ȝeue:
muchel feoluer & gold.	ȝeftes fwiþe deore.
þa andfwerede Hængeft:	þo faide Hengeft:
cnihtene alre feireft.	
ȝif hit wulle Saturnuf:	
al hit fcal iwurðe þuf.	al hit fal iworþe þus.
& Woden ure lauerd:	

[your creeds] are loathsome to me; 'your creeds are wicked, ye believe not on Christ, but ye believe on the Worse, whom God *him*self cursed; your gods are of nought, in hell they lie beneath.' But 'nevertheless' I will retain you in my power, for northward are the Peohtes, knights most brave, who oft 'into my land lead host most strong, and oft' do me 'much' shame, and therefore I have grief. And if ye will me avenge, 'and procure me their heads [of their evil deeds], I will give you 'land, much silver and gold [gifts exceeding precious]." Then 'answered [said] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights: "If Saturnus *so* will it, and Woden, our

[1] ilauerd *pr. m.* [2] criſte? [3] doð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þe we on bi-liueð.
Hengeſt nō læue:
& to ſcipen gon liðe.
þer wes moni cniht ſtrong: [lōd.
heo droȝen heore ſcipē uppe[1] þe
Forð wenden dringches:
to Vortigerne þan kenge.
biuoren wende Hengeſt:
& Horſ him alre hændeſt.
seoððen þa Alemainiſce men:
þa aðele weorē an deden.
& ſeoððen heo ſenden him to:
heore Sæxiſce cnihtes wel idon.
Hengeſtef cunnesmen:
of hiſ aldene cuððē.
Heo comen in to halle:
hændeliche alle.
bett[2] weoren iſcrudde:
& bed[3] weoren iuædde.
Hængeſt ſwaine[4]: [f.80b.c.1.]
þene Vortigernef þeines.
þa wes Vortigernes hired:
for hehne ihalden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Hengeſt nam lefue:
and to ſipe gan wende.
and al hire godef: [c.2.]
þe hii beore to londe.
Forþ hii wende alle:
to Vortiger his halle.
bed[3] weren i-ſcrud:
and bet weren ived.
Hengeſtes ſweines:
þane Vortiger his cnihtef.

lord, on whom we believe,' it shall all thus be!" Hengest took leave, and gan wend to *his* ships; 'there was many *a* strong knight; they drew their ships upon the [and all their goods they bore to] land. Forth went 'the warriors [they all] to Vortiger 'the king [his hall]; 'Hengest went before, and Hors, next of all to him; then the Alemainish men, who were noble in deeds; and afterwards they sent to him (Vortiger) their brave Saxish knights, Hengests kinsmen, of his old race. They came into hall, fairly all'; better were clothed and better were fed Hengests swains, than 'Vortigers thanes [Vortiger his knights]! Then was Vortigers court

[1] *Sup. ras.*
[2] bette *pr. m., but* e *erased.*
[3] bet?
[4] ſwaines?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Bruttes weoren færi:	Bruttes weren fori:
for fwulchere ifihðe.	for þan ilke fihte.
Nes hit nawiht longe:	Nas noht longe:
þat ne comen to þan kinge.	þat ne come tydinge.
cnihtes funen uiue:	
þa ifaren hafden biliue.	
heo fæiden to þan kinge:	
neowe tiðēden.	
Nu forð rihtes:	þat þo forþ rihtes:
icumē beoð þa Peohtes.	icomen were þe Peutes.
þurh þi lond heo ærneð:	Oueral þin lond hii erneþ:
& hærȝieð & berneð.	and fleaþ þin folk and bearneþ.
& al þene norð ænde:	and alle þanc norþ ende:
iuæld to þā grūde.	hii falleþ to þan grūde.
her of þu moft ræden:	her of þou moft reade:
oðer alle we beoð dæden.	oþer alle we beoþ deade.
þe king hine bi-þohte:	þe king fende his fonde:
whæt he don mihte.	to þeos cnihtes hinne.
he fende to þan innen:	þat hii fwiþe fone:
after al hif monnen.	to him feolue come.
þer com Hengeft þer com Horf:	þar com Hengeft and his broþer:
þer com mini[1] mon ful oht.	and manian oþer.
þer comē þa Saxifce men:	

held in contempt'; *the* Britons were sorry for 'such *a* [that] sight. It was 'no whit [not] long before 'five knights sons who had travelled quickly' came 'to the king; they said to the king new' tidings: "Now [that then] forth-right the Peohtes 'are [were] come; 'through ["Over all] thy land they run, and 'harry [slay thy folk], and burn, and all the north end [they] fell to the ground; hereof thou must advise *thee*, or we all shall be dead." The king 'bethought him what he might do, he 'sent [his messengers] to 'the [these knights] inn, 'after all his men [that they very soon should come to himself]. There came Hengest, 'there came Hors, there came many *a* man full brave; [and his brother, and many an-

[1] mani?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Hengeſtes cunnes-men.	
& þa Alemainiſce cnihtes:	
þe beoð gode to fihte.	
þiſ iſæh þe king Vortiger:	þat þe king Vortiger:
bliðe wes he þa þa[1] þer.	bliþe was þo þer.
Þa Peohtes duden heore iwune:	þe Peutes dude hire wone:
a þas hælf þere Humbre heo weoren icume.	a þiſ half Vmbre hii were icome.
& þe king Vortiger:	And þe king Vortiger:
of heore cume wes ful war.	of hire come was war.
to-gadere heo comen:	to-gadere hii comen:
& feole þer of-floȝen.	and manie þar of-sloȝen.
þer wes feht swide[2] ſtrong:	
comp swiðe ſturne.	
Þe Peohteſ weoren ofte iwuned:	þe Peutes weren ofte iwoned:
Vortigerne to oū-cumen. [c. 2.]	Vortiger to ouercome.
& þa heo þohten aſwa[3]:	and þo iþohten[4] al ſo:
ah hit ilomp an oðer þa.	ac hit bi-ful oþerweies þo.
for hit wes heom al helc:	for hii hadde mochel care:
þat Hængeſt wes þere.	for Hengeſt was þare.
& þa cnihtes ſtronge:	
þe comen of Saxelōde.	

other, so that] 'there came the Saxish men, Hengests kinsmen, and the Alemainish knights, who are good in fight.' The king Vortiger 'saw this'; blithe was 'he' then there. The Peohtes did their custom (as they were accustomed),—on this side of 'the' Humber they were come. And the king Vortiger of their coming was 'full' aware; together they came (encountered), and many there slew; 'there was fight most strong, combat most stern!' The Peohtes were oft accustomed to overcome Vortiger, and so they thought then *to do*, but it befell then 'in other *wise* [otherways], for 'it was safety to them (the Britons) that [they had much care because] Hengest was there, 'and the strong knights who came from Saxland, and the brave Alemainish, who came thither with Hors,' [for] very many Peohtes

[1] *Redundant.* [2] swiðe? [3] alſwa? [4] hii þohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& þa ohte Alemaniſce:	
þe þider comen mid Horſe.	
swiðe monie Peohtes:	for ſwiþe manie Peutes:
heo floȝen i þan fehte.	hii floȝen in þan fihte.
feondliche heo fuhten:	
feollen þa fæie.	
þa þe non wes icumen:	þo þat non was icome:
þa weoren Peohtef ouer-cumen.	þo were Peutes ouer-come.
& ſwuðe heo awæi floȝen:	and ſwiþe hii awey floȝe: [f. 66b, c. 1.]
an ælche helue heo forð fluȝen.	on euereche fide.
& alle dai heo fluȝen:	
monie & vnnifoȝe.	
þe king Vortigerne:	And Vortiger þe king:
wende to herberwe.	wende aȝen to his hin.
& æuere him weorē on uaſt:	
Horſ & Hængeſt.	
Hængeſt wes þan kinge leof[1]:	and to Hengeſt an his cnihtes:
& him Lindeſaȝe ȝef.	he ȝef riche ȝeftes.
and he ȝæf Horſe:	
madmes inoȝe.	
& alle heore cnihtes:	
he ſwiðe wel dihte.	
& hit gode ſtūde:	
ſtod a þan ilke.	

they slew in the fight; 'fiercely they fought, the fated fell!' When the noon was come, then were *the* Peohtes overcome, and quickly away they fled, on 'each [every] side 'they forth fled, and all day they fled, many and without number.' [And] the king Vortiger went [back] to 'lodging [his inn], 'and ever were nigh to him Hors and Hengest. Hengest was dear to the king', and to 'him [Hengest and his knights] he gave 'Lindesey [rich gifts], 'and he gave Hors treasures enow, and all their knights he treated exceeding well, and *thus a* good time it stood in the same *wise*.' *The* Peohtes durst never come in*to* 'the

[1] *This word and half of the next line are on an erasure. We should probably read* & him Lindeſaȝe he ȝef.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Ne durſte nauere Peohteſtes[1] :/
cumen i þan londeſ.
no ræueres no utlaȝen :/
þ heo neoren ſone of-flæȝen.
& Hængeſt ſwiðe fæire :/
herede þane king.
þa ilōp hit in ane time :/
þ þe king wes ſwiðe bliðe.
an ane hæȝe dæie :/
imong hiſ duȝeðe monnen.
Hengeſt hine bi-þohte :/
what he don mihte.
for he wolde wið þan kīge :/
holdē runīge, [f.81.c.1.]
þan kinge he eode to-foren :/
& fæire hine gon[4] greten.
þe king ſone up ſtod :/
& fætte hine bi him ſeoluen.
heo drunken heo dremden :/
bliſſe wes among heom.
þa queð Hengeſt to þan kinge :/
Lauerd hærene tiðende.
& ich þe wulle ræcchen :/
deorne runen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Ne dorſte neuere Peutes :/
come in þiſſe londe.
þat hii nere ſone of-slaȝe :/
and idon of lifdaȝe.
and Hengeſt ſwiþe hendeliche :/
cwemde þan kinge.
þo hit bi-ful in on time :/
þat þe king[2] was ſwiþe bliþe.
Hengeſt wolde wiþ þan kinge :/
holde rounig[3].
þanc kinge he com bi-vore :/
and faire hine grette.
þo ſaide Hengeſt to þan kinge :/
Louerd hercne tỳdinge.
and ich þe wolle telle :/
of deorne rounīges.

[this] land, 'no rrobbers nor outlaws,' that they were not soon slain [and deprived of life-day]; and Hengest exceeding fairly 'served [pleased] the king. Then befell it on a time, that the king was very blithe, 'on a high-day (festival), among his people.' Hengest 'bethought him what he might do, for he' would hold secret discourse with the king; he 'went [came] before the king, and 'gan greet [greeted him] fair. 'The king up stood, and set him by himself; they drank, they revelled,—bliss was among them.' Then 'quoth [said] Hengest to the king: "Lord, hearken tidings, and I will tell thee [of]

[1] Peohtes?
[2] *Originally written* ren king, *but* ren *expuncted.*
[3] rouning?
[4] *At first written* gonde, *but* de *expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ȝif þu mine lare :/	ȝef þou mine lore :/
wel wult luſten.	wel wolt i-hure.
& noht halden to wraððe :/	and noht holde to wraþþe :/
þat ich wel leare.	ȝef ich þe wel leore.
þe king anſwarede :/	And þe king anſwerede :/
swa Hengeſ[1] hit wolde.	alſe Hengeſt hit wolde.
þa fæide Hængeſt :/	
cnihten alre fæireſt.	
Lauerd ich habbe moni a dæi :/	
þine monſcipe ihæȝed.	
& þin holde mon ibeō :/	
i richen þine hirede.	
& in ælche fæhte :/	
hæhſt of þine cnihtē.	
& ich habbe ofte ihærd :/	Loucrd ofte ich habbe ihord :
hohfulle ronenen[2].	
imong þine hired-monnen :/	a-mong þine cnihtes.
heo hatieð þe ſwiðe.	þat hii þe hatieþ swiþe :/
in to þan bare dæðe :/	into þare bare deathe.
ȝif heo hit durſten cuðe.	
Ofte heo ſtilledliche[3] ſpæke ð :/	Ofte hii ſtille ſpekeþ :/
& ſpilieð mid runen.	
of twam ȝūge monnen :/	of two ȝonge cheldrē.
þat feor wunieð hennen.	

secret discourse, if thou wilt well 'listen to [hear] my advice, and not hold in wrath 'what I [if I thee] well teach." [And] the king answered as Hengest would it. 'Then said Hengest, fairest of all knights': "Lord, I have 'many a day advanced thy honor, and been thy faithful man in thy rich court, and in each fight *the* highest of thy knights. And I have 'often heard 'anxious whisperings' among thy 'courtiers; [knights, that] they hate thee exceedingly, unto the bare death, 'if they it durst shew.' Oft they speak stilly, 'and discourse with whispers,' of two young 'men [children], 'that dwell far hence'; the one hight Uther, the other 'Am-

[1] *R.* Hengeſt. [2] ronen? [3] ſtilleliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe an hæhte Vther:		þe on hatte Vther:
þe oðer Ambroſie.		þe oþer Aurelie.
þe þridde hæhte Coſtance:		þe þridde hehte Conſtance:
þe wes king i þiſſe lond[1].		
& he her wes of-flaȝen:		þat þou dedeſt to deaþe.
þurh ſwicfulle laȝen.		
Nu wulleð cume þa oðere:		Nou wolleþ come þe oþer:
& wræken heore broðer.		and wreken hire broþer.
al forbærnen þi lond:	[c. 2.]	al for-bearne þi lond:
& flæn þine leoden.	10	and flean þine leode.
þe ſeoluen & þine duȝeðen:		
driuen ut of londe.		
& þuſ ſuggeð þine men:		and þus ſeggeþ þine men: [c. 2.]
þer heo ſomned ſitteð.		ſtille bi-twine heom.
for þa twene broðere:		
beoð beyne[2] kine-borne.		
of Androeinnes kunne:		
þaſ aðele Bruttes.		
& þuſ þine duȝeðe:		
ſtille þe fordemed[3].	20	
Ah ich þe wulle ræde:		Ac ich þe wolle reade:
of muchele þire neode.		of mochele þine neode.
þ þu biȝite cnihteſt[4]:		þat þou bi-ȝete cnihtes:

brosie [Aurelie],—the third hight Constance 'who was king in this land,' 'and he here was slain through traitorous usage [whom thou puttedst to death]. The others will now come, and avenge their brother, all consume thy land, and slay thy people, 'thyself and thy folk drive out of land'. And thus say thy men, 'where they sit together [stilly between them], 'because the twain brothers are both royally born, of Androeins race, these noble Britons; and thus thy folk stilly condemn thee.' But I will advise thee of thy great need, that thou procure knights that are good in fight; and give

[1] *This word is interlined by a later hand.*

[2] beoren *pr. m., but corrected by a second hand in the margin.*

[3] fordemeð?

[4] *Originally* mihteſt; *the first letter corrected, but the last not.* *R.* cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa gode beoð to fihte.	þat gode beon to fihte:
& bi-tache me ænne caſtel:	and bi-tak me one caſtel:
oðer aue kineliche burh.	
þat ich mai inne ligge:	þat ich mai on wonie.
þa while þa ich libbe.	
Ic am uor þe iuaid:	For ich ham for þe i-veiþed:
þær fore ic wene beon dæd.	þat ich wene beo dead.
fare þer ic auer fare:	vare ware ich euere vare:
næm ich næuere bute carc.	nam ich neuere boute care.
buten ich legge faſte:	bote ihc ligge faſte:
bicluſed inne caſtle.	bi-cluſed in on caſtle.
ȝif þu þiſ me wult don:	ȝef þou þis woldes don:
ich hit wulle mid luue a-fon:	
& ich wulle biliue:	
ſenden after mine wiue.	mi wif folde come ſone.
þat if a Sexiſc wimmon:	
of wiſdome wel idon.	
& after Rouwēne: mire dohter:	and mi dohter Rowenne:
þe me if ſwiðe deore.	and moche of mine cunne.
Þenne ich habbe mi wif:	
& mine wine-maies.	
& ich beo i þine londe:	Wan we þos beoþ in londe:
fulliche at-ſtonde.	folliche at-ſtonde.
þa bet ich wullen hiren þe:	þe bet we wolleþ cweme þe:
ȝif þu þiſ ȝetteſt me.	ȝef þou þis wolt granti me.

to me a castle, 'or a royal burgh,' that I may 'lie [dwell] in, 'the while that I live. [For] I am for thee hated,—'therefore [*so* that] I ween to be dead; fare wherever I fare, I am never without care, unless I lie fast inclosed in [a] castle. If thou 'wilt [wouldest] do this 'for me, I will it receive with love,' and 'quickly I will send after my wife [my wife should come soon], who is a Saxish woman, of wisdom excellent,' and 'after' my daughter Rouwenne, 'who is most dear to me, [and much of my kindred]. When 'I have my wife, and my kinsmen; and' 'I [we thus] are in 'thy' land fully settled, the better 'I [we] will 'serve [please] thee, if thou 'grantest [will grant] me this." Then answered Vortiger,—[who] of each evil

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa anſwerede Vortiger:
of ælchen vuele he weſ war. [f. 81b. c. 1.]
Nim cnihtes biliue:
& ſend æfter þine wiue.
& æfter þine children:
þan ȝūgen & þan olden.
& æfter þine cunnen:
& afeoh heom mid wunne.
þenne heo to þe cumeð:
þu ſcat[1] habben gærſume.
hæhliche heom to uedē:
& wurðliche ſcruden.
Ah nulle ich caſtel na burh:
nane þe bi-techen.
for men me wolden ſcenden:
i mine kine[2] kine-lond.
forȝe haldeð þa hæðene laȝe:
þat ſtod on eoure ælderen dæȝe.
& we haldeð criſtes laȝe:
& wulleð auere an ure dæȝe.
Þa ȝet ſpæc Hængeſt:
cnihten alre hendeſt.
Lauerd ich wulle þin iwil:
driȝē her & ouer al.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þo anſwerede Vortiger:
þat of ech vuele waſ war.
Nim cnihtes ſwiþe:
and ſend after þine wifue.
and after þine childrē:
þe ȝong and þe heoldre.
and after þine cunne:
and onderfang heom mid winne.
wane hii to þe comeþ:
þou ſalt habbe gariſome.
hehliche heom to fede:
and worþliche to ſcrude.
Ac nelle ich caſtel ne borh:
nanne þe bi-take.
for men me wolde ſende:
in mine kinelonde.
ȝef ich heþene men: [f. 67. c. 1.]
londes bi-toke.

Þe ȝet ſpac Hengeſt:
cniht alre hendeſt.
Louerd nou ich wolle:
don al þine wille.

'he' was ware,'—"Take quickly knights, and send after thy wife, and after thy children, the young and the old, and after thy kin, and receive them with joy; when they to thee come, thou shalt have riches to feed them nobly, and worthily to clothe *them*. But I will not give to thee any castle or burgh, for men would reproach me in my kingdom; 'for ye hold the heathen law that stood in your elders days, and we hold Christs law, and will ever in our days [if I gave lands to heathen men]." The yet spake Hengest, fairest of all knights: "Lord, I will 'perform [do now all] thy will, 'here and over all, and do all my deeds after thy counsel.' Now will

[1] *R.* ſcalt. [2] *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& don al mine dæde:	
æfter þine ræde.	
Nu ic wulle biliue:	Nou ich wolle bliue:
ſende after mine wiue.	ſende after mine wifue.
& æfter mire dohter:	
þe me if ſwa deore.	
& æfter ꝙhte mõnen:	
þa bezſte of mine cunne.	
and þu ȝif me ſwa muchel lond:	and þou ȝef me ſo mochel lond:
to ſtonden a mire aȝere hõd.	to ſtonde on min owe hond.
swa wule anes bule hude:	aſe wole a bole hude:
ælches weies ouer-ſpræden.	in grene ouer-ſprede.
feor from ælche caſtle:	for fram eche caſtle:
amidden ane ualde.	a-midde one felde.
þeñe ne mai þe atwite:	þanne ne mai þe atwite:
þe hæne ne þe riche.	þe pore no þe riche.
þ þu æi hæhne burhȝe: [c. 2.]	þat þou eni heh borh:
hæðene monne habbe bi-tæht.	heþene man bi-takeſt.
þe king him iȝette:	And þe kīg him ȝaf:
ſwa Hengeſt ȝirnde.	þat lutel þat he ȝornde.
Hengeſt nom[1] læue:	Hengeſt nam lefue:
& forð he gon liðe.	and forþ he gan wende.
& æfter hiſ wiue ſende ſonde:	and after his wifue he ſende ſonde:
to hiſ aȝene lõde.	to his owene londe.

I speedily send after my wife, 'and after my daughter, who is to me very dear, and after brave men, the best of my kin.' And thou give me so much land, to stand in mine own hand, as a bulls hide will 'each way [on *the* green] overspread, far from each castle, amidst a field. Then nor the poor nor the rich may blame thee, that thou 'hast given [givest] any noble burgh to *a* heathen man." [And] the king 'granted [gave] him 'as Hengest [the little that he] yearned. Hengest took leave, and forth he gan pass, and after his wife [he] sent messengers, to his own land; and 'he *him*self

[1] inom *pr. m., but* i *erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& he ſeolf wende ȝeond þiſ lōd:	and him ſeolf wende:
to ſechen ænne bræne[1] fæld.	oueral to bi-holde.
þer he mihte wel ſpræde:	ware he mihte wel ſprede:
on hiſ feire hude.	his bole hude.
He com æn enne ende:	
in enne fæire uelde.	
he hafde ane hude:	
biȝite to hif neode.	
of ane wilde bule:	
þe wes wunder ane ſtrong.	
He hæfden ænne wiſne mon:	Hengeſt hadde one wiſne man:
þe wel cuðe a craften.	þat wel couþe of crafte.
þe nom þaſ hude:	he nam þeos bole hude:
& a bord leide.	and a borde laide.
and whætte hiſ færes:	
alſe he ſchæren wolde.	
Of þere hude he kærf enne þwong:	þar of he makede ane þwang:
ſwiðe ſwal[2] & ſwiðe long.	ſwiþe ſmal and ſwiþe lang.
nes þe þwong noht ſwiðe bræd:	nas þe þwang noht brod:
buten ſwulc a twinef þræd.	bote aſe hit were a twined þred.
þa al iflit wes þe þong:	
he wes wunder ane long.	
a-buten he bilæde:	a-boute þar mid he leide:
muche del of londe.	moche deal of londe.

[*he* himself] went over 'this land, to seek a broad field [all, to behold], where'on' he might well spread his 'fair [bulls] hide. 'He came to a spot, in a fair field; he had obtained a hide to his need, of a wild bull, that was wondrously strong.' 'He [Hengest] had a wise man, who well knew of craft, 'who [he] took this [bulls] hide, and laid *it* on *a* board, 'and whet-his shears, as *if* he would shear.' 'Of the hide [Thereof] he 'carved [made] a thong, very small and very long; the thong was not 'very' broad, but as [it were] a thread 'of twine [twined]; 'when the thong was all slit, it was wondrously long,' about [therewith] he encompassed *a* great deal of land.

[1] brædne?

[2] *R.* ſmal.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
He bigon to deluen:	He lette þo delue:	
dic fwiðe muchele.	on euerech halue.	
þer uppe ftenene wal:	þar vppe ftonene wal:	
þe wes ftrong ouer al.	fwiþe ftrong oueral. [c. 2.]	
ane burh he arerde:	ane caſtel he arerde:	
muchele & mare.	fair to bi-holde.	
þa þe burh wel[1] al ȝare:	þo þe borh was al ȝaru:	
þa fcop he hire nome.	þo fette he hire name:	
he hæhte heo ful iwif:	he hehte hire foliwis:	
Kaer-Carrai an Bruttiſc.	Caẏr-Karri in Brutteſ.	*Kaer-Carrai.*
& Ængliſce cnihtef: [f. 82. c. 1.]	and Engliſſe cnihtes:	
heo cleopeden þwong-Chaſtre.	þwangcheſtre.	*þwo[n]g-Chæſtre.*
nu and auere mare:	nou and euere more:	
þe nome ſtodeð[2] þere.	þe name ſtondeþ þare.	
& for nan odere[3] gome:		
næueden þæ burh þene nome.		
a þet come Denſce men:	forte þat Dence men:	
and driuen ut þa Bruttes.	driuen vt þe cnihtes.	
þene þridde nome heo þer fætte:	þane þridde name þar fette:	
& Lane-caſtel hine hæhten.	and Leane-caſtel hine cleopede.	*Lane-caſtel.*
& for ſwulche gomen:		
þæ tun haſde[4] þaſ þreo nomen.		
Vnder þan com liðen hider:	Vnder þan com liþe hider:	

He 'began to dig *a* ditch very mickle [caused then to be dug on every side]; there upon *a* stone wall, 'that was [exceeding] strong over all, a 'burgh [castle] he areared, 'mickle and lofty [fair to behold]. When the burgh was all ready, then 'shaped [set] he to it *a* name; he named it full truly Kaer-Carrai in British, and English knights 'they called *it*' Thongchester. Now and evermore the name standeth there, 'and for no other adventure had the burgh the name,' until that Danish men 'came, and' drove out the 'Britons [knights]; the third name 'they' set there, and Lanecastel (Lancaster) it 'named [called]; 'and for such events the town had these three names.' In the mean *time* arrived hither Hengests wife with her

[1] *R.* wef. [2] ſtondeð? [3] oðere? [4] haſde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Hengeſtes wif mid hire ſcipen.	Hengeſtes wif mid hire ſipes.
heo hæfde to iueren:	ȝeo hadde to ivere:
fiftene hūðed[1] ridern.	fiftene hundred rideres.
mid hire comē to iwiten:	
muchele æhtene ſcipen.	
þer comen inne:	
muchel of Hengeſtes cunne.	
& Rouwē hif dohter:	and Rowen hif dohter:
þe him wes swide[2] deore.	þat was him ſwiþe deore.
Hit wes umbe while:	Hit was bi on wile:
þ̄ com þe ilke time.	þat com þe ilke time.
þ̄ iȝarked wes þa burh:	þat i-ȝarked was þe borh:
mid þan alre bezſte.	mid þan alre beſte.
Hengeſt. Hēgeſt com to þan kinge:	and Hengeſt wende to þan kinge:
& bad him giftninge[3].	and bad hine to gyftnīge.
& ſeide þ̄ he hafde an in:	and ſeide þat he hadde on in:
iȝarked to-ȝeines him.	hi-makede to-ȝenef him.
& bad þat he come þer to:	
& he ſcolde beon fæire under-fon.	
& þe king him ȝette:	And þe king him grantede:
ſwa Hengeſt hit wolde.	alſe Hengeſt wolde.
Hit com to þan time:	
þ̄ þe king gon forð liðe.	
mid þan deoreſte monnen:	

ships; she had for companions fifteen hundred riders; 'with her came, to wit, mickle good ships; therein came much of Hengests kin,' and Rouwenne, his daughter, who was to him most dear. It was 'after [a]while, that that time came, that the burgh was completed with the best of all. [And] Hengest 'came [went] to the king, and asked him to *a* banquet, and said that he had 'prepared [made] an inn against him (his coming), 'and bade that he should come thereto, and he should be fairly received.' And the king granted him as Hengest *it* would. 'It came to the time that the king gan forth proceed, with the dearest men of all his folk'; forth 'he [they]

[1] hūdred? [2] swiðe? [3] guſtninge *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
of alle hiſ duȝeðe.		
forð he gon buȝen:		Forþ hii gonne wende:
þ he to burh com.	[c. 2.]	þat hii come to þan ende.
he bi-heold þene wal:		þe king bi-heold þane wal:
up and dun ouer al.		vp and dun oueral.
al him wel likede:		al him wel likede:
þ he ō lokede.		þat he on lokede.
He wende in to halle:		He wende in to halle:
& hiſ heleðes mid him alle.		and his cnihtes mid him alle.
bemen heo bleowen:	10	
gomē men gunnen cleopien.		
bord heo hetten breden:		bordes hii lette ſprede:
cnihtes ſetten þer to.		cnihtef þar to ſete.
heo æten heo drunken:		hii eoten hii drongken: [f. 67ᵇ. c. 1.]
dræm wes i burhȝen.		bliſſe was a-mang heom.
þa þe duȝeðe hafde iȝeten:		
þa wes heom þa bet iloten.		
Hængeſt eode in to þan inne:		Hengeſt wēde to þe inc:
þeř wunede Rouwenne.		þar Rowenne was hinne.
he heo lette ſcruden:	20	he hire lette ſcrude:
mid vnimete[1] prude.		mid onimete prude.
al þ ſcrud þe heo hafde on:		
heo weoren ſwiðe wel ibon.		

gan proceed until 'he [they] came to '*the* burgh [the spot]. 'He [The king] beheld the wall up and down over all; all *it* liked him well, that he on looked. He went into *the* hall, and all his knights with him; ' trumps they blew, games men gan to call,' boards they 'ordered [caused] to be spread, knights sate thereat; they ate, they drank,'joy [bliss] was 'in *the* burgh [among them]!—' when the folk had eaten, then was the better befallen to them.' Hengest went 'in'to the inn, where Rouwenne 'dwelt [in was]; he caused her to be clad with excessive pride; 'all the clothes that she had on, they were most excellent, they were good with the best,

[1] *The last two letters of* vnimete *are interlined by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

heo weoren mid þan bezſte:
ibruſted mid golde.
Heo bar an hiꝛ honde:
ane guldene bolle.
i-uulled mid wine:
þe wes wunder ane god.
Hæȝe iborēne men:
heo lædden to hallen.
biuoren þan kinge:
farreſt alre þinge.
Reowen ſæt a cneowe:
& cleopede to þan kinge.
& þuſ æreſt ſæide:
in Æneglene londe.
Lauerd king wæſ hæil:
for þine kime ich æm uæin.
þe king þiſ ihærde:
& nuſte what heo ſeide.
þe king Vortigernè:
fræinede his cnihteſ ſone.
what weoren þat ſpeche:
þe þ maide ſpilede.
Þa andſwerede Keredic: [f. 82b. c. 1.]
a cniht ſwiðe ſellic.
he wes þe bezſte latimer:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ȝeo bar in hire hond:
ane goldene bolle.
hi-fulled mid wine:
ne mihte non be richere.
Hehȝe ibore mē:
hire ladde in to halle.
bi-vore þan kinge:
faireſt alle þing.
Rowenne ſat a cnouwe:
and ſeide to þā kinge.
þus ereſt ȝeo ſpac:
in Englene lond.
Louerd king waſſaýl:
for þine comes me beoþ hail.
þe kīg hit ihorde:
and nuſte wat ȝeo ſaide.
þe king Vortigerne:
haxede his cnihtes.
wat were þe ſpeche:
þat þe maide ſpeke.
Þo anſwerede Keþereh:
cniht mid þe wiſeſt.
he was þe beſte latimer:

embroidered with gold.' She bare in her hand a golden bowl, filled with wine, 'that was one wondrous good [none might be richer]. High-born men led her [in]to *the* hall before the king, fairest of all things! Rouwenne sate on *her* knee, and 'called [said] to the king, 'and' thus first [she] 'said [spake] in English land: "Lord king, wassail! for thy coming 'I am glad [is health to me]." The king 'this [it] heard, and knew not what she said; the king Vortiger asked his knights 'soon', what were the speech that the maid spake. Then answered 'Keredic [Kethereh], 'a' knight 'most admirable [with the wisest]; he was the best interpreter that 'ere

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat ær com her.	þat euere wone[1] her.
Luſt me nu lauerd king:	Luſt nou mi louerd king:
& ich þe wulle cuðen.	and ich þe wolle cuðen.
whæt ſeið Rouwenne:	wat ſeiþ Rowenne:
fæireſt wimmonnen.	faireſt of al wommanne.
Hit beoð tiðende:	Hit his þe wone:
inne Sæxe-londe.	ine Sax-londe.
whær ſwa æi duȝeðe:	
gladieð[2] of drenche.	
þat freond fæiðe to freonde:	þat freond faiþ to his freond:
mid fæire loten hende.	wane he ſal dringe.
Leofue freond wæf hail:	Leofue freond waſſail:
þe oðer fæið drinc hail.	þe oþer faiþ dringhail.
þe ilke þat halt þene nap:	þe ilke þat halt þane nap:
he hine drinkeð up.	þane dringe dringþ vp.
oder[3] uul me þider fareð:	and aȝeo me hine fulþ:
& bi-thecheð hif iuerē.	and takeþ his ivere.
þenne þat uul beoð icumen:	
þenne cuſſeoð heo þreoien.	
þiſ beoð ſele laȝen:	þis beoþ þe lawes: [c. 2.]
inne Saxe-londe.	ine Saxlonde.
& inne Alemaine:	
heo beoð ihalden aðele.	

came [ever dwelt] here: "Listen 'to me' now, [my] lord king, and I will make known to thee what Rouwenne saith, fairest [of all] women. It is [the] custom in Saxland, 'wheresoever any people gladden (make merry) in drink,' that friend sayeth to [his] friend, 'with fair comely looks [when he shall drink], "Dear friend, wassail!"—the other sayeth, "Drinchail!" The same that holds the cup, 'he' drinketh 'it [the drink] up; 'another full *cup* men thither bring [and again men fill it], and give to his comrade. 'When the full *cup* is come, then kiss they thrice.' These are [the] 'good' customs in Saxland, 'and in Alemaine they are accounted noble!'" Vortiger

[1] wonede?

[2] *Written at first* gladeieð, *but* e *expuncted by the same hand.*

[3] oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þiſ iherde Uortiger:
of alchel[1] uuele he wes war.
& ſeide hit an Bruttiſc:
ne cuðe he nan Ængliſc.
Maiden Rouwenne:
drinc bluðeliche þenne.
Þat maide dronc up þat win:
& lette don oðer þer in.
& bi-tæhten þan kinge:
& þrien hine cuſte.
& þurh þa ilke leodē:
þa laȝen comen to þiſſen londe.
[*Wæſ-h*]*ail.* wæſ-hail & drinc-hæil:
moni mon þer of if fain.
Rouwenne þe hende:
ſat bi þan kinge.
þe king heo ȝeorne biheold:
heo was him an heorte leof.
ofte he heo cuſte:
ofte he heo clupte.
al his mod & his main:
halde to þan mæidene.
þe wurſe weſ þer ful neh:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þiſ ihorde Vortiger:
of eche vuele he was war.
and ſaide hit on Brutteſſe:
ne couþe he noht on Engliſſe.
Maȳde Rowenne:
dring bloþeliche þanne.
Þat maide drong vt þat win:
and lette don oþer þar in.
and bi-tahte þan kinge:
and he hit vp ſwipte.
And þorh þiſne ilke game:
þe lawe come to londe.
waſſaȳl and dring-haȳl:
þat mani mē loſuieþ.
þe faire Rowenne:
ſat bi þan kinge.
þe king hire ȝeorne bi-heold:
ȝeo was him leof on heorte.
ofte he hire cuſte:
and ofte he hire clupte.

[c. 2.] þe worſe was þare wel neh:

heard this,—of each evil he was ware,—and said it in British, *for* he knew 'no [not in] English]: "Maiden Rouwenne, drink then blithely!" The maid drank 'up [out] the wine, and let do (put) other *wine* therein, and gave to the king, and 'thrice him kissed [he drank it up]. And through 'the [this] same 'people [game] the custom came to 'this' land of Wassail and Drinchail,—'many a man thereof is glad [that many men love]! Rouwenne the fair sate by the king; the king beheld her longingly, she was dear to him in heart; oft he kissed her, [and] oft he embraced her; 'all his mind and his might inclined to*wards* the maiden.' The Worse was

[1] alchen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þe in ælche gomene is ful ræh.
þe wurfe ne dude næuere god:
he mæingde þas kinges mod.
he murnede ful fwiðe:
to habben þat mæidē to wiue..
þat wes swide ladlic[1] þing:
þat þe criftine king.
luuede þat haðene maide:
leoden to hærme.
Þ maiden wes þan kinge leof:
æfne alfe hif aȝene lif.
he bad Hengeft his dring:
ȝiuen him þat maide-child.
Hēgeft funde an his ræd:
to don Þ þę king him bed:
he ȝef him Rouwenne:
wimmon fwiðe hende.
þan kinge hit was [icweme]:
he makede[2] heo to quene.
al after þan laȝen:
þe ftoden an hæðe[3] dæȝen.
nes þer nan criftindō:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat to foche game his wel fleh.
þe worfe þat neuere ne doþ god:
he meynde þare þef kingef mod.
þe king mornede fwiþe:
for habbe hire to wifue.
þat was fwiþe loþlich þing:
þat þe criftene king.
louede þat maide heaþene:
folk to harme.

To Hengeft bad þe king:
þat he þat maide ȝefue him.
Hengeft funde on his reade:
don þat þe king him beade.
he ȝef him Rowenne: *Rouwenne.*
womman fwiþe hende.
þane king hit was icweme:
he makede hire to cwene. [f.68.c.1.]
al after þe lawes:
þat ftode in heaþene daiȝe.
nas þar preoft ne criftendom:

there full nigh, who in 'each [such *a*] game is 'full cruel [well sly]; the Worse [who] never 'did [doth] good, he troubled the kings mood; 'he [the king] mourned 'full' much, to have 'the maiden [her] for wife. That was *a* most loathly thing, that the christian king should love the heathen maid, to *the* harm of *his* people! 'The maiden was dear to the king, even as his own life'; 'he [The king] prayed [to] Hengest, 'his chieftain,' [that he should] give him the maid-'child.' Hengest found in his counsel to do what the king asked him; he gave him Rouwenne, *the* woman most fair. To the king it was pleasing; he made her queen, all after the laws that stood in *the* heathen days; was there 'no [nor priest nor] Christendom, where the king

[1] swiðe laðlic?
[2] imakede *man. sec.*
[3] hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þer þe king þat maide mon[1].	þar þe king þat mayde nom.
ne preoſt ne na biſcop:	
ne nauere ihandled godes boc.	
ah ā heðene wune he heo wedde:	þat mayde he weddede:
& brohte heo to his bedde.	and nam hire to his bedde.
Maidē he heo hæfde:	
& mærȝeue hire bi-tahte.	
þa he hine an hire hafde iſcend:	
he hire ȝef Londen & Kent.	
þe king hafde þreo ſunen:	þe king hadde þreo ſones:
þe weoren fwiðe hende gumē.	þat were ſtaleworþe gomes.
Vortimer. þe ældeſte hehte Vortimer:	þe eldeſte hehte Vortimer:
Paſcent. Catiger. Paſſcent & Katiger.	Paſcent and Catiger.
Garengan wes an eorl:	Garangan was an eorl:
þe Kent ohte longe.	þat Kent hadde longe.
& hiſ fader biuoren him:	
and ſeoððen he þurh hiſ cun. [f. 83. c. 1.]	
þa he bezſt wende:	þo he beſte wende:
to halden his lond.	to holde his cunde.
þa hafde Hengeſt:	þo hadde hit þe cwene:
hit an hiſ hond.	and Hengeſt imene.
ſellic þuhte þan cnihte:	ſeollich þohte þe cniht:
whæt þe king þohte.	wat þe king þohte.

took the maid, 'nor priest, nor any bishop, nor *was* Gods book ever handled, but in *the* heathen fashion' he wedded 'her [the maid], and 'brought [took] her to his bed! 'Maiden he had her, and ample gift bestowed on her; when he had disgraced himself on her, he gave her London and Kent.' The king had three sons, who were men 'exceeding fair [valiant]; the eldest hight Vortimer,—Pascent, and Catiger. Garengan was an earl, who 'possessed [had] Kent long, 'and his father before him, and he afterwards through his kin (by inheritance); when he best weened to hold his land, then had it [the queen, and] Hengest 'in his hand [in common]; strange *it* seemed to the knight, what the king thought. 'The king loved the heathens and

[1] *R.* nom? inom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þe king luuede þa hæðene:	
& hunde[1] þa criſtine.	
þe hæðene hæfden al þiſ lond:	þe heaþene hadde al þis lond:
to walden under heore hond.	to hire owe hond.
& þes kinges þreo ſunen:	and þeos kinges þreo ſones.
ofte þoleden forȝen & kare.	ofte ſori were.
Heore moder wes þa dæd:	hire moder was dead:
þer uore heo hafden þe laſſe ræd.	þar vore hii hadde þe laſſe read.
here moder wes ſwiðe god wif:	
& ladde swiðe criſtin lif.	
& heore ſteopmoder hæðene:	
Hengeſtes dohter.	
Nes hit noh[2] longe:	Nas his[3] noht longe:
buten ane ſtūde.	bote one ſtunde:
þ þe king makede:	þat þe king makede feſte:
ueorme ſwiðe ſtore.	on mid þe meſte.
þe hæðene he laðede þar to:	þe heaþene he laþede þar to:
he wende ſwiðe wel to don.	he wende ſwiþe wel to do.
þider comen þæines:	
cnihtes and sweines.	
And alle þe cuðe a boken:	Ac al þat couþe of boke:
þa feorme for-ſoken.	þe feſte for-ſoke.
for þa hæðene men:	
weoren hæhſt an hireden.	

harmed the christians'; the heathens had all this land 'to rule under their [in their own] hand, and the kings three sons oft 'suffered sorrow and care [were sorry]. Their mother was 'then' dead, therefore they had the less counsel,—'their mother was *a* woman most good, and led *a* life very christian, and their stepmother *was* heathen, Hengests daughter.' It was not long, but a while, that the king made *a* feast, 'exceeding great [one with the most]; the heathens he brought thereto; he weened most well to do; 'thither came thanes, knights and swains.' And all that knew of book (the christians) forsook the feast, 'for the heathen men were highest

[1] henede *man. sec.* [2] noht? [3] *R.* hit.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& þæt criſtine hired:	
for hæne wes ihalden.	
þa hæðene weoren bliðe:	þe heaþene were bliþe:
for þe king heom luuedē ſwiðe.	for þe king ȝam lofuede ſwiþe.
Hengeſt hine bi-þohte:	Hengeſt hine bi-þohte:
what he don mahte.	wat he don mihte.
he com to þā kinge:	he com to þan kinge:
mid are hailīge.	
& dronc to þan kinge[1]:	
þa ſpæc þuſ Hængeſt:	and þeos word ſaide.
cnihtene alre hændeſt. [c. 2.]	
þ of hæðene laȝen:	
leouede a þan dæȝen:	
Hærcne me lauerd king:	Hercne me nou louerd king:
þu ært me leof þurh alle þing.	ich þe louie þorh alle þing. [c. 2.]
þu hæueſt mine dohter:	þou haueſt mine dohter:
þæ me is swiðe deore.	þat me his swiþe deore.
& ich æm þe an folke:	and ich ham þe on folke:
swa ich þi fader weore.	alſe ich þi fader were.
hærcne mine lare:	
heo ſculleð þe wurðen leofue.	
for ich wulle hæhliche:	
to helpen þe ræden.	
þin hired þe hateð for me:	þine men þe hatieþ for me:

in *the* court, and the christian folk was held for base'; the heathens were blithe, for the king loved them greatly. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he came to the king, 'with a hailing (salutation),' and 'drank to the king. Then' 'thus spake Hengest [said these words], 'fairest of all knights who lived of heathen law in those days': "Hearken to me [now], lord king, 'thou art to me dear [I love thee] through all things; thou hast my daughter, who is to me very dear, and I am to thee among folk as *if* I were thy father. 'Hearken to my instruction, it shall be to thee lief, for I will (wish) chiefly to help counsel thee.' Thy 'court [men] hate thee

[1] *A line is here apparently deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ich æm iuæid for þe.	and ich ham ifeiþed for þe.
& þe hatieð kinges:	
eorles & ðringes.	
heo uareð in þine londe:	
mid hære fwiðe ftronge.	
ȝif þu wult þe awraken:	ȝef þou wolt þe awreke:
mid wurðfcipe muchen.	mid worfipe mochele.
& don þine vniwinen wa:	and don þin onwines wo:
send after mine fune Octa.	fend after mine fone Octa.
& æfter enne oðer:	and after þan oþer:
Ebifla his wed-broðer.	Ebifla his wed-broþer.
þis beoð þa hæhfte men:	þis beoþ þe ardiefte men:
þe æuer hired lædden.	þat euere bere wepne.
& i þan norð ende:	and in þan norþende:
ȝif heom of þine londe.	ȝef ham of þine lond.
Heo beoð of muchele mæhte:	Hii beoþ of mochele mihte:
& ftronge i fæhte.	and ftrong in eche fihte.
heo wulleð biwiten þi lond:	hii wolleþ witie þi lond:
wel mid þan bezften.	wel mid þan beſte.
þenne mihte þu mid winne:	þan miht þou in wele:
þi lif al uor-werien.	þi lif al for-werie.
mid haueken & mid hunden:	
hired-plæie luuien.	
ne þræt þu nauere habben kare:	
of uncuðe leoden.	

for me (on my account), and I am detested for thee, 'and thee hate kings, earls and thanes; they fare in thy land with *a* host exceeding strong.' If thou wilt avenge thee with much worship, and do woe to thy enemies, send after my son Octa, and after 'another [the other], Ebissa, his wed-brother. These are the 'noblest [hardiest] men that ever 'led army [bare weapon]; and give them of thy land in the north end. They are of mickle might, and strong in [each] fight; they will defend thy land well with the best; then mightest thou in 'joy [weal] thy life all spend, 'with hawks and with hounds court-play love; needest thou never have care of foreign people."

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa anſwarede Vortiger: [f. 83ᵇ. c. 1.]	Þo ſaide þe king:
of ælchen uuele he wes war.	
Send þine ſonde:	ſende after ȝam for alle þing.
in to Sex-londe.	
after þine ſune Octa:	
& after þine freonden ma-	
do him wel to iwite:	
þ he ſende hiſ writen.	
æfter al þan cnihten:	
þe gode beoð to fihten.	
ȝeond alle Sæx-þeoden:	
þat heo cumen to mire neoden.	
& þeh he bringen ten þuſend gu-	
alle heo beoð me wel icumen. [men:	
Þiſ ihærde Hengeſt:	
cnihten alre henddeſt.	
þa wes he swa bliðe:	
swa he nes næuere an hiſ liue.	
Hengeſt ſende his ſōde:	Hengeſt ſende his ſonde:
in to Sax-londe.	into Saxlonde.
hehte cumen Octa:	hehte come Octa:
and his wed-broder Ebiſſa.	and his wedbroþer Ebiſſa.
& al of heore cūme[1]:	and alle of hire cunne:

Then "answered Vortiger [said the king],—'of each evil he was ware,'—"Send 'thy messengers into Saxland,' after 'thy son Octa, and after thy friends more [them, for all things]. 'Cause him to know well, that he send his writs after all the knights that are good in fight, over all Saxland, that they come to my need; and though he bring ten thousand men, all they shall be welcome to me." Hengest heard this, fairest of all knights; then was he so blithe as he was never in his life.' Hengest sent his messengers into Saxland, *and* bade Octa come, and his wed-brother Ebissa, and all of their kindred that they might gain, and all the knights

[1] cūne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat heo mihten iwinnen.		þat hii mihte a-winne.
& alle þa cnihtes:		and alle þe cnihtes:
þæ heo biȝiten mihten.		þat hii bi-ȝeten mihte.
Octa fende fende[1] fonde:		
ȝeōd þreom kine-londe.		
& bad ælchene ohte gume:		
hiȝenliche hī to cume.		
þe wolden biȝitē lond:		
oðer feoluer oðer gold.		
Heo comen to hirede:	10	
alfe haȝel þe ualleð.		
þ was to iwitene:		Hii cóme fone to iwite:
mid þreo hundred fcipene.		mid foue hundred fipes.
Forð wenden mid Octa:		
þritti þufend & æc ma.		
ohte men & kene:		
& Ebifla hif iuere.	[c. 2.]	
æfter com liðen:		
mid unimete leoden.		
& he ladde to iwiten:	20	
oðer half hundred fcipen.		
þer æfter comen liðe:		þar after fone:
fiue & fiue.		þar come wel ilome.
bi fixe bi feoue:		bi fixe bi fouene:

that they might get. 'Octa sent messengers over three kingdoms, and bade each brave man speedily to come to him, who would obtain land, or silver or gold.' They came [soon] 'to *the* army, as hail that falleth, that was' to wit, with 'three [seven] hundred ships. 'Forth went with Octa thirty thousand and eke more, brave men and keen; and Ebissa, his companion, afterwards arrived with numberless folk, and he led to wit *an* hundred *and* fifty ships'; thereafter 'arrived five and five, [soon there came *ships* well often] by six, by seven, by ten, 'and' by eleven; and thus '*the* heathen

[1] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bi tene & bi ælleuene.	bi ten bi enlouene.
& þuf heo comen liðen:	and þus hii come fie:
toward þiſſen londe.	in to þiſſe londe.
hæðene hære-gumē:	
to hirede þif kinges.	
þ̄ þis lond wes ſwa vul:	þat þif lond was ſo ful:
of uncuðe leoden.	of heaþene hundes.
þat nes nan ſwa wis mon:	þat nas non ſo wis man.
no ſwa ȝer witele.	ne ſo war wittȳ.
þat mihte to-dæle:	þat mihte to-dele: [f. 68ᵇ. c. 1.]
þa criſtine & þa hæðene.	þe heaþene and þe criſtene:
for þa hæðene weoren ſwa riue:	
& auere heo comen bililiue[1].	
þa iſeȝen Bᵘttes:	þo iſehȝe Bruttes:
þat balu wes an londe.	þat þus hit verde in londe.
þer uore heo weoren færi:	þar vore hii weren fori:
& an heorte druri.	and in hire heor[2] dreri.
& ferden to þan kinge:	and wende to þan kinge:
þe hæhſte of þiſſen londe.	he heheſte of þiſſe [londe].
& þuf him to fæiden:	and þus to him ſaide:
mid ſorhfule ſteuene.	mid forþfulle heorte.
Luſt uf nu lauerd king:	Hercne vs louerd king:
of ure leod-runen[3].	of oure deorne rouning.
þu ært þurh uf bald king:	þou hart þorh vs bold king:

warriors they arrived 'toward [into] this land, 'to *the* court of this king,' so that this land was so full of 'foreign people [heathen hounds], that *there* was no man so wise, nor so quick-witted, that might separate the christians and the heathens, 'for the heathens were so rife; and ever they speedily came!' When *the* Britons saw that 'sorrow was [thus it fared] in *the* land, therefore they were sorry, and in [their] heart dreary, and proceeded to the king, the highest of this land, and thus to him said with sorrowful 'voice [heart]: "'Listen [Hearken] to us, lord king, of our 'discourse [secret communing]; thou art through us (by our means) bold king in this 'Britain,

[1] *R.* biliue. [2] *R.* heorte. [3] leoð-runen *sec. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
inne þiſſē Bᵘtene.	in þiſſere londe.
& þu hafueſt þe biwūnen:	ac þou haueſt þe bi-wonne:
hærm & muchele ſunnen.	harm and mochel ſunne.
ibroht heðene folc:	i-broh[1] heaþene folk:
ȝet hit þe ihærmeð.	ȝet hit mai þe ruwe.
& þu leteſt godeſ laȝen:	and þo[2] for-ſakeſt godes lawe:
uor uncude[3] leoden.	for heaþene folke:
& nult ne ihæren ure drihtē:	
for þiſſen hædene[4] cnihten.	
& we þe wulleð bidden: [f. 84. c. 1.]	Ac we þe wolleþ bidde:
for alle godes ſibbē:	for alle god ſibbe.
þat þu heom bilæuen:	þat þou heom bi-lefue:
& of þine lōde driuen.	and of þine londe driue.
ȝif þu alleſ ne maht:	ȝef þou elles ne miht:
we wulleð makien muchel fæht.	we wolleþ makie gret ſiht.
& driuen heom of londe:	and driuen heom vt of londe:
oðer heom adun fallen.	oþer to grunde falle.
oðer we uſ ſeoluen:	oþer we vs seolue:
of-ſlaȝen wulleð liggen.	to-hewe wolleþ ligge.
& leten haðene uolc:	and leten heaþene folk:
hælden þas riche.	habbe þeos riche.
bruken hit mid winne:	
ȝif heo hit maȝen iwinnen.	
& ȝif heo alle beoð hæðene:	And ȝef hii alle beoþ heaþene:

and [land, but] thou hast procured to thee harm and much sin; brought heathen folk,—yet it may thee 'harm [rue];—and thou forsakest Gods law, for 'foreign [heathen] folk, 'and wilt not worship our Lord, for these heathen knights.' 'And [But] we would pray thee, for all Gods peace, that thou leave them, and drive from thy land. If thou else (otherwise) mightest not, we will make 'mickle [great] fight, and drive them 'from [out of] land, or fell 'them' 'down [to ground], or we ourselves will lie 'slain [cut in pieces], and let *the* heathen folk 'hold [have] this realm, 'possess it with joy, if they may it win. And if they all are heathen, and

[1] ibroht? [2] þou? [3] uncuðe? [4] hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& þu ane criſtine.	and þou one criſtene.
nulleð heo nauere longe:	nolleþ hii neuere:
habben þe to kinge.	holde þe for kinge.
buten þu a þine daȝen:	
afo hæðene laȝen.	
& bilæue þe hahȝe godd:	
& luuie heore mahimet.	
þenne ſcalt þu for-wurþen:	
a þiſſerere[1] woruld-riche.	
& þi wracche ſaule:	
liȝen to helle.	
þenne haueſt þu aboht:	
þe luue of þire brude[2].	
Þa anſwærede Vortiger:	Þo anſwerede Vortiger:
of ælc an uuele he weſ wær.	of ech vuele he was war.
Nulle ich heom bilauen:	Nelle ich ȝam bi-leue:
bi mine quike liue.	bi mine cwike lifue.
for Hengeſt if hider icumen:	for Hengeſt his hider icome:
he if mi fader & ich hif ſune.	he hif min fader and ich his ſone.
& ich habbe to leof-monne:	and ich habbe to lefman: [[c.2.]
hif dohter Rouwenne.	his dohter Rowenne.
& ich heo habbe biwedded:	
& ihaued a mine bedde.	
& ſeoðden ich ſende after Octa:	and ſuþþe ich ſende after Octa:

thou alone christian, they will never 'long' have [hold] thee for king, 'except thou in thy days receive *the* heathen law, and desert the high God, and praise their idols. Then shalt thou perish in this worlds realm, and thy wretched soul sink to hell; then hast thou *dearly* bought the love of thy bride!'" Then answered Vortiger,—of each evil he was ware:—"I will not leave them, by my quick life! For Hengest is hither come, he is my father, and I his son; and I have for mistress his daughter Rouwenne, 'and I have wedded her, and had in my bed,' and afterwards I sent after

[1] þiſſere?

[2] *Written at first* Brutede, *but* te *struck out by the rubricator.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& after hiſ iueren ma.
hu mihte ich for ſcome:
ſcunien heom ſwa ſone.
driuē of londe:
mine wiues[1] deore.
Þa andſwarede Bruttes:
mid ſorȝen ibunden.
Nulle we nauere mare:
Þine iboden herc.
ne to Þine hirede cumen:
ne Þe uor king halden.
ah hatien we wulleð:
mid hæhȝere ſtrēgðe.
alle Þine hæðene wines:
&[2] hærme igreten.
bidden us to fultume:
Þ is criſt godes ſune.
Forð iwenden eorleſ:
forð iwenden beornes.
forð iwenden biſcopes:
& Þa boc-ilæred m̄.
forð iwenden Þæines:
forð iwēden ſweines.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and after hire cunne mo.
hou mihte ich for ſame:
[c. 2.] ſo ſone ȝam for-ſake.

Þo anſwerede Bruttus:
mid ſorewe ibunde.
And nolle we neuere more:
Þine bodes ihiere.
ne to Þine heſte come:
ne Þe for kinge holde.

ac Þe and Þine hundes:
we wolleþ mid harme grete.
be vs nou to foltome:
Þat his criſt godes ſone.

Octa, and after more of 'his companions [their kin];—how might I for shame 'shun [forsake] them so soon, '*and* drive from land my dear friends?' " Then answered *the* Britons, with sorrow bound: "[And] we will nevermore obey thy commands, nor come to thy 'court [command], nor hold thee for king, ' but we will hate *thee* with great strength,' '*and* all thine heathen friends [thee and thine hounds] with harm greet. Be Christ now, that is Gods son, our help!" Forth went ' *the* earls, forth went *the* lords, forth went *the* bishops, and the book-learned men, forth went *the* thanes, forth went *the* swains,' 'all the Britons, until they came to London [they all to London

[1] wines?

[2] mid?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
alle Brutleoden :/	Forþ hii wende alle :/
þ heo comen to Lūdene.	to Londene his toune.
þer wes moni hæh Brut :/	þar was mani heh Brut.
at þan huſtinge.	at þan iłke ſpeche.
& þeos king þreo ſunes :/	and þeos kinges þreo ſones :/
alle heo weoren þider icumen.	alle hii were þider icome.
þer wes Uortimer :/	
Paſcent & Katiger.	
& ſwiðe monie oðere :/	and ſwiþe manie oþere :/
þat comē mid þan broðere.	þat come mid þan broþeres.
al þ folc þider com :/	al þat folk þider com :/
þat luueden þene criſttendom.	þat lofuede þane criſtendom.
Alle þa riche :/	And alle þe riche :/
nomē heom to ræde.	nemen heom to reade.
& nomen þes kingeſ ældeſte ſune :/	
þe to þan huſtinge wes icumen.	
& mid muchele loft-ſonge :/	
heuen hiuen[1] to kinge.	
Vortim[er]. þa wes Vortimer :/	þat hii wolde Vortimer :/
criſtine kīg þer.	makie criſtene king þer.
& Uortig[9] his fader :/	and lete Vortigerne his fader :/
fulede þan hæðenen.	folwi þe heaþene.
	Al þus hit bi-com :/

his town]. There was many *a* noble Briton at 'the husting [that conference], and the kings three sons they all were come thither; 'there was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger,' and very many others, that came with the brothers; all the folk came thither, that loved the Christendom. [And] all the rich *men* betook them to counsel, 'and took the kings eldest son, who was come to the husting, and with mickle song of praise elevated him to *be* king.' 'Then was [that they would make] Vortimer christian king there, and [let] Vortiger, his father, 'followed [follow] the heathens. [All thus it happened, as the counsel was done. And] Vortimer, the young

[1] hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	alſe þe read was idon.
Vortim[9] þe ȝunge kīg: [f.84b.c.1.]	and Vortimer þe ȝonge king:
wes swiðe kene þurh alle þing.	was kene þorh alle þing.
he ſende Hengeſt word:	he het Hengeſt hiȝenliche:
& Horſe his broðer.	
buten heo hiȝenliche:	
uerden of þiſ riche.	faren vt of his riche.
he heom walde ufel don:	oþer þou and þine veres:
baðe ablenden and anhon.	ſolle ligge here to-ȝere. [f.69.c.1.]
& his aȝene fader: 10	
he for-uaren walde.	
& alle þa hæðene:	
mid hæȝere ſtrengðe.	
Þa andſwærede Hengeſt:	þo anſwerede Hengeſt:
cnihtene alre hendeſt.	cniht alre hendeſt.
Her we wulleð wunien:	Her we wolleþ wonie:
wintres & ſumeres.	wintres and ſomeres.
riden & ærnen:	riden and erne:
mid þan kinge Vortigerne.	mid þan king Vortigerne.
& alle þa mid Vortimere uareð:	and al þat mid Vortimer vareþ:
heo ſculleð habben forȝen & kare.	hii ſolle habbe ſorewe and care.
Þat iherde Vortimer: 22	Þat ihorde Vortimer:
he wes wis & ſwiðe iwar.	he was wis and ſwiþe war.
& lette beoden uerde:	he lette beden ferde:
ȝeond allen þiſſen ærde.	oueral þeoſ eorþe.

king, was 'most' keen through all things; he 'sent [ordered] Hengest 'and Hors his brother, unless' speedily 'they departed from this [to depart out of his] realm, 'he would evil do to them, both blind and hang; ["or thou and thy comrades shall presently lie here."] 'and his own father he would destroy, and all the heathens, with great strength.' Then answered Hengest, fairest of all knights: "Here we will dwell winter and summer, ride and run with the king Vortiger; and all that with Vortimer go, they shall have sorrow and care!" Vortimer heard that,—he was wise and most 'wary,—'and [he] caused *a* host to be assembled over all this land, that all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat al þ̄ criſtine folc :/	þat al þat criſtene folk :/
come to hirede.	come to hire kinge.
Vortimer þe ȝunge king :/	
i Lundene heold hiſ huſting.	
þe king hehte ælcne mon :/	þe king hehte echne mon :/
þe luuede þene criſtīdom.	þat louede þane criſtendom.
þat heo þa hæðene :/	þat hii alle þe heaþene :/
hatien ſcolden.	hatie ſolde.
& þa hæfden bringen.	and þe hefdes bringe :/
to Vortimer þan kinge.	to Vortimer þan king.
& twalf panewes habben to mede :/	and twelf panewes to mede :/
for his wel dede.	habbe for his god dede.
Vortimer þe ȝunge :/	Vortimer þe ȝonge :/
verde ut of Lundene.	verde vt of Londene.
& Paſcent his broðer :/	and Paſcent his broþer :/
& Katig[9] þe oðer.	and Catiger þe oþer.
heom wes icumē word :/	him was icome word :/
þ̄ Hengeſt læi at Epiford.	þat Hengeſt laý at Epiford.
uppen þan watere :/	vppe þare watere :/
þe men nemneð Darewente. [c. 2.]	þat Darwent his ihote.
þer comen to-ſomne :/	þar comen to-gadere :/
ſixti þuſend monnen.	ſixti þuſend māne.
an are halue wes Vortimer :/	in on half was Vortimer :/
Paſcent & Categer.	Paſcent and Catiger.
& al þat leodliche folc :/	and al þat criſtene folk :/

the christian folk should come to 'his court [their king]. 'Vortimer, the young king, in London held his husting'; the king ordered each man that loved the Christendom, that they [all] should hate the heathens, and bring the heads of *them* to Vortimer the king, and have twelve pennies for reward, for his good deed. Vortimer the young marched out of London, and Pascent, his brother, and Catiger, the other; to 'them [him] was come word, that Hengest lay at Epiford, upon the water that 'men name [is named] Darwent. There came together sixty thousand men; on one half was Vortimer, Pascent, and Catiger, and all the [christian] folk that loved our Lord; on

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þat luueden ure drihten.
an oðere halue weorē drēches:
mid Vortigerne þan kīge.
Hengeſt and his broðer:
& moni þuſend oðer:
To-ſomne heo comen:
& mid mæine on-ſloȝen.
þer uellen to þan grūde:
twa & þritti hundred.
of Hængeſteſt[1] monnen:
& Hors wes for-wonded.
Catiger þer com:
& mid his ſpere hine þurh-nom.
& Horſ forð riht þer:
for-wundede Catiger.
& Heng̃ gon to flonnen:
mid al his driht-monnen.
& Vortigerne þe king:
flæh forð alſe þe wīd.
heo floȝen forð in to Kent:
& Vortimer heom after went.
uppen þere fæ brimme:
þer Hēgeſt þolede pine.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat louede vre drihte.
in þe oþer half were:
mid Vortiger þan king.
Hengeſt and his broþer [c. 2.]
and mani þuſend oþer.
To-gadere hii come:
and mainliche on-ſlowe.
þar fulle to þan grunde:
two and þritti hundred.
of Hengeſtes men:
and his broþer ſore iwondede.
Catiger þar com:
and mid his ſpere him þorh-nom.
and he forþ riht þer:
for-wondede Catiger.
And Hengeſt gan to flende:
mid heaþene folke.
and Vortiger þe king:
fleþ forþ aſe þe wind.
hii floȝe forþ into Kent:
and Vortimer heom after wend.
vppe þare ſéé rime:
þar Hengeſt þolede pine.

the other half were 'chiefs' with Vortiger the king, Hengest and his brother, and many thousand others. Together they came (encountered), and combated 'with might [mightily]; there fell to the ground two and thirty hundred of Hengests men; and 'Hors was [his brother *was* sore] wounded. Catiger came there, and with his spear ran him through, and 'Hors [he] forth-right there wounded Catiger. And Hengest gan to flee with 'all his followers [*the* heathen folk], and Vortiger the king fled forth as the wind; they flew forth into Kent, and Vortimer went after them; there upon the sea-shore Hengest suffered pain; there they gan to halt, and fought very

[1] *R.* Hængeſtes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þer heo gũnen at-ſtonden:	þar hii gonne aſtonde:
& fahten ſwiðe longe.	and fohte ſwiþe longe.
fif þuſende þer weorē iflæȝen:	fif þouſēd þar were iflaȝe:
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	and idon of lifdaiȝe.
of Vortigernes[1] monnen:	of Hengeſteſ men:
of þan hæðene cunnen.	of þan heaþene cunne.
Hengeſt hine biðohte:	Hengeſt hine bi-þohte:
whæt he don mahte.	wat he don mihte.
iſeh he þer bi-halues:	hi-seh he þer in flode:
ane hæuene ſwiðe mære.	
moni ſcipē gode:	mani ſipes gode.
þer ſtoden i ſæ flode.	
Heo iſeȝen an heore riht hond:	Hii ſehe on hire riht hond:
a ſwiþe fæier æit-lond. [f. 85. c. 1.]	a ſwiþe fair ỳllond.
Tanate. hit if ihaten Tænate:	þat his i-hote Tanate:
þiderward heo weoren whæte.	þiderward iwere[2] wate.
þer þa Sæxiſce men:	þar þe Saxeſſe men:
þæ sæ iſohten.	þare ſéé ſohte.
& anan gunnen wendē:	and a-non wende:
in to þan æit-londe.	to þan ỳllonde.
& Bruttes heom after:	and Bruttef heom after:
mid feole cunne craften.	mid fale cunne craftes.
& heom to-heolden:	and heom to-heolde:
in æchere hælue.	in euereche ſide.

long; five thousand there were slain, and deprived of life-day, of 'Vortigers [Hengests] men, of the heathen race. Hengest bethought him what he might do; he saw there 'beside a haven very large,' many good ships 'there stood' in *the* 'sea'-flood. They saw on their right hand an island exceeding fair, 'it [that] is called Thanet; thitherward they were brisk; there the Saxish men sought the sea, and anon 'gan pass [passed] 'in 'to the island. And *the* Britons *followed* after them, with many kind of crafts, and surrounded them on 'each [every] side; 'with ships and with boats they gan

[1] Hengeſtes?

[2] hii were?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid ſcipē & mid baten :/	
heo gunnen ſmiten & ſceoten.	
Ofte wes Hængeſt wæ[1] :/	Ofte waf Hengeſt wo :/ [f. 69b. c. 1.]
& nauere wurſ þane þa.	ac neuere worſe þane þo.
buten he dude oðerne ræd :/	bote he dude oþerne read :/
þer he ſculden wurðen dæd.	þar he moſte beo dead.
he nō ænne ſpere-ſcæft :/	he nam one ſpere-ſaft :/
þe wes long & ſwiþe ſtærc.	þat waf ſwiþe lang and ſtarc.
& dude a þene ænde :/	and dude o þan ende :/
ænne mantel hende.	one mantel hende.
& cleopede to þan Brutten :/	and ſpac to þan Bruttes :/
& bed heom abiden.	wordes and ſaide þus.
he wold ſpæckē heom wið :/	Alle we ȝerneþ griþ :/
& ȝirnen þeos kinges grið.	and to ſpeke þe kinge wiþ.
& mid griðe ſēde :/	and mid loue ſende :/
Uortigerne to londe.	his fader to londe.
to makien hiſ forward :/	wiþ þan þat we mote vare :/
þat he faren moſte.	md[2] þiſ lure and þeos care.
wið uten mare ſconde :/	and wiþ houte more ſconde :/
in to Sæx-londe.	in to Saxlonde.
Bruttes wende to londe :/	¶ Bruttef wende to londe :/
to Vortimere heore kinge.	to Vortim[9] hire kinge.
and Hengeſt ſpæc wið Vortigerne :/	and Hengeſt ſpac wid Vortigene[3] :/

to smite and shoot.' Oft was Hengest woe, 'and [but] never worse than then; unless he did other counsel he should there be dead. He took a spear-shaft, that was long and 'very' tough, and put on the end a fair mantle, and 'called [spake words] to the Britons, and 'bade them abide [said thus]; he would speak with them, and yearn the kings grace ["We all yearn grace, and to speak with the king], and send 'Vortiger [his father] with 'peace [love] to *the* land, 'to make this agreement [on condition] that 'he might [we may] depart [with this loss and this care, and] without more shame into Saxland. *The* Britons went to *the* land, to Vortimer their king, and

[1] wæi *pr. m., but* i *erased.* [2] *R.* mid. [3] *R.* Vortigerne.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
of rune ſwiðe derne.	roune ſwiþe deorne.
Vortigerne wende a þat lond:	Vortiger wende a lond:
& ber anne ȝerd an hif hond.	and bar an ȝeord on his hond.
þa while þa heo of griðe ſpeken:	þe wile hii of griþe ſpeke:
Saxes i ſcipe leopen.	Saxeſſe in ſipe leope.
& droȝen up to coppe:	and droȝen vp to toppe:
hæȝe heore ſeiles.	hehe hire ſeyles.
& wenden mid wedere:	and wende mid wedere:
i þere ſæ wilde.	in þare ſéé wilde.
& letten i þiſſen londe: [c.2.]	and bi-lefde in þiſſe londe:
wiues & heore children.	wifuef and hire children.
& Vortigerne king:	and Vortigerne þane king:
þe heom luuede þurh alle þing.	þat heō louede þorh alle þing.
Mid muchele mod-kære:	Mid mochele mod-care:
Hengeſt gon awæi uarē.	Hengeſt gan awei vare.
swa longe heo ferden:	so longe hii wenden:
þat īne Saxlonde heo weoren.	þat ine Saxlonde hii weren.
þa weorē inn Bruttene:	þo were here:
Bruttes ſwiðe balde.	Bruttef ſwiþe bolde.
heo droȝen on heom muchel mod:	
& duden al þat heom þuhte god.	
& Vortimer þe ȝunge:	and Vortimer þe ȝonge king:
wes duhti mon þurh alle þīg.	was dohti man þorh alle þing. [c.2.]
& Vortigerne his fader:	And Vortiger his fader:
ferde ȝeond þas Bruttene.	

Hengest spake with Vortiger, in most secret converse. Vortiger went on 'the' land, and bare a wand in his hand. The while 'that' they spake of peace *the* Saxons leapt in*to their* ships, and drew up high their sails to *the* top, and proceeded with weather in the wild sea, and left in this land *their* wives and their children, and Vortiger the king, who loved them through all things. With much grief of mind Vortiger gan away fare; so long they proceeded, that in Saxland they were (arrived). Then were 'in Britain [here] *the* Britons most bold; 'they assumed to them mickle mood, and did all that seemed good to them'; and Vortimer, the young king, was doughty man through all things. And Vortiger, his father, 'proceeded

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ah nes hit nan ſwa wac mon ;	
þ him ne hokerede on.	alle men hénde.
& ſwa he gon wondrien ;	and ſo gan he wondri ;
fulle fif wintren.	folle fif ȝere.
& his ſune Vortimer ;	And his ſone Vortimer ;
riche kīg wuneden her.	riche king was her.
& al þiſ leodiſce folc ;	and al þis leodiſſe folk ;
luueden hine ſwiðe.	lofuede hine ſwiþe.
he wes milde ælche cnafc ;	
& tahte þan folke godeſ læȝe.	
þan ȝungen & þan ælden ;	
hu heo criſtindom ſculdē halden.	
Writen he ſende to Rome ;	þe king ſende to Rome ;
to þan pape wel idone.	to þan pope wel idone.
þe wes ihaten ſceint Romæin ;	þat was ihote ſeint Romaȳn ;
al criſtindom he make fain.	he wetede þane criſtendom.
Biſcopes he nom twæin ;	Biſſopes he nam tweiene ;
hali men heo weoren bæien.	holi men hit were beiene.
Germain & Leois ;	Germaȳn and Lous ;
of Ceore & of Træis.	of Geroȳne and of Troȳes.
heo uerden ut of Rome ;	hii verde vt oſ Rome ;
ſwa þat heo hider comen.	ſo þat hii hider come.
þa wef ſwa bliðe Vortimer[1] ;	þo was ſo bliþe Vortimer ;

over this Britain,' 'but it was no man so poor, that did not revile him [all men reproached], and so he gan to wander full five years. And his son Vortimer 'dwelt [was] here powerful king, and all this nation loved him greatly. 'He was mild to each man, and taught the folk Gods law, the young and the old, how they should hold Christendom.' 'He [The king] sent 'letters' to Rome, to the excellent Pope, who was named Saint Romain,—'all Christendom he made glad [he had charge of the Christendom]. —He took two bishops, holy men 'they [it] were both, Germain and Louis, of 'Auxerre [Geroyne] and of Troyes; they proceeded out of Rome, so that they hither came. Then was Vortimer so blithe as he was never ere 'here';

[1] Vortime *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
swa he nes næuere ær her[1].	ſo he nas neuere her.
he & alle his cnihtes ⁊	he and alle his cnihtes ⁊
iwenden uoð[2] rihtes. [f.85ᵇ.c.1.]	wende forþrihtes.
an here bare uoten ⁊	on hire barefote ⁊
to-ȝeineſ þan biſcopen.	to-ȝeneſ þiſ biſſopes gode.
& mid michelere murhðe ⁊	and mid mochele murthe ⁊
muðes þer cuſten.	muþes þar cuſte.
Nu þu miht iheren ⁊	Nou þou miht ihere ⁊
of þā kinge Vortimere.	of þan kinge Vortimere.
heu he ſpac wið ſeint Germain ⁊	hou he ſpac wiþ ſeint Germain ⁊
for heore kume he wes fæin.	of hire come he was fain.
Luſteð me lauerd-dinges ⁊	Luſteþ louerdlinges ⁊
ich æm þiſſere leodene king.	ich ham þis leod king.
ich hatte Vortimer ⁊	ich hote Vortimer ⁊
mi broðer hatte Catimer[3].	
Vortig[9]ne hehte ure fader ⁊	and Vortigerne mi fader.
him uulieð unrædes.	
He hafð ibroh[4] i þiſ lond ⁊	He haueþ ibroht in þiſſe londe ⁊
hæðene leoden.	heaþene leode.
ah we heom habbeoð iflemed ⁊	ac we ȝam habbeþ iflemid ⁊
al ſwa[5] ure uulle iuan.	aſe vre folle fon.
& mid wepnē ifelled ⁊	and mid wepne ifalled ⁊

he and all his knights went forth-right on their bare feet towards 'the [these good] bishops, and with much mirth mouths there kissed. Now mayest thou hear of the king Vortimer, how he spake with Saint Germain, —'for [of] their coming he was glad. "Listen 'to me,' lordings, I am king of this people; I hight Vortimer, 'my brother hight Catiger;' [and] Vortiger 'hight our [my] father,—'miscounsel followeth him!' He hath brought into this land heathen people; but we have put them to flight, as our full foes, and felled with weapon many thousands 'of them,' and sent

[1] *Redundant?*
[2] *R.* uorð.
[3] *R.* Catiger.
[4] ibroht?
[5] *Written at first* al ſwa alſe, *but* alſe *expuncted by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
of heom ueole þuſen[1].	fale þouſendes. [f.70.c.1.]
& iſend heom ouer ſæ ſtran[2]:	and iſend heom ouer ſéé ſtrem:
þ heo nauere ſel ne cumen aȝan.	þat hii neuere ne come a-ȝen.
& we ſcullen an londe:	And we ſolle here:
luuiæn ure drihten.	lofuie vre drihte.
godef folc uroæfrien:	
& freondliche hit halden.	
wurðen milf[3] liðe:	
wið þa lond-tilien.	
churichen we ſcullen hæhȝen:	cherches we ſolle hehȝi:
& hæðene-ſcipe hatien.	and heaþenſipe hatie.
Habbe alc god mon:	
hiſ rihte ȝif godd hit an.	
& ælc þrel & ælc wælh:	
wurðe iuroeid.	
& heꝛ̄ ich bi-teche eou an hond:	
al freo ælc chiric-lond.	
& ich for-ȝiue ælchere widewe:	And ich for-ȝeue ech widewe:
hire lauerdes quide.	here louerdes cwide.
	and ech loue to hoþer:
	aſe þoh were broþers.
& þus we ſcullen an ure daȝen: [c.2.]	and ſo we ſolle a-neoþeri:
aniðeri Hc̄geſtes laȝen.	Hengeſtes lawes.

them over sea-stream, *so* that they never shall come again. And we shall 'in land [here] worship our Lord, 'comfort Gods folk, and friendly it maintain, *and* be mild to the land-tillers'; churches we shall honor, and heathendom hate. 'Each good man shall have his right, if God it will grant, and each thral and each slave be set free. And here I give to you in hand each church-land all free;' and I forgive to each widow her lords testament. [and each shall love other as though *they* were brothers.] And 'thus [so] we shall 'in our day' put down Hengests laws, 'and him

[1] þuſend?

[2] ſtrand? *The true reading is* ſtrem, *which in the MS.* ſtran *much resembles.*

[3] milſc *pr. m., but* c *erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& hine & hiſ hæðene-ſcipe:	
þæ he hider brohte.	
& minne fader biſwak:	þat mine fader bi-ſwoc:
þurh ſwike his craftef.	mid his luþer craftes.
þurh his dohter Rouwenne:	þorh his dohter Rowenne:
mine uader he uor-radde.	mine fader he for-radde.
& mi uader swa uuele agon:	And mi fader ſo vuele agan:
ſcunede þene criſtindom.	þat he ſonede þanc criſtendō.
& þa hæðene laȝē:	and þe heaþene lawes:
luuede to ſwiðe.	lofuede to ſwiþe.
þa we ſculleð ſceonien:	þat we ſolle hatie:
þa while þa we luuien.	wile þat we libbeþ.
þa anſware ſeint Germain:	þo anſwerede Germain:
for ſwulche worden he wes fain.	for þane wordes he was fain.
Ich þonkie mine drihte:	Ich þonkie mine drihte:
þe ſcop þes daȝes lihte.	þat ſop þeſ daiȝes lihte.
þet he ſwulche mildce:	þat he ſoche milſe:
ſent to moncunne.	ſent to mankunde.
þas biſcopes ferden ȝeond þis lond:	þeos biſſops verde oucral þat lond:
& ſetten hit al a godes hond.	and ſette hit a godes hond.
& þene criſtindom heo rihten:	and þane criſtendom hii rihte:
& þat volc þer to dihten.	and þat folk hii dihte.
& ſeoððen þer æfter ſone:	and ſuþþe þar after ſone:
heo iwenden to Rome.	he[1] wende to Rome:

and his heathendom that he hither brought,' 'and [who] deceived my father 'through [with] his 'treacherous [wicked] crafts; through his daughter Rowenne he betrayed my father. And my father so evilly began, [that he] shunned the Christendom, and loved the heathen laws too much, which we shall 'avoid [hate] 'the' while that we live." Then answered 'Saint' Germain,—for 'such [the] words he was glad:—"I thank my Lord, who shaped the day-light, that he such mercy sent to mankind!" These bishops proceeded over 'this [all the] land, and set it 'all' in Gods hand, and the Christendom they righted, and the folk 'thereto [they] instructed; and then

[1] hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& fæiden þan papen :/
þe Roumain weſ ihaten.
hu he[1] hafden her idon :/
iriht þene criſtindom.
& þuſ hit ane ſtūde :/
ſtod a þan ilkē.
Vo we ȝet a Uortigerne :/
alre kinge ſi he ærmeſt.
he luuede Rouwen :/
of þan hæðenne cūne.
Hengeſtes dohter :/
heo þuhten him wel ſofte.
Rouwenne heo bi-þohte :/
whæt heo don mahte. [[f. 86. c. 1.]
hu heo mahte hire fader wreken :/
& hire freondene deað.
Ofte heo ſende ſonde :/
to Uortimere þon kinge.
heo him ſende maðmes :/
moniare cunne.
of ſeoluer & of golde :/
þe beſte of æie londe.
heo ȝirnede hiſ ære :/
þ heo moſte wonien here.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and feide þan pope :/
þat Romain was i-hote.
ðu hii here hadde i-don :/
a-riht þane criſtendom.

Go we ȝet to Vortigerne :/
alre king beo him harmes.
he louede Rowēne :/
of þan heaþene cunne.

Rowenne hire bi-þohte :/
wat ȝeo don mihte.
ou ȝeo miht hire fader wreke :/
and hire louerd his teone.
Ofte ȝeo ſende ſonde :/
to Vortimer þan kinge.

þat ȝeo moſte wonie here :/

soon thereafter they departed to Rome, and said to the Pope, who was named Romain, how they had done here, restored the Christendom. 'And thus it stood a time in the same *wise*.' Go we yet (again) to Vortiger,—of all kings be he most wretched!—he loved Rowenne, of the heathen race, 'Hengests daughter, she seemed to him well soft.' Rowenne bethought her what she might do, how she might avenge her father and her friends death [lord his grief]. Oft she sent messengers to Vortimer the king; 'she sent him treasures of many a kind, of silver and of gold, the best of any land; she asked his favor,' that she might here dwell with Vortiger his father,

[1] heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

mid Uortig⁹ne hiſ fader:
& ſoluen his rædes.
Þe king uor his fader bone:
ȝette hire hir bone[1].
butē þat heo ſculde wel don:
luuien þene criſtindom.
al þ̄ þe king ȝirnede:
al heo hit ȝette.
Ah wale þat Uortimer:
of hire þonke næf wær.
wale þat þe gode king:
of hire þonke nuſte na þing.
þ̄ he nuſte þene ſwikedom:
þe þohte þa luðere wimman.
Hit ilomp an are tide:
heo nom hire to ræde[2].

alle hire neode.
and to wlche time heo mihte wel
vndēruongen þene criſtindom.
Forð heo gon riden:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

mid his fader Vortigere.
and ȝeo wolde wel don:
ād onderfange criſtendom.
þe king hire grantede:
þorh bidding of his fader.
Ac wolawo þat Vortimer:
of hire þong nas war.
wolawo þat þe gode king:
of hire þohte nuſte noþūg.
of þan ilke ſwikedom:
þat þohte þe luþere wifmā.
Hit bi-ful in one time:
ȝeo nam hire to reade.
þat ȝeo wolde fare:
to þan kinge Vortimere.
and don bi his reade:
[don: al hire neode.
and woche time ȝeo miht wel don:
onderfange þane criſtendom.
Forð ȝeo gan wende:

'and follow his counsels.' The king for his fathers request granted to her her prayer,' 'except that she should [and she would] do well, [and] love the [receive] Christendom; 'all that the king yearned, all she it granted [the king granted *it* to her, through *the* prayer of his father]. But alas! that Vortimer was not aware of her thought; alas! that the good king of her thought knew nothing; 'that he knew not the [of that] treachery that the wicked woman thought! It befell on a time she betook her to counsel, [that she would go to the king Vortimer, and do by his counsel] all her need, and 'at' what time she might do well, *and* receive the Christendom.

[1] *Or* beñe; *the MS. is dubious.*

[2] *There is evidently an omission here.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to Uortimer þan kinge.
þa heo hine imette:
uæire heo hine igrette.
Hal wrð þu lauerd king:
Bruttene deorling.
Ich æm þe icomen to:
criſtindom ich wulle auon.
an þan ilke dæie:
þe þu ſeolf demeſt.
þa wæs Uortimer þe king:
bliþe þurh alle þing.
he wende þat hit weore ſoð:
þat þeo ſcaðe fæide.
Bemen þer bleowen:
bliſſe wes on hirede.
forð mon brohte þat water:
bi-foren þan wun[1] kinge.
heo feten to borde:
mid muchelure bliſſe.
þa þe king hafde iæten:
þa eoden þeineſ-men to mete.
in halle heo drunken:
harpen þer dremden. [c.2.]

MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.

to Vortimer þan kinge.
þo ȝeo hine imette:
faire ȝeo hine grette.
Hayl worþ þou louerd king:
Bruttene deorling.
Ich ham þe icome to:
criſtendom to vnderfon.
in þan ilke daie:
þat þou þi ſeolf demeſt.
þo was Vortimer þe king: [f.70b.c.1.]
bliþe þorh alle þing.
he wende þat hit were ſoþ:
þat þe ſcaþe ſeide.

Forþ me brohte þat water:
to waſſe hire hondes.
þo feten hii to borde:
mid mochelere bliſſe.
þo þe king hadde iȝeote:
þo ȝeode ſweines to mete.
in halle hii dronken:
harpeſ þar dremden.

Forth she gan 'ride [proceed] to Vortimer the king; when she him met, fair she greeted him: "Hail be thou, lord king, Britains darling! I am come to thee; Christendom 'I will [to] receive, on the same day that thou [thy]self deemest *fit*." Then was Vortimer the king blithe through all things; he weened that it were sooth what the wretch said. 'Trumpets there blew, bliss was in *the* court'; forth men brought the water 'before the king [to wash their hands]; they sate [then] at *the* board with much bliss. When the king had eaten, then went *the* 'thanes-men [swains] to meat; in hall they drank; harps there resounded. 'The treacherous

[1] *Query, if not superfluous? A plummet mark in the margin of the MS. indicates some error.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þa ſwicfulle Rouuenne:
eode to are tunne.
þer wes idon in:
þes kinges deoreſte win.
nom heo an honde:
ane bolle of ræde golde.
& heo gon ſcenchen:
on þas kinges benche.
Þa heo iſæh hire time:
heo fulde hir ſcale of wine.
& at-foren al þan dringe:
heo eode to þan kinge.
& þuſ hailede him on:
þe ſwicfulle wimman.
Lauerd king wæſhail:
uor þe ich am ſwiðe uæin.
Hercne nu muchel ſwikedom:
of þere luðere wimmon.
hu heo gon ſwiken þer:
þene king Uortimer.
Þe king heo uæire under-uæng:
to hiſ fæie-ſiðe.
Fortimer ſpæc Bruttiſc:
& Rouuenne Saxiſc.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þo a-ros Rowenne:
and eode to hire hinne.
ȝeo eode war in:
was þe kinges beſte win.
nam ȝeo an honde:
one bolle of reade golde.
and ȝeo gan to ſenche:
vp on þe kyngeſ benche.
Þo ȝeo i-ſeh hire tyme:
ȝeo fulden[1] hire fulle[2] of wine.
and a-mong al þan þringe:
ȝeo eode to þan kinge.
and þus haillede him on:
þe ſwicfolle wifman.
Louerd king waſſail:
for þe ich ham ſwiþe fain.
Þe king here onderfeng:
to his feiſiþe.
Vortimer ſpac Bruttus:
and Rowenne Saxiſſe.

[Then arose] Rowenne, [and] went to 'a tun [her inn], 'wherein was placed [she went wherein was] the kings 'dearest [best] wine. She took in hand a bowl of red gold, and she gan to pour out [up] on the kings bench. When she saw her time, she filled her 'vessel [bowl] with wine, and 'before [among] all the company she went to the king, and thus the treacherous woman hailed him (drank his health): "Lord king, wassail, for thee I am most joyful!" 'Hearken now *the* great treachery of the wicked woman, how she gan there betray the king Vortimer!' The king received her fair, to his *own* destruction. Vortimer spake British, and Rowenne Saxish; to

[1] fulde?

[2] bolle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þan king þuhte gomen inoh:
for hire ſpæche he loh.
Hærcne hu heo toc on:
þuſ[1] ſwicfulle wimman.
In hire boſme heo bar:
bi-neoðen hire titten.
ane guldene ampulle:
of attere i-fulled.
& þa luðere Rouuenne:
dronc þene bolle.
þat heo hafde half don:
after þes kinges dom.
Þa while þe þa king loh:
þa ampulle heo ut droh.
þene bolle heo ſette to hire chin:
þat atter heo halde in þat win.
& ſeoðen heo þa cuppe:
bitahte þan kinge.
þe kīg dronc al þat win:
& þat atter þer in.
Þe dai forð eode:
bliſſe wes on hirede.
for Uortimer þe gode kīg:
of þan ſwikedom nuſte na þīg.

MS. Cøtt. Otho, C. xiii.

þane king hit þohte game inoh:
for hire ſpeche he lmere loh.
Hercne ou ȝeo tock an:
þes wickede wifman.
In hire boſome ȝeo bar:
bi-neoþe hire tyttes.
one ampulle:
of hatter ifulled.
and þe luþere Rowenne:
drang þane bolle.
þat ȝeo half hadde idon: [c. 2.]
after þe kinges dom.
Þe wile þat þe king loþ:
þe ampulle ȝeo vt droh.
þe bolle ȝeo ſette to hire chin:
þat hatter ȝeo heolde þar in.
and suþþe ȝeo þe bolle:
bi-tahte þan kinge.
þe king drong al þat win:
and þat hatter þar in.

He þat was ſo god king:
of þeos ſwikedome nuſte noþing.

the king [it] seemed game enow, for her speech he laughed. Hearken how she took on, this deceitful woman! In her bosom she bare, beneath her teats, a 'golden' phial filled with poison; and the wicked Rowenne drank (*or* drenched) the bowl, until she had half done, after the kings will. The while that the king laughed, she drew out the phial; the bowl she set to her chin, the poison she poured 'in the wine [therein], and afterwards she delivered the 'cup [bowl] to the king; 'the king drank all the wine, and the poison therein. 'The day forth passed, bliss was in *the* court,' 'for Vortimer the [He that was so] good king of 'the [this]

[1] þaſ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
for he iſah Rouuenne: [f. 86b. c. 1.]	for he i-ſeh Rowenne:
halden þene bolle.	holde þane bolle.
& drinken half þat ilke win:	ād drong alf þat ilke win:
þat heo heuede idon þer in.	þat was idon þar in.
Þa hit com to þare nihte:	þat him[1] com to þā nihte:
þa to-dælleden hired-cnihtes.	þo dealde hire cnihteſ[2].
& þa ufele Rouwenne:	and þe vuele Rowenne:
wende to hire inne.	wende to hire ine.
& alle hire cnihteſ:	and alle hire cnihtes:
mid hire uorð rihtes.	mid hire forþ rihtes.
Þa heihte heo hire ſweineſ:	þo hehte ȝeo alle:
& ec þaie þeines.	
þat heo an hiȝinge:	
heore hors ſculden ſadelien.	hire horſen ſadeli.
& heo ſwiþe ſtille:	and deorneliche:
ſtelen ut of buruwe.	and[3] ſtelen vt of borewe.
& wenden al bi nihte:	and al bi nihte ride:
to þwōccheſtre uorð rihte.	into þwangcheſtre.
& þer ſwiðe vaſte:	and þare ſwiþe faſte:
bi-cluſen heom in ane caſtle.	bi-cluſe ȝam in þan caſtle.
& luȝē Uortigerne:	and ſeg to Vortigerne:
þat his ſune hine wolde biliggen.	þat his ſone hine wolde bi-ligge.
& Vortigerne þe ſwikele king.	And Vortiger þe fole king:
ilæfde þare læſing.	ilefuede hire leſing.

treachery knew nothing, for he saw Rowenne hold the bowl, and drink half of the same wine that 'she had [was] put therein. When it came to the night, then separated the courtiers; and the evil Rowenne went to 'her inn, and all her knights with her forth-right. Then ordered she 'her swains, and eke the thanes [all], 'that they in haste' their horses 'should saddle [to saddle]; and 'they most still [secretly] to steal out of *the* burgh, and 'proceed [ride] all by night 'to [into] Thwongchester 'forth-right,' and there most fast (securely) to inclose them in 'a [the] castle, and 'lie [say] to Vortiger, that his son would besiege him. And Vortiger the 'false [foolish]

[1] þa hit? [2] hired-cnihtes? [3] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Nu vnder-ȝat Uortimer hiſ ſune:
þ he hefde atter inomen.
ne mihte na lechecraft:
helpen him næ wiht.
He nom feole ſonden:
& ſende ȝeond his londe.
& hehte alle his cnihtes:
to him comē forð rihtes.
þa þ folc waſ icumē:
þa waſ þe king ſwiðe untrumed.
þa ȝirnde þe king heore grið:
& þuſ he ſpac hem alle wið.
Alre cnihtē wrð eow beſt:
þe heren æie kīge.
þer niſ nan oðer red:
buten hiȝēdliche ich beo dæd.
hir ich bitæche eow mi lond:
al mi feoluer & al mi gold.
& alle mine maðmes:
eowre mōſcipe iſ þa mare.
& ȝe forð rihtes:
ſenden after cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Nou wiſte Vortimer his ſone:
þat he [hadde] hatter inome.
ne mihte non lechecraft:
him heolpe nowiht.
He ſende his ſondes:
a-mong alle his londes.
and hehte alle his cnihtes: [f.71.c.1.]
comen ſwiþe forþ rihtes.
þo hii were alle icome:
þo was þe king ſwiþe ontromed.
þo þe king mid god griþ:
to[1] alle his cnihtes he ſpac þus wiþ.
Alre cnihteſ worþ ou beſt:
þat ſarueþ enẏ king.
þar nis of me non oþer read:
bote hiȝenliche ich worþe dead.
here ich bi-take ȝou an hond:
al to-gadere mi kinelond.

And ȝeo forþrihtes:
ſendeþ after cnihtes.

king believed 'the [her] leasing. Now 'understood [knew] Vortimer, his son, that he had taken poison; might no leechcraft help him any whit. He 'took many [sent his] messengers, 'and sent over [among all] his 'land [lands], and bade all his knights to come 'to him [quickly] forth-right. When 'the folk was [they were all] arrived, then was the king exceeding ill; then 'asked' the king 'their [with good] peace, 'and' thus he spake with 'them all [all his knights]: "Of all knights are ye best that serve any king; there is [of me] no other hap, but *that* speedily I be dead. Here I deliver you 'my land, all my silver and all my gold [in hand my kingdom all together], 'and all my treasures,—your worship is the greater.' And ye forth-right send after knights, 'and give them silver and gold, and hold ye

[1] *Redundant.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ȝeuen heom ſoluer & gold: [c. 2.]	
& hælde̊ ȝe ſeolf eowre lond.	
& wreke̊ eow ȝif ȝe cunnen:	and werieþ ou ȝef ȝe conne:
of Sexiſce monnen.	wiþ Saxiſſe manne.
uor weonne ſo ich beo uor̊ faren:	for wane ich ham forþ fare:
Hengeſt eow wul makien kare.	Hengeſt ȝou wole makie care.
& nime̊ mine likamæ:	And nimeþ mine licame:
& legge̊ an chæſten.	and leggeþ on cheſte.
& lede̊ me to þare fæ ſtrōde:	and ledeþ me to þare ſćé ſtrōd:
þer Saxiſce men wulle̊ cumen a anan ſwa heo me þer witen: [lond:	þare Saxiſſe men wolleþ comen a anon ſo hii me þare witeþ: [lond.
awæi heo wulle̊ wenden.	a-wei hii wolleþ wende.
noůer quic ne dead:	noþer cwik noþer dead:
ne durren heo me abiden.	ne dorren hii me a-bide.
Imong þiſſen dome:	Amang al þiſ motyng:
dæ̊[1] iwar̊ þe gode king.	dead iwarþ þe gode king.
þer wes wop þer wes rop:	
& reuliche iberen.	
Heo nomen þes kinges licame:	Hii neme þis kingef licame:
& ladde̅ to Lundene.	and ladde to Londene.
& biſides Bælȝes-ȝate:	and biſides Bellinges-ȝate:
fæire hine bi-burȝeden.	faire hine leide.
& nawiht hine ne ladden:	and noht him ne ladde:
alſe þe king heihte.	aſe him ſeolf hehte.

*your*selves your land,' and 'avenge [defend] you, if ye can, 'of [against] Saxish men; for when 'as' I 'be [am] departed, Hengest will make care to you. And take *ye* my body, and lay in *a* chest, and carry me to the sea strand, where Saxish men will come on land; anon as they know me there, away they will go; neither alive nor dead dare they abide me!" Among [all] this discourse the good king died; 'there was weeping, there was lament, and piteous cries!' They took the kings body, and carried to London, and beside Belyns-gate 'buried [laid] him fair; and carried him 'no whit [not] as 'the king [*he* himself] ordered. Thus 'lived [it was of] Vor-

[1] dead?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þuſ liuede Uortimer:	þus hit was of Uortimer:
& þuſ he endede þar.	and þus he hendede her.
þa iueolen Bruttes:	þo nuſte Bruttef:
a balufulle ræde.	none gode readef. [c. 2.]
heo nomen Uortigerne anan:	hii nemen Vortiger a-non:
& bi-tahten heom[1] þeſne kenedom.	and bi-tock him al þiſ lond.
welle reoulich wes þer a þing:	wola[2] roulich was þare a þing:
nu waſ Vortigerne æft king.	nou was Vortiger heft king.
Uortigerne nom his ſonde:	Vortiger nam his ſonde:
& ſende to Sexlonde.	and ſende to Saxlonde.
& grette wel Hengeſt:	and grette wel Hengeſt:
cnihten alre væirest. [ȝinge[5]:	cnih[3] alre faireſt.
& grette hine[4] & bad hine hi-	and bad him an hiȝenge:
comen to þiſſe londe.	come to þan kinge.
& mid him brouhte here:	and mid him brohte here:
an hundred ridærē.	an hundred rideres.
For þat wite þu þuru alle þing:	For þat wite þou þorh alle þing:
þat dead iſ Vortimer þe king.	þat dead his Vortimer þe king.
& ſiker þu miht hider comen:	
for dæd is Fortimer mi ſune.	
Niſ þe non neod to bringen:	Niſ hit no neod to bringe:
mid þe muchel genge. [[f. 87. c. 1.]	wiþ þe mochel genge.
leſte ure Bruttes:	leſte vre Bruttef:

timer, and thus he ended 'there [here]. Then *the* Britons 'fell into evil [knew no good] counsel; they took Vortiger anon, and delivered him [all] this 'kingdom [land]; there was a well rueful thing, now was eft Vortiger king! Vortiger took his messengers, and sent to Saxland, and greeted well Hengest, fairest of all knights, and bade him in haste to come to 'this land [the king], and with him should bring here a hundred riders. "—For that know thou through all things, that dead is Vortimer the king, 'and sure (safe) thou mayest hither come, for dead is Vortimer my son.' [It] is no need 'for thee' to bring with thee much folk, least our Britons

[1] him? [2] wel? [3] cniht?
[4] *These three words are, apparently, superfluous.* [5] an hiȝenge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
æft[1] beon abolȝen.	heft beo abolwe.
þ eow æft ſeorwen :	
ſiȝen bitweonen.	
Hengeſt ſomnede uærde :	Hengeſt ſomnede ferde :
of feole cunne ærde.	of fale cun erþe.
þat he hefde to iwiten :	þat he hadde to iwite :
ſeouen hundred ſcipen.	ſoue hudred ſipes.
& ælc ſcip[2] he dihte :	and [ech] ſip he dihte :
mid þreo hundred cniten.	mid þreo hundred cnihtes.
i þere Temeſe at Lundene :	in þare Temeſe at Londene :
Hengeſt com to londe.	Hengeſt com to londe.
þat word com ful ſone :	þat word com ful ſone :
to Uortigerne þan kinge.	to Vortiger þan kinge.
þ Hengeſt waſ in hauene :	
mid ſeouen hundred ſcipene.	
ofte waſ Uortig[9]ne wa :	ofte was Vortiger wo :
neuer wrſe þan þæ.	ac neuere worſe þane þo.
& Bruttes weoren ſari :	and Bruttes weren ſori :
& ſeorhful an heorte.	and ſorhfulle on heorte.
nuſten heo an world-riche :	
ræd þat heom weore ilike.	
Hengeſt waſ of ufele war :	Hengeſt was of vue[3] war :
þat he wel cudde þær.	þat he wel cudde þar.

eft be angry, '*so* that sorrow eft come between you.'" Hengest assembled *a* host of many kind of land, *so* that he had to wit seven hundred ships, and each ship he filled with three hundred knights; in the Thames at London Hengest came to land. The tidings came full soon to Vortiger the king, 'that Hengest was in haven with seven hundred ships.' Oft was Vortiger woe, [but] never worse than then, and *the* Britons were sorry, and sorrowful in heart; 'they knew not in *the* worlds realm counsel that were to them pleasing.' Hengest was of evil ware,—that he well shewed

[1] *There has been some attempt to alter this word, and the reading is doubtful.*
[2] *This word is sup. ras.* [3] *R.* vuele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
he nom ſone hiſ ſonde:	he nom ſone his ſonde:
& ſende to þan kinge.	and ſende to þan kinge.
& grette Uortigerne king:	
mid ſwiðe uæire worden.	
& ſeide þat he waſ icumen:	and ſaide þat he was icome:
ſwa fader ſculde to hiſ ſune.	ſo fader ſolde to his ſone.
mid ſibbe & mid ſaihte:	mid ſibbe and mid ſeahte:
he wolde on ſele wunien.	he wolde here libbe. [f.71b. c.1.]
grið he wolde luuien:	
unriht he wolde ſcunien.	
grið he wolde habben:	
grið he wolde holden.	
& al þiſ leodiſce folc:	
luuien he wolde.	
& Uortigerne þene king:	
luuien þurh alle þing.	[geſt:
Ah he hefde ibroht i þiſ lond:	And ich habbe i-broþt cwaþ Hen-
ut of Sexleoden.	
ſeouen hundred ſcipene:	
of hæðene folke.	mani cnihtes gode.
þ beoþ þe alre wihteſte men: [c.2.]	
þ wunieð under ſunnen.	
& ich wulle quað Hengeſt:	and ich hā wolle leade:
leden heo[1] to þan kinge.	alle to þan kinge.

there,—he took soon his messengers, and sent to the king, 'and greeted Vortiger *the* king with words most fair,' and said that he was come as *a* father should to his son; with peace and with friendship he would 'dwell in amity [here live]; 'peace he would love, *and* wrong he would shun; peace he would have, peace he would hold; and all this nation he would love, and love Vortiger the king through all things.' 'But he had brought ["And I have brought," quoth Hengest], 'in this land, out of Saxland,' 'seven hundred ships of heathen folk, "who are the bravest of all men that dwell under *the* sun [many good knights], and I will, 'quoth Hengest,'

[1] heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
to an i-ſette dæie:	to one iſette daiȝe:
at-foren al his duȝeðe.	bi-vore alle his cnihtes.
& þe king ſcal ariſen:	And þe king ſal a-riſe:
and of þan cnihten cheoſen.	and of þan folk cheoſe.
twa hundred cnihten:	two hundred cnihtes:
to leden to hiſ fihten.	to leade to hiſ fihte.
þe ſculen biwiten þene king:	þat ſolle bi-witie þane king:
durewurðliche þurh alle þing.	deorworliche þorh alle þing.
& ſeoððen ſcullen þa oðere:	and ſuþþen ſolle þe oþer:
uaren to heore ærde.	fare to hire riche.
mid ſibbe & mid sæle:	
aȝen to Sæxlonde.	
& ich wulle bi-læuen:	And ich wolle bi-léue:
mid monnen alre ſeleſt.	mid manne alre leueſt.
þ is Uortig[9]ne þe king:	þat his Vortiger þe king:
þe ich luuie þurh alle þing.	wan ich louie þorh alle þing.
þ word com to Brutten:	þat word com to Bruttef:
hu Hengeſt bihæhte heom.	ou Hengeſt heom bi-hehte.
þa weoren heo uæine:	
uor uæiren hiſ worden.	
& ſetten grið & ſetten frið:	þo ſetten hii griþ:
to whulchen ane uirſte.	for alle ſþeken him wiþ.
þe king an ane dæie:	
wolde iſeon þaſ duȝeðe.	
þat iherde Hengeſt:	þat hi-horde Hengeſt:

lead them [all] to the king, at a set (appointed) day, before all his 'people [knights]. And the king shall arise, and choose of the 'knights [folk] two hundred knights, to lead to his fight, who shall guard the king preciously through all things. And afterwards the others shall depart to their 'land [realm], 'with peace and with amity, again to Saxland'; and I will remain with *the* 'best [dearest] of all men, that is Vortiger the king, whom I love through all things." The tidings came to *the* Britons how Hengest them promised; then 'were they fain for his fair words, and' set [they] peace 'and set amity' 'to such a time *that* the king on a day would see this folk [for all to speak with him]. Hengest heard that, fairest of all knights;

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
cnihten alre uæireſt.	cniht alre faireſt.
þa wes he ſwa bliðe:	þo was he ſo bliþe:
ſwa he nes neuer ær an liue.	ſo he nas neuere her on lifue.
for he þohte ſwike:	for he þohte ſwike:
þene king an hiſ riche.	þane king on his riche.
Her iwraȝ Hengeſt:	
cnihtē uor-cuðeſt.	
swa biȝ æueræle mon:	
þe bi-ſwikeð þe him wel on.	
Wha wolde wenen:	Wo wolde wene:
a þiſſere weorld-riche.	in þiſſe worle-riche riche[1].
þat Hengeſt ſwikē þohte:	þat Hengeſt ſwike þohte:
þene king þat hæfde his dohter.	þane king þat hadde his dohter.
for niſ nauer nan mon: [f.87b. c. 1.]	ac þar nis no man ſo wis:
þat me ne mai mid ſwikedome ouer-	þat me ne mai bi-ſwike.
Heo nomen ænne iſetnedæi: [gan.	þe dai was iſet:
þat ſcolden þas duȝeðen.	ac feue ferde þe bet.
cumen heom to-ſomne:	
mid ſæhte & mid ſibbe.	
an ane uælde þe wæs muri:	in on ſtude ſwiþe murỳ:
an uaſt Ambreſburi.	bi-ſides Amburefburi. [*Ambre*]*ſburi.*
þe ſtude wes Ælenge:	þe ſtude þo was Elinge:
nu hatte hit Stan-henge.	þat nou hatte Stonhenge. [*Stanhen*]*ges.*

then was he so blithe as he was never ere in life, for he thought to deceive the king in his realm. 'Here became Hengest wickedest of knights; so is every man that deceiveth *one*, who benefits him.' Who would ween, in this worlds realm, that Hengest thought to deceive the king who had his daughter! 'For [But] *there* is 'never any man [no man so wise], that men may not 'over-reach with treachery [deceive]. 'They took an appointed day, [The day was set, but few fared the better!] 'that these people should come them together with concord and with peace,' in a 'plain that was [spot most] pleasant beside Ambresbury; the place was 'Ælenge; [then Elinge, that] now hight 'it' Stonehenge. There Hengest the traitor either

[1] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þer Hengeſt þe ſwike ⁊	þar Hengeſt þe ſwike ⁊ [[c. 2.]
æiðer bi worde & bi write.	aiþer mid worde and mid write.
cuðde þan kinge ⁊	cudde þan kinge ⁊
þat he cumen wolde.	þat he come wolde.
mid hiſ mō-uerde ⁊	
to wurðſcipe þes kinges.	
ah he nalde bringen on drihte ⁊	ac he nolde bringe ⁊
buten þreo hundred cnihten.	bote þreo hundred cnihteſ.
þa alre wiſeſte men ⁊	þe alre wiſeſte men ⁊
þe he mihte uinden.	þat he mihte finde.
& þe kīg brohte al ſwa ueole ⁊	and þe king ſolde alſe vale ⁊
baldere þeinen.	bringe in his halue.
and þeo weoren þa alre witereſte ⁊	
þe wuneden on B^{u}ttene.	
mid goden heore iweden ⁊	mid gode hire wedes ⁊
al buten wepnen.	al wiþ oute wepne.
þat heom no to-wurðen ⁊	
þurh þriſt of þan wepnen.	
Þuſ heo hit ſpeken ⁊	Þus i[1] þo ſpeke ⁊
& æft heo hit to-brekē.	and eft hit to-breke.
for Hængeſt þe leod-ſwike ⁊	for Hengeſt þe wickede ⁊
þus he his gon learen.	þus his gan leore.
þ ælc nome a long ſax ⁊	þat ech neme a long ſex ⁊
& læiden bi his ſconke.	and leide bi his ſoncke.

'by [with] word and 'by [with] writ made known to the king, that he would come 'with his forces, in honor of the king'; but he would not bring 'in retinue' but three hundred knights, the wisest men of all that he might find. And the king should bring as many [on his side] 'bold thanes, and who should be the wisest of all that dwelt in Britain,' with their good vestments, all without weapons, 'that no *evil* should happen to them, through confidence of the weapons.' Thus they 'it [then] spake, and eft 'they' it brake; for Hengest the 'traitor [wicked] thus gan 'he' teach his *comrades*, that each should take a long sæx (knife), and lay by his shank, within his hose, where

[1] hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
wið inne hiſ hoſe :/		wiþ ine his hoſe :/
þer hit hit habben[1] hæle.		þar he hit habbe mihte.
Þēne heo comen to-ſomne :/		and wanne hii come to-gadere :/
Sæxes & Bruttes.		Saxiſſe and Bruttiſſe.
þenne queð Hēgeſt :/		þanne leggeþ heom on :/
cnihten alre swikeleſt.		non þat ȝe ne ſparie.
Hail ſeo þu lauerd king :/		Þo ſaide Hengeſt to þan king :/
ælc þe is þin vnderlīg.	[c. 2.]	þat was heheſt ouer him.
ȝif æuere æi of þine gume :/		Ȝef here his enẏ cniht :/
gære haueð biſiden.		þat wepne bere bi his ſide.
send hit mid freondſcipe :/		sende hine mid fronſipe :/
feor from uſ ſeoluen.		for fram vs ſeolue.
& beon we on ſele :/		
and motegen of ſahte.		
nu[2] we maȝen mid ſibbē :/		and speke we of sibbe :/
ure lif libben.		ou we mawe libbe.
Þuſ þe balde-fulle[3] mō :/		Þus [þe] ſwicfolle man :/
bi-ſprac[4] þer þa Bruttes.		bi-ſwoc þare þe Bruttef.
Þa andſwarede Uortiger :/		Þo anſwerede Vortiger :/
her he weſ to vnwar.		to onwis he was þar.
Ȝif here iſ æi cniht swa wod :/		Ȝef here his enẏ cniht ſo wod :/

he it might 'hide [have; and] When they 'came [should come] together, *the* Saxons and Britons, [" then lay on them, *so* that ye spare none!"] then 'quoth [said] Hengest, 'most deceitful of all knights': '" Hail be thou, lord king, each is to thee thy subject! [to the king, who was highest over him] If 'ever any of thy men hath [here is any knight, who beareth] weapon by [his] side, send 'it [him] with friendship far from ourselves, 'and be we in amity,' and speak [we] of 'concord [peace]; how we may 'with peace our lives live.' " Thus the 'wicked [treacherous] man 'spake there to [deceived there] the Britons. Then answered Vortiger,—'here [there] he was too 'unwary [unwise],—" If here is any knight so wild, that hath weapon by *his*

[1] he hit mihte? *A plummet mark in the margin indicates that there is some error committed here by the scribe.*

[2] hu? [3] balcfulle? [4] biſwac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat wepnen habbe bi ſiden.	þat wepne habbe bi ſide.
he ſcal leoſen þa hōd:	he ſal leoſe þe hond:
þurh hiſ aȝene brand.	þorh his owene brond.
buten he hit ſone:	
heonene iſende.	
Heore wepnen heo awæi ſendē:	Hire wepne hii a-wei ſende:
þa nefden heo noht an honden.	þo nadden hii noh[1] an honde.
cnihtes eoden upward:	cnihtes eoden vpward: [f. 72. c. 1.]
cnihtes eoden adonward.	cnihtes eoden dunward.
ælc ſpac wiþ oþer:	ech ſpac wiþ oþer:
swulc he weore his broþer.	aſe hit were broþers.
þa weoren Bruttes:	þo weren Bruttus:
imænged wiþ þan Saxeſ.	imeng wiþ þe Saxiſſe.
þa cleopede Hengeſt:	þo ſaide Hengeſt:
cnihtene swikelæſt.	cnih[2] alre ſwikeleſt.
Nimeþ eoure ſexes:	Nemeþ oure ſeaxes:
sele mine bernes.	
& ohtliche eou ſturieþ:	and hahtliche ȝou ſtoricþ.
& nænne ne ſparieþ.	
Bruttes þer weoren riche:	Bruttus þar weren riche:
ah ne cuþe heo noht þa ſpeche.	ac hii ne couþe noht of þe ſpeche.
whæt þa Saxiſce men:	wat Saxiſſe men:
ſeiden heom bi-tweonen.	ſeide heom bi-twine.
Heo breoden ut þa ſæxes:	Hii breiden vt þe ſaxes:

side, he shall lose the hand through his own brand, 'unless he soon send it hence.'" Their weapons they sent away, then had they nought in hand;—knights went upward, knights went downward, each spake with other as *if* 'he [it] were 'his brother [brothers]. When *the* Britons were mingled with the Saxons, then 'called [said] Hengest, of [all] knights most treacherous, "Take your sæxes, 'my good warriors,' and bravely bestir you, 'and spare *ye* none'!" Noble Britons were there, but they knew not [of] the speech, what 'the' Saxish men said them between. They drew out the

[1] noht?

[2] cniht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
alle bihalues.	alle bi-halues.
heo ſmitē an riht half:	hii ſmiten in eche halue:
heo ſmiten an lift half.	
biuoren & bihindē:	bi-vore and bi-hinde.
heo leiden heom to grunde. [f. 88.]	
alle heo floȝen:	alle hii floȝen:
þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh comen.
of þes kinges mōnen:	of þis kingef folke:
[ſone] þer feollen.	ſone þar fulle.
feouwer hundred & fife:	four hundred and fifue:
wa weſ þan kinge on liue.	wo was þan king a-lifue.
Þa Hengeſt hine igrap:	Hengeſt grop þan king:
mid grimmē hiſ gripen.	and breide hine to him.
& bi þan mantle hine ibræid:	bi þane mantel:
þat breken þa ſtrengeſ.	þat þe ſtrenges breke.
& Sæxes him ſette to:	And Saxiſſe ſote to:
& woldē þene king fordon.	and wolde þane king for-do.
& Hengeſt hine gon werien:	ac Hengeſt hine gan werie:
& nalde hit noht iþeuen.	and nolde hit noht þolie.
ah he heold hine ful faſte:	ac he heold hine wel faste:
þe while þat feht ilaſte.	þe wile þat fiht ilaſte.
þer wes moni riche Brut:	þar was mani riche Brut:
biræfued þan liue.	bi-reiued of þan lifue.
ſumme heo fluȝen ſwiðe:	
ofer þene feld brade.	

sæxes, all aside; they smote on 'the right [each] side, 'they smote on the left side'; before and behind 'they laid them to the ground;' all they slew that they came nigh; of 'the [this] kings 'men [folk] there fell [soon] four hundred and five,—woe was the king alive! 'Then' Hengest grasped 'him [the king] 'with his grim gripe,' and drew him [to him] by the mantle, so that the strings brake. And the Saxons set on him, and would the king kill, 'and [but] Hengest gan him defend, and would not suffer it; but he held him 'full [well] fast, the while the fight lasted. There was many noble Briton bereaved of the life! Some 'they fled quickly over the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& wereden heom mid ſtanen:	somme werede heom mid ſtones:
for wepnen næfden heo nane.	for wepne nadden hii none.
þer wes swiðe hard fiht:	
þer feol moni god cniht.	
þer wes of Salesburi:	þar was a bond of Salusburi:
an oht bonde icumen.	þat bar on his honde.
ænne muchelne mæin clubbe:	ane mochele club:
he bar an his rugge.	for to breke ſtones.
þa wes þer an aðele eorl:	þeos iſch a ſtrong eorl:
Aldolf. Aldulf ihatē.	Aldolf ihote.
cniht mid þan bezſte:	cniht mid þan beſte: [c.2.]
he æhte Glochæſt[c].	þat hahte Glouceſtre.
he to þan cheorle leop:	he to þan cheorle leop:
swulc hit a liun weoren.	alſe hit a lyon were.
& binom him þe clubbe:	and bi-nam him þane club:
þa he bar an rugge.	þat he bar on his rugge.
æure wulcne ſwa he ſwat[1]:	wan he þar mid ſmot:
þer forð rihtes he iwat.	þar riht he a-bod.
bi-foren & bi-hīden:	bi-vore and bi-hinde:
he laide heom to grunde.	he leide ȝam to grunde.
þreo & fifti he þer floh:	þreo and fifti he þar of-sloþ:
& ſeoððe to ane ſte[2] droh.	and suþþe to his ſtede droh.
he leop uppen ſtede:	he leop vppe þan ſtede:

broad plain, and' defended them with stones, for weapons had they none. 'There was fight exceeding hard; there fell many *a* good knight!' There was a 'bold' churl of Salisbury 'come'; 'he [who] bare 'on [in] his 'back [hand] a great 'strong' club [for to break stones]. 'Then was there a noble earl [A strong earl saw this], named Aldolf, knight with the best; 'he [who] possessed Gloucester; he leapt to the churl, as *if* it were a lion, and took from him the club, that he bare on [his] back; whom'soever' he smote [therewith], there 'forth'-right he died; before and behind he laid them to *the* ground. Three and fifty there he slew, and afterwards drew

[1] ſmat?

[2] ſtede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& swiðe gon him ridē.		and ſwiþe gan ride.
he ærde[1] to Glochæſtre:	[c.2.]	in to Glouceſtre:
& þe ȝateſ læc ful feſte.		and þe ȝeates lok faſte.
& anan forð rihteſ:		And a-non forþ rihtes:
lette ærmi his cnihtes.		lette harmi his cnihtes.
ȝeond alle þan londe:		and wende ouer al þat lond:
& nomen þat heo funden.		and nemen wat hii funde.
heo nomen orf heo nomen corn:		
& al þat heo quic funden.		
& brohten to burhȝe:	10	and brohte to borewe:
vnnimete bliſſe.		onimete bliſſe.
þa ȝæten heo tūden uaſte:		þe ȝates hii tunde faſte:
& wel heom biwuſten.		and wel ȝam bi-wuſte.
Lete we hit þuſ ſtondē:		Lete we þis ſtonde:
& ſpeken of þan kinge.		and ſpeke we of þan kinge.
Sexes him leoppe to:		Saxiſſe him leope to:
& wolde þene king for-do[2].		and wolde þane king for-do.
Hēgest cleopede uorð rihtes:		ac Hengeſt ſaide forþrihtes:
Aſwikeð mine cnihtes.		Bleueþ mine cnihtes.
ne ſculle ȝe hine noht for-faren:		ne ſolle ȝe hine noht for-fare:
for uſ he haueð ihaued mucle care.		for vs he haueþ ihaued care.
& he haueð to quene:	22	
mine dohter þa iſ ſcone.		

towards 'a [his] steed; he leapt upon [the] steed, and quickly gan 'him' ride; 'he rode to [into] Gloucester, and the gates locked 'full' fast. And anon forth-right caused his knights to arm, [and marched] over all the land, and took what they found; 'they took cattle, they took corn, and all that they found alive,' and brought to *the* burgh with great bliss; the gates they closed fast, and well them guarded. Let we 'it thus [this] stand, and speak [we] of the king. *The* Saxons leapt *towards* him, and would kill the king, [but] Hengest 'called [said] forth-right, "Stop, my knights, ye shall him not destroy; for us he hath had 'much' care,

[1] ærnde?

[2] for *is interlined by a second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ah alle hiſ burhȝes :/	ac alle his borewes :/
he ſcal uſ bitæchen.	he ſal vs bi-take.
ȝif he wule hiſ lif broken :/	ȝef he wolle libbe :/
oðer ælleſ him if balu ȝiueðe.	and his limes habbe.
Þa wes Uortig⁹ne :/	Þo was Vortigerne :/
væſte ibunden.	faſte i-bunde.
giueſ ſwiðe grete :/	gyues ſwiþe grete :/
heo duden an hiſ foten.	idon[1] a-boute his feote.
ne moste he nauere biten mete :/	ne moſte he neuere bite mete :/
ne wið nenne freond ſpeken.	no wiþ none freonde ſpeke.
ær he heom hæfden iſworen :/	her he ȝam hadde iſwore :/
uppē halidom þat wes icoren.	vppe halidomes þat were icore.
þat he al þiſ kine-lond :/	þat he al þis kinelōd :/
wolde bitæchen heom an heond.	wolde bi-take ȝam an hond. [f.72ᵇ. c. 1.]
burhȝes & caſtles :/	
& al his coine-lond[2].	
& al ſwa he idode :/	and al ſo he dude :/
alſe hit idemed waſ.	alſe hii hit wolde.
& Hengest nom an hiſ hond :/	And Hengeſt nam on his hond :/
al þiſ riche kine-lond.	al þiſ riche kenelond.
& delde his leodē :/	
muchel of þiſſe londe.	
he ȝæf æne eorle al Kent :/ [f.88ᵇ.c.1.]	he ȝeof an cniht al Kent :/

'and he hath for queen my daughter who is fair.' But all his burghs he shall deliver to us, if he will 'enjoy his life, or else is sorrow given to him [live, and have his limbs]." Then was Vortiger fast bound; gyves exceeding great they put 'on [about] his feet; he might not ever bite meat, nor speak with any friend, ere he had to them sworn upon 'relic [relics] that 'was [were] choice, that he would deliver them all this kingdom in hand, 'burghs and castles, and all his kingdom.' And all so he did, as 'it was deemed [they it would]. And Hengest took in his hand all this rich kingdom, 'and divided among his people much of this land.' He gave 'an

[1] hii don ?

[2] kinelond ? *A second hand has erased the* d, *and altered* lo *into* la.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

aſe hit bi Lundene went.
he ȝæf hiſ ſtiwarde Æſt-ſex[1] :
& his burðeine :
Middel-ſax bitahte.
þa cnihtes hit at-fengen :
and ane while heo heolden.
þa while Uortigᵊne :
ȝeond þiſ lond ferde.
& bitahte Hengeſt :
hæȝen his burhȝes.
& Hengeſt forð rihtes :
dude þer in his cnihtes.
þa while muchel ſmal folc :
læi inne Suð-ſæxe.
& inne Middel-ſæxe :
muchel of þan kuñe.
& inne Æſt-ſaxe :
heore aðeleſte ȝuȝeðe.
Mete heo ferden :
al þat heo funden.
heo for-læiȝen þa wif :
& godes laȝen breken.
heo duden i þan londe :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aſe hit bi Londene wēt.
and manie oþer cnihtes :
he makede riche þeines.
so þat on torf of lond :
ne ſtod Vortiger an hond.

earl [a knight] all Kent, as it went (lay) by London; 'he gave his steward Essex, and on his chamberlain *he* bestowed Middlesex [and many other knights he made rich thanes, so that a turf of land did not remain to Vortiger in hand]. 'The knights received it, and a while they held *it*, the while Vortiger proceeded over this land, and delivered to Hengest his noble burghs. And Hengest forth-right placed his knights therein; the while much of *the* baser people lay in Sussex, and in Middlesex much of the race; and in Essex their noblest folk. *The* meat (provisions) they carried off, all that they found; they violated the women, and Gods law brake; they did in the land all that they would.' *The* Britons saw 'that

[1] *A line, or part of one, seems here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
al þ heo wolden.	
þ iſeȝen Bruttes:	þiſ iſehȝe Bruttus:
þat balu wes on londe.	
& hu Sæxiſce men:	ou rixlede þes Saxiſſe.
iſiȝen weoren to heom.	
Brutt[9][1] ſcupten þan londe nome:	Bruttus ſipte þat lond name:
for Sæxiſce monnen ſcome.	for Saxiſſe menne ſame.
& for þan ſwike-dome:	
þat heo idon hæfdē.	
for þan þe heo mid cnifen:	and for þan þat hii mid ſexes:
biræueden heom at liue.	bi-refde ȝam of lifues.
þa cleopeden heo þat lond al:	þo cleopeden hii þat lond:
[*Æſt-ſ*]*ex.* Æſt-ſæx & Weſt-ſæx. •	Eſtſex: and Weſtſex.
[*Weſt*]-*ſex.* & þat þridde: Middel-Sæx[2].	and þat [þridde] Middelſex[2].
[*Midde*]*l-ſæx.* Vortig[9]ne þe king:	
bi-tæhte heom al þis lond.	
þ ne bilæfde him an heonde:	
a turf of londe.	
& him ſeolf Vortig[9]ne:	And Vortiger gan wende:
flæh ouer Sæuærne.	ouer Séévarne.
feor in to Welliſce lond:	for into Walſe londe:
& þer he gon at-ſtonde.	and þar he gan at-ſtonde.
& his hired mid him:	

[this], 'that mischief was in *the* land, and' how '*the* Saxish men were come to them [these Saxons governed]. *The* Britons shaped to the land *a* name for *the* shame of Saxish men, 'and for the treachery that they had done;' [and] for that *cause* that they with 'knives [sæxes] bereaved them of life, then called they 'all' the land East-Sex and West-Sex, and the third Middle-Sex. 'Vortiger the king gave them all this land, so that a turf of land did not remain to him in hand.' And Vortiger 'himself' 'fled [gan wend] over Severn, far into Welsh-land, and there he gan tarry, 'and his retinue with him, that poor was become.' And 'he [Vortiger] had in hoard treasure

[1] Brut *pr. man.*

[2] *Perhaps a line is here missing.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þe hæne wes iwurðen.
& he hæfde an horde:
gerſume ſwide[1] ſtronge.
he lette his men riden: [c. 2.]
widen & ſiden.
and lette him to bonnen:
of ælchef cunnes monnen.
þe æuere wolden hif feoh:
mid freondſcipe ȝirnen.
þ iherden Bruttes:
þ iherden Scottes.
to him heo comen:
þer after ful ſone.
an ælchere ſide:
þider heo gūnē riden.
monies hæȝes monnes sūe:
for golde & for gærſume.
þa hæfde he to-ſomne:
ſixti þuſend monen.
þa ſumnede he þa richen:
þa wel cuðen ræden.
Gode men ræðed[3] me ræd:
uor me if ſwiðe muchel neod.
whar ich mihte on wilderne:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

And Vortiger hadde in horde:
gariſom ſwiþe riche.

and lette to him banni:
of eche cunnef manne.
þat euere wolde his feo:
mid māſipe ȝeorne.
þat ihorde Bruttus:
þat hi-horde Sottes[2].
to him hii come ride:

in euer eche ſide.

mani heh mannef ſone:
for gold and for garefome.
þo hadde he to-gadere:
fixti þuſend manne.
to ȝam ſaide þo þer:
þe pore king Vortiger.
Gode men redeþ me read:
for nou ich habbe moche
war ich mihte in wilderne: [neod.

most 'large [rich]; 'he caused his men to ride wide and far,' and caused to be summoned to him men of each kind, whoso ever would yearn his fee with friendship. That heard *the* Britons, that heard *the* Scots; they came to him [riding] 'thereafter full soon'; on 'each [every] side 'thither they gan ride, many *a* noble mans son, for gold and for treasure. When he had together sixty thousand men, then 'assembled he the nobles that well could advise [said there to them the poor king Vortiger]: "Good men, say me counsel, for 'to me is [now I have] great need, where I might (may)

[1] ſwiðe? [2] Scottes? [3] rædeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

wurchen ænne caſtel.
þer ic mihte an inne:
lubbe[1] mid mine monnen.
& halden hine wiþ Hēgeſt:
mid hæȝere ſtrengðe.
a þat ich mihte bæt:
burhȝen iwīnē.
wræken me a mine feondē:
þa mine wines feolden.
& habbeð al mi kine-lond:
awræht ut of mire hond.
& þuf me iflæmed:
mine fulle ifan.
Þa andſwarede a wiſ mon:
þe wel cudðe ræden.
Luſt me nu lauerd king:
ich þe cuðe god þing.
uppen þan munte of Reir:
ich wullen ræden.
þat þu caſte[2] wurche:
mid ſtronge ſtan walle.
for þer þu miht wunien:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

werchen one caſtel.
þat ich mihte holde: [c. 2.]
wiþ Hengeſt þan ſtronge.
forte þat ich mihte bet:
borewes a-winne.
vp ȝam þat habbeþ al mi lond:
a-wreþt vt of mine hond.
Þo anſwerede a wiſman:
þat couþe wel reade.
Luſt nou mi louerd king:
and ich þe wolle cuþe god þing.
vppe þan munte of Kaier:
ich þe wolle reade.
þat þou reare caſtel[3].

in wilderness work a castle, 'wherein I might live with my men, 'and hold it [that I might hold] against Hengest 'with great strength [the strong], until that I might *the* better win *my* burghs, '*and* avenge me of my enemies who felled my friends, and [from them who] have all my 'kingdom [land] wrested out of my hand, 'and thus driven me *out*, my full foes?'" Then answered a wise man, who well could counsel: "Listen now 'to me, [my] lord king, [and] I will shew to thee *a* good thing; upon the mount of 'Reir [Kaier] I will [thee] advise, that thou 'work [rear] *a* castle 'with strong stone wall, for there thou mightest dwell, and live with joy; and yet thou

[1] libbe?
[2] *R.* caſtel.
[3] *A line appears to be wanting here.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& libben mid winne.	
& ȝet þu haueſt a þire hond:	
muchel ſeoluer & gold.	
to halden þine hired:	
þa þe helpen ſcal.	
& swa þu miht on liue: [f. 89. c. 1.]	
libben alræ ſæleſt.	
þa andſwere þe king:	þo anſwerede þe king:
Let hit cuðen an hiȝing.	Let hit cuþe an hiȝeng.
ȝeond muchele mire ferde:	ouer al þan folke:
þat ich faren wulle.	þat ich wende wolle.
to þan munte of Reir:	to þan munte of Kaȳr:
& ræren þer caſtel.	a-rere þar caſtel.
Forð ferde þe kīg:	Forþ ferde þe king:
& þa ferde mid him.	and þe ferde mid him.
þa heo þider comen:	þo hii þider come:
dic heo bigunnen ſone.	dich i[1] dolue ſone.
hornes þer bleouwen:	
machūnes heowen.	
lim heo gunnen bærnen:	
ȝeond þat lond ærnen.	
& al wæſt Walſce[2] lond:	
ſettē a Uortigernes hond.	
al heo hit nomen:	

hast in thy hand much silver and gold, to maintain thy people who shall thee help; and so thou mightest in life live best of all.'" Then answered the king: "Let it be made known in haste, over my numerous host [all the folk], that I will go to the mount of 'Reiſ [Kayr], 'and' rear there *a* castle." Forth went the king, and the host with him; when they thither came, *a* dyke they 'began [dug] soon; 'horns there blew, machines hewed; lime they gan to burn, *and* over the land to run; and all west Welsh-land set in Vortigers hand; all they it took, that they nigh came.' When 'the

[1] hii?

[2] *The last two letters of* wæſt *and* Walſce *are by second hand, sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat heo neh comen.	
þa þe dic wes idoluen:	þo he was hi-dolue:
& allunge idȝoped.	alſe he beo ſolde.
þa bi-gunnen heo wal:	þo leideine[1] wal:
a þere dic ouer al.	a þan dich oueral.
& heo lim & ſtan:	
leiden to-ſomne.	
of machunes þer wes wunder:	of machuns þar was wonder:
fif and twenti hūdred.	fif and twenti hundred.
A dæi heo leiden þene wal:	A dai hii leide þane wal:
a niht he feol ouer al.	a niht feol oueral.
a marwe heo hine arædden:	a morewe hii hine arerde:
a niht he gon to-reoſen.	a niht he gan to-reſe.
fulle ſeouen nihte:	folle ſouenihte:
ſwa heom dihte.	þos[2] þis worck ham dihte.
ælche dæi heo hine aredden:	
& ælche niht he gon reoſen.	
þa wes ſari þe king:	þo waſ ſori þe king
& ſorhful þurh alle þing.	and ſorþfolle þorh alle þing.
ſwa wes al þa uerde:	
ladliche of-færed.	
for æuere heo lokede:	for heuere he lokede:
whænne Hengeſt come an uuenan.	wane Hengeſt come liþe.

dyke [it] was dug, 'and thoroughly deepened [as it should be], then 'began [laid] they *a* wall on the dyke over all, 'and they laid together lime and stone'; of machines there was plenty,—five and twenty hundred! In *the* day they laid the wall, in *the* night 'it' fell over all; in *the* morrow they reared it, in *the* night it gan to tumble! Full *a* se'nnight 'so *it* [thus this work] them served; 'each day they raised it, and each night it gan fall!' Then was the king sorry, and sorrowful through all things; 'so was all the host terribly afraid'; for ever 'they [he] looked when Hengest should 'come upon *them* [arrive]. The king was 'full [well] sorry, and sent after sages,

[1] leiden hii?

[2] þus?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þe king wes ful færi:
& ſende after witien.
æfter world-wiſe monne:
þa wiſdom cuðen.
& bad heom leoten weorpen:
& fondien leod-runen.
fondien þat ſoðe: [c. 2.]
mid heore ſiȝe-craften.
whær on hit weore ilōg:
þat þe wal þe wes swa ſtrong.
ne moſte moſte[1] niht longes:
nauere iſtonden.
Þas weorlde-wiſe men:
þer a twa wendē.
ſūme heo wenden to þan wude:
ſūme to weien-læten.
heo gunnen loten weorpen:
mid heore leod-runen.
fulle þreo nihten:
heore craftes heo dihten.
ne mihtē heo nauere finden:
þurh nauere nane þinge.
whær on hit weore ilong:
þat þe wal þat wes swa ſtrong.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þe king was wel fori:
and ſende after wittie.
and bad heom lotef werpe:
and fondie þat ſoþe:
war on hit were ilong:
þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrang. [f. 73. c. 1.]
ne mihte nih[2] longe:
neuere one ſtonde.
Þes worle-wiſemen:
þar a two wende.
somme wende to þan wode:
somme to weynleates.
folle þreo nihtes:
hire craftes þar hii dihte.
ne mihten hii neuere finde:
þorh none cunnef þinge.
war on hit were ilong:
þat þe wal þat was ſo ſtrong.

'after world-wise men, who knew wisdom,' and bade them cast lots, and 'try incantations,' try the truth 'with their powerful craft,' on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong might not ever stand *a* night long. These world-wise men there went in two *parties*; some 'they' went to the wood, some to *the* cross-ways; 'they gan to cast lots with their incantations'; full three nights their crafts [there] they practised; they might never find, through 'never any [no kind of] thing, on what account it were, that the wall that was so strong every night fell down, and the king lost his labor.

[1] *Sic MS.*

[2] niht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
æuere ælche nihte to-raſ:	euereche niht reef:
& þe king hiſ ſwīc læs.	and þe king hiſ ſwīc les.
Buten witie þer wes an:	Bote witti þar was on:
Jora[m]. he wes ihaten Joram.	he was ihote Joram.
he ſeide þat he hit afunde:	he ſaide þat he hit funde:
ah hit þuhte læſinge.	ac hit þoht leſinge.
he ſeide ȝif mon funde:	he ſaide þat ȝef man funde:
in auer æi londe.	in eni kinelonde.
æuer æi cniht bærn:	enỳ cnaue child:
þe næuere fæder no ibæd.	þat neuere ſader nadde.
& openede his breoſte:	and hopenede hiſ breoſte:
& nomen of hiſ blode.	and neme of his blode.
& mengde wiþ þan lime:	and meinde wiþ þan lime:
& þæne wal læide.	and in þan wal leide.
þenne mihte he ſtonde:	þanne mihte he ſtonde:
to þere worlde longe.	to þan worle longe.
þat word com to þan kīge:	
of þere læſinge.	
& he hit ilefde:	
þah hit læs weore.	
Sone he nom his ſonde:	þe king ſende his ſonde:
& ſende ȝeōd þan londe.	oueral þan londe.
swa feor ſwa he[1] for dæðes kare:	so for ſo he[2] dorſte for deþef care:
durſten æies weieſ faren.	in eni wei fare.

But there was one sage, he was named Joram, he said that he it found,—but it seemed (was) leasing,—he said that if men found in 'ever' any 'land [kingdom], 'ever' any male-child, that never had father, and opened his breast, and took of his blood, and mingled with the lime, and laid [in] the wall, *that* then might it stand to the worlds end. 'The word came to the king, of the leasing, and he it believed, though it were false.' 'Soon he took [The king sent] his messengers, 'and sent' over [all] the land, so far as they for care (fear) of death durst 'anyways [in any way] fare, and in each

[1] heo?

[2] hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& in ælche tune:	and in eche toune:
hercneden þa runen.	hercnede roune.
whær heo mihtē ifinden: [f. 89b, c. 1.]	war hii mihten finden:
ſpeken of ſwulche childe.	ſpeken of ſoche childe.
Þas cnihtes forð ferden:	Þeos cnihtes forþ verde:
widen ȝeond þan ærde.	in to mani erþe.
tweien uerden ænne wæi:	tweie verden anne waẏ:
þe weſt riht him læi.	þat weſt rihtes him laẏ.
þe læi forð rihtes in:	þat laẏ nou[1] rihtef in:
þer nu if Kaer-merðin.	þar nou his Kermerþin. [c. 2.]
Biſides þere burh:	Biſides þare borewe:
in ane weie brade.	in one waẏ brode.
hefden ænne muchelne plæȝe:	adde alle[2] borh-cnaues.:
alle þa burh-cnauen.	hii-gadered[3] heom to-gadere.
Þas cnihtes weoren weri:	Þeos cnihteſ weren weri:
& an heorte ſwiðe færi.	and on heorte ſori.
& ſeten adun bi þan plaȝe:	and ſete adun bi þeos cnaues:
& bi-heolden þas cnauen.	bi-heolde ou hii pleoẏde.
Vmbē ane ſtunde:	Bi one lutele ſtunde:
heo bigunnen ſtriuinge.	hii bi-gonne to ſtriuende.
al ſe hit wes auer laȝe:	al ſo hit was euere lawe:
imong childrene plæȝe.	a-mang ſtildrene[4] plawe.
þe an þe oderne[5] ſmat:	þe on þan oþer ſmot:

town hearkened 'the' rumors, where they might find speak of such *a* child. These knights forth proceeded 'wide over the [into many *a*] land; two *of the number* went a way that lay right west, that lay forth-right in where now Caermarthen is. Beside the burgh, in a broad way, all 'the' burgh-lads had 'a great play [gathered them together]. These knights were weary, and in heart 'exceeding' sorry, and sate down by 'the play [these lads], 'and' beheld 'these lads [how they played]. After a [little] time they began striving,—as it was ever custom among childrens play;—the one smote the other, and he 'these blows [his blow] suffered. Then

[1] forþ? [2] alle þe? [3] *R.* i-gadered.
[4] childrene? [5] oðerne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& he þeos dūdes[1] abad.	and he his dunt a-bod.
þa wes swiðe grim:	þo was ſwiþe grim:
Dinabuz touward Mærlin.	Dunabuz to Merlyn.
& þus quað Dinabȝ:	and þus ſaide Dunabuz:
þe þene dūt hefde.	þat þane dunt hadde.
Merlyn. Mærling[2] vnwærſte[3] man:	Merlyn onwreſte man:
whu hæueſt þu me þus idon.	wi haueſt þou þus idon.
þu haueſt idon me muchel ſcome:	
þer fore þu ſcalt habben grome.	
Ich æm anes kinges ſune:	Ich ham one kingef ſone:
& þu ært of noht icumen.	and þou hart of noht icome.
þu nahtes i nane ſtude:	
habben freo-monnes ibude.	
for swa wes al þa uore:	for ſo was al þe vore?
þi moder wes an hore.	þi moder was an hore.
for n^{o}te heo næuere þene mon:	for nuſte ȝeo wat was þe man:
þ̄ þe ſtreonde hire on.	þat þe ſtreone hire an.
no þu on moncunne:	ne þou in mancunne:
nefdeſt fader nēne.	haddeſt fader nadde[4].
& þu in ure londe:	and þou in houre londe:
makeſt uf to ſconde.	doſt vs ſo mochel ſconde.
þu ært uf imong icumē:	
& nært nænes mōnes[5] ſunc.	

was exceeding wrath Dinabuz to' ward' Merlin, and thus 'quoth [said] Dinabuz, who had the blow: "Merlin, wicked man, why hast thou thus done 'to me? Thou hast done me much shame, therefore thou shalt have grief.' I am a kings son, and thou art born of nought; 'thou oughtest not in any spot to have free mans abode'; for so was all the adventure, thy mother was a whore, for she knew not 'ever [what was] the man that begat thee on her, nor haddest thou any father among mankind. And thou in our land 'makest us to be shamed [dost us so much shame]; 'thou art among us come, and art son of no man'; thou shalt therefore in this day

[1] duntes? [2] *R.* Merlin *here and elsewhere.* [3] vnwræſte?
[4] nanne? [5] *This word is interlined by the second hand.*

MS. Cott. Câlig. A. IX.

þu ſcalt i þiſſen dæie :/ [c.2.]
þer uore dæd[1] þolien.
þis iherden þa cnihtes :/
þer heo weoren bi-halueſ.
heo ariſen up & eoden neor :/
& neodeliche ȝerden[2].
of þiſſere uncuðe talen :/
þe heo iherden of þan cnauen.
þa wes inne Kair-Merðin :/
a reue þe hehte Eli.
þa cnihtes biliue :/
comen to þan reue.
& þus him to fæiden :/
ſone mid muðe.
We buð her rihtes :/
Uortig[2]nes cnihtes.
& habbeoð her ifunde :/
enne cnaue ȝunge.
he if ihatē Merlin :/
ne icnawe we na wiðt his cunne.
Nim hine & hiȝinde[3] :/
& ſende hine to þan kinge.
al ſe þu wult libben :/
& þine limen habben.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þou ſalt in þiſſe daie :/
þar vore deaþ þolie.
þis ihorde þe cnihtes :/
þare hii weren bi-halues.
hii a-riſe and eoden ner :/
and ȝornliche luſte.
of þes vncouþe tale :/
þat hii ihorde of þes cnaue.
þo was in Kermerþin :/
a reue þat hehte Elẏ.
þes cnihtef bliue :/
comen to þan reue. [f.72ᵇ.c.1.]
and to him þus ſaẏde :/
ſone mid muþe.
We beoþ here rihtes :/
Vortigerne his cnihtes.
and habbeþ here ifunde :/
one cnaue ȝonge.
Merlin.
fenden hine to þan kinge :/
alſe þou wolt libbe.

suffer death." The knights heard this, where they were aside; they arose up, and went near, and earnestly 'asked of [listened to] this strange tale, that they heard of 'the [this] lad. Then was in Caermarthen a reve that hight Eli; 'the [these] knights quickly came to the reve, and thus to him said soon with mouth: "We are here-right 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] knights, and have found here a young lad; 'he is named Merlin; we know no whit his kin. Take him in haste, and' send him to the king, as thou wilt live, 'and thy limbs have,' and his mother with him, who bore him to *be* man.

[1] dæð ? [2] ȝernden ? [3] an hiȝinge ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& his moder mid him:	and his moder mid him:
þe hine bar to monnen.	þat hine bar to manne.
ȝif þu þif wult don:	ȝef þou þif nelt noht don:
þe king heom wule under-fon.	þe king þe wole a-hon.
& ȝif þu hit noht ne ȝemeſt:	
þer fore þu biſt flæme.	
& þas burh al for-bard[1]:	and þeos borh al for-berne:
þas leodē al fordemed.	and þat folk fleme.
Þa anſwarede Eli:	Þo anſweredē Elỳ:
þe reue of Kæir-Merðin.	þe reaue of Kermerþin.
Wel ic wat þat al þif lond:	Wel ich wot þat al þis lond:
ſtunt a Vortig[9]nes hond.	ſtond in Vortigernes hond.
& we beoð alle hiſ men:	
his monſcipe is þe mare.	
& we ſcullen þif don fain:	þar vore ich wole þif don:
& driȝen his wille.	and dreȝen his wille.
Forð wende þe reue:	Forþ wende þe reue:
& burhmen his iuere.	and borhmen his ivere.
& ifunden Mærlin:	and ifunde Merlỳn:
& his plaȝe-iueren mid him.	and his pleiueres mid him.
Mærlin heo nomen:	Merlỳn hii nemen:
and hiſ iuæren loȝen.	and his iveres lowen.
þa þa Mærlīg wes ilad:	þo þat Merlỳn was ilad:

If thou this 'wilt do, the king will receive them, and if thou carest it not, therefore thou wilt be driven *out* [wilt not do, the king will hang thee], and this burgh all 'consumed, [consume, and] 'this [the] folk all 'destroyed [drive *out*]." Then answered Eli, the reve of Caermarthen: "Well I wot, that all this land stands in Vortigers hand, 'and we are all his men,—his honor is the more!'—'and we shall [therefore I will] do this 'gladly,' and perform his will." Forth went the reve, and *the* burghers his associates, and found Merlin, and his playfellows with him. Merlin they took, and his companions laughed; when that Merlin was led *away*, then was

[1] for-barnd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa wes Dinabus ful glad. [f.90.c.1.]
e[1] wende þat he ilad weore:
limen for to leoſe.
ah al an oðer ſet þe dom:
ær hit weoren al idon.
Nu wes Mærlinges moder:
wundermere i-wurðen.
in ane haȝe munſtre:
muchene[2] ihaded.
þider iwende Eli:
þe reue of Kaer-Merðin.
& nom him þa lafdie:
þer heo læi on munſtre.
& uorð him gō ærne:
to þan kinge Uortigerne.
& muchel folc mid him:
& ladden þa nunne & Merlin.
Sone wes þat word cuð:
to Vortigernes kinges muð.
þat icumen wes Eli:
& brohte þa lauedi.
& Marling heore ſone:
wes mid hire þer icumen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo was Dunabuz fol glad.
he wende þat hit were:
for þane pleȳ þare.
ac al an oþer was þe dom:
are hit were al idon.
Nou was Merlȳn his moder:
wonderliche iworþe.
in one nonneric:
munechene ihoded.
þider wende Elȳ:
þe reue of Kermerþin.
and nam þe gode leafdi:
þar ȝeo was in muneſtre.
and forþ him gan erne:
to þan king Vortigerne. [c.2.]
and mochel folk mid him:
þat ladde þe nonne and Merlȳn.
Sone was þat word couþ:
to Vortiger þe kinges muþ.
þat icome was Elȳ:
and hadde ibroht þe lafdi.
and Merlȳn hire ſone:
was mid hire þar icome.

Dinabuz full glad; he weened that 'he were led *away* for to lose *his* limbs [it were for the play there], but all another *way* 'set [was] the doom, ere it were all done. Now was 'Merlins [Merlyn his] mother strangely become in a 'noble minster [nunnery] *a* hooded nun. Thither went Eli, the reve of Caermarthen, and took 'him' the [good] lady, where she 'lay [was] in *the* minster, and forth gan him run to the king Vortiger, and much folk with him, 'and [that] led the nun and Merlin. The word (tidings) was soon made known to [the] king Vortigers mouth, that Eli was come, and [had] brought the lady, and *that* Merlin her son was with her there come.

[1] *R.* he.

[2] munchene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þa wes an liue:		
Vortigerne blide[1].		
& þa læuedi aueng:		þe king þe leafdi vnder-feng:
mid fwiðe uæire læten.		and manfipe bi-hehte.
& Mærlin he bitwahte[2]:		and Merlyn he bi-tahte:
goden twælf cnihten.		twelf gode cnihtes.
þa weoren þā kinge holde:		þat weren þan kīge holde:
& hine witen fcolden.		and hine witie folde.
þa fæiden þe king Vortig[3]:		þo þe king Vortiger:
wið þa nunne he fpilede þer.	10	wiþ þe nonne fpac þer.
Gode læuedi fæi me:		Gode leafdi fai me:
sæl þe fcal iwurðe.		
whar weoren þu iborē:		
wha ftreonede þe to bearne.		wo ftreonede þe.
Þæ andfwarede þa nunne:		þo anfwerede þe nonne:
& hire fader nemnede.		and hire fader nemnede.
þriddendale þis lond:		þat þridden deal of al þif lond:
ftod a mines fader hond.		ftod in mine fader hond.
of þan londe he wes king:		of þan londe he was king:
cuð hit wes wide.	20	couþ hit waf wide.
he wes ihatē Conaan:		he was ihote Conan:
cnihtene lauerd.		cnihtene louerd.
þa anfwarede þe king:	[c. 2.]	þo fpac Vortigerne:

'Then was Vortiger blithe in life, and [The king] received the lady, with looks most fair [and honor promised], and Merlin he delivered to twelve good knights, who were faithful to the king, and him should guard. Then 'said' the king Vortiger, with the nun 'he' spake there: "Good lady, say to me,—'well *it* shall be to thee,—where wert thou born,' who begat thee 'to *be* child'?" Then answered the nun, and named her father:—"[The] third part of [all] this land stood in my fathers hand; of the land he was king, known it was wide; he was named Conaan, lord of knights." Then 'an-

[1] bliðe?

[2] bitahte?

[3] *Written at first* Vortig²ne, *but the last two letters expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
fwulc heo hif cun weore.	afe he his cun were.
Lauedi fæie þu hit me:	Leafdi fei þou nou me:
fæl þe fcal iwurðen.	leof þou hart me fwiþe.
her if Mærlin þi fune:	her his Merlyn þi fone:
wha ftreonede hine.	wo ftreonede hine.
who wes him a folke:	
for fader iholden.	
þa heng heo hire hæfued:	
& heolde touward bræften.	
bi þan kinge heo fæt ful fofte:	
& ane lutle while þohte.	
vmbe while heo fpac:	
& fpilede wið þan kinge.	
King ich þe wulle tellē:	King ich þe wolle telle:
for feolcuðe fpellen.	felcouþe fpelles.
Mi fader Conaan þe king:	Mi fader Conan þe king:
luuede me þurh alle þing.	lofuede me þorh alle þing.
þa iwarð ich on veftme:	
wunder ane fæir.	
þa ich wes an uore:	
fiftene ȝere.	
þa wunede ich on bure:	and feodde me in boure:
on wunfele mine.	
maidene mid me:	mid mine maydenes deore.
wūd[9]e ane uæire.	

swered the king [spake Vortiger], as *if* 'she [he] were of his kin: "Lady, say thou 'it [now] to me,—'well *it* shall be to thee [thou art to me very dear],—here is Merlin thy son, who begat him? 'Who was held for father to him among *the* folk?" Then hung she her head, and bent toward *her* breast; by the king she sate full softly, and thought a little while; after *a* while she spake, and said to the king': "King, I will tell thee marvellous stories. My father Conaan the king loved me through all things; 'then became I in stature wondrously fair. When I was fifteen years of age,' 'then dwelt I [and fed me] in bower, 'in my mansion'; '*my* maidens with me, [with my maidens dear] 'wondrously fair'. [And] when I was in bed 'in slumber,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þenne ich wæs on bedde iſwaued ⁊	And þo ich was abedde ⁊
mid ſoft mine ſlepen.	mildeliche on ſlepe.
þē com biuoren ⁊	þar com me bi-vore ⁊ [[f. 74. c. 1.]
þa fæireſt þing þat wes iboren.	þat faẏreſt þinge þat was ibore.
ſwulc hit weore a muchel cniht ⁊	alſe hit were a mochel cniht ⁊
al of golde idiht.	al of golde idiht.
þiſ ich iſæh on ſweuene ⁊	þis þing com me bi-vore ⁊
alche niht on ſlepe.	eche niht on ſleape.
þiſ þing glad me biuoren ⁊	
and glitene on golde.	
ofte hit me cuſte ⁊	ofte hit me cuſte ⁊
ofte hit me clupte.	and ofte hit me cluppte.
ofte hit me to-bæh ⁊	ofte þis þing ich iſeh ⁊
& eode me swiðe neh.	and ofte hit ȝeode me neh.
þa ich an ænde me biſæh ⁊	
ſelcuð me þuhte þas.	
mi mæte me wes læd[1] ⁊	
mine limes uncuðe.	
selcuð me þuhte ⁊	selcuþ me þohte ⁊
what hit beon mihte. [f. 90ᵇ. c. 1.]	wat þis beon mihte.
þa anȝæt ich on ænde ⁊	þo anȝete ich at þan ende ⁊
þat ich was mid childe.	þat ich was mid childe.
þa mi time com ⁊	þo þat þe time com ⁊
þiſne cnaue ich hæfuede.	þiſne cnaue ich hadde.

with my soft sleep, then [mildly asleep, there] came before [me] the fairest thing that *ever* was born, as *if* it were a tall knight, arrayed all of gold. This 'I saw in dream [thing came before me] each night in sleep. 'This thing glided before me, and glistened of gold;' oft it me kissed, [and] oft it me embraced; oft 'it approached me [this thing I saw], and [oft it] came to me 'very' nigh; 'when I at length looked to myself,—strange this seemed to me,—my meat to me was loathsome, my limbs unusual'; strange *it* seemed to me, what 'it [this] might be! Then perceived I at [the] end that I was with child; when 'my [that the] time came, this boy I had. I know not

[1] læð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Nat ic on folde ;	not ich in þis worle ;
what hif fader weoren.	wo his fader were.
ne wha hine biȝate ;	
inne weorlde-riche.	
no whaðer hit weore unwiht ;	
þe on godes halue idiht.	
La swa ich ibedde are ;	
nat ich na mare.	
to fuggen þe of mine fune ;	
hu he to worulde is icume.	
þe nunne beh hire hæfde adun ;	
& hire huȝe dihte.	
þe king hine bi-þohte ;	þe king hine bi-þohte ;
whæt he don mihte.	wat he don mihte.
& droh him to ræde ;	and nam him to reade ;
redȝiuen gode.	redȝeues gode.
& heo him raddē ;	and hii him radde ;
ræd mid þan bezſte.	read mid þan beſte.
þat he of-ſende Magan ;	þat he of-ſende Madan[1] ;
þ wes a ſelcuð mon.	þat was a ſwiþe wiſman.
He wes a wis clærc ;	
& cuðe of feolc cræften.	
he cuðe wel ræden ;	

in [this] world 'what [who] his father were, 'nor who begat him in *this* worlds-realm, nor whether it were evil-thing, or on Gods behalf dight. Alas! as I pray for mercy, I know not any more to say to thee of my son, how he is come to *the* world." The nun bowed her head down, and covered her features.' The king bethought him what he might do, and 'drew [took] to him good councillors to counsel; and they said him counsel with the best, that he should send for Magan, who was a 'marvellous [very wise] man.— 'He was a wise clerk, and knew of many crafts; he would advise well, he could far direct'; he knew of the craft that dwelleth in the sky (astronomy),

[1] *R.* Magan.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
he cuðe feor læden.	
he cuðe of þā crafte:	he couþe of þan crafte:
þe wuneð i þan lufte.	þat wonieþ in þan lufte.
he cuðe tellen:	he couþe telle:
of ælche leod-ſpelle.	of eche leod-spelles.
[*Ma*]*gan.* Magan com to hirede:	Magā com to þe ſtude:
þar þe king wunede.	þar þe king wonede.
& þene king grætte:	and þane king grette:
mid godfulle worde.	mid his milde wordes.
Hāil ſeo þu & ſund:	
Vortigerne þe king.	
ich æm icumē to þe:	Ich ham icome to þe:
cuð me þine iwille.	cuþ me þine wille.
þa ādſwærede þe king:	þo anſwerede þe king:
& talde al þan clærke.	and tolde þan clearke.
hu þa nunne hafde iſæid:	ou þe nonne hadde iſeid:
& axede hine þer of ræd.	and axede þar of read.
ord fram þan ende:	
al he him talde. [c. 2.]	
þa ſæide Magan:	þo ſaide Magan:
Ich con ful wel her on.	Ich con ful wel þar an.
þer wunieð in þan lufte:	þar wonieþ in þan lufte:
feole cunne wihte.	fale cunne wiþtes.
þa þer ſcullen bilæfuen:	þat þar mote wonie:
þat domeſ-dæi cume liðen.	forte domes-dai come.
sūme heo beoð aðele:	somme hii beoþ gode: [c. 2.]

he could tell of each history (*or* language). Magan came to 'court [the place] where the king dwelt, and greeted the king with 'goodly [his mild] words: "'Hail be thou and sound, Vortiger the king!' I am come to thee, shew me thy will." Then answered the king, and told the clerk 'all,' how the nun had said, and asked 'him' thereof counsel; 'from *the* beginning to the end, all he him told.' Then said Magan: "I know full well 'hereon [thereon]. There dwell in the sky many kind of beings, that there 'shall remain [must dwell] until domesday 'arrive [come]; some they are

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& ſumme heo uuel wurcheð.	somme wircheþ vuele.
þer on if ſwiðe muchel cun:	
þa cumeð imōg monnen.	
heo beoð ihaten ful iwis:	hii beoþ i-hote foliwis:
incubii demones.	incubi demones.
ne doð heo noht muchel ſcaðe:	ne doþ hii noht moche ſcaþe:
bute hokerieð þan folke.	
monine mō on[1] ſweuene:	bote ſwinkeþ men on ſleape.
ofte heo ſwencheð[2].	
& monienne hende wimmon:	and mani on hénde wifman:
þurh heoře cræfte kenneð[3] anan.	þorh hire craft kenneþ a-non.
& monies godes monnes child:	
heo bicharreð þurh wigelīg.	
& þus wes Marlin biȝeten:	And þus waſ Merlýn bi-ȝete:
& iboren of his moder.	and ibore of his moder.
& þus hit if al igan:	
quað þe clærc Magā.	
þa ſæide Marling:	þo ſaide Merlýn:
to ſeolue þā kinge. [men:	to þan ſeolue kinge.
King þine men me habbeoð inu-	King þine men me habbeþ inome:
& ich æm to þe icumen.	and ich ham to þe icome.
& ich iwiten wulle:	and ich iwite wolle:
what beon þi wille.	wat beo þin wille.

good, 'and' some 'they' work evil. 'Therein is *a* race very numerous, that cometh among men'; they are named full truly Incubi Dæmones; they do not much harm, but 'deceive the folk; many *a* man in dream oft they delude [delude men in sleep], and many a fair woman through their craft childeth anon, 'and many *a* good mans child they beguile through magic.' And thus was Merlin begat, and born of his mother, 'and thus it is all transacted," quoth the clerk Magan.' Then said Merlin to the king *him*self: "King, thy men have taken me, and I am to thee come, and I would learn

[1] *Altered by a second hand to* of.

[2] *The last four letters of this word are on an erasure by second hand.*

[3] kenne *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& for wulche þinge :	
ich æm ibroht to kinge.	
Þa ſpilede þe king :	Þo ſaide þe king :
mid ſwikere[1] ſpeche.	mid cwickere ſpeche.
Mærlin þu ært hider icumen :	
þu nært nanes monnes ſune.	
swiðe þe longeð :	Swiþe þe langeþ :
after laðe ſpelle.	after loþ ſpeche.
iwhiten þu wult þa uore :	hii[2] þou wolt ware vore :
nu þu hit ſcalt ihere.	nou þou ſalt hit ihere.
¶ Ich habbe bigunnen a weorc :	Ich habbe bi-gonne a worc :
mid grūdliche ſtregðe[3].	mid grundeliche ſtrengþe.
þe haueð mine gærſume : [f.91.c.1.]	al hit haueþ min gareſome :
wel ſwiðe binume.	of me clene bi-nome.
ſif þuſend men :	ſif þuſend men :
wurcheð þer on.	wercheþ eche dai þar on.
Ich habbe lim & ſtan :	And ich habbe lym and ſton :
on leode nis betere nan.	in þe worle niſ betere non.
na in nare leode :	
weorcmen al ſwa gode.	
al þ heo leggeoð a dæi :	al þat hii leggeþ adai :
to ſoðe ich hit ſugge mæi.	to ſoþe ich þe ſegge mai.
ær dæi amarwen :	her dai a morwe :
al hit bið dune.	al hit his a-doune.

what is thy will,' and for what thing I am brought to *the* king?' Then said the king with quick speech: "'Merlin, thou art hither come; thou art son of no man!' Much thou longest after loath speech; learn thou wilt 'the adventure [wherefore],—now thou shalt hear it. I have begun a work with great strength, 'that [it] hath [all] my treasure 'well much [from me clean] taken away; five thousand men work [each day] thereon. [And] I have lime and stone, in [the] world is none better, 'nor in any land workmen so good.' All that they lay in *the* day,—in sooth I may say 'it [to thee],—ere day in *the* morrow all it is down; 'each stone from *the* other

[1] cwikere? [2] i-wite? [3] ſtrengðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ælc ſtan from oðer:
iualled to þan grunde.
Nu ſuggeð mine wiſe:
and mine witie men.
þat ȝif ich nime þi[1] blod:
ut of þire breoſte.
& minne wal wurche:
& do to mine lime.
þenne mai he ſtonde:
to þere worlde longe.
Nu þu hit woſt al:
hu þe iwurðe ſcal.
þis ihærde Mærlin:
& bælh on hif mode.
& þas word fæide:
wrað þeh he weore.
Nulle hit nauere god ſcolf:
þe gumenene is lauerd.
þ þi caſtel ſtonde:
for mine heorte blode.
ne nauere þi ſtan wal:
ſtille ne ligge.
For alle þine witien:
beoð ſwiðe ſwikele.
ifæid[2] læſſinge:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Nou ſeggeþ mine wiſe:
and mine wittȳe men.
þat ȝef ich neme þi blod:
vt of þine breoſte.
and do to mine lȳme:
and mine wal wurche.
þanne mihte he ſtonde:
to þiſſe worle longe.
Nou þou iwoſt al:
ou þe iworþe ſal.
þis ihorde Merlȳn: [f. 74b. c. 1.]
a-bolwe on his mode.
and þeos word ſaide:
þoh he wroþ were.
Nolle hit neuere god seolf:
þat his māne louerd.
þat þin caſtel ſtode:
for mine heorte blode.

Ac alle þine wittie:
beoþ ſwiþe ſwikele.
hii ſeggeþ leſinge:

felled to the ground!' Now say my wise and my sage men, that if I take thy blood, out of thy breast, and work my wall, and put to my lime, then 'may [might] it stand to the [this] worlds end. Now thou knowest 'it' all, how *it* shall be to thee." Merlin heard this, 'and' angered in his mood, and said these words, though he were wrath: "God *him*self, who is lord of men, will it never, that the castle should stand for my hearts blood, 'nor ever thy stone wall lie still.' 'For [But] all thy sages are exceeding de-

[1] *The last letter of* þi *is on an erasure of two letters.* [2] heo fæið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

bi-foren þæ[1] ſeolue.
þ þu ſcalt afinde:
a þiſſes dæieſ ferſte.
for þiſ fæde Joram:
þe iſ mi fulle ifa.
þa tiðende me þunche̊ð game:
ich wes iſcæpen him to bone.
Let cumen biuoren[2]:
Joram þine[3] witie.
& alle his iuere:
for̊ð rihtes here.
þa þeos leſinge:
talden þan kinge.
& ȝif ich þe ſugge:
so̊ðe mine worde.
of þīe walle: [c.2.]
& whi he[4] adun falle̊ð.
and mid ſo̊ðe hit bitelle:
þat heore talen finde[5] leſe.
ȝef me heore hæfden:
ȝif ich þi wærc hæle.
Þa andſwarede þe king:
mid quickere ſteuene.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

bi-vore þi ſulue.
þat þou ſalt a-finde:
in þiſſe daies furſte.
for þiſ ſayde Joram:
þat his min folle fon.
þe tydinge me þenche̊þ game:
ich was iſape him to bane.
Let com bi-vore þe:
Joram þane wittye.
and al his iveref:
for̊þrith here.

and ȝef ich þe ſegge ſo̊þ:
and þine worc heale.

ȝef me hire hefdes:
for hire leſinges.
Þo anſwerede þe king:
mid cwickere ſtemne.

ceitful; they say leasings before thyself,—that thou shalt find in this days space. For Joram said this, who is my full foe; the tidings seem to me sport; I was shapen to his bane! Let Joram 'thy [the] sage come before thee, and all his companions, forth-right here, 'who told these leasings to the king;' and if I say thee 'my sooth words of thy wall, and why it down falleth, and with sooth it prove, that their tales are leasing [sooth, and thy work heal], give me their heads, 'if I thy work heal [for their leasings]." Then answered the king with quick voice: "So help me my hand,

[1] þi? [2] biuoren þe? [3] & þine *pr. m., but* & *expuncted.*
[4] *Interlined by a second hand.* [5] finde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Swa me help mī hond:
þif forwærde ich þe halde.
To þan kinge was ibroht:
Joram þe witie.
& feofue of his iueren:
alle heo weoren uæie.
Marline gromede:
& he grimliche fpæc.
Sæie me Joram leod-fwike:
laðˇ me on heorten.
whi falleð þes wal:
uolden to grunde.
sæie me wæh hit vælleð:
þat þe wal reofeð.
what mai man uinden:
at þere dic grunde.
Joram wes ftille:
ne cuðe he noht tellen.
þa feide Merlin þas word:
King hald me forward.
let deluen þas dich:
feouen uoten deopere.
heo fcullen uinden ænne ftan:
wunder ane ueire.
he if ueir & brad:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

So me helpe min hond:
þeos forewarde ich þe holde.
To þan kinge was ibroht:
Joram þe wittȳ.
and his foue veres:
alle hii weren feȳe.
Merlȳn gramede:
and wroþliche fpac.
Saie me Joram:
loþ me on heorte.

saȝ waren hit his lang:
þat þe wal falleþ.
wat mai me finde:
at þare dich his grunde.
Joram was ftille:
ne couþe he noht telle.
þo faide Merlȳn:
Let delue þane dich anon.
foue fet deoppere:
þarre he his nouþe.
and þou falt finde þare anon: [c.2.]
ane fwiþe brode ſton.

this covenant I hold thee!" To the king was brought Joram the sage, and 'seven of his [his seven] companions,—all they were fated *to die*! Merlin angered, and 'he' spake wrathly:—'Say me Joram, 'traitor,'—loathsome to me in heart,—'why falleth this wall to *the* ground;' say 'me' 'why it happeneth [what is *the* cause] that the wall falleth, what men may find at the 'dykes [dyke his] bottom?" Joram was still; he could not tell. Then said Merlin 'these words: "King, hold to me covenant!' Cause 'this [the] dyke to be dug [anon] seven feet deeper [than it is now]; 'they shall [and thou shalt] find 'a stone wondrously

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
volke to bi-halden.	
þa dich weȝ idoluē :/	
seoue vet depre.	
þa uundē[1] heo anan :/	þis was ſone idon :/
þer rihtes þene ſtan.	and hii founde þane ſton.
þa ſæide Mærlin þas word :/	þo ſaide Merlẏn :/
King hald me forward.	towardeſ Joram.
sæie me Joram :/	
mōne me ladeſt[2].	
& ſæie þiſſe kinge :/	
wulches cunnes þinges.	Wat cunnes þingeſ :/
vnder þiſſen ſtane :/	vnder þis ſton wonieþ.
ſtaðel habbeoð inumen.	
Joram wes ſtille :/	Joram was ſtille :/
ne cuðe he noht telle.	ne couþe he noht telle.
þa ſæide Mærlin wunder :/	þo ſaide Merlẏn wonder :/
A water her iſ under.	A water þar his hunder.
doh a-wai þiſne ſtan :/ [f. 91b. c. 1.]	
þat water ȝe findeð anan.	
Heo duden a-wai þene ſtan :/	Hii dude awaẏ þane ſton :/
at-foren þan kinge anon.	
þ water heo funden :/	þat water hii fūde anon.
þa ſæide Merlin.	þo ſaide Merlẏn :/

fair [there anon a very broad stone]; 'it is fair and broad, for folk to behold.'" 'The dyke was dug seven feet deeper; then [This was soon done, and] they found 'anon there-right' the stone. Then said Merlin 'these words [towards Joram]: "'King, hold to me covenant!' Say to me, Joram, man to me most hateful, and say to this king' what kind of thing 'hath taken station [dwelleth] under this stone?" Joram was still; he could not tell. Then said Merlin *a* wonder: "A water 'here [there] is under; 'do away this stone, the water ye shall find anon.'" They did away the stone 'before the king anon'; the water they found [anon]. Then said

[1] *This word has been subsequently altered to* ivunden.

[2] laðeſt ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Æxe me Joram:
þe is mi fulle ifa.
umben ane ſtunde:
ſuggen þe of þan grunde.
what wuneð i þan watere:
wintres & ſummeres.
þe king axede Joram:
ah ne cuðe he nowiht þer on.
þa ȝet ſæide Mærlin þas word:
King hald me foreward.
Let alæten þiſ wæter:
& wei weorpen.
þer wunieð i þan grunde:
tweien draken ſtronge.
þe an is a norð half:
þe oðer a ſuð half.
þe oder[1] iſ milc-whit:
ælche deore unnilich.
þe oðer ræd alſe blod:
wurmen alre baldeſt.
Ælche middernihte:
heo bigunneð to fihten.
[2]

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ſpac toward Joram.

Wat wonieþ in þan grunde:
bi-halues þan watere.
þo ſaide Joram:
Ne can ich noht þar an.
Nou ſaide Merlyn þis word:
King holde me foreward.
Leteþ lade þat water:
and aweȳ werpe.
þar wonieþ in þan grunde:
tweie drakes ſtronge.
þe on his a norþ half:
þe oþer a ſuþ half.
þe on his milc-wit:
eche deor onilich.
þe oþer ſo read ſo blod:
worm alre boldeſt.
Eche midnihte:
hii bi-ginneþ to fihte.
and þorh hire fihte:

Merlin: 'Ask me [and spake toward] Joram, 'who is my full foe, after a while, to say thee of the bottom,' what dwelleth 'in the water, winter and summer [at the bottom, beside the water].' 'The king asked [Then said] Joram, 'but he knew ["I know] nought thereof. 'The yet [Now] said Merlin these words: "King, hold to me covenant! Cause 'this [the] water to be carried off, and away cast; there dwell at the bottom two strong dragons; the one is on *the* north side, the other on *the* south side; the one is milk-white, to each beast unlike, the other [as] red as blood, boldest of all worms! Each midnight they begin to fight, [and through their fight] thy

[1] oðer?

[2] *A line is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
feollen þine wurckes.	folle þine workeſ.
þe eorðe gon to-ruſien:	þe eorþe gan to-cwakie:
& þi wal to-reoſen.	and þin wal to-reſe.
þurh ſwulche wundre:	and þorh ſoche wondre:
þi wal if afallen.	þine walles fulle.
þa iwraðð i þiſſen flode:	
& noht for mine blode.	
þis wæter wes al ilæde:	þis water was a-way idon:
þes kinges men weoren glæde.	after Merlýn his dom.
muchel wes þa blisſe:	
biuoren þan leod-kinge.	
& sone þer after:	
ſari heo weorē.	
ær þe dæi come to ende:	
heo iherden tiðinde.	
þa þa water wes al ilædden:	
& þe put wes ilær. [[c. 2.]	
þa comen ut þas tweiē draken:	þo comen vt þe twei drakes:
& muchel dunen makeden.	and mochel dune makede.
& fuhten grimliche:	and fuþten feondeliche: [f. 75. c. 1.]
dun i þere dich.	dun in þare dich.
ne iſæh nauere na cniht:	ne ſeh neuere non cniht:
nan ladluker fiht.	non loþlichere fiht.
fluȝen of heore muðe:	floȝen of hire mouþe:

works fell, the earth began to 'sink [quake], and thy wall to tumble; [and] through such wonder thy 'wall is fallen [walls fell], 'that happened in this flood, and not for (on account of) my blood.'" This water was 'all carried off [done away, after Merlin his sentence]; 'the kings men were glad, great was the bliss before the monarch, and soon thereafter they were sorry; ere the day came to *an* end, *strange* tidings they heard. When the water was all carried off, and the pit was empty,' then came out 'these [the] two dragons, and made great din, and fought fiercely down in the dyke. Never saw any man any loathlier fight; 'flames of fire [fiery sparks] flew from their mouth! The 'monarch [king] saw this [fight], 'their

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
fures leomē.	furie gledes.
Þis iſah þe leodking:	Þis fiht iſah þe king:
grimme heore lates.	
þa wes he awundred:	and awondrede him.
on þiſſere wurlde-riche.	
what weore þiſ tacninge:	
þa he iſah þer on grunde.	
& hu Mærlin hit wuſte:	hou Merlȳn hit wiſte:
þat nan oðer mon nuſte.	þat non noþer nuſte.
Æreſt wes þe white buuen:	Ereſt waſ þe wite boue:
& ſeoððen he wes bi-neoðen.	and ſuþþe he was bi-neoþe.
& þe drake ræde:	and þe drake reade:
for-wundede hine to dæðe.	for-wondede him to deaþe.
and æiðer wende to his hole:	and aiþer wende to his hole:
ne iſæh heom ſeoððe na mon i-	ne ſeah ham ſuþþe no man ibore.
þuſ ferden þeoſ þīg: [boren.	þus ferde þis þing:
þat iſah Vortig[2]ne þe king.	þat i-ſah Vortiger þe king.
Ād alle þe weoren mid him:	And alle his iveren:
luueden ſwiðe Mærlin.	and[1] lofuede ſwiþe Merlȳn.
& þe king hatede Joram:	and þe king hatede Joram:
& his hæfed hī binam.	and his hefued him bi-nom.
& his ſeouene iuerē:	and alle his iveres:
þe mid him weoren þære.	þat mid him þare were.

grim gestures'; 'then was he astonished [and wondered him] 'in this worlds-realm, what this tokening were, that he saw there at *the* bottom, and' how Merlin knew it, that no other 'man' knew. First was the white above, and afterwards he was beneath, and the red dragon wounded him to death; and either went to his hole,—no man born saw them afterwards! Thus fared this thing that Vortiger the king saw. And all 'that were with him [his companions] loved Merlin greatly; and the king hated Joram, and deprived him of his head, and [all] his 'seven' comrades that with him were there. The king went to *his* house, and led Merlin with

[1] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
To telde eode þe king:		To telde eode þe kinge:
& mid him lædde Mærlin.		and ladde mid him Merlỳn.
& seide him mid mucle luue:		ant tahte him moche lofue:
Mærling þu ært wilcume.		Merlỳn þou hart wilcome.
& ich þe ȝiuē wulle:		
al þ̄ þu ȝirneſt.		
of mine londe:		
of feoluere & of golde.		
He wende þurh Mærlin:		He wende þorh Merlỳn:
þ̄ lond al iwinnē.	10	al þat loud awinne.
ah al oðer hit wende:		ac al oþer hit iwarþ:
ær comen þes daies ende.		ſone þar hafter.
Þus fræinede þe king:		Þo ſaide þe king:
his leofe freond M^{9}lin.		Leoue freond Merlỳn.
Sæie me nu M^{9}lin:		
monnen me leofueſt.		
what bitacnieð þa draken:	[f. 92. c. 1.]	wat bi-tocneþ þaie drakeſ:
þe þene dune makeden.		þat þane dune makede.
þe ſtan & þat water:		and þe ſton: and þat water:
& þat wundreliche[1] fæht.	20	and þaie ſtronge fihtes.
ſæie me ȝif þi wil is:		ſai me of þin willes:
whæt bitacneð al þiſ.		wat bi-tokcneþ al þis.
& ſeoððen þu moſt me ræden:		And suþþe þou moſt me reade:

him, and 'said to [bestowed on] him 'with' much love: "Merlin, thou art welcome, 'and I will give thee all that thou desirest, of my land, of silver and of gold.'" He weened through Merlin to win all the land, but it happened 'all other*wise* 'ere the days end came [soon thereafter]. The king 'thus asked his [then said:] dear friend Merlin, "'Say me now, Merlin, man to me dearest,' what betoken the dragons that made the din, [and] the stone, and the water, and the 'wondrous fight [strong combats]? Say me, 'if thy will is [of thy will], what betokeneth all this? And afterwards thou must counsel me how I shall guide me, and how I may win my

[1] wundeliche *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

hu ich ſcal me læden.
& hu ich mai biwinne:
kinedō minne.
of Hengeſt mineſ wiues fader:
þe ſwiðe me hæfð ihærmed.
Þa andſwarede Merlin:
þane kinge þe ſpac wið him.
King þu ært unwis:
& vnwiter a ræde.
þu fræineſt of þan draken:
þe þene dune makeden.
& whæt tacned heore fiht:
& heore feondliche gripē.
Heo tacneð kinges:
þa ſunde to cūmene.
& heore fiht & heore uare:
& heore uæi uolc.
Ah ȝif þu weore ſwa wis mō:
& swa witter a þoncke.
þat þu fræinedeſt me:
of feole þine forȝen.
of þire mucle kare:
þa þe if to cumene.
ich þe wolde ſuggen:
of forȝe þine.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ou ich ſal me leade.
and hou ich maý bi-winne: [c. 2.]
kinedom minne.
of Hengeſt mine wifueſ fader:
þat ſwiþe me haueþ hi-harmed.
Þo anſwerede Merlýn:
to þan king þat ſpac wiþ him.
King þou hart onwis:
and onwytti of reade.
þou axeſt of þan drakes:
þat þane dune makede.
and wat bi-tokeneþ hire fiht:
and hire grim reſes.
Hii bi-tokeneþ kinges:
þat ȝet beoþ to comene.

Ac ȝef þou were ſo wiſ man:
ſo ich wende þat þou were.
þanne þou woſt axi:
of þine mochele care.
and of þine wowe:
þat þe his to comene.

kingdom from Hengest, my wifes father, who hath harmed me greatly." Then answered Merlin to the king that spake with him: "King, thou art unwise, and foolish in counsel; thou askest of the dragons that made the din, and what 'betokened [betokeneth] their fight, and their fierce assaults? They betoken kings that [yet] are to come, 'and their fight, and their adventure, and their fated folk!' But if thou wert so wise *a* man, 'and so prudent in thought, that thou haddest inquired of me [as I weened that thou wert, then thou wouldest ask] of thy 'many sorrows, [great care, and] of thy 'great care [woe], that is to come to thee, 'I would say to thee of thy sorrow.'" Then 'quoth [said] Vortiger the king: "Dear friend Merlin,

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Vortiger.	Þa quaþ Vortig[9] þe king:	Þo ſaide Vortiger þe king:
	Leofue freond Merling.	Leoue freōd Merlẏn.
	fæie me of þan þinge:	ſai me of þan þinge:
	þe me to cumen ſonden.	þat me beoþ to comende.
	Bluðeliche quad[1] Mærlin:	Bloþeliche cwaþ Merlẏn[2]:
	baldere ſtefne.	
	ich þe wulle ſuggen:	ich þe wolle ſegge:
	ah æuere hit wule þe[3] reouwen.	ac euere hit wole þe reuwe.
	king king bi-ſiȝ þe:	king king bi-ſeh þe:
	forȝen þe biþ ȝeueðe.	forwe þe his ȝefue.
	of Coſtantines cunne:	of Conſtantines cunne:
	hiſ beꝛ þu aqualdeſt. [c. 2.]	his ſone þou acweldeſt.
	þu letteſt flæn Coſtanz:	þou letteſt flea Conſtance:
	þe wes king a þiſ lond.	þe king of þiſſe londe.
	þu letteſt þine Peohtes:	
	hine ladliche biſwiken.	
	þer uore þu ibideſt:	þar vore þou ibideſt:
	alre baluwene mæſt.	alre care meſt.
	Seoððen þu tuȝen uuenon þe:	Suþþe þou drohe to þe:
	uncuðe leoden.	vncouþe leode.
Sax[es.]	Saxes to lōde:	Saxes to londe:
	þer uore þu wurðeſt to ſcōde.	þar þou bideſt ſcōde.
	Nu beoð of Brutaine:	Nou beoþ of Bruttes:

say me of the things that are to come to me." "Blithely," quoth Merlin, 'with bold voice,' "I will say to thee; but ever it will thee rue. King, king, be-see thee (see to thyself), sorrow is to thee given of Constantines kin!—his son thou killedest; thou causedest Constance to be slain, 'who was [the] king 'in [of] this land; 'thou causedst thy Peohtes to betray (*or* destroy) him basely'; therefore thou shalt suffer 'sorrows [care] most of all! Afterwards thou drewest 'upon [to] thee foreign people, *the* Saxons to *this* land; therefore thou shalt 'be destroyed [suffer destruction]! Now are *the*

[1] quaðʔ

[2] *A line seems here wanting.*

[3] *Interlined, man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

beornes ariued.
hit his Aurilien & Vther:
nu þu ært þær of war.
heo cumeð to-mærȝen fuliwis:
i þif lond at Tottenæs.
ich do þe wel to witene:
mid ſeouen hundred ſcipene.
& nu heo inne fæ:
fæliеð biliue.
þu haueſt heom muchel uuel idon:
and nu þu moſt þat lað on-fon.
þu haueſt a ba halue:
bone þe þe þencheð.
þine ifan þe biuoren:
& þine ifeond bæften.
Ah flih flih þinne wæi:
& burh þine life.
& fleo þider þe þu fleo:
heo þe wulleð after teon.
Ambroſie Aurilien:
he hæued[1] æreſt þiſne kinedon[2].
ah he þurh atterne drench:
dæð ſcal iþolien.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

cnihtef ariued.
þat his Aurelie and Vther: *Auril[ie.] Vthe[r.]*
nou þou hart þar of iwar.
hii comeþ to-morwe foliwis: [f. 75ᵇ.c.1.]
at Dertemuþ in Totenas.
ich do þe wel to iwite:
mid ſceoue hundred ſipes.
[idon:
þou haueſt heom mochel harm
and nou þou moſt þat onder-fon.
for nou þine fon þe beoþ bi-vore:
and eke bi-hinde.
fleo woder þat þou fleo:
hii þeo wolleþ after teo.
And þe eldre broþer:
worþ king bi-vore þan oþer.
ac he þorh hatterne drench:
deaþ ſal þolie.

'barons [knights] of 'Britain [Britons] arrived; 'it [that] is, Aurelie and Uther,—now thou art thereof aware;—they shall come tomorrow, full truly, 'in this land at [at Dartmouth in] Totnes, I do thee well to wit, with seven hundred ships; 'and now they sail speedily in *the* sea.' Thou hast much 'evil [harm] done to them, and now thou must 'the harm [that] receive; 'thou hast on both sides bane that to thee shall seem'; [for now] thy foes [are] before thee, and 'thy enemies [eke] behind. 'But flee, flee thy way, and save thy life,—and' flee whither that thou fleest, they will pursue after thee! 'Ambrosie Aurelie he shall have first this kingdom [And the elder brother

[1] hæueð? *R.* kinedom

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ſeoððen ſcal Vther Pendragō :/
habben þeſne kinedom.
ah þi cun hine ſcal :/
mid attere aq̄llē.
ah ær he dæd[1] þolie :/
he ſcæl dune makien.
Vther scal habben ænne ſune :/
of Cornwaille he ſcal cumen.
þat beoð a wilde bar :/ [f.92b.c.1.]
iburſtled mid ſtele.
þe bar ſcal for-bærnen :/
hæhȝe þa burhȝes.
he ſcal alle þa ſwiken :/
ſwenien mid eiȝe.
he ſcal al þi riche cun :/
mid witen aquellen.
he bið ſwiðe oht mon :/
& aðele an þonke.
heonenæ into Rome :/
rixleð þeos ilke.
scal he alle his feond :/
fallen to grunde.
Soð ich habbe þe ifæid :/
ah nis þe na þe ſoftre.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ſuþþe ſal Vther Pendragun :/
habbe þiſne kinedom.
ac þi cun hine ſal :/
mid hatter acwelle.
ac her he deþ þolie :/
he ſal dune makie.
Vther ſal habbe one ſone :/
þat ſal vt of Cornwale come.
alſe hit were a wilde bor :/
ibruſtled mid ſtele.
þe bor ſal for-bearne :/
ſwiþe heȝe borewes.

hinene to Rome :/
ſolle rixlȳ his domes.
he ſal alle his ſon :/
falle to þan grunde.
Soþ ich habbe þe iſeid :/
ac nis þe noht þe ſohtere[2].

shall be king before the other]; but he through draught of poison shall suffer death. And afterwards shall Uther Pendragon have this kingdom; but thy kin shall kill him with poison; but ere he suffer death, he shall din (contest) make. Uther shall have a son, [out] of Cornwall 'he [that] shall come, 'that shall be [as it were] a wild boar, bristled with steel; the boar shall consume 'the [most] noble burghs; ' he shall destroy (*or* devour) all the traitors with authority; he shall kill with death all thy rich kindred; he shall be man most brave, and noble in thought'; hence ' in ' to Rome 'this same [his authority] shall rule; all his foes he shall fell to [the] ground. Sooth I have said

[1] deað?

[2] ſoftere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ah flih mid þine verde:	for wēde woder þou wende:
þine iuon þe cumeð to herede[1].	þine daȝes beoþ at þe ende.
Þa aſwac worden:	
Merlin þe wiſe.	
& þe king lette blawen:	
þreottene bemen.	
& forð mid his ferde:	Þe king mid his ferde:
feodliche[2] swiðe.	forþ wende ſwiþe.
Nes þer uorð rihtes:	Nas þar soþ riht:
bute uirſt of ane nihte.	bote forſt of on niht.
þat comen þa broðere:	þat comen þe broþers:
beien to-ſome[3].	beine to-gadere.
to ſæ ſtrōde ful iwis:	to ſéé ſtronde foliwis:
at Dertenemuðe i Totenas.	at Dertemouþe in Totenas. [c. 2.] [*To*]*ttenaſ.*
þis iherden Bruttes:	þis i-horde Bruttes:
& weoren bliðe ful iwis.	and weren bliþe foliwis.
heo droȝen ut of þan wuden:	hii droȝen vt of þe wodes:
& of þan wulderne.	and of þe wilderne.
bi ſixti & bi ſixti:	bi ſixti bi hundredes:
& bi ſeouen hundred.	
bi þrit[4] & bi þritti:	
& bi feole þuſend.	and bi mani þuſendeſ.
þa heo comen to-ſomne:	

to thee, but *it* is not to thee the softer;—'but flee with thine host, thy foes come to thee to *thy* court [for go whither thou goest, thy days are at the end]!" 'Then Merlin the wise ceased *his* words, and' the king 'caused thirteen trumpets to be blown, and' marched forth with his army 'exceeding' quickly. There was not 'forth-right [right sooth] but space of one night, that the brothers came, both together, to *the* sea-strand full truly, at Dartmouth in Totnes. *The* Britons heard this, and were full surely blithe; they drew *themselves* out of the woods, and *out* of the wilderness, by sixty, 'and by sixty, and' by 'seven hundred [hundreds], 'by thirty, and

[1] *At first written* hirede.
[2] feondliche?
[3] to-ſomne?
[4] þritti?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ful ſel hit heo þuhte.	
Þa broðerē to þiſſen ærde:	And[1] broþers to þiſ erþe:
brohten vnimete verde.	brohte moche ferde:
& her comen heom bi-uoren:	and her com heom bi-vore:
balde þas Bruttes.	mani bolde Bruttes.
vnimete uolc:	
al hit wræc þa wolde.	
þæ ær weoren ȝeond wudes:	þat hadde ȝam lang ihudde:
wunderliche to-dreued.	
þurh þene muchelne æie: [c. 2.]	for Hēgeſtes eye.
and þurh þe muclen ærmðe.	
& þurh þene mucle hærm:	
þa Hengeſt heom wrohte.	
& hafde alle heore hæfd-men:	
mid cniuen amurðerd.	
mid ſæxen to-ſnædðe[2]:	
ſnelle þe þeines.	
Bruttes heolden huſtīg:	And þo hii heolde ſpeche:
mid heȝe wisdome.	mid mochele wiſdome.
heo nomen Aurilien:	and nemen Aurelien:
þene ældre broder anan.	þan eldre broþer anon.
inne hæȝe huſtinge:	and to-fore alle þing:

by thirty,' and by many thousands,—'when they came together, full good it seemed to them!' [And] the brothers brought to this land *a* 'numerous [great] host; and here came before them 'these [many] bold Britons, *a* numerous folk, 'who would it all avenge,' that 'ere were over *the* woods wondrously scattered [had long hid them*selves*], 'through the mickle dread, and through the great misery, and through the mickle harm that Hengest wrought them [for dread of Hengest], 'and *who* had murdered all their chief men with knives, with sæxes cut in pieces the good thanes!' '*The* Britons [And then they] held 'husting [conference] with great wisdom; 'they [and] took anon Aurelie, the elder brother, 'in *the* noble husting, and raised [before all things made] him to *be* king. Then

[1] And þe?

[2] to-ſnæðde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and heouen hine to kinge.
þa weoren Bruttes :/
mid bliſſe auulled.
bliðe an mode :/
þæ ær weoren murne.
Comen þas tiðende :/
to Vortigerne þan kinge.
þat Aurilien wes icoren :/
ād to kinge iheouen.
þa wes Vortig⁹ wa :/
& æft him wes wurſe.
Vortiger uerde :/
ver to ane caſtle.
Genoire hæhte :/
hæh an ane munte.
Cloard hæhte þe munt :/
and Hærgin hahte þat lond.
on væſt Wæie :/
þe is a water hende.
Vortigernes men nomen :/
al þat heo neh comen.
heo nomen wepnen & mete :/
a moni are wiſe.
to þan caſtle heo brohtē :/
swa muchel ſwa heo rohten.
þat heo inoh hafden :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

makede hine to kinge.
þo weren Bruttes :/
ſwiþe bliþe foliwis.
Come þes tidinge :/
to Vortiger þan kinge.
þat Aurelie was ichoſe :/
and to kinge ihoue.
þo was him wel wo :/
and eft him was worſe.
Vortiger wende :/
for to one caſtle.
Genoẏre he hehte :/ *Genoire.*
heh vpon an hulle.
Gloarþ hehte þe hul :/
and þat lond Hergẏn. *Hargin.*
Vortigeres men nemen :/
al þat hii neh comen.
hii nemen wepne and mete :/
mani ane wiſe.
to þan caſtle hit brohte :

were *the* Britons 'filled with bliss, blithe in mood who ere were mournful [most blithe full truly]. These tidings came to Vortiger the king, that Aurelie was chosen and raised to *be* king. Then was 'Vortiger [he well] woe, and eft to him was worse! Vortiger proceeded far to a castle, 'named [it hight] Genoure, [up]on a high 'mount [hill]; Cloard hight the 'mount [hill], and Hergin 'hight' the land, 'near *the* Wye, that is a fair water (stream).' Vortigers men took all that they came nigh; they took weapons and meat, 'on' many a wise; to the castle 'they [it] brought 'as much as they cared for, *so* that they had enow', though it little helped *them*. Aurelie

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þeh hit lutel hulpe.
Aurilien & Vther:
weoren of Vortigerne war.
whær he wes uppen Cloward:
biclufed in caſtlen.
Heo letten blawē bemen:
bonnien heore uerde. [f. 93. c. 1.]
volc unimete:
of mōi ane londe.
ferden to Genoire:
þær læi Vortigerne.
King wes wiþ utē:
king wes wiþ innē.
cnihtes þer fuhten:
mid feōdliche ræfen.
æueræle god mō:
gurede hine feolfuen.
þa heo ifeȝen:
þat heo fiȝen næfden.
þa to wude wenden:
wunder muche uerde.
heo uelden þæne wude adun:
& droȝen to þan caſtle.
& fulden al þæ dic:
þe wes wunder ane deop.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þeh hit lute holpe.
Aurelie and Vther:
weren of Vortiger war.
þat he was in Gloarþ:
bi-tuned in an caſtel.

hii to Genoȳre wende:
war Vortiger alende. [f. 76. c. 1.]
King was wiþ ine:
king was wiþ houte.
cnihtef þar fohtē:
mid feondeliche refes.

And cnihtef a þan ende:
to þan wode wende.
hii fulde þane wode adun:
and ladde to þan caſtle.
and fulde al þan dich:
anon to þe toppe.

and Uther were aware of Vortiger, 'where [that] he was 'upon [in] 'Cloard, inclosed in [a] castle. They 'caused trumpets to be blown, their host to be assembled,—*a* numerous folk of many a land,—*they*' marched to Genoure, where Vortiger lay. *A* king was within, *a* king was without; knights there fought with fierce encounters; 'every good man made himself ready. When they saw, that they had not *the* victory,' 'then *a* wondrous great force [And *the* knights at the end] went to [the] wood; they felled the wood down, and drew to the castle, and filled all the dyke, 'that was wondrously deep [anon to the top. And] fire 'they' sent in, on every side, and called to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Feor[1] heo in ſende :/	And fur in ſende :/
on æuerælche ende.	in euereche ende.
& cleopeden to Vortiger :/	and cleopede to Vortiger :/
Nu þu ſcalt þe warmen þer.	Nou þou ſal þe wormie þer.
for þu ſloȝe Coſtanz :/	
þe wes king of þiſ lond.	
& seoððe Coſtantin his ſune :/	
nu iſ Aurilie icumen.	
& Vther his broðer :/	
þa þe balu ſendeð.	
þe wind wæht þat fur :/	þe wind wehte þat fur :/
þ hit wunderliche born.	þat hit wel barnde.
þe caſtel gon to bernē :/	
bures þer ſlælden[2].	
feollen þa hallen :/	
floȝen[3] to grunde.	
Ne mihten þer na cniht :/	Ne mihte þar non cniht :/
aȝeines þe fure makien ſiht.	aȝen þan fure makie ſiht.
þat fur eode ouer al :/	þat fur wende oueral :/
& barnde huſ & barnde wal.	and barnde cniht and barnd hal.
& þe king Vortig[9]ne :/	and þe king Vortigerne :/
þer inne he gon to berne.	þar in gan to bearne.
al hit for-ſwælde :/	al hit for-swelde :/
þat þer inne wunede.	þat þar ine wonede.

Vortiger: "Now thou shalt warm thee there, 'for thou slewest Constance, who was king of this land, and afterwards Constantine his son. Now is Aurelie come, and Uther his brother, who send thee bale!'" The wind wafted the fire, *so* that it burnt 'wonderfully [well]; 'the castle gan to burn, *the* chambers there were consumed; the halls fell to *the* ground.' Might no man there against the fire make fight (resist); the fire went over all, and burnt 'house [man], and burnt 'wall [hall]; and the king Vortiger therein 'he' gan to burn; all it was consumed that therein dwelt!

[1] Fur? [2] ſwælden? [3] folden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þus ændede þer :/	Þus endede þar :/
Deo gracias. mid muchele ærme Vortiger.	mid mochele wowe Vortiger.
þa hafde al þat lond :/	and Aurelie to hiſ hond :/
Aurilie an hiſ hōd.	nam al þis kine-lond.
Þer wes þe aðele eorl :/ [c.2.]	Þar was þe ſtrong eorl :/
Aldolf ihaten.	Aldolf ihote.
he wes of Glouceſtre :/	he was of Glouceſtre :/
cnihtē alre glæueſt.	cniht mid þan beſte.
þær Aurilie i þā ærde :/	þar riht Aurelie :/
makede hine ſtiwærd.	his ſtiward hine makede.
Þa hæfde Aurilien :/	
& Vther his brodrer[1].	
heore ifan auelde :/	
& weorē þer fore þe bliðere.	
Þiſ iherden Hengeſt :/	Þis ihorde Hengeſt :/
cnihten alre ſtrengeſt.	cniht alre falſeſt.
þa wes he auæred :/	
feondliche ſwide[2].	
He fuſde hiſ ferde :/	He hiȝede ſwiþe :/
& flæh touward Scotten.	and wende toward Scottes.
& Aurilie þe kīg :/	and Aurelie þe king :/
æfter him uerde an hiȝinge.	after verde an hiȝenge.
& Hengeſt þuhte þat he walde :/	

Thus ended there, with mickle 'harm [woe], Vortiger! 'Then [And] Aurelie 'had [took] all 'the land [this kingdom] in his hand. There was the strong earl, named Aldolf; he was of Gloucester, 'of all knights skilfullest [knight with the best]; 'there in the land [there-right] Aurelie made him [his] steward. 'Then had Aurelie, and Uther his brother, felled their foes, and were therefore the blither!' Hengest heard this, strongest of all knights [knight falsest of all]; 'then was he afraid exceeding greatly. He 'marched his host [hastened greatly], and 'fled [proceeded] toward *the* Scots; and Aurelie the king went after 'him' in haste. 'And Hengest thought that he

[1] broðer? [2] ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

mid[1] al his mon-uerde.
ȝif me on-ſohte him :
fleon in to Scotte.
þat he mihte mid wiȝele :
þanene atwinden.
ȝif he ne mihte i þan londe :
uor Aurilie at-ſtode[2].
Aurilie ferde uorð :
& droh his folc riht norð.
mid alle his imihte :
fulle feouen nihte.
Bruttes weoren balde :
& rehten ouer walde.
þa hafde Aurilien :
vnimete uerde.
he funde weſt lond :
leoden of-ſlæȝene.
chiriches fur-barde[3] :
Bruttes for-ſwæled.
þa ſæide Aurilie þe king :
Bruttene deorlīg.
ȝif ich mot ibiden :
þ. ich aȝæ ride.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

mid al his mihte : [c. 2.]
folle ſouenihte.
Bruttes weren bolde :
and rehten ouer wolde.
þo hafde Aurelie :
onimete verde.
he funde in weſt lond :
þe chnihtes iſlawe.
and þe chirches alle :
icaſt to þan grunde.
þo ſaide Aurelie þe king :
Bruttene deorlīg.

would, with all his army, if men pursued him, flee into Scotland, *so* that he might thence with guile escape, if he might not for Aurelie remain in the land. Aurelie marched forth, and led his host right north,' with all his might, full *a* se'nnight. *The* Britons were bold, and proceeded over *the* weald. Then had Aurelie *a* numerous force; he found [in] ravaged land, [the] people slain, [and all the] churches 'burnt [cast to the ground], ' *and the* Britons consumed.' Then said Aurelie the king, Britains darling: "If I might ' abide, that I should back ride; and *if the* Lord it will, who shaped

[1] *The last letter of* mid *is by second hand, sup. ras.*
[2] at-ſtonde?
[3] for-barnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& hit wulle drihte:	
þe scop þes daȝes lihte.	
þat ich mote mid iſunde:	ȝef ich mote mid iſunde:
biȝite mine ikunde.	bi-ȝete mine cunde.
chirchen ich wulle arære:	cherchef ich wolle a-rere:
& god ich wulle hærē.	and god ich wolle herie.
ich wulle alche cnihte: [f.93b.c.1.]	ich wolle eche cnihte:
ȝeuē his irihte.	ȝeuen his rihte.
& auer ælche beorne:	
þan ælden & þan ȝungē.	
ich wulle milden wurðen[1]:	
ȝif godd me wule ivnnæ:	
min æðel to biwinnen.	
To Hengeſte comen tidende:	To Hengeſt com tydinge:
of Aurilie þan kinge.	of Aurelie þan kinge.
	þat he brohte ferde:
	of onimete folke.
þa ſpac Hengeſt:	þo ſpac Hengeſt:
cnihtē alre ſwikeleſt.	and leorede his cnihtes.
Hærcneð nu mi men:	Hercneþ nou mine men:
monſcipe eou is ȝiueðe.	wat ich ou wolle cuþe.
her cumeð Aurilie:	her comeþ Aurelie and Vther:
& Vther his broðer eke.	
heo bringeð swiðe muchel folc:	

the day-light, that I might' in safety obtain my right (*or* country), churches I will arear, and God I will worship. I will give to each man his right, 'and to every person, the old and the young, I will be gracious, if God will grant to me my land to win!" Tidings came to Hengest of Aurelie the king, [that he brought *an* army of innumerable folk]. Then spake Hengest, 'most treacherous of all knights, [and instructed his knights]: "Hearken now, my men,—'honor to you is given [what I will make known to you],—here cometh Aurelie, and Uther 'eke, his brother; they bring very much

[1] *A line seems here wanting, and an attempt seems to have been made to insert* i *before* wurðen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ah alle heo beoð fæie.	and beie hii beoþ feaye.
For vnwis if þe king:	For onwis his þe king:
ſwa beoð his cnihtes.	
& a cnaue is his broðer:	ſo his his broþer:
þe an alſe þe oðer.	
þer fore maȝen Bruttes:	þar fore maȝen Bruttes:
beon muchele þe vnbaldur.	beo þe onbaldere.
þenne þat hæfd is unwræſt:	wan þat heued his onwreſt:
þe hælp[1] is þæ wurſe.	þe heop his þe worſe.
& wel ȝe hit maȝen imunen:	
þat ich wulle mæinen.	
betere beoð ure fifti:	and betere beoþ vre fifti:
þænne heore fif[2] hundred.	þane hire fif hūdred.
þat heo feole ſiðen:	þat hii fale ſiþe:
ifonded habbeoð.	habbeþ i-funde.
seoððen heo an londe:	
fōdeden leoden.	
For cuð hit if wide:	
of ure wiðer-deden.	
þ we beoð kempen:	
icud mid þan bezſten.	
We ſcullen aȝen heom ſtonden:	We ſolle aȝen heom ſtonde:
& driuen heom of londen.	and driuen of londe.
and walden þas riche:	and welde þeos riche:

folk,' 'but all [and both] they are fated! For the king is unwise, 'so are his knights, and' 'a knave [so] is his brother, 'the one as the other'; therefore may Britons be 'much' the un-bolder; when the head (leader) is bad, the heap (multitude) is the worse. And 'well ye may it remember, what I will say'; better are fifty of us, than of them five hundred,—that they many times have found, 'since they in land sought *the* people. For known it is wide, of our bold feats, that we are chosen warriors with the best!' We shall against them stand, and drive them from land, and possess this realm

[1] hæp *r*

[2] *Sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
after ure iwille.	after oure wille.
Þuſ bælde Hængeſt:	Þus þe ſwikele Hengeſt:
cnihten alre hændeſt.	
balde hiſ ferde:	baldede his cnihtes.
þer heo wes an felde.	
ah oðer weies hire[1] was idiht:	[c. 2.] ac oþer weyeſ hit was idiht:
ær com̄ ſeouen niht.	here come þe dai a ſoueniht. [f. 7 c. 1.
Forð comen þa tiðīde:	Com þe tidinge:
Aurilie. to Aurilie þan kinge.	to Aurelie þan kinge.
whær Hengeſt wunede:	war Hengeſt a-bod:
buuen are munede.	vpon ane munede.
Aurilien hafde to iuerē:	And Aurelie mid his ferde:
þritti þuſend rideren.	to him wende ſwiþe.
balðere[2] Brutten:	
þe heore beot makeden.	
& æc he hafde Waliſce:	
wunder ane monie.	
þa lette he his cnihtes:	
dæies & nihtes.	
æuere beon iwepned:	
alſe heo to wiȝe ſcolden.	
for auere he care hafde:	
of heðene uolke.	
þa iherde Hengeſt:	An þat ihorde Hengeſt:

after our will." Thus 'bold [the traitorous] Hengest, 'fairest of all knights,' emboldened his 'host [knights], 'where he was in field,' but otherwise it was disposed ere came [the day a] se'nnight. 'Forth' came the tidings to Aurelie the king, where Hengest abode upon a mount. 'Aurelie had for companions thirty thousand riders, bold Britons, who made their threat; and eke he had Welsh, wondrously many. Then caused he his knights to be ever weaponed, day and night, as *if* they should *go* to battle; for ever he had care of *the* heathen folk. [And Aurelie with his host marched quickly to*wards*

[1] hit?

[2] baldere?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat Aurilien wes on uaſt.	þat Aurelie was aneweſt.
nom he hiſ ferde:	nam he his ferde:
& fuſde him to-ȝaines.	and wende him to-ȝenes.
Þa wes Aurilie wær:	Þo was Aurelie war:
þat Hengeſt wolde cumē þær.	þat Hengeſt wolde come þar.
he uærde in ane velde:	he wende in one felde:
wel iwepned under ſcelde.	wel iwepnid onder ſealde.
nom he forð rihtes:	
ten þuſend cnihtes.	
þa weoren bezſt iboren:	
& of hiſ ferde coren.	
& ſetten heom a þan felde:	
auoten under ſcelde.	
Ten þuſend Waliſce:	Ten þuſend Walſe:
he to wude ſende.	he to wode ſende.
ten þuſend Scottes:	ten þuſend Scotteſ:
he ſende bi-halues.	he ſende bi-halues.
þe hæðene to imete:	þe heaþene to mete:
bi ſtiȝen & by ſtraten.	bi weieſ and bi ſtrede.
him ſeolf he nom hiſ eorles:	him ſeolf he nam his eorles:
& his aðele kempes.	and his ſtrónge cnihteſ.
& hiſ holdeſte men:	
þa he hæfde an londe.	
& makede his ſceld-trume:	and makede one ſoltrome:
ſwulc hit weoren an hær wude.	aſe hit were a wilde wode.

him.] 'When [And] Hengest heard [that,] that Aurelie was near, he took his army, and marched against him. When Aurelie was aware that Hengest would come there, he went into a field, well weaponed under shield; 'he took forth-right ten thousand knights, that were *the* best born and chosen of his force, and set them in the field, on foot under shield.' Ten thousand Welsh he sent to *the* wood; ten thousand Scots he sent aside, to meet the heathens by ways and by streets; himself he took his earls and his 'good warriors [strong knights], 'and his faithfullest men, that he had in land,' and made 'his [a] shield-troop, as it were a wild wood; five thousand there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

fif þuſend þer riden:
þa ſculden al þiſ folc biwiten.
Aldolf. Þa cleopede[1] Aldolf:
eorl of Glouceſtre.
ȝif hit me on drihte:
þe alle domes waldeð. [f. 94. c. 1.]
þat ich mote ibide:
þat Hængeſt cume riden.
þa if a þiſſen londe:
swa longe atſtōde.
& biſwac mine leofe freondes:
mid longe hif fæxes.
biſidē Amberefburi:
mid ærmliche witē.
Ah ȝif ich mihte of þan eorlē:
þ aðel me bi-winnen.
þenne mihte ich ſuggen:
soð quides mine.
þ me hafde godd ſeolf:
godes iunnen.
ȝif ich mine ifan:
fallen to grunde anan.
& wræken mi deore cun:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

fif þouſend þar ride:
þat folde þis folk wel bi-wite.
Þo ſaide Aldolf:
eorl of Glouceſtre.
ȝif hit wole drihte:
þat al domes weldeþ.
þat ich mai enȳ fiht:
of Hengeſt habbe.
he folde bitere a-bugge:
al his ſtronge gile.

rode, who should 'all' this folk [well] defend. Then 'called [said] Aldolf, carl of Gloucester, "If *the* Lord, that ruleth all dooms, 'grant it *to* me [will it], that I 'might abide, that Hengest should come riding, [may have any fight with Hengest, he should *the* better buy (atone for) all his strong guile!"] 'who has in this land so long remained, and betrayed (*or* destroyed) my dear friends with his long sæxes beside Ambresbury, with miserable death! But if I might of the earl win to me the country; then might I say my sooth words, that God *him*self had granted good to me, if I might fell my foes to ground anon, and avenge my dear kindred, whom they have laid adown!"

[1] *The last syllable* de *is interlined, but by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þat heo habbeoð ilæid adū.
Vn-neæðe wes þif ſpel:
iſæid to þā ende.
þa ifeȝen heo Hængeſt:
haldē ouer dune.
Mid vnimete ferdē:
feondliche heo fuſden.
to-ſomne heo comen:
& feondliche heo floȝen.
þer þa ræȝe men:
to-gæderen heom ræſden.
helmes gunnen gullen:
cnihtes þer feollen.
ſtel eode wiðð þā ban:
balu þer wes riue.
urnen inne ſtrete:
ſtremes of blode.
faȝedē þa feldes:
& þ graſ falewede.
þa ifeh Hængeſt:
þ hif help trukede.
þa hald he fram fæhte:
& bi-halues flæh.
& his folc after:
fuſde bi-liue.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Onneþe waſ þat word:
iſaid to þan ende.
þat hine hii iſehȝe:
holde ouer dune.
mid onimete ferde:
feondliche he fuſde.
To-gadere ſone hii come:
and faſteliche hii floȝe.

healmes þar gonne ȝelle: [c. 2.]
cnihtes þar fulle.

vrne in þan waȝef:
ſtremes of blode.

þo ifeh Hengeſt:
þat his healp trokede.
þo fleah he ſwiþe:
and his folk after.

Scarcely was 'this speech [the word] said to the end, that they saw 'Hengest [him] approach over *the* down. With *a* numerous host 'they [he] fiercely marched; together [soon] they came, and terribly they slew; 'there the stern men together rushed them*selves*,' helms [there] gan resound, knights there fell; 'steel went against the bones, mischief there was rife'; streams of blood flowed in [the] ways; 'the fields were dyed, and the grass changed color!' When Hengest saw that his help failed *him*, then 'withdrew [fled] he 'from *the* fight [quickly], 'and fled aside, and his folk after 'speedily moved. The christians pursued after, and laid on them, and called Christ,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þa cistine liðen after:	
& heom on læidē.	
& cleopeden crist godes sone:	
beō heom a fultume.	
& þe heðene leoden:	
æc lude cleopeden.	
Teruagant. Ure godd Tꝰuagāt:	
whi trukest þu us an hond.	
þa Hēgest isæh:	
þa hæðene ibuȝene.	
& þa cristine men:	
cumen heom an ufene. [c. 2.]	
þa fleh Hengest[1] þurh & þurh:	
þat he com to Kunigges-burh.	
i þare burh he wende:	
burh to brukene[2].	
& þe king Aurilien:	and Aurelie him siwede forþ:
aftꝰ wende anan.	
& clepede to his leoden:	
ludere stæuene.	
Ærneð æuere vorð & vorð:	
Hengest is ifaren norð.	
& heo him after buȝen:	
þat heo to burhȝe comen.	forte hii come to Coninef-borh.

Gods son, to be to them in aid; and the heathen people also called loud, "Our God Tervagant, why failest thou us now?" When Hengest saw the heathens recede, and the christian men come upon them, then fled Hengest through and through, until he came to Coningsburgh; in the burgh he went, safety to obtain.' And 'the king' Aurelie went after *him* anon [followed him forth], 'and called to his people with loud voice: "Run ever forth and forth! Hengest is gone north*wards*!" And they pursued after him' until they came to '*the* burgh [Coningsburgh]. When Hengest and his son saw

[1] *R.* Hengest.

[2] breokene *man pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa ifæh Hēgeſt & his ſune:
al þa uerde heom after cumen.
Þa fæide Hengeſt:
cnihten alre wraðeſt.
Nulle ich na mare fleon:
ah nu ich wulle fihten.
& mi ſune Octa:
& hiſ wed-broðer Ebiſſa.
& al mi mon-uerde:
ſturieð couwer wepnen.
& fare we heom to-ȝænes:
& makien feond ſlæhtes.
& ȝif we hom ne falleð:
þænne beon we fæic.
ilæid on felde:
& freōde bidælde.
Hengeſt bah a þene wald:
& bilæfde al hiſ teld.
& makede his ſceld-trume:
al of his hæðene gumen.
Þa com Aurilie þe king:
& moni þuſend mid him.
and bigūnen þer oðer fæht:
þe wes feondliche ſtærc.
þer wes moni græt dunt:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þo iſch Hengeſt and his ſone:
þe ferde after ȝeom come.
Þo ſaide Hengeſt:
cniht alre wroþeſt.
Nelle ich na more fleon:
ac nou ich wolle fihte.
and min ſone Octa:
and his wedbroþer Ebÿſſa.
And alle mine cnihtes:
ſtorieþ ȝoure wepne.
and wende we heom to-ȝeanes:
and make we ſtronge ſleahteſ.
Hii wende in to þan felde:
and lete ſtonde hire teldeſ.
and makede hire ſultrome:
of his heaþene gomes.
Þar com Aurelie þe king:
and mani þouſend mid him.
and bi-gonne þare to fihte:
mid folle ȝorneſte.

'all' the host come after them, then said Hengest, of all knights wrathest, "Will I no more flee, but now I will fight, and my son Octa, and his wed-brother Ebissa! And all my 'army [knights], stir *ye* your weapons, and march we against them, and make [we] strong slaughter! 'And if we fell them not, then be we dead, laid on *the* field, and deprived of friends!'" 'Hengest [They] marched 'on [into] the 'weald [field], and 'left all his [let stand their] tents; and made 'his [their] shield-troop 'all' of his heathen men. Then came Aurelie the king, and many thousands with him, and began there '*an*other [to] fight, 'that was exceeding strong [in full earnest];

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
idæld i þan compe.	
þer weoren þa criſtine :/	þare weren þe criſtene :/
wel neh ouer-cumene.	wel neh ouer-come.
þa comen þer uaren :/	þo com þar to helpe :/
fif þuſ̄d rideren.	fif þuſend ridares.
þa Aurilie hafde :/	
an horſe to fihten.	
heo ſmiten a þan hæðene :/	and ſmite amāg þan heaþene :/
þ heo adun helden.	þat hii to grūde folle.
þer wes feht swiðe ſtor :/	
eorneſt ful ſturne.	
I þan fæhte com the eorl :/	In þan fihte com þe eorl :/
Aldolf of Gloucecre[1]. [f.94ᵇ.c.1.]	Aldolf ihote.
& ifunde Hengeſt :/	and ifunde Hengeſt :/
cnihten for-cuððeſt.	cnihte forcouþeſt.
whar he feōdliche faht :/	war he ȝeorne faht :/
& þa criſtine feolde.	and þe criſtene fulde. [f.77.c.1.]
Aldolf his gode ſweord adroh :/	Aldolf his sweord droh :/
& uppen Hengeſt ſloh. [uoren :/	and toward Hengeſt he ſmot. [vore :/
& Hengeſt warp þene ſceld bi-	and Hengeſt warp þane ſceald bi-
& ælles weoren hiſ lif for-loren.	and helles he hadde be for-lore.
& Aldolf ſmat i þene ſceld :/	and Aldolf ſmot in þane ſceald :/
þat he atwa to-ſcænde.	þat he atwo to-feolde.

'there was many great stroke dealt in the combat!' There were the christians well nigh overcome. Then 'approached there [came there to help] five thousand riders, 'that Aurelie had on horse to fight'; 'they [and] smote 'on [among] the heathens, *so* that they 'down [to ground] fell; 'there was fight most strong, combat full stern!' In the fight came the earl Aldolf 'of Gloucester [named], and found Hengest, wickedest of knights, where he fought fiercely, and felled the christians. Aldolf drew his 'good' sword, and 'upon [toward] Hengest [he] smote; and Hengest cast the shield before *him*, and else 'were his life [had he been] destroyed; and Aldolf smote on the shield, *so* that it was shivered in two. And

[1] *R.* Gloucestre.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& Hengeſt hī leop to:	and Hengeſt him leop to:
swulc hit a liun weore.	aſe hit a lyon were.
& ſmat an Aldolfes helm:	and ſmot vp Aldolf his helm:
þ he atwa to-feol.	þat he atwo to-ſcende.
þa heowen heo mid ſweorde:	
þa ſwipen weorē grimme.	
fur flæh of ſtele:	
ofte & wel ilome.	
Vnder are ſtunde:	Vnder one ſtūde:
þa leop Aldolf to [grunde].	þo leop Aldolf to grunde.
& iſæh him Gorlois:	and iſeh bi him Gorloys:
þat wæs a kene gūe ful iwis.	þat was a kene cniht foliwis.
of Cornwale he wes eorl:	eorl of Cornwale:
he wes widene cuð.	wel wide icnowe.
þa wes þæ beorn Aldolf:	þo was Aldolf:
muchele þe balder.	moche þe boldere.
& hæf hæhȝe his sweord:	and heȝe hefde his ſweorde:
& lette hit adun ſwippen.	and hit adū swipte.
& ſmat Hengeſt a þan hond:	and ſmot Hengeſt a þan hond:
þ he forlette his brond.	þat he for-let his gode bronde.
&[1] hiȝinge hine igrap:	and an hiȝenge hine i-grop:
mid grimme his læchen.	
bi þere burne hode:	bi þan brunie hode:

Hengest leapt to him, as *if* it were a lion, and smote [up]on 'Aldolfs [Aldolf hiſ] helm, *so* that it parted in two. 'Then hewed they with swords,—the strokes were grim,—fire flew from *the* steel, oft and well frequent!' After a time, then leapt Aldolf to *the* ground, and saw [by] him Gorlois, who was a keen 'man [knight] full truly; of Cornwall 'he was' earl, 'he was [well] widely known. Then was 'the baron' Aldolf much the bolder, and heaved high his sword, and 'let it down swing [swung it down], and smote Hengest on the hand, *so* that he let go his [good] brand; and in haste grasped him, 'with his grim looks,' by the cuirasses hood 'that was

[1] And an?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þa wes an hif hafde.
& mid muchelere ſtrengðe:
hine adun ſwipte.
and seoððe he hine up bræid:
swulc he hine to-breken wolde.
& mid ærmen hine biſprædde:
& forð hine lædde.
Nu wes Hengeſt inumen:
þurh Aldolf þene æhte gume.
Þæ cleope Aldolf:
þene eorl of Glouceſtre. [c. 2.]
Hengeſt nº þe noht ſwa murie:
swa þe wes bi Ambreſburie.
þer þu þa fæxef droȝen:
and Bruttes of-floȝen.
mid mid[2] muchele ſwike-dome:
þu mi cun floȝe.
Nu þu ſcalt læn leoſen:
& loſie þine freonden.
mid reoliche witen:
an worlde forwurðen.
Hengeſt eode ſtille:
ne iſæh he help nenne.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and mid mochele ſtrengþe:
hine adun ſwipte.
and ſuþþe hine vp bræid:
aſe he hine breke wolde.
and his harmes ſpradde:
and forþ mid him ladde.
Nou was Hengeſt inome:
þorh Hengeſt[1] þan hohte gome.
þo ſaide Aldolf:
eorl of Glouceſtre.
Hengeſt niſ þe noht ſo muri:
aſe þe was wile bi Amberefbury.
þar þou þe ſeaxef droȝe: [c. 2.]
and min cun of-floȝe.

Hengeſt eode ſtille:
ne likede noht his wille.

on his head,' and with great strength struck him down; and then 'he' him up drew, as *if* he would crush him, and 'with [his] arms 'embraced him [spread], and forth [with] him led. Now was Hengest taken, through Aldolf, the brave man! Then 'called [said] Aldolf, 'the' earl of Gloucester: "Hengest, *it* is not so merry for thee *now* as *it* was [whilom] by Ambresbury, where thou drewest the sæxes, and slew '*the* Britons [my kindred], 'with much treachery thou slewest my kindred! Now thou shalt pay retribution, and lose thy friends; with cruel death perish in *the* world!'" Hengest proceeded still (without speaking); 'he saw no help; [his will

[1] *R.* Aldolf.

[2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Aldolf hine ladde :/
to hif leod-kinge.
& grætte þene leod-kīg :/
mid leofliche worden.
Hail feo þu Aurilien :/
aðeleȝ cunnes.
her ich bringe þe biuoren :/
þe wes þines cunnes bone.
Hengeſt þene heðene :/
þe hærm uf hafueð iuræinned.
godd hit me iuðe :/
þat ich hine igripen habben.
Nu ich hine ȝiue þe :/
uor monne leofueſt ært þu me.
& þet[1] þine hired-childeren :/
pleien mid þiſſē hunde.
scotien mid heore flā :/
& his cun ſcenden anan.
Þa andſwarede þe king :/
quicliche ſteuene.
Edi ſeo þu Aldolf :/
eorlene aðeleſt.
þu ært me leof al ſwa mi lif :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and Aldolf hine laddę :/
to his leod-kinge.
an ſaide to þan kinge :/
þeof ilke wordes.

Her ich þe bringe :/
þine cunnes bane.
Hengeſt þane heaþene :/
10 þat houre cun acwelde.

Nou ich hine ȝeue þe :/
for manne leoueſt art þou me.
and let þine hiredmen :/
pleoẏe mid þā hunde.

Þo anſwerede þe king :/
20 cwickere ſtemne.
Wel worþe þe Aldolf :/
eorl alre kenneſt.
þou art me leof ſo mi lif.

liked *it* not, and] Aldolf led him tó his sovereign, and greeted the sovereign with loving [said to the king these same] words: "'Hail be thou, Aurelie, of noble race!' Here I bring 'before' thee Hengest, the heathen, 'who was' thy kindreds bane, who hath sought to us harm [killed our kin]; 'God granted it to me, that I have him grasped!' Now I give him to thee, for dearest of men art thou to me; and let thy attendants play with this [the] hound; 'shoot with their arrows, and his race anon destroy!'" Then answered the king with quick voice: "'Blessed be thou [Well worth thee], Aldolf, noblest [keenest] of [all] earls! Thou art to

[1] let?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
leoden þu ſcalt beon alder.	leode þou ſalt beon louerd.
þer me nom Hengeſt:	þar me nam Hengeſt:
and þer me bond Hengeſt.	þar me bond Hēgeſt.
þer weſ þa Hengeſt:	
cnihten alre ȝeomereſt.	
þis feht wes ouer-cumē:	þis fiht was ouer-come:
& þa hæðene fluȝen.	and þe heaþene floȝe.
þa iſeh Octa:	þo iſeh Octa:
þat hiſ fader wes ful wa.	þat his fader was wel wo.
& Ebiſſa his wed-broðer: [f.95.c.1.]	and Ebỳſſa his wedbroþer:
buȝeȝen heom to-gadere. 11	bouwed heom to-gadere.
& fluȝen in to Eouuerwic:	and floȝen into Euerwich:
mid ærmðen inoȝe.	and bi-tunde ȝam faſte.
& greiðeden walles:	
to-halden þa halles.	
Summe þa hæðene:	Somme þe heaþene:
to þan wude iwenden.	to þan wode wende.
þær þ ganninde folc:	þar þat going folk:
læiden heom to grunde.	laide heom to grunde.
þa wes Aurilian þe king: 20	þo was Aurelie þe king:
iquemed wel þurh alle þing.	icwemid þorh alle þing.
he wende in to Cunīges-burh:	he wende to Conines-borh:
mid his driht folke.	mid alle his folke.
& þankede drihten:	

me dear as my life, thou shalt be 'chief [lord] of people!" There men took Hengest, 'and' there men bound Hengest; 'there was then Hengest of all knights most wretched!' This fight was overcome, and the heathens fled. Then saw Octa, that his father was 'full [well] woe; and *with* Ebissa, his wed-brother, joined them together, and fled into York, 'with harm enow [and inclosed them fast], 'and made ready *the* walls, *and* pulled down the halls.' Some of the heathens went to the wood, where the folk on foot laid them to ground. Then was Aurelie the king pleased 'well' through all things; he proceeded 'in'to Coningsburgh, with [all] his folk, 'and thanked *the* Lord for such might.' Three days and three nights the king 'dwelt

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
swulchere milīten.	
þreo dæies & þreo niht:	þreo daȝes and þreo niht:
þe king wunede þar riht.	þe king was þare forþ riht.
to lechinien þa wunden:	to lechnie þe wūdef:
of leofenen hif cnihtē.	of leoue mine cnihtes. [f. 77b. c. 1.]
& baðien on burȝe:	
heore wærie ban.	
þa þe þridde dæi com:	þo þe þridde dai com:
& þat folc hafde imaked non.	and þat folk hadde imaked non.
þa lette þe king blawen:	þo lette þe king cleopie:
& beonnede his eorles.	alle his heorles.
þa heo comen to hufting:	
to Aurilie þan kinge.	
þa heo to-gadere comen:	
þe king heom axede fone.	
whæt heo him radde:	
þ his richemen weoren.	
a wulchere witen:	forte wite in woche[1] wife:
Hengeft fcolde for-wurðen.	Hengeft folde deie.
& hu he mihte bezft wreokē:	
hif leofuefte freondes.	
þe an feft Amberes-buri:	
leien bi-buride.	
¶ þa ftod up Ældad:	þo ftod vp Aldodus: *Aldadus.*

[was] there [forth]-right, to heal the wounds of 'his [my] dear knights, 'and rest in *the* burgh their weary bones.' When the third day came, and the folk had made noon (?), then caused the king '*the trumpets* to blow, and summoned [to be called all] his earls, 'that they should come to husting, to Aurelie the king. When they came together, the king asked them soon, what they would counsel him, who were his rich men,' 'by what death [for to know in what wise] Hengest should die, 'and how he might best avenge his dearest friends, who lay buried near Ambresbury.'

[1] *Written at first* on woche on woche in woche, *but the superfluous words expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& wiþ þene king he ſpac þus.	
to-wardeſ gode he was god:	
he wes an hali biſcop.	þat was an holy biſſop.
Aldolf eorles broþer:	
neſde he nenne oþer.	
Lauerd king luſt nu me:	and ſeide king hercne me:
what ic wullen tellen þe. [c. 2.]	wat ich wolle telle þe.
ich wulle makiē þene dom:	ich wolle ȝefue þane dom:
hu he ſcal beō fordō.	ou he ſal beo for-don.
For he iſ on leode:	
monnen us laþeſt.	
& haued ure kun of-ſlæȝen:	
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	
and he iſ an hæþene hund:	
helle he ſcal iſechen.	
þer he ſcal ſinke:	
for hiſ ſwikedome.	
Lauerd kīg hærcne me:	
wat ich þe wulle tællen.	
A king wes in Jeruſalē:	A king was in Jeruſalem:
Saul. Saul wes ihaten.	Saul was i-hote.
þe wes in hæþeneſſe:	and in heaþenniſſe:
king of muchele mæhte.	was a king of mochele mihte.
Agag. Agag wes ihaten:	Agag was i-hote:

Then stood up Ældadus, 'and with the king he spake thus;—towards God he was good,' 'he [who] was a holy bishop, 'Aldolf *the* earls brother, he had no other,'—[and said:] 'Lord' king, 'listen now [hearken] to me, what I will thee tell. I will 'make [give] the sentence, how he shall be put to death. 'For he is most hateful of men to us in *the* world, and hath slain our kindred, and deprived of life-day; and he is a heathen hound—hell he shall seek; there he shall sink for his treachery! Lord king, hearken to me, what I thee will tell.' A king was in Jerusalem, *who* was named Saul; and in heathendom was [a] king of mickle might, *who* was named Agag,—Jerusalem he hated,—he was king of the Amalech,—the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Jerim he hatede.	Jeruſalem he hatede.
he wes king of þe Amalæh:	
þe wurſe him wes ful nieh.	
auere he hatede Jeruſalem:	
mid hærmen þan meſten.	
nolde he neouere heom ȝiuen grið:	nolde he neuere ȝef ham griþ:
ah auere he heom ſtod wið.	ac euere he faht heom wiþ.
he heom barde he heom ſloh:	
he dude heom forȝen[1] inoh.	
Hit ilomp in ane time:	
þat þe ſunne gon to ſcine.	
þa ſat Agag þe king:	
inne hif hæh fættele.	
meinde hif fæie blod:	
& muneȝede hine to fuſen.	
He cleopede his cnihtes:	
anan uorð rihtes.	
Swiðe to eouwer ſteden:	
& forð we ſcullē riden.	
we ſculleð bærnen & ſlæn:	
al ibuten Jerim.	
Forð wende þe king:	
& muche ferde mid him.	
Þ lond heo gunne þurh-ærnen:	
& þa tunes fur-bernen[2].	

Worse was full nigh to him! Ever he hated Jerusalem with harm the most'; never would he give them peace, but ever he 'withstood [fought with] them; 'he burnt them, he slew them, he did them sorrow enow! It fell on a time that the sun gan to shine; then sate Agag the king on his high chair; his fated blood was troubled, and urged him to march. He called his knights anon forth-right: "Quick to your steeds! and forth we shall ride; we shall burn and slay all about Jerusalem!" Forth went the king, and *a* great host with him; the land they gan through-run, and the

[1] foȝen *pr. m.* [2] for-bernen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þ iſeȝē þa men :	þis iſehȝe þe men :
þe wuneden inne Jeruſalem.	þat wonede in Jeruſalem.
& heo heom to-ȝeines : [f.95b.c.1.]	and hii him to-ȝenes :
cnihtes & ſweines.	cnihteſ and ſweines.
& fuhten wiþ þene king :	
& mid fæhte hine ouer-comen.	
& al hiſ folc floȝen :	and þane king nemen :
& Agag heo king nomē.	and hiſ folk flo̅ȝen.
& ſwa heo mid him comē :	
to Saul þan̅ kinge.	
þa wes Saul þe king :	þo was Saul þe king :
bliþe þurh alle þing.	bliþe þorh alle þing.
þe king axeden ræd :	þe [king] axede read :
at hiſ riche a-nan.	of riche hiſ cnihtes.
whæðer he mihte hime[1] bet don :	woche manere þeos king :
oðer flæn oðer an-hon.	mihte for-worþi.
[Sam]uel. þa leop up Samuel :	þo leop Samuel :
a witiȝe of Iſrael.	a witty of Isrł.
he wes swiðe hali mon :	
hæh·touward drihtē.	
nuſte na mon i þan dæȝen :	nuſte me in þan daȝe :
ſwa heh mon an godes laȝen.	non ſoch of godeſ lawe.

towns to consume.' The men saw 'that [this] who dwelt in Jerusalem; and they *advanced* against 'them [him], knights and swains, 'and fought with the king, and with fight him overcame,' and slew 'all' his folk, and 'Agag' [the] king 'they' took; 'and so they with him came to Saul the king.' Then was Saul the king blithe through all things! The king asked counsel 'at [of] his rich [knights] 'anon,' 'which he might *the* better do to him, either slay or up hang [in what manner this king might perish]. Then leapt up Samuel, a prophet of Israel;—'he was *a* man exceeding holy, high toward *the* Lord'; 'no man knew [men knew not] in those days 'man so high in [none such of] Gods law. Samuel took Agag the king,

[1] him?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Samuel nom Agag þene king:	Samuel nam Agag þane king:
& lædde hine a þan cheping.	and ladde hine in þan chipinge.
& lette hine ſwiðe ſterke:	and lette hine faſte:
to ane ſtake binde.	to one ſtocke bynde.
& nom mid hiſ riht hond:	and nam mid his riht hond: [c. 2.]
ænne dure-wurðe brond.	one ſtelene brond.
& þuſ cleopede him on:	and þus ſaide him ton[1]:
Samuel þe godeſ[2] mon.	Samuel þe gode mon.
Þu hattes Agag þe king:	
nu þu ært an ærmīg.	
nu þu ſcalt fon þat læn:	Nou þou ſalt abugge:
Þ þu for-ferdeſt Jeruſalem.	þine luþer deades.
þat þu haueſt þaſ hæȝe burh:	
ſwa ſwiðe for-worht.	
& monienne godne mon iflæȝen:	
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	
ſwa ich ibide are:	
ne ſcalt þu nauer maꝛ̄.	
Samuel Þ ſweord an-hof:	þat ſwerd he vp heof:
& hærdeliche adun ſloh.	and þat heued of-swipte.
& al to-ſwadde þene king:	and al to-ſcende þane king:
in Jeruſalem[3] chepping.	in Jeruſalem his cheping.
& þa ſtucchen tarueden:	and þe ſticches toruede:

and led him in the market-place, and caused him 'most' fast to a stake to be bound; and took with his right hand a 'precious [steel] brand; and thus 'called [said] to him Samuel, the good man: "'Thou hightest Agag the king, now thou art in sorrow!' Now thou shalt 'receive the retribution *for* that thou destroyedest Jerusalem, *for* that thou hast this noble burgh so greatly injured, and many a good man slain, and deprived of life-day [buy *dear* (pay *or* suffer for) thy wicked deeds]! 'As I hope for mercy, shalt thou *do so* no more.'" 'Samuel [He] heaved up the sword, and 'strongly down struck [the head off smote], and cut the king all in pieces in 'Jerusalems [Jerusalem his] market, and threw the

[1] to?

[2] gode?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

wide ȝeond þa ſtraten. [c.2.]
Þuſ tok Samuel on:
and swa þu aȝeſt Hengeſt don.
Þiſ iherde Aldolf:
þe eorl of Glocet⁹e.
touward Hengeſt he leop:
swulc hit a liun weore.
and igrap hine bi þan toppe:
& hine æfter him halede.
& landde[1] hine þurh & þurh:
& þurh ut Cunīges-burh.
& wiδ uten þere burhȝe:
he hine lette binden.
Aldolf hiſ ſwored adroh:
& Hengeſtes hafd of-floh.
& þe king hine nom forδ rihtes:
for he wes ſwa oht cniht.
& læide hine in eorδe:
after heδene laȝen.
& bad for þere ſæule:
þ̄ hiī neuere fæl neore.
& nu Aurilie þe king:
lette beode huſtīg.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

oueral þan ſtrede.
Þus toc Samuel an:
and ſo þou ſalt Hengeſt don.
Þis hi-horde Aldolf:
þe biſſop his broþer.
and toward Hengeſt leop:
aſe hit a lẏon were.
and grop hine bi þan toppe:
and after him hine halede.
and droh hine þorh and þorh:
al Coninef-borh.
and wiþ houte þe borh:
he hine lette bẏnde.
Aldolf his sweord droh:
and Hengeſtes heued of-floþ.
and þe king forþriht:
for he was ſo god cniht.
leide hine in eorþe:
after heaþene lawe.

And to[2] Aurelie þe king:
wende forþ an hiȝenge.

pieces 'wide over [over all] the streets. Thus Samuel took-on (acted), and so 'oughtest [shalt] thou do to Hengest." Aldolf heard this, the 'earl of Gloucester; [bishop his brother, and] toward Hengest 'he' leapt, as *if* it were a lion, and grasped him by the head, and after him hauled him, and drew him through and through, 'and throughout [all] Coningsburgh; and without the burgh he caused him to be bound. Aldolf drew his sword, and smote off Hengests head; and the king 'took him' forth-right, because he was so 'brave [good] *a* knight, 'and' laid him in earth, after *the* heathen law, 'and prayed for the soul, that it never were happy.' And now Aurelie the king 'caused *a* husting to be summoned [went forth in haste], 'and

[1] ladde?

[2] þo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& lætte blawen bemen:	
& bonnien hiſ ferde.	
folc þer wes ſellic:	þar was folk ſellich:
& ferden riht to Euerwic.	and wende forþ to Euerwich.
& bicluſdē þer wiþ innen:	and bi-cluſede þare ine:
Octa mid hiſ mōnen.	Octa wiþ his manne.
þe king lette deluen ænne dich:	þe king lette dealue one dich:
al abuten Eouerwic.	al a-boute Euerwich.
þat ne mihte þer na man:	þat ne mihte þar no man:
neoðer ute no igan[1].	noþer vt ne in gon.
Þæt iſæh Octa:	þat iſeh Octa:
þer fore him wes wa.	þar vore him was fol wo.
& hiſ hæðene folc:	
þe he hafde an burȝe.	
heo nomen heom to ræde:	
what heo don mæhten.	
& þuſ ſpac Octa:	and ſeide to his i-veres: [f. 78. c. 1.]
wiþ his iuere Ebiſſa.	þat þar ine mid him were.
No[2] ich habben me biþoht:	Ich habbe me nou bi-þoht:
wht[3] ich don wulle.	wat ich don wolle.
Ich and mine cnihtes:	
ſcullen forð rihtes.	
in ure bare brechē:	gon we ſolle alle:

caused trumpets to be blown, and his army to assemble,'—there was wondrous (numerous) folk,—and marched 'right [forth] to York, and inclosed Octa with his men 'there' within. The king caused a dyke to be dug, all about York, that no man might there either go out or in. Octa saw that; therefore he was [full] woe. 'And his heathen folk, that he had in *the* burgh, they betook them to counsel, what they might do.' And 'thus spake Octa with his companion Ebissa [said to his companions that were therein with him]: "I have now bethought me, what I will do. 'I and my knights shall forth-right' 'in our bare-breech go out of *the* burgh,

[1] in gan? [2] Nou? [3] whæt?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
gan ut of burȝen.		on vre bare fot.
ræmen a mine swōr[1] ⁊ [f.96.c.1.]		and honge a-bute oure ſweres ⁊
ænne rake-tæȝe.		grete raketeies.
& cumen to þan kinge ⁊		and come to þan kinge ⁊
hiſ mildce biddinde.		his milce biddinge.
ælles we beoð alle dæde ⁊		
buten we fulien þiſſen ræde.		
Alle heo duden swa ⁊		And alle hii dude ſo ⁊
ſwa heom radde Octa.		alſe heom radde Octa.
duden of claðes ⁊	10	
kare-fulle cnihtes.		
& eoden ut of burhȝe ⁊		
blaðe þeines.		
tweiene & tweiene ⁊		
twenti hūdred.		
þiſ bi-heold Aurilien ⁊		þis bi-heold Aurelie ⁊
alðeleſt[2] kingen.		
seolcuð him þuhte ⁊		and wondrede ſwiþe ⁊
of þan nakede cnihten.		
To-ſomne comen þa ferde ⁊	20	
þat læi ȝeond þan ærde.		
Octa. iſeȝen Octa cumen ⁊		þo he iſeh nakede come ⁊
þat wes Hengeſt ſune.		Octa Hengeſt his ſone.

[Go we shall all on our bare-feet, and] hang 'on my neck a chain [about our necks great chains], and come to the king, praying his mercy. 'We all shall else be dead, except we follow this counsel.'" [And] they all did so, as Octa them advised; 'put off *their* clothes *the* careful (sorrowful) knights, and proceeded out of *the* burgh, miserable thanes, twain and twain, twenty hundred!' Aurelie beheld this, 'noblest of kings,' 'strange *it* seemed to him [and wondered greatly,] 'of the naked knights. Together came the host that lay over the land'; '*they* [when he] saw Octa [naked] come, 'that was' 'Hengests [Hengest his] son. 'He [and] bare in his hand

[1] *Sup. ras.* [2] *R.* aðeleſt.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
He bar an hif honde ⁊	and bar on his honde ⁊	
ænne rake-teȝe longe.	one raketeȝe ſtronge ⁊	
he com to þan kīge ⁊		
& bi-uoren hif hære-dringe.		
he feol uppen uolde ⁊	and nuel feol to grunde ⁊	
þaf kinges fæt ifohte.	bi-vore þis kinges fote.	
& þas word ſeide þa ⁊	and þes word ſaide þo ⁊	
Hengeſtef ſune Octa.	Hengeſtef ſone Octa.	
Imilze mi lauerd king ⁊		
þurh þene milde godd.		10
for luue of god almihtē ⁊	For þe loue of god al-mihti ⁊	
haue milce of mine cnihten.	milce me and mine *cnihtes*.	
for alle ure heðene-ſcipe ⁊		
hæne if iwurðen.		
laȝen & ure leoden ⁊		
for laðe we beoð drihten.		
for uf if itruked an hond ⁊	for vs his itroked and[1] hond ⁊	
Appollin & Teruagant.	Appolin and Teruegand.	*Appolin.*
Woden & Mercuriuf ⁊		
Jubit[9] & Saf̄nus.		20
Venus & Didō ⁊		
Frea & Mamilon.		
& alle ure laue ⁊	and alle houre bi-lefue ⁊	
nu uf ſunde laðe.	nou vs beoþ loþe.	

a 'long [strong] chain; 'he came to the king,' and before 'his warriors he [this kings feet] fell 'upon [prone to] *the* ground, '*and* the kings feet sought'; and these words then said Hengests son Octa: "'Mercy, my lord king, through God the mild'; for [the] love of God Almighty 'have mercy of [pardon me and] my knights! 'For all our heathendom is become base, *our* laws and our people, for loathsome we are to *the* Lord.' For us has failed in hand Appolin, and Tervagant, 'Woden, and Mercurius, Jupiter, and Saturnus, Venus, and Didon, Frea, and Mamilon,' and all our beliefs are

[1] *R.* an.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ah we wulleð ileuen:
in leofē þine drihten.
for al hit trukeð uf an hond: [c. 2.]
þ we to temden.
We ȝeorned[1] þine are:
nu and auere mare.
ȝif þu me wult griðens[2]:
& þu me wult fruðien[3].
we þe wulleð to teon:
& þine holde men beon.
luuien þine leoden:
& þine laȝen halden.
ȝif þu þet wulle[4]:
do þine iwille.
whaðer swa þu wult don:
þa uf flan þa us an-hon.
& þe kīg wes mild-heorte:
& heold hine ſtille.
he bi-heold a riht hond:
he bi-heold a lift hond.
wulc of wiiſen:
æreft ſpæken wolden.
Alle heo weoren ſtille:
& ſwiȝedē mid ſtæuen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ac we wolleþ ilefue:
on gode þine drihte.

now to us odious; but we will believe on thy 'dear [good] Lord, 'for all it faileth us now in hand, that we worshiped. We yearn thy favor, now and evermore; if thou wilt me grant peace, and *if* thou wilt me grant amity, we will draw to thee, and be thy faithful men; love thy people, and hold thy laws; if thou wilt *not* that, do thy will, whetherso (whatsoever) thou wilt do, or slay us or up hang us." And the king was mild-hearted, and held him still; he beheld on *the* right hand, he beheld on *the* left hand, which of *his* wise *men* first would speak. They all were still, and kept silence

[1] ȝeorneð? [2] griðien? [3] friðien? [4] nulle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
nes þer nan ſwa hæh mon :		
þat durſte word ſciren.		
& æuere læie Octa :		
æt þes kinges foten ſwa.		
alle hiſ cnihtes :		
leien him biæften.		
Þa ſpac Aldadus :	Þo ſpac Aldadus :	*Aldadus.*
þe gode biſcop & ſeide þuſ.	þe gode biſſop and ſeide þus.	
Æuere hit wæſ : & a hit bið :	Euere hit was : and ȝet hit his :	
& ȝet hit uſ bi-houeð.	alſe vs wel bi-houeþ.	
þene we milze ȝeorneð :	þat wo milce biddeþ :	
þ we milze habben.	þat he hit maȝe habbe.	
wurðe he iſ milze :		
þe wurðeliche heo biddeð.		
& þu ſeolf læuerd king :	þar vore louerd king :	
leoden þu ært ælder.		
imilze þu Octa :	milce þou alle heom.	
& hiſ iueren al ſwa.		
ȝif heo wulleð criſtindom :	ȝef hii wolleþ criſtendom :	
mid gode lefuē vnder-fon.	mid gode bi-leaue onderfon.	
for ȝet hit mai ilimpen :		
i ſummere leoden.		
þ heo maȝen drihten :		
duȝeðliche hærien.		
Nu ſtont al þiſ kinelond :		

with voice; was there no man so high, that durst *a* word utter; and ever lay Octa at the kings feet so; all his knights lay behind him.' Then spake Aldadus, the good bishop, and said thus: "Ever it was, and 'ever it shall be, and yet it [yet it is, as *it* well] behoveth us, 'when we yearn mercy, that we should have mercy [that who*so* prayeth for mercy, that he it may have]; 'worthy is he of mercy, who worthily prayeth for it.' 'And thou *thy*self, [Therefore,] lord king, 'thou art chief of *the* people,' pardon thou 'Octa, and also his companions [all of them], if they will receive Christendom with good belief; 'for yet it may befall, in some country that they may fitly worship *the* Lord. Now stands all this kingdom in

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
a þire aȝer̄ hond. [f.96b.c.1.]	
bitec heom enne ſtude :/	
þer þe bið iqueme.	
& nim of heom ȝiſles :/	
swulche þu wult ȝirnen.	
& let heom wel halden :/	
in irene benden.	
finden þan ȝiſlen mete & clað :/	
finden al þat heom bið leof.	
& þenne miht þu wel halden :/	
þiſ mon-cun i þine londe.	
& let heom tilien þ̄ lond :/	
& libben bi heore tilæhðe.	
ȝif hit ſeoððen ilimppeð :/	An ȝef hit bi-falleþ :/
ſone þer after.	
þ̄ heo trukieð an hond :/	
treoðē[1] to halden.	
& wakieð mid wærke :/	þat hii wakie. [c. 2.]
& þe wiðer haldeð.	
nu ich[2] þe demen þene dom :/	her ich ȝefue þane dom :/
whæt þu miht ſeoððen don.	ou þou ſalt bi heom don.
Let riden heō to :/	
ræhliliche[3] ſwiðe.	

thine own hand; give them a place, where *it* shall be agreeable to thee, and take of them hostages, such *as* thou wilt require; and let them be well held (secured) in iron bonds; the hostages be found meat and clothes, be found all that to them shall be lief; and then mightest thou well hold (retain) this people in thy land, and let them till the land, and live by their tilth." [And] if it 'subsequently' shall befall, 'soon thereafter, that they fail in hand to hold troth, and' weaken 'in work, and withstand thee,' 'now [here] I 'decree to thee [give] the doom, 'what thou mayest then [how thou shalt by them] do. 'Cause *men* to ride to them exceeding

[1] *Above the letter* o *is written* u, *as if to take its place.* [2] ic *pr. m.*
[3] ræhliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& let heom alle for-don:		let nime ȝam alle ſwiþe:
ſpillen & æc an-hō.		and do ȝam of lifue.
þiſ ich þe deme:		þis ich ȝam deme:
drihten hit ihere.		drihte hit ihere.
Þa andſwarede þe king:		Þo anſwerede þe king:
q[i]ckere ſtefne.		
Al ſwa ich wulle don:		don ich wolle al þis þing.
swa þu haueſt idemed.		
Þus ſpac þe king[1] þa:		
Aris up Octa.	10	Ariſ nou Octa:
þu scalt swiðe wel don:		and þine cnihtes alle.
vnder-uoh criſtindom.		
Þer wes iuulȝed Octa:		
& his iueren al ſwa.		
and alle his cnihtes:		Alle þes cnihtes:
i þan ſtude uorð rihtes.		
Heo nomen heore ȝiſſef:		him bi-toke ȝifles:
& ȝeuen þan kinge.		þreo and fifti children.
þreo & fifti children:		hii him bi-tahte:
heo bitæhten þan kinge.	20	
& þe king heom ſende:		
bi-ſiden Scotlonde.		
aðes heo sworen:		and oþes hii ſwore:
ſwiken þat heo nalden.		ſwike þat hii nolde.

quickly, and' cause them all to be 'destroyed, slain and eke up hung [taken quickly, and deprive them of life]. This I decree to 'thee [them]; *the* Lord *it* hear!" Then answered the king, 'with quick voice': "All I will 'so' do [this thing] 'as thou hast deemed." Thus spake the king then': "Arise 'up [now], Octa; 'thou shalt quickly do well, receive Christendom [and thy knights all]." 'There was Octa baptized, and his companions also; and' all 'his [these] knights 'on the spot forth-right.' 'They took their [gave to him] hostages, 'and gave to the king,' three and fifty children they delivered to 'the king [him]. And 'the king sent them beside Scotland'; oaths they swore,

[1] kin *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þe king bi-tahte hond[1] :		Þe king bi-tahte heom an hond :
sixti hidene lond.		ſixti hidene lond.
Þer on heo wuneden :	[c. 2.]	Þar on hii wonede :
wel feole wītren.		wel fale wintres.
Þe king[2] wes inne Eouerwic :		Þe king was in Euerwich :
aðele him þuhte.		and murie him þohte.
he nom hiſ ſonden :		he ſende his ſonde :
& ſende ȝeond hiſ londe.		oueral his londe.
hæhte hiſ biſcopes :		and hehte eorles and knihtes :
hiſ boc-ilærede men.	10	biſſopes and cleorekes.
eorles & þeines :		
cumen him to-ȝeines.		come an hiȝenge.
to Aurilie þā kīge :		riht to him ſeolue :
to muchele huſtinge.		
Hit iwærð ſone :		And hii ſwiþe ſone :
þat heo gadere comē.		to him alle come.
Þe king hiſ folc grætte :		Þe king welcomede alle :
mid fæire hiſ worden.		hiȝenliche ſwiþe.
he wilcumede eorles :		
he wilcumede beornes.	20	
& þa biſcopes :		
& þa boc-ilærede men.		
Ich eou wulle ſuggen :		Ich ou wolle ſegge :

that they would not deceive *him*. The king gave them in hand sixty hides of land; thereon they dwelt well many winters. The king was in York, 'good [and merry] *it* seemed to him; he 'took [sent] his messengers, 'and sent' over [all] his land; [and] ordered 'his' 'bishops, his book-learned men, earls and thanes [earls and knights, bishops and clerks], to come 'towards him, to Aurelie the king, [in haste, right to himself.] 'to *a* great husting. 'It soon came to pass, that they came together [And they very soon all came to him]. The king 'greeted his folk with his fair words [welcomed all very speedily], 'he welcomed earls, he welcomed barons, and the bishops, and the book-learned men.'—"I will say to you with [my]

[1] heom an hond ?

[2] kin, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid ſoðe wordē.	mid ſoþe mine worde.
whi ich eou æfter ſende:	wi ich ou after ſende:
& for wulche þingen.	and for woche þinge.
Her ich aȝeuen ælche cnihten:	Here ich take ech cniht:
icunden[1] & hiſ rihten.	his cūde and his riht.
& æuerælche eorle:	and ech eorl and barun:
& æuerælche beorne.	
þat he mæi biwinnen:	þat he mai a-winne:
brukē hit mid wunnen.	
& ælche monnen bi hiſ life:	
ich hate griðȝ luuien.	
Ich hæten eou wurchen:	And ich ou hote alle:
& buldē þa chirchen.	a-rere chirches þat beoþ a-valle.
bellen leten ringen:	
godes lof ſingen.	
heren mid ure mihtē:	and ech be his mihte:
leofe ure drihten.	lofuie vre drihte.
ælche mon bi hiſ mæhte:	
halden ſibbe & fæhten.	
læten tilien þ lond:	
nu hit iſ al a mire hond.	
þa þuſ dō wes iſæid:	þo þes dom was al iſeid:
alle heo leofden þiſne ræd.	alle hii louede þane read.
þe king heom ȝef leoue:	þe king ȝam [ȝef] leue: [f.78b. c. 1.]

sooth words, why I sent after you, and for what thing. Here I give to each knight his land and his right, and to 'every [each] earl and 'every' baron, what he may win, 'to possess it with joy; and each man I order to love peace, on his life'. [And] I bid you [all] to 'work and build the [arear] churches [that are fallen], 'to let *the* bells ring, to sing Gods praise,' [and each] 'with our [by his] might to 'worship [love] our 'dear' Lord; 'each man by his might to hold peace and amity, *and* cause the land to be tilled, now it is all in my hand.'" When this doom was [all] said, they all praised 'this [the] counsel. The king gave them leave to depart thence; each fared

[1] if cunden *man. sec., for* his cunden.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þenne to liðe.
ælc uærde heomward:
swa heom bezſt þuhte.
Seouen niht fulle:
þe king læi þer ſtille.
& ſeoððen he gon liðe:
in to Lūdenne. [f. 97. c. 1.]
to gladien þat burh-folc:
þat ofte weoren biſie.
He letten ſtronge walles:
he lette bulden halles.
& rihte al þa workes:
þe ær weore to-broſene[1].
& aȝef heom alle þa laȝen:
þe ſtoden bi heore ælderne dæȝen.
he makede þer reuen:
þan uolke to reden.
& þenenen he gon wendē:
riht to Winchæſtre.
þer he lette wurcchen:
[2]
þer him þuhte ſwiðe muri:
ſeoððen he uerde to Ambres-buri.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þane to liþe.
ech verde hamward:
þar him beſt þohte.
Souenihte folle:
þe king lai þare ſtille.
and suþþe he gan wende:
in to Londone.
and lette ſtrongi walles:
and arere halles.
and he makede þare reues:
þan folke to dihte.
þanene he wende:
riht to Wynchеſtre.
and lette þare wereche:
halles and chirches.
þare him þohte ſwiþe muri:
and ſuþþe he wende to Ambreſburi.

homeward, 'as [where] to 'them [him] *it* best seemed. Full seven nights the king lay there still, and then he gan proceed into London, 'to gladden the burgh-folk, who oft were busy.' 'He [and] caused walls to be strengthened, 'he caused [and] halls to be 'built [areared], 'and all the works to be righted (repaired) that ere were broken; and gave them all the laws that stood in their elders days'; [and] he made there reves, to rule the folk. 'And' thence he 'gan proceed [proceeded] right to Winchester; [and] there 'he' caused to be worked [halls and churches];—there *it* seemed to him most pleasant;—[and] afterwards he went to Ambresbury, 'to the

[1] *This word is doubtful, and seems to have been written at first* to-roſene.
[2] *A line is here evidently deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
to þan leerſtowe:		
of leofuen hiſ freonden.		
þa Hengeſt mid cniuen:	ware Hengeſt mid his cniuef:	
þer aquald hæfuede.	adde idon his cun of lifue.	
He lette axien anan:	He lette axi anon:	
men þat cuðen hæuwen ſtan.	men þat couþe ewe ſton.	
& æc gode wurhten:	and eke after wrohtes:	
þe mid æxe cuðe wurchen.	þat mid axe couþen weorche.	
he þohte wurche þer a werc:	he þohte makien an worc:	
wūder ane ueire.		
þ a ſculde ilaſten:	þat euere ſolde leſte:	
þa while men luueden.		
þa weſ inne Kaerlium:	þo was in Kairlȳon:	
a biſcop þe hahte Tremoriun.	an biſſop þat hehte Tremorion.	*Tremorion.*
he wes ſwiðe wiſ mon:		
inne weorld-richen.		
mid þā kinge he wes:		
ouenan þæ walde.		
& þuſ Tremorien godes dring:	he ſaide to þan king:	
ſpæc þer wið þene king.	of one gode þinge.	
Luſt nu me Aurilien:		
what ich þe wulle cuðen.		
& ich þe wullen ſuggen:		
fæleſt alre ræden.		
ȝif þu hine wult luuien:		

burial-place of his dear friends,' 'whom [where] Hengest with [his] knives had 'murdered there [deprived his kindred of life]. He caused men anon to be inquired for, who could hew stone, and eke 'good [after] wrights, who could work with axe; he thought to 'work there [make] a work 'wondrously fair,' that ever should last, 'the while men lived!' Then was in (of) Caerleon a bishop, that hight Tremoriun; 'he was *a* man exceeding wise in *the* worlds-realm; with the king he was, over the weald. And thus' 'Tremoriun, Gods servant, spake there with [he said to] the king, [of a good thing]: "'Listen now to me, Aurelie, what I will make known to thee, and I will say to thee *the* best of all counsel; if thou wilt it approve,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

æft he þe likeð.
We habbeoð ænne witeȝe:
Mærlin if ihaten.
ȝif æi mō hine mihte ifinden:
uppe þiffere wælden. [c. 2.]
& to þe ibringen:
þurh æief cunnef þinge.
& þu hif iwille:
driȝen woldeft.
he þe wolde runen:
feleft ræden.
hu þu mihteft þif weorc:
makien ftrong & fterk.
þet a mihte ilæften:
þa while men leoueden.
Þa andfwarede þe king:
þas wordes him weoren iqueme.
Leoue freond Tremoriun:
al þif ich wulle don.
Þe king fende hif fonde:
ȝeond al hif kinelonde.
and bad æuerælcne mon:
axien after Mærlin.
& ȝif me hine mihten ifinden:
bringen hine to þan kīge.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

We habbeþ one wytti:
Merlyn his ihote.
ȝef me hine mihte finde:
and to þe hine bringe.
he þe wolde fegge:
feleft alre reade.
hou þou mihteft þis worc:
makie ftrōg and ftark.
þat hit mihte lefte:
þe wile þat men lefuede.
Þe king an hiȝenge:
wide his men fende.
for to hine finde: [c. 2.]
and bringe to þan kinge.

eft it will like to thee.' We have a prophet, *who* is Merlin named; if 'any man [men] might him find, 'upon this weald,' and bring [him] to thee, 'through any kind of thing, and *if* thou his will wouldest perform,' he would say to thee best [of all] counsel, how thou mightest this work make strong and stark, that 'ever [it] might last, the while [that] men lived. 'Then answered the king,—these words were to him agreeable:—"Dear friend Tremoriun, all this I will do."' The king [in haste] sent his 'messengers over all his kingdom [men wide], 'and bade every man to ask after Merlin'; 'and if men might him find, to bring him [for to find him,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
he him wolde ȝifuen lond :/		
boðe feoluer & gold.		
& a weorl-richen :/		
driȝen hif iwille.		
þa fondē gunnen riden :/		
widen & fiden.		
summe heo uerden riht norð :/		
& fumme heo uerden fuð forð.		
sūme heo uerden riht æft :/		
& summe heo uerden riht weft.		
summe heo uerden a-nan :/	Somme wēde a-non :/	
þat heo comen to Alæban.	þat hii come to Alaban.	*Ala[ban]*.
þat if a wælle :/	þat his fair welle :/	
inne Wælfce londe.	ine Walfe londe.	
þe wælle he lufode :/	þe welle he moche lofuede :/	
& ofte hine þer inne baðede.	and lome þare baþede.	
þa cnihtef hine funde :/	þe cnihtef hine funde :/	
þer he fat bi þan ftrondē.	þar h[1] fat bi brimme.	
Sone fwa hine inettē[2] :/		
fæire heo hine igrætten.		
& þuf him to forð rihtes :/	and *þus anon rihtes* :/	
sæiden þa tweien cnihtes.	faide þe cnihtes.	
Hail feo þu Mærlin :/		
monnene wifeft.		

and bring] to the king; 'he would give him land, both silver and gold, and in *the* worlds realm perform his will. The messengers gan to ride wide and far; some they went right north, and some they went forth south; some they went right east, and some they went right west'; some 'they' went anon, *so* that they came to Alaban, that is 'a' [fair] well (spring) in Welsh land. The well he (Merlin) [much] loved, and oft 'therein [there] bathed 'him'; the knights him found where he sate by 'the strand [brim]. '*So* soon as *they* him met, they greeted him fair'; and thus said the 'two' knights 'to him' 'forth [anon] right: "'Hail be thou, Merlin, wisest of

[1] *R.* he. [2] imetten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bi uf þe gon grætē:	[f.97b.c.1.]	Bi vs þe gan grete:
þ if a god-ful king.		þe king of þiſſe londe.
Aurilian ihaten:		
aðeſt[1] alre kingē.		
ſtont al þiſ muchele lond:		
ī Aurilies kingeſ hond.		
faire he þe biſecheð:		and faire þe bi-ſecheþ:
þ þu him to buȝe.		þat þou to him come.
& he þe wule ȝiue lond:		hand he þe wole ȝeue lond:
boðe ſelu̇er & gold.	10	and ſeoluer and golde.
ȝif þu an riche:		
ræde wulle þā kinge.		
Mærlin andſwerede þa:		Merlẏn anſwerede þo:
þæt cnihten[2] wes ful wa.		þat þe cnihtes weren wo.
Ne recche ich noht hiſ londes:		Ne rech ich of his londes:
hiſ ſeoluer no hiſ goldes.		ne of his oþer ȝeftes.
no his claðes no hiſ hors:		
mi ſeolf ich habbe inowe.		
þa ſat he ſtille:		þo ſæt he ſtille:
longe ane ſtunde.	20	one lange ſtunde.
þaſ cnihtes weoren afæred:		
þat he fleon[3] wolde.		

men!' By us '*he* who is a goodly king [the king of this land], 'named Aurelie, noblest of all kings,' greets thee, [and] 'he' beseecheth thee courteously, that thou come to him; and he will give land to thee, 'both [and] silver and gold, 'if thou in *the* realm wilt counsel the king.'" Then answered Merlin, 'what to *the* knights was full [that the knights were] woe: "I reck not of his land, 'his silver, nor 'his gold [nor of his other gifts], 'nor his clothes, nor his horses; myself I have enow.'" Then sate he still a long time. 'These knights were afraid, that (least) he would flee.' When

[1] aðeleſt?

[2] þa *has been added before* cnihten *by a second hand, and afterwards erased.*

[3] feon, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þa hit alles up brac :/
hit wes god þat he ſpæc.
ȝit[1] beoð tweiene cnihtes :/
icumen her rihtes.
ȝurſtendæi ær none :/
ich wuſte þat ȝe comen.
& ȝif ich ſwa walde :/
ne mihte ȝe me finden.
ȝe bringeð me gretinge :/
from Aurilie þan kinge.
Ich cneou hiſ cnihtes[2] :/
ær he come to londe.
& ich icneou þene oðer :/
Vther hiſ broðer.
ic icneou beien :/
ær heo iboren weoren. [c. 2.]
þæh ich nauer nouþer :/
mid eȝen ne iſeȝe.
Ah walawa walawa :/
þat hit iſ idiht ſwa.
þ̄ þe leodene-king :/
leng ne mot luuien.
Ah nu ich wulle fuſen :/
& beon eouwer ifere.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þo hit halles vp brac :/
hit waſ god þat he ſpac.
ȝe beoþ tweie cnihtes :/
icome fram þan kinge.
ȝorſtendai here non :/
ich wuſte þat ȝe come.
and ȝef ich hit wolde :/
ne ſolde ȝe me finde.
ȝe bringeþ me gretynge :/
fram Aurelie þan kinge.
Ich i-cnew his cuſtes :/
are he to londe come.
and eke þan oþer :/
Vther his broþer.
ich icnew beyene :/
are hii ibore were.
þeh ich neuere ne ſehȝe :/
noþer mid ehȝe.
Ac wolawo wolawo :/ [f. 79. c. 1.]
þat hit his idiht ſo.
þat þe gode king :/
lang ne mot libbe.
Nou ich wolle wende :/
mid ȝou to þā kinge.

it all brake forth, it was good that he spake: "Ye are two knights come 'right here [from the king]; yesterday ere noon I knew that ye should come, and if I 'so [it] would, ye 'might [should] not find (have found) me. Ye bring me greeting from Aurelie the king. I knew his qualities ere he came to land, and 'I knew [eke] the other, Uther his brother; I knew both ere they were born, though I never saw either with eye. But alas! alas! that it is so ordered, that the 'monarch [good king] may not live long! 'But' now will I go, 'and be your companion;' to the king 'I will proceed

[1] *Written at first* ȝeit, *but* e *expuncted.*

[2] coſtes ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

to þan kinge ich faren wulle ⁊
& driȝen hiſ iwille.
Forð ferde Mærlin ⁊
& þa cnihtes wið him.
swa longe þ̄ hꝛo comen ⁊
to þā leod-kinge.
Komen to þan kinge ⁊
wil-tidende.
næuer ær an hiſ liue ⁊
nes þe king ſwa bliðe.
for næuere nanef mōnes cume ⁊
þe him to come.
þe kīg to hiſ ſtede ⁊
& ut him gon ride.
& alle hiſ cnihteſ mid hī ⁊
to wulcumen Mærlin.
þe kīg hine imette ⁊
& fære hine igratte.
he hine iclupte ⁊
he hine cuſte.
he hine cuðlæhte[1] ⁊
Muchel wes þe murhȝe ⁊
i þan mō-uerede.
al for Marlines cume ⁊

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Forþ wende Merlyn ⁊
and þe cnihtes mid him.
so lange þat hii come ⁊
þar þe king wonede.

þe king hine clupte ⁊
þe king hine cuſte.

[with you], 'and perform his will.'" Forth went Merlin, and the knights with him, so long that they came to the sovereign [where the king dwelt]. The good tidings came to the king; never ere in his life was the king so blithe, for ever any kind of man that came to him! The king *went* to his steed, and out gan him ride, and all his knights with him, to welcome Merlin.' The king 'him met, and greeted him fair; he' embraced him, 'he[the king] kissed him, 'he made him *his* familiar. Great was the mirth among the people, all for Merlin's arrival, who was son of no man. Alas!

[1] *A line here seems deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þe nes nanes monnef ſune.	
Wale þat an worlde:	
næs nan witie.	
þat auere wuſte here:	
whes ſune he weore.	
buten drihtē ane:	
þe wlæt al clane.	
þe king lælde[1] to bure:	and ladde hine to boure:
Mærlin þe wes deore. [f.98. c.1.]	for he was him deore.
he hine fræinien gon:	and he axede him anon:
mid fæire hiſ worden anan.	mid faẏre his wordeſ.
þat he dude him to vnder-ſtonde:	þat he him dude to vnderſtōde:
of þan weorldes ȝeōgen.	of þis worle longe.
& of al þan ȝeren:	
þat to cumen weoren.	
for hit weoren him ſwiðe iwil:	
þ he þerof wuſte.	
Mærlin andſwerede þa:	Merlẏn anſwerede þo:
& to þan kinge feide ſwa.	þat þan kinge was wo.
O Aurilie þe king:	O Aurilie þe king:
þu fræineſt me a fellic þing.	þou axeſt a wonder þing.
loke þat þu na mare:	loke þat þou na more:
ſwulc þing ne iſcire.	ſoch þing ne ſcire.

that in *the* world was no wise man that ever knew here whose son he were, but *the* Lord alone, who surveys (*or* explores) all clean!' 'The king led [and led him] to chamber 'Merlin who was [for he was to him] dear; [and] he 'gan ask [asked] him anon with his fair words, that he should cause him to understand of 'the [this] worlds course, 'and of all the years that were to come; for it were to him greatly in will, that he thereof knew.' Merlin then answered, 'and to the king said thus [what to the king was woe]: "O Aurelie, the king, thou askest 'me' a strange thing; look that thou no more such thing inquire. 'For my spirit truly is wrathful, that

[1] lædde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
For mi gæſt if bæl iwis[1] :/	
þa a mire breoſte if.	
and ȝef ich among monnen :/	
ȝelp wolde makien.	
mid glad-ſcipe mid gomene :/	
mid god-fulle worden.	
mi gaſt hine iwarðeð[2] :/	
& wirð ſtille.	
& binimeð me mī iwit :/	
& mine wife word for-dut.	
þenne weore ich dūbe :/	
of æuer ælche dome.	
Ah bilef ſwulche þinges :/	Ac bi-lef al ſoche þinges :/
quæd[3] Mærlin to þan kingen.	cwaþ Merlȳn to þan kinge.
for whan ſwa cumeð neode :/	
to auer æi þeode.	
& mon me mid milde-ſcipe :/	
wulle me biſechen.	
& ich mid mine iwille :/	
mote wuniē ſtille.	
þenne mæi ich ſuggen :/	
hu hit ſeoððen ſcal iwurðen. [c.2.]	
Ah ich þe[4] wulle ræden :/	Ac ich þe wolle reade :/
of nexte þire neoden.	to þine nexſte neode.

is in my breast; and if I among men would make boast, with gladness, with game, with goodly words, my spirit would wrath him*self*, and become still, and deprive me of my sense, and my wise words fore-close; then were I dumb of every sentence.' But leave [all] such things," quoth Merlin to the king, "'for whensoever need shall come to ever any people, and man will beseech me with mildness, and I may with my will dwell still, then may I say, how it afterwards shall happen.' But I will counsel thee of thy

[1] bæli wis, *MS.* [2] iwraðeð? [3] quæð?
[4] þe *is omitted by the first hand, which has also written* ic.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& ſugen þe her riht:	and ſegge þe her riht:
what þu haueſt an heorten.	wat þou haueſt on heorte.
A ueld if bi Amberes-buri:	On feold his bi Ambref-buri:
þe is brad & ſwiðe muri.	þat his brod and ſwiþe muri.
þer wes mid cniuē:	þar was mid cniue:
þi cun idon of liuen.	þin cun idon of lifue.
þer weſ moni bald Brut:	
biſwiken to þan deðe.	
& þencheſt þene ſtude:	þar vore þou þencheſt þane ſtude:
mid wurðcipe igraten.	mid worſipe grete:
mid ſælcuðe wærcken:	mid ſelcouþe workef:
wurðien þa dæde.	herie þe deade.
þat þer ſcal ſtonden:	þat ſolde euere ſtonde:
to þere worlde longe.	to þare worle longe.
Ah naueſt þu neuere nenne mon:	Ac naueſt þou neuer one man: [c. 2.]
þe cunne awiht þe[1] on.	þat oht conne þar on.
þe cunne wærc makien:	for to worch makie:
þe nauere nulle trukien.	þat neuere nolle trokie.
Ah ic þe wulle ræden:	Ac ich þe wolle reade:
to ſwulchere neode.	to ſolchere neode.
for ich what a wærc:	for ich wot a worc:
mid wundere bi-ſtonde.	
for þat weorc ſtondeð:	
inne Irlonde.	for in Yrlond.

nearest need, and say to thee right here what thou hast in heart. A plain is by Ambresbury, that is broad, and exceeding pleasant; there was thy kindred deprived of life with knives, 'there was many bold Briton betrayed to the death;' 'and [therefore thou] thinkest to greet the place with worship, *and* with surprising works to honor the dead, that 'there' shall [ever] stand, to the worlds end. But thou hast never 'any [one] man, that knows aught thereon, 'who can [for-to] make *a* work that never will fail. But I will counsel thee at such need, for I know a work ' with wonder encompassed; far 'the work standeth' in Ireland. It is a most surprising

[1] þer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Hit if a ſwiðe ſellic þing[1] :	Hit his a ſwiþe ſellich þing :
Corea [gi]-gant[um].	hit hat þe Eatantes Ring.
þat weorc if of ſtane :	þat work his of ſtone :
ſwulc ne beoð oðer nane.	ſoch oþer not ich none.
ſwa wid ſwa if weorlde-riche :	so wid ſo his þe worle-riche :
nif nan weorc hif iliche.	nif no work him iliche.
þa ſtaneſ beod[2] muchele :	þe ſtones beoþ mochele :
& mahten heo habbeoð.	and mihte hii habbeþ.
þa men þe beoð un-hal :	þe men þat beoþ on-hole :
heo fareð to þan ſtane.	wendeþ to þan ſtones.
& heo waſceð þene ſtan :	and waſſeþ þane ſton :
& þer mide baðieð heore ban.	
umbe lutle ſtude[3] : [f.98ᵇ.c.1.]	
heo wurðeð al iſūde.	and habbeþ hire hele anon.
Ah þe ſtanes beoð muchele :	Ac þe ſtones beoþ mochele :
& uninete[4] græte.	and onimete grete.
for nif nauere na mon iboren :	for nas neuere þe man ibore :
i[5] nauere nare burhȝe.	in neuere none borewe.
þe mihte mid ſtrēgðe :	þat mihte mid ſtrengþe :
þa ſtanes þenne bringe.	þe ſtones þanne bringe.
þa andſwarede þe king :	þo ſaide þe king :
Mærlin þu ſæiſt ſællic þing.	Merlỳn þou ſaiſt wonder þing.

thing, [it is named the Giants Ring]; the work is of stone, such *an* other 'there is [I know] none, so wide as is the worlds realm is no work 'its [to it] like. The stones are great, and virtue they have; the men who are sick 'they' go to the stones, and 'they' wash the stones, 'and therewith bathe their bones'; 'after *a* little while they become all sound [and have their health anon]! But the stones are mickle, and immensely great; for was never 'any [the] man born, in ever any burgh, who might with strength bring the stones thence." Then 'answered [said] the king: "Merlin, thou sayest strange thing; 'that [if] never any man born 'may bring them thence,

[1] *A line is here wanting, supplied by the other text.*
[2] beoð? [3] ſtunde? [4] *R.* unimete.
[5] *Added by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe nauere nan iboren mon ꝟ	wane neuere no man ibore ꝟ
ne maie heom bringgen þenne.	mid none cunnes ſtrengþe.
no mid nare ſtrengðe ꝟ	ne mai ȝam þanene ꝟ
of þan ſtude lade.	mid none þing bringe.
hu mihte ich heom þenne ꝟ	wat ſolde ich þanne ꝟ
heom bringen þeonne.	after heom ſende.
Þa andſwerede Mærlin ꝟ	Þo anſwerede Merlỳn ꝟ
þan kinge þat ſpac wið him.	þan kinge þat ſpac wiþ him.
ȝuſe ȝuſe lauerd kīg ꝟ	ȝuſe ȝuſe louerd ꝟ
hit wes ȝare iqueðen.	hit was iſaid wile.
þat betere if liſte ꝟ	þat betere his sleahþe ꝟ
þene ufel ſtrenðe[1].	þane vuele ſtrengþe.
for mid liſte me mai ihalden ꝟ	for mid ſlehþe me mai holde ꝟ [f.79b.c.1.]
þat ſtrengðe ne mai iwalden[2].	þat ſtrengþe ne mai awilde.
Ah ſomne þine uerde ꝟ	Ac ſend þider ferde ꝟ
& far to þan ærde.	
& þu mid þe lede ꝟ	
gode monne-uerde.	
& ich wulle mid þe ꝟ	and ich wolle mid ham wende.
þi monſcipe bið þe mære.	
Ær þu aȝæn wende ꝟ	
þine iwille þu ſcalt habbē.	
& þat weorc þu ſcalt bringen ꝟ	

nor with any strength carry from the place, how might [with any kind of strength, may thence with any thing (contrivance) bring them, wherefore should] I then 'bring them thence [after them send]?" Then answered Merlin to the king who spake with him: "Yes, yes, lord 'king', it was 'of yore [whilom] said, that better is art, than evil strength; for with art men may hold what strength may not obtain. But 'assemble thine [send thither *an*] army, ' and go to the land, and lead thou with thee *a* good host'; and I will [go] with 'thee, [them]—' thy worship will be the more! Ere thou back come, thy will thou shalt have, and the work thou shalt bring with thee to

[1] ſtrengðe?

[2] *A part of this word is by second hand, sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX. MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

mid þe to þiſſen londe.
& ſwa þu hit ſcalt leden :
to þere lich-raſte.
& wurðien þene ſtude :
þer þine wines liggeð.
& þu ſeolf ſcalt þer in :
þine ban reſtē.
þenne þi lif endeð :
þer þu ſcalt reſten.
þuſ ſeiden Mærlin :
& ſeoððen he ſæt ſtille.
alſe þeh he wolde :
of worlden iwiten. [c. 2.]
þe king hine lette bringen :
into ane fære bure.
& wunien þer inne :
æfter his iwille[1].
Aurilie þe king :
lette beoden huſting.
of alle þan londe :
þa ſtod an hiſ honde.
he bad him ræde :
to ſwulchere neode.
and heo him wel rædden :
riche hiſ beornes.
þ he dude þene ræd :

this land, and so thou shalt carry it to the burial-place, and honor the spot where thy friends lie. And thou *thy*self shalt therein thy bones rest; when thy life endeth, there shalt thou rest." Thus said Merlin, and afterwards he sate still, as though he would from *the* world depart. The king caused him to be brought into a fair chamber, and dwell therein, after his will. Aurelie the king caused *a* husting to be summoned from all the lands that stood in his hand; he bade *them* counsel him at such need. And his noble barons

[1] *Sup. ras. à sec. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat Mærlin him hauede iſaȝ[1].	
Ah heo nælden leden þene king:	
ut of þiſ londe.	
ah heo curen heom to ældre:	And he forþrihtes:
Vther þene gode.	ſende fiftene þuſend cnihtes.
& fiftene þuſend cnihten:	and Merlyn and Vther:
fæire iwepned.	þat was his oȝe broþer.
baldere Brutten:	
þa þider ſculde buȝen.	
Þa þaſ ferde wes al ȝaru:	
þa bigunnen heo to faren.	
mid alle þan bezſte ſcippen:	
þæ bi þære fæ ſtoden.	
& ferdē swa longe:	hii verde ſo longe:
þat heo comen to Irlōde.	þat hii come to Yrlonde.
& þa hauene nomen:	
þæ cnihtes wel idone.	
heo eoden uppen fæ ſtrōd:	
& biheolden Irlonde.	
Þa ſpæc Mærlin:	
& ſpilede mid wordē.	
Iſeo ȝe nu ohte men:	
þene muchelne hul.	

they well advised him, that he should do the counsel that Merlin had said to him.' 'But they would not lead the king out of this land, but they chose them for chief Uther the good, and fifteen thousand knights, weaponed fair, of bold Britons, who thither should go [And he forth-right sent fifteen thousand knights, and Merlin, and Uther, who was his own brother]. 'When this army was all ready, then began they to fare with all the best ships that by the sea stood,' 'and [they] voyaged so long that they came to Ireland. 'And the brave knights took the haven; they went upon *the* sea strand, and beheld Ireland. Then spake Merlin, and discoursed with words: "See ye now, brave men, the great hill, the hill so exceeding high,

[1] iſæd

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe hul ſwa ſwiðe hæh:	
þere weolcne he if ful neh.	
þat if þat feolliche þing:	
hit hatte þere Eotinde Ring.	
elches weorkes unniliche:	
hit com of Aufrike.	
Slæð eower teldeſt[1]:	and floȝen hire teldes:
ȝeond al þaſ feldes.	oueral þe feldes.
her we ſcullen ræſten:	
to þreom dæȝen uirſten.	
i þan feorðe dæiȝe:	
we ſcullen heonne fuſen.	
touward þā hulle: [f.99.c.1.]	
þer if ure iwille.	
Ah we ſcullē uſ ær baðien:	
& bonnien ure beornes.	
græiðien ure wepnen:	
fer[2] wel heo uſ bi-houeð.	
þus hit bi-læfde:	
& þer læie þa ferde.	
þeo[3] ahte Irlond:	
a king þat wes swiðe ſtrong.	
Gillomaurus. he hæhte Gillomaurus:	þis ihorde Gillomaur:
gomenen he weſ lauerd.	king of þan londe.
him comen þa tiðende:	

that to the welkin it is full nigh? That is the marvellous thing, it is named the Giants Ring, to each work unlike,—it came from Africa.' 'Pitch your [and pitched their] tents over all 'these [the] fields; 'here we shall rest for *the* space of three days; on the fourth day we shall march hence toward the hill, where our will is. But we shall ere (previously) refresh us, and assemble our warriors; make ready our weapons, for well they behove us (we shall need them). Thus it remained, and there lay the army. 'Then possessed Ireland a king that was most strong; he hight Gillomaur, he

[1] teldeſ? [2] *R.* for. [3] þo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þ Brutes weorē an londe.	
he lette beoden ferde:	
ȝeond alle Irlondes ærde.	
& he gon þretien fwiðe:	and þretede fwiþe:
þat al he wolde heō to-driue.	þat he ȝam wolde vt driue.
þa þ word him com to:	
þ Brutes wolden þer don.	
& comē to þan anes:	
to fæchen þa ſtaneſ.	
þa þe kīg Gillomar:	
makede mucchel hoker & ſcarn.	and makede mochel ſcornes:
& ſeide þ heo weoren:	
sotten iueren.	
þ ouer ſæ brade:	
þider weoren iliðene.	þat hi ſohte þare ſtones.
to ſechen þer ſtanes:	ſo aſe none ne mihte be funde:
aſe in heore londe neorē nane.	in al Brutlonde.
and ſwor a ſēit Brændan:	He ſwor bi ſeint Brendan:
Ne ſcullen heo lædē ænne ſtan.	þat hii ne ſolde habbe on.
ah for þan ſtanen heo ſcullen ibiden:	ac for loue of þan ſtones:
alre baluwenen mæſt.	hii ſol[1] habbe harm meſt.
heore blod ȝeoten:	

was lord of *the* people; the tidings came to him that the Britons were in *the* land; [This heard Gillomaur, king of the land,] 'he caused forces to be summoned over all Irelands territory,' and 'he gan to threaten [threatened] greatly, that he would 'all' drive them out. 'When the word came to him, what *the* Britons would do there, and *that they* came for that only, to fetch the stones, then the king Gillomar' [and] made mickle 'derision and' scorn, 'and said that they were foolish fellows, who over *the* broad sea were thither arrived,' 'to seek [that they should seek] there stones, as [if] none 'were in their land [might be found in all Britain]; 'and [He] swore by saint Brandan:—"They shall not carry *away* one stone [that they should not have one], but for [love of] the stones they

[1] folle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

ut of heore buken.
& ſwa me ſcal heō tachen:
ſtanes to fæchen.
& ſeoððen ich wulle buȝen:
in to Brutlonde.
& ſuggen þan king Aurilie:
þ mine ſtanes ich wullen werien.
& buten þe king beon ſtille:
& don mine iwille.
ich wulle in hiſ londe:
mid fæhte at-den[1].
maken him weſte paðes:
& wildernes monie. [c. 2.]
widewen i-nøȝe:
heore weres ſcullen deȝe.
þuſ þe vnwiſe king:
plaȝede mid worden.
ah al an oðer hit iwærð:
oðer he iwende.
ȝaru wes hes[3] ferde:
& forð heo gon fuſen.
swa longe þat heo comen:
þer læien Brutes on.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þus wiſe king[2]:
pleoyde mid wordes.
ac al an oþer hit iwarþ:
oþer þane he wende.
ȝaru was his ferde:
and he gan forþ wende.
so long þat he com:
þar þeos Bruttes were.

'shall abide *the* most of all mischiefs; [should have most of harm.] 'spill their blood out of their bellies,—and so men shall teach them (they shall be taught) to seek stones! And afterwards I will go into Britain, and say to the king Aurelie, that my stones I will defend; and unless the king be still, and do my will, I will in his land with fight withstand; make him waste paths, and wildernesses many; widows enow,—their husbands shall die!" Thus the unwise king played with words, but it all happened another *wise*, other [than] he weened. His army was ready, and forth 'they [he] gan march, so long that 'they [he] came 'whereon the [where these] Britons

[1] at-ſtonden?
[2] *A part of this line seems omitted.*
[3] his?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
To-gaderē heo comen :·	To-gadere hii come :
& hærdliche on-floȝen.	and hahliche floȝe.
& fuhten feondliche :·	
feollen þa fæie.	
þa Iriſce weoren bare :·	Ac Yreſſe weren bare :·
& Bruttes iburnede.	and Bruttus i-burned.
þa Iriſce fullen :·	þe Yriſſe folle :·
& wriȝen al þa feldef.	and wreȝe þe feldes.
& þe king Gillomar :·	and þe king Gillomaur :·
gon him to fleonne þar.	gan to fleonde þar.
& flæh forð rihtes :·	
mid twenti of hiſ cnihtes.	
in to ænne muchele wude :·	in to one mochele wode :·
wurðſcipen biræiued[1].	worſipe bi-deled.
wes hiſ Iriſce uolc :·	
mid ſtele iualled.	
þuſ wes þe kīg iſcænd :·	þus was þe king iſend :·
& þ° he endede hiſ ȝelp.	and þus eandede[2] his ȝealp.
& þ° to wude ferde :·	
& lette hiſ folc fællen.	
þa Bruttes biheolden :·	
þa dede ȝeond þan vælden.	
seouen þuſend þer leien :·	
liues bidæled.	
Bruttes ȝeond þan uælden :·	Bruttes in þan felde :·

'lay [were]. Together they came, and 'hardily [fiercely] encountered, 'and fought fiercely,—the fated fell!' [But] 'the' Irish were bare, and *the* Britons in armour; the Irish fell, and covered 'all' the fields. And the king Gillomar gan 'him' to flee there, 'and fled forth-right, with twenty of his knights,' into a great wood,—of worship bereaved,—'his Irish folk was felled with steel.' Thus was the king shamed, and thus 'he' ended his boast, 'and thus went to *the* wood, and let his folk fall! The Britons beheld the dead over the fields; seven thousand there lay deprived of life.'

[1] biræiueð *pr. m.*

[2] he endede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ferdē to heore telden.	wende to hire teldes. [c. 2.]
& heore gode wepnen:	
wurðliche biho3eden.	
& þer heo gunnen ræſten:	and þar hii gonne to reſte:
alſe Merlin heom radde.	aſe Merlyn heom hehte.
I þan feorðe dæie:	In þan feorþe daie:
þa gūnen heo fuſen.	þo gonnen hii wende.
& ferden to þan hulle:	and ferde to þan hulle:
iwæpned wel alle.	iwepnid wel alle.
þer ſtod þ ſeolkuð werc:	war ſtod þat wonder worc:
muchel & ſwiðe ſt^{9}c.	mochel and ſwiþe ſtark.
Cnihtes eoden upward:	Cnihteſ eoden vpward:
cnihteſ eodē dunward.	cnihtes eoden dunward.
cnihtes eoden abuten:	hii eoden al aboute:
& 3eorne biheolden.	and 3eorne bi-heolde.
iſe3en[1] þer on londe: [f.99b. c. 1.]	hii ſeh3en þar on londe:
ſellic werc ſtonden.	wonder work ſtonde.
þer weoren a þuſend cnihtes:	
mid wepnen wel idihten.	
and alle þa ðer[2] to iwiten:	
biwuſten wel heore ſcipen.	
þa ſpæc M^{9}lin:	þo ſpac Merlyn:
& ſpileden mid þan cnihten.	and ſaide to þe cnihtes.
Cnihtes 3e beoð ſtronge:	þis ſtō beoþ longe:

The Britons went 'over [on] the fields to their tents, ' and worthily looked to (*or* took care of) their good weapons,' and there they gan to rest, as Merlin 'counselled [bade] them. On the fourth day then gan they to march, and proceeded to the hill, all well weaponed, where the marvellous work stood, great and most strong! Knights went upward, knights went downward, 'knights [they] went [all] about, and earnestly beheld *it*; they saw there on *the* land *the* marvellous work stand. 'There were a thousand knights with weapons well furnished, and all the others to wit guarded well their ships.' Then spake Merlin, and 'discoursed with [said to] the knights:

[1] heo feȝen?

[2] oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þaſ ſtanes beoð græte & longe.		and ȝe beoþ men ſtronge.
ȝe mote neh gon:		
& neodliche heom ſon on.		
ȝe mote uaſte heom wriðen:		
mid ſtrongen ſæil-rapen.		
ſcuuen & hebben:		suueþ and hebbeþ:
mid hæȝere ſtrenðe[1].		mid al ȝoure ſtrengþe.
treon græte & longe:		
þ beon swiðe ſtronge.		
& gað to ane ſtane:	10	and goþ to one ſtone:
ȝe alle glæue[2].		ȝe alle cleane.
and cumeð mid ſtregðe[1]:		
ȝif ȝe hine maȝen ſturien.		
Wel wuſte Merlin:		Ac wel wiſte Merlýn:
hu hit ſculde iwurðen.		hou hit wolde iworþe.
þa cnihtes to-ſtepen:		þis cnihteſ to-ſtapte:
mid muchelere ſtrengðe.		mid mochelere ſtrēgþe.
heo ſwunken ful swiðe:		hii ſwonke wel ſwiþe:
ah næfden heo fýȝe.		þeh hit lute holpe.
þat heo auer æine ſtan:	20	ne mihten hii alle:
ſturien mahten.		anne ſton welde.
M^{o}lin biheold Vther:		Merlýn bi-heold Vther:

" 'Knights, ye are strong; these stones are great and long [These stones are long, and ye are strong men]; 'ye must go nigh, and forcibly take hold of them; ye must wreathe them fast with strong sail-ropes'; shove and heave with 'utmost [all your] strength 'trees great and long, that are exceeding strong'; and go *ye* to one stone, all clean, 'and come *again* with strength, if ye may it stir.' " [But] Merlin wist well how it 'should [would] happen. 'The [These] knights advanced with mickle strength; they labored full 'greatly, 'but they had not power, *so* that they ever any stone might stir [though it helped *but* little; they all might not gain one stone]! Merlin beheld Uther, who was 'the [this] kings brother, and 'Merlin the pro-

[1] ſtrengðe? [2] clæne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe was þe kinges broðer.		þat was þis kingeſ broþer.
& þas word sæide:		
M^{9}lin þe witeȝe.		
Vther tih þe aȝan:		
& bonne þine cnihtes.		and bad him and his cnihteſ:
& ſtondeð al abutē:		ſtonde bi-halues.
& ȝeorne bi-haldeð.		
& beoð alle ſtille:		
þ na mn̄ þer ne ſturie.		
ær ich ſugge eou nu anan:		forte ich ſegge ȝou anon:
hu we ſcullen ſon on.	10	nimeþ ech ane ſton.
Vther droh hine abac:		
& bonnede hiſ cnihtes.		
þ ne bilafdēn þer nane:		
aneoweſte þan ſtane.		
al ſwa. feor ſwa a mon:		
mihte werpen ænne ſtan.	[c.2.]	
& Mærlin eode abutē:		Merlỳn eode aboute:
& ȝeornen gon bihalden.		
þrie he eode abuten:		
wið innen & wið uten.	20	wiþ ine and wiþ houte.
& ſturede hiſ tunge:		and ſtorede his. tonke[1]:
alſe he bede ſunge,		aſe he his bedes ſonge.
þus M^{9}lin dude þer:		þus Merlỳn dude þer:

phet said these words: "Uther, draw thee back, and assemble thy knights, and stand *ye* all about [bade him and his knights stand aside], 'and diligently behold, and be *ye* all still, *so* that no man there stir' 'ere [until] I say to you 'now' anon how we shall commence ["take *ye* each a stone"]." 'Uther drew him back, and assembled his knights, *so* that none there remained near the stones, as far as a man might cast a stone. And' Merlin went about, 'and diligently gan behold; thrice he went about,' within and without, and moved his tongue as *if* he sung [his] beads. Thus did Merlin

[1] tonge?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þ[1] cleopede he Vðær.	þo cleopede he Vther.
Vther com ſwiðe:	Vther com to me:
& alle þine cnihtes mid þe.	and alle þine cnihte ſ mid þe. [f. 80. c. 1.]
& winneð þas ſtanes alle:	and nimeþ þeos ſtones alle:
ne ſcullen ȝe læuen nænne.	ne ſolle ȝeo bi-leaue nanne.
for nu ȝe maȝen heom habben[2]:	for nou ȝe mawe heom hebbe:
swulche veðerene balles.	aſe feþerbeddes.
& ſwa ȝe ſculleð heom mid ræde:	and ſo ȝe ſolle mid reade:
to ure ſcipen lede.	to ȝoure ſipes leade.
þeos ſtanes heo ladden:	þe ſtones hii ladde:
swa Merlin heom radde.	aſe Merlȳ[3] heom radde.
& duden heō in heore ſcipen:	
& ſeileden uorð to iwiten.	
& swa heo gunnē wenden:	and wende forþ ſo long:
into þiſſen londe.	þat hii come to þiſſe londe.
& ladden heom in ann velde:	hii bere ȝam alle bolde:
þe if wunder ane brad.	and leide ȝam vp on wolde.
he if brad & swiðe muri:	þat was a ſtude wel [muri]:
on uæſt Ambreſ-burie.	ihote Ambres-buri. *Ambreſburi.*
þer Hengeſt biſwæc:	
Bruttes mid ſæxen.	
Mærlin heom gon rærē:	Merlȳn hem gan reare:

there; 'then called he Uther: "Uther, come 'quickly [to me], and all thy knights' with thee, and take *ye* these stones all; ye shall not leave one; for now ye may heave them as (like) feather 'balls [beds]; and so ye shall with counsel carry 'them' to 'our [your] ships." 'These [The] stones they carried *away*, as Merlin counselled them, 'and placed them in their ships, and sailed forth to wit,' and 'so they gan proceed into [proceeded forth so long, that they came to] this land, 'and brought them on a plain that is wondrously broad; broad it is and most pleasant, near [they bore them all bold, and laid them upon *a* weald that was a place well pleasant, named] Ambresbury, 'where Hengest betrayed (*or* destroyed) *the* Britons with sæxes.'

[1] þa? [2] hebben? [3] *R.* Merlȳn.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
alſe heo ſtoden ærer.	alſe hii ſto[1] ere.
swa næu[9] nan oder[2] mon:	so neuere non oþer man:
þene craft ne cuðe don.	þane craft ne couþe don.
ne næuer ær þer biforē:	
neſ na mon ſwa wiſ iboren.	
þat cuðe þet weorc rihten:	
& þa ſtanes dihten.	
þat tidende com to þan kinge:	þe tỳdinge com to þan kinge:
i þan norð ende.	of þan worc to his hinne.
of Merlines fore:	and of Merlỳn his vore:
& of Vthæres hiſ broðer.	and Vther his boþer[3].
þat heo weoren mid iſunde:	þat hii weren mid iſunde:
icumen to þiſſen londe.	icome to þiſſe londe.
& þ þat worc weſ al idiht:	and þat worc was al idiht:
& iſet up riht.	and iſet vp riht.
þe king wes an breoſte: [f.100.c.1.]	þe king was on lifue:
wūder ane bliðe.	wonderliche bliþe.
& lette beode huſtīge:	and lette beade al his folk muri:
ſwa wid ſwa weſ al hiſ lond.	
þat al hiſ folc ſwa swiðe muri:	
come to Amberes-buri.	þat hii come to Ambreſ-buri.
al hiſ drihtliche uolc:	wiþ houte delaie:
to White-ſunedæie.	in þan Witeſonedaiȝe.

Merlin gan rear them, as they ere stood, so never any other man could do the craft, 'nor ever ere there-before was any man so wise born, that could the work raise, and the stones dispose.' The tidings came to the king 'in the north end, [to his inn, of the work, and] of 'Merlins [Merlin his] proceeding, and 'of' Uther, his brother, that they were with safety come to this land, and that the work was all disposed, and set up right. The king was in 'breast [life] wondrously blithe; and caused 'a husting [all his merry folk] to be summoned, 'so wide as was all his land,' that 'all his merry folk [they] 'so very joyous' should come to Ambresbury, 'all his

[1] ſtode? [2] oðer? [3] *R.* broþer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þider com com[1] Aurilie þe king:	and þe king wolde þare beo:
& al his folc mid him.	and þane ſtude worþi.
a·Whiten-ſunēdæie:	
ıe þer wærf makede.	
ıl ſe ich þe wulle telle:	
a þiſſe boc-ſpelle.	
Weoren a þan walde:	þar were in þan wolde:
teldes itælded.	
in þan brade uelde:	
niȝe þuſend teldes.	niȝe þuſend teldes.
al þan Whitenſunendæi:	o þan Witeſonnedaẏ:
þe king a þan uelde læi.	þe king in þan felde laẏ. [c. 2.]
	he bar þare his croune:
	heȝe vppe on his heued.
hæt halȝien þe ſtude:	and lette halȝi þane ſtudė:
þe hæhte Stanhenge.	þat hatte Stonhenge.
þreo dæies fulle:	þreo daȝes folle:
wunede þe king ſtille.	þar laẏ þe king ſtille.
i þan þridde dæie:	
heȝe wurðede his duȝeðe.	
he makede tweie biſcopes:	he makede twei biſſopes:
wunder ane gode.	holi mē and gode.
Seint Dubriz to Kaerliun:	Seint Dubriz to Caẏrlion: *Dubriz.*

people, at [without delay, on the] Whitsunday, [and the king would be there, and honour the place]. 'Thither came Aurelie the king, and all his folk with him; on Whitsunday he there made *a* feast, as I will thee tell in this book-story. [There] were on the weald 'tents raised, on the broad plain,' nine thousand tents. 'All [On] the Whitsunday the king on the plain lay; [he bare there his crown, high upon his head]; 'ordered [and caused] the place to be hallowed, that hight Stonehenge. Full three days the king 'dwelt [lay there] still; 'on the third day, his people *he* highly honoured [*or* rewarded];' he made two bishops, 'wondrously [holy men

[1] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Samſon. to Eouuerwic ſeint Samſon.
beien heo iwurðen hali :/
& mid gode haȝe.
I þan feorðe dæie :/
duȝeðen to-dælden.
and ſwa ane ſtunde :/
hit ſtod a þan ilkē.
¶ Þa ȝet þer wes a luðer gume :/
Paſſent. Paſſent Vortigernes ſune.
wes þe ilke Paſſent :/
in to Waliſc londe iwēt.
and þer a þen ilke daȝen :/
wes bicumen ut-laȝe. [þer :/
Ah ne durſte he noht longe wunien
for Aurilie & for Vther. [[c.2.]
ah he biȝet ſcipen gode :/
& ferde bi ſæ flode.
in to Alemaine he uerde :/
mid fif hundred monnen.
& þer he biwon muchel uolc :/
& makeden ſcip-ferde.
& for ſwa longe :/
þat he com to þiſſe londe.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Euerwich ſeint Samſon.
beine hii were holy :/
and þorh god mihti.
In þan feorþe daie :/
þat folk him to-dealde.
and ſo hit one ſtunde :/
ſtod in þan ilke.
ÞE ȝet þar was on luþer gome :/
Paſcent Vortigerne his ſone.
waſ þes ilke Paſcent :/
in to Walſe lond iwend.
and þare in þan ilke daȝe :/
was bi-come vtlaȝe. [þær :/
Ac ne dorſte he noht longe wonie
for Aurelie and for Vther.
ac bi-ȝeat ſipes gode :/
and wende bi ſéé flode.
in to Alemaȳne he com :/
mid fif hundred manne.
in[1] þar bi-wan moche :/
and torn eft to þif londe.

and] good, Saint Dubriz at Kaerleon, *and* Saint Samson at York; both they 'became [were] holy, and 'with [through] God 'high [mighty]. On the fourth day 'people [the folk it] separated, and so a time it stood in the same *wise*. The yet there was a wicked man, Pascent, 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] son; was 'the [this] same Pascent gone into Welsh land, and there in the same days was become outlaw. But he durst not long dwell there, for Aurelie and for Uther; but 'he' procured good ships, and went by *the* sea-flood; into Germany he 'proceeded [came], with five hundred men, and there 'he' won much 'folk, and made *a* fleet,' and 'voyaged so long that he came [turned eft] to this land, into 'the Humber

[1] and?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ī to þere Humbre:	in to Norþhūbre:
þer he hærmes worhte.	þare he harmes wrohte.
Ah ne durſte he noht longe:	Ac ne dorſte he noht longe:
i þan ænde at-ſtonde.	in þan eande aſtonde.
Þe kin[1] ferde þider ward:	Þe king verde þiderward:
& Paſſent fleh aweiward.	and Paſcent fleoþ a-weiward.
æft[9] ſæ ſwa longe:	
þat he com to Irlonde.	into Ẏrlonde:
Sone he þer funde:	
þene king of þan londe.	
his heorte wes swiðe fær:	
he grette þene king Gillomar.	to king Gelomaur þe ſtronge. [f.80b.c.1.]
Hail ſeo þu Gillomar:	and grette þan kinge:
gumene ælder.	mid godes gretīge.
ich æm to þe icume:	Ich ham to þe icome:
ich wes Vortig[9]nes ſunė.	ich was Vortigeres ſone.
mi fader wes Brutlondes king:	mi fader was Brutlondes king:
he luuede þe þurh alle þing.	and louede þe þorh alle þing.
& ȝif þu woldeſt to-ȝere:	and ȝef þou woldeſt to-ȝere:
beon þider min iuare.	beo mine vere.
swa wit ſculden iſpæcken:	
& minne fader wel wreken.	to wreken mine fader deaþ:
& wel wreken þi folc:	and þin owe folkes.

[Northumber*land*], where he harm wrought. But he durst not long remain in the territory. The king marched thitherward, and Pascent fled awayward, 'by sea so long that he came' 'to [into] Ireland. 'Soon he found there the king of the land; [to king Gillomar the strong; and] 'his heart was very sore, he' greeted the king 'Gillomar' [with Gods greeting]: "'Hail be thou, Gillomar, chief of men!' I am to thee come; I was Vortigers son; my father was Britains king, 'he [and] loved thee through all things. And if thou wouldest now be my companion, 'as we shall agree,' 'and my father well avenge, and well avenge thy folk [to avenge my fathers

[1] king?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þ Vther her quælde.	þat Vther here fulde:
& þi felcuðe wærc:	þo he þe ſtoneſ fette.
þat heo[1] heonne droȝe.	
	halfendel þat kinelond:
	ich wolde ſet þe an hond.
& æc ich iherde ſuggen:	
þer ic ferde inne ſæ.	
þat þe king Aurilien:	
seoc iſ iwurðen.	
& lið inne Winchæſtre: [f.100b. c.1.]	
a bedde ful faſte.	
þu miht ileue me inoh:	
for þiſ iſ witerliche soð.	
Paſſēt & Gillomar:	þus Paſcent and Gillomar:
makeden heore forward þar.	makede foreward þar.
aðes heo ſworē:	oþeſ i[2] ſworen:
monie & unifolhȝe.	manyc and inowe.
þ heo woldē al þiſ lond:	þat hii wolde al þis lond:
fætten on hæore tweire hond.	ſette in hire tweire hond.
þe aðes weoren iſworene:	
ah æft heo weoren for-lorene.	
þe king gadere ferde:	þe king gadere ferde:
wide ȝeond hiſ ærde.	ouer al þan erþe.

death, and thine own folks] that Uther here 'killed, and thy marvellous work, that he hence drew [felled, when he fetched *away* the stones, *the* half-part of the kingdom I would set to thee in hand."] 'And eke I heard say, where I voyaged in *the* sea, that the king Aurelie is become sick, and lieth in Winchester, in bed full fast. Thou mayest believe me enow, for this is verily sooth."' [Thus] Pascent and Gillomar made 'their' compact there; oaths they swore, many and 'innumerable [enow], that they would set all this land in their two (joint) hands; 'the oaths were sworn, but eft they were broken!' The king gathered *a* host 'wide over his [over all the] land;

[1] he?

[2] hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
to þere sæ beoð iwende:	to þare ſéé hii beoþ iwend:	
Gillomar & Paſſen[1].	Gillomar and Paſcent.	
in to þan ſcipen eoden:		
& forð heom letten gliden.		
Forð heo wenden biliue:	Forþ hii eode blifue:	
þat heo comen to Meniue.	þat hii come to Menue.	[*Men*]*eue.*
þ wes a þan time:	þat was in þan time:	
tun ſwiðe hende.	toun ſwiþe hende.	
þ mō nu iwitterli:	þat me nou weterlẏ:	
clepeð ſeint Deouwi.	cleopeþ ſeint Daui.	
þer heo nomen hauene:		
mid heȝere bliſſe.		
ſcipen eodē a þat ſtrond:		
cnihtes eoden a þat lond.		
þa ſæide Paſſent:	þo Paſcent:	
touward Gillomar he went.	toward Gillomar went.	
Seie me king Gillomar:		
nu we beoð icumen her.		
Nu ich ſette þe an hond:	Ich ſette þe nou an hond:	
halfenuēdæl[2] þiſ kinelon[3].	haluendel þiſ kinelond.	
for iſ of Wīchaſtre icume:	for þar his of Wincheſtre icome:	
to me anes cnihtes ſune.	to me one cnihteſ ſone.	
& ſæið me ſwulne ræd:	and ſaiþ me ſochne read:	

to the sea [they] are gone, Gillomar and Pascent; 'into the ships *they* went, and forth let them glide'. Forth they proceeded quickly, *so* that they came to Meneve, that was in that time *a* town exceeding fair, that men now truly call Saint Davids. 'There they took haven with great bliss; *the* ships went on the strand, *the* knights went on the land.' Then 'said' Pascent,—toward Gillomar 'he' went,—"'Say me, king Gillomar, now we are come here'; now I set to thee in hand half-part this kingdom; for [there] is from Winchester come to me a knights son, and saith to me such advice,

[1] *R.* Passent *here and below.*

[2] halfendæl? haluendæl? *One syllable is redundant.* [3] kinelond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þ Aurilie wule beon dæd.		þat Aurelie wole beo dead. [c. 2.]
þat ufel if under hif ribben:		
þat ne mæi he noh[1] libben.		
her wit scullen wel wreken:		her we folle oure cun wel wreke:
unker wine-mæies.		
biwinnen hif wunseles: [c. 2.]		and þis lond a-winne.
swa us biþ alre seleſt.		
To þan kinge com þat word:		To þan kinge cō þat word:
in to Winchæstre.		In to Wyncheſtre.
þat Paſſent & Gillomar:	10	þat Paſcent and Gillomar:
weoren mid ferde icumen hær.		were mid ferde icome her.
þe king cleopede Vther:		þe king cleopede Vther:
þe wes hif leoue broþer.		þat was his owe broþer.
Vther beþ[2] uerde:		Vther bead ferde:
ȝeond al þiſſen ærde.		oueral þeos eorþe.
& far to ure feonden:		and wend to oure onfreondes:
& drif heom of ærde.		and drif heom of londe.
oþer þu heom fuſen:		
oþer þu heō feolle.		
Ich wolde faren æc:	20	and ich wolde eke:
ȝif ich neore swa ſeoc.		ȝef ich nere ſo ſeke.
ah ȝif ich mai beon feore:		ac al ſo ſone ſo ich maẏ:
ich þe cumen after ſone.		ich wolle þe after wende.

that Aurelie will be dead (die); 'the sickness is under his ribs, *so* that he may not live.' Here we shall well avenge our kindred, [and] win 'his territories [this land], 'as to us shall be best of all.'" To the king came the word, into Winchester, that Pascent and Gillomar were come here with *an* army. The king called Uther, who was his 'dear [own] brother:—"Uther, summon forces over all this land, and march to our enemies, and drive them from land; 'either thou them disperse, either thou them fell.' [And] I would eke 'fare,' if I were not so sick; but 'if I may be sound (convalescent), I will come after thee soon [as soon as I may, I will after thee march]." Uther did

[1] noht?

[2] bed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Al dude Uðer:	Al dude Vther:
swa þe king him ſæide þer.	alſe þe king hī ſaide þar.
& Paſſen at ſēit Deowi:	And Paſcent at ſeint Daui:
sorȝen iworhte þer bi.	mochel forewe dude þar bi.
and þe king Gillomar:	
muchel forȝe he dude þær.	
Brutlond heo þurh-arnden:	Brutlond hii þorh-hearnde:
hærȝede & barden[1].	and flowen and barnde.
& Vther i þiſſen ærde:	
ſumnede hiſ ferde.	
& hit wes longe uirſt:	
ær he mihte ſuſen a-riht.	
& Paſſent Weſt Waliſc lond:	and al Weſt Walſe lond:
ſet an hiſ aȝere hond.	ſette in hire owe hond.
Hit wes an ane dæie:	Hit was in on tỳme:
his duȝeðe weorē bliðe.	þat þe folk was bliþe.
þer com faren Appas:	þar com faren Appas: *Appas.*
feōdes hine vælden[2].	
to Paſſent he quað þuf:	to Paſcent and ſaide þuf.
Cum hidere to uſ.	
ich þe wulle telle:	
of ane wil-ſpalle[3].	
Ich waſ at Winchæſtre:	Ich was in Wỳncheſtre:
at þine wiðer-iwinnē.	mid þan ſeake kinge.

all as the king said to him there. And Pascent at Saint Davids 'wrought [made] thereby [much] sorrow; 'and to the king Gillomar much sorrow he did there'; Britain they through-ran, 'harried [and slew] and burnt. 'And Uther in this land assembled his host, and it was long time ere he might march aright.' And 'Pascent' set in 'his [their] own hand [all] West Welsh land. It was on a 'day [time], 'his people were [that the folk 'was blithe, there arrived Appas,—*the* fiends him conveyed! To Pascent 'he quoth [and said] thus: "'Come hither to us. I will thee tell of a joyful tiding.' I was 'at [in] Winchester, with 'thine adversaries [the sick king],

[1] barnden? [2] vereden? *Cf. l.* 17787. *et alib.* [3] wil-ſpelle?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þer liȝ þe king ſeoc:	þar he liþ in bedde:
& ſorh-ful an heorten.	and ȝet wole libbe.
what ſcal beon mi mede:	ac wat ſal beon mi mede:
ȝif ic þider ride.	
& ich þe ſwa iqueme:	
þat ich hine aquele[1]. [f.101.c.1.]	ȝef ich hine acwelle.
Þa andſwarede Paſſen:	þo anſwerede Paſcent:
and toward Appaſe went.	and toward Appas he went.
Ich bi-hate þe todæi:	Ich bi-hote þe to day: [f.81.c.1.]
an hūdrad pund for ic mæi.	an hundred pund an wel ich may.
ȝif þu me iquemeſt:	
þat þu hine aq̄lle.	ȝef þou ine cwaleſt.
Treoðē he[2] plihtē:	Treouþe hii plihte:
þeſne ſwikedom to dihten.	þiſne ſwikedom to dihte.
Appas eode to buī:	Appas eode to boure:
& þeſne balu mæinde.	and þane balu meynde.
he wes an hæðene gume:	he was an heaþene gome:
ut of Saxlonde icume.	vt of Saxlonde icome.
Muneckes claðes he nom an:	Monekene cloþes he nom:
he ſcar hiſ crune ufēen.	and ſar him croune ouenon.
he nom him tweien iueren:	
& forð he gon fuſen.	
& wende anan rihte:	and wende a-non riht:

where 'the king [he] lieth 'sick, and sorrowful in heart [in bed, and yet would live. But] what shall be my meed, if I ' thither ride, and I so gratify thee, that I ' kill him?" Then answered Pascent, and toward Appas he went: "I promise thee to-day a hundred pounds, 'for [and well] I may, if thou ' me *so* gratifiest, that thou ' 'kill [killest] him. Troth they plight this treachery to contrive. Appas went to *his* chamber, and 'this [the] mischief meditated; he was a heathen man, out of Saxland come. Monks clothes he took ' on,' 'he [and] shaved 'his crown upon [him upon *the* crown]; ' he took to him two companions, and forth he gan proceed,' and went anon

[1] *The letters* le *are written above the line.* [2] heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
in to Winchæſtre.	in to Wyncheſtre.
ſwulc hit weore an hali mon:	alſe hit were an holi mā:
þe hæðene deouel.	þe heaþene deauel.
He wende to þaṇ burhȝate:	He wende to þa borhȝate:
þer þe king on bure lai.	
& gratte þene dureward:	and þare doreward grette.
godes grætinge.	
& band[1] hine an hiȝīge:	and bad hine an hiȝenge:
gan in to þan kinge.	go to þan kinge.
& ſuggen him to ſoðe:	and ſeggen him to ſoþe:
þ Vther hiſ broðer.	þat Vther his broþer.
hæfde him þider i-ſend:	hadde him þider i-ſend:
feolne læche.	þane king to hele.
þene bezſte læche:	
þe wunede an æi londe.	
þe auer ælcne ſucne mon:	
of ufele bringē con.	
þuſ læh þe laðe mon:	þus he leh þe loþe man:
leodene-kinge.	loh him worþe drihte.
for Uther weſ ifarē:	for Vther was forþ ifare:
forð mid hiſ ferde.	mid mochelere ferde.
no nauer Vther hine ne iſæh:	ne neuere Vther hine ne ſeh:
ne þider hine i-ſende.	ne þider ne ſende.

right into Winchester, as *if* it were a holy man,—the heathen devil! He went to the burgh-gate, 'where the king lay in chamber,' and greeted the door-keeper '*with* Gods greeting;' and bade him in haste go 'in'to the king, and say to him in sooth, that Uther his brother had sent him thither 'a good leech [the king to heal]; 'the best leech that dwelt in any land, that ever any sick man *out* of sickness can bring.' Thus [he] lied, the odious man, 'to the monarch,—[may *the* Lord be to him loath!],—for Uther was gone forth with 'his [great] army, nor ever him saw (had seen) Uther, nor thither 'him' sent! 'And [But] the king weened 'that' it were sooth, and

[1] bad?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& þe king wende þat hit weore foð:
& ilefde hī inoh.
Wha wolde wene:
þat he swike weore.
for an hif bare liche:
he weorede ane burne.
þer ufenen he hæfde: [c. 2.]
ane ladliche here.
& feoðden[1] ane cule:
of ane blake claðe.
iblæcched he hæfede hif licame:
fwulc ifmitte of cole.
He cneolede to þan kingge:
hif fpæche wes ful milde.
Hail feo þu Aurilien:
aðeleft alre kīgē.
hider me fende Vther:
þe if þin aȝen broðer.
& ich al for godes luue:
æm to þe her icume.
for ich þe wulle helen:
& al hal makien.
for criftef leofe godef fune:
ne ræche ich nane garfūe.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ac þe king wende hit were foþ:
and ilefde him inoh.
Wo wolde wene:
þat he fwike were.
for nexft his liche:
he werede þe eare.
þar ouenan he hadde:
one blake couele.

He cneolede to þan kinge:
his fpeche was wel milde.
Haÿl beo þou Aurelie þe king: [c. 2.]
Bruttene deorling.
hider me fende Vther:
þat his þin owe broþer.
and ich al for godes loue:
ham to þe hider icome.
for ich wolle for criftes loue:
al hol þe makie.

believed him enow. Who would ween that he were traitor!—for 'on his bare [next his] body he wore 'a cuirass [the hair-cloth], thereupon he had a 'loathly hair-cloth [black cowl], 'and then a cowl of a black cloth; he had blackened his body, as *if* smutted with coal!' He kneeled to the king, his speech was 'full [well] mild: "Hail be thou, Aurelie, 'noblest of all kings [the king, Britains darling]! Hither me sent Uther, that is thine own brother; and I all for Gods love am 'here [hither] to thee come. For I will 'heal, and' all whole thee make, for Christs love, 'Gods son; I

[1] feoðden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

no mede of londe :/
ne of ſeoluere no of golde.
ah ælche ſeocken ich hit do :/
for luue of mine drihtene.
Þif iherde þe king :/
hit wes him ſwiðe iq̄me.
ah whar if æuere æi mon :/
a þiſſe middel-ærde.
þe þif wolde wenen :/
þ he ſwiken weore.
He nō hif glæſ-fat anan :/
& þe king mæh þer on.
anne while after þan :/
þat glæſ-fat an honden nom.
& ſceoweden hit forð rihtes :/
biforen þaf kinges cnihtes.
& þ° fæide anan :/
Appas þe haðene mon.
ȝif ȝe me wulleð ileuē :/
ær to marwen eue.
þes king ſcal beon al hal :/
ihaled an his willē.
þa weoren bliðe :/
alle þa weoren i bure.
Appas eoden in ænne bur :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þis ihorde þe king :/
hit was him ſwiþe icweme.
for ware his euere þe man :/
in þiſſe worle-riche.
þat wolde hit iwene :/
þat he ſoch were.
He nam his vrinal anon :/
an þe king meh þar on.
one wile after þan :/
þe vrnal an honde he nā.
and ſewede forþ rihtes :/
bi-vore alle his cnihtes.
and þus ſaide anon :/
Appaf þe luþer man.

Are to morewe heue.
al hol þou ſalt iworþe.

Þo weren bliþe :/
alle þat weren in boure.
Appas wende to boure :/

reck not any treasure, nor meed of land, nor of silver nor of gold, but to each sick *person* I do it for love of my Lord.'" The king heard this, it was to him most agreeable;—'but [for] where is ever 'any [the] man in this 'middle-earth [worlds realm], that would 'this [it] ween, that he were 'traitor [such]! He took his 'glass vessel [urinal] anon, and the king urined therein; a while after that, the 'glass-vessel [urinal] in hand [he] took, and viewed 'it' forth-right before 'the kings [all his] knights; and thus said anon Appas, the 'heathen [wicked] man: "'If ye will me believe' ere to-morrow eve 'this king shall be [thou shalt become] all whole, 'healed at his will'." Then were blithe all that were in chamber. Appas went 'in a [to] cham-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& þat balu mæinde.
& dude þer to atter:
þa ſcamoiene[1] hatte.
& com ut forð rihteſ:
imōg þa burh-cnihtes. [f.101b.c.1.]
& þan kinge[2] he gon dæle:
muchel canele.
& gingiuere & licoriz:
he hom lefliche ȝef.
alle heo nomen þ lac:
& he heom alle bi-ſwac.
þeos ſwike feol a cneowe:
at-foren þan leod-kinge.
& þ ſaide[3] him to:
Lauerd nu þu ſcalt a-fon.
of þiſſen drinchen ane dæle:
þat ſcal beon þin hale.
& þe king up drong:
& þer þ atter he dronc.
Anan ſwa he hafde idrunke:
þe leche hine adun læide.
þus ſeide Appas:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and þane balu meingde.
and dude þar to hatter:
þat ſcamoine hatte.
and com vt forþrihtes:
amōg alle his cnihtes.
and to ȝam he gan deale:
mochel canele.
alle hii nemen þat lock:
and he alle bi-ſwoc.
þes ſwike ful a-cnowe:
bi-vore þan kinge.
and þus ſaide him to:
Louerd þou ſalt þis vnder-fo.
of þis drench on deal:
and þat ſal beon þin heal. [f.81b.c.1.]
And þe king hit drong:
to his feȝe-ſiþe.

ber, and the mischief meditated, and put thereto poison, that hight scamony, and came out forth-right among the chamber-knights [all his knights], and to the knights [them] he gan to distribute much canel, 'and gingiver and liquorice he gave them lovingly.' They all took the gift, and he deceived 'them' all. This traitor fell on *his* knees before the monarch [king], and thus said to him: "Lord, 'now' thou shalt receive [this,] of this drink a part, [and] that shall be thy cure." And the king up drank, and there the poison he drank [drank it to his *own* destruction]. 'Anon as he had drank, the leech laid him down. Thus said Appas to the chamber-

[1] *The last two letters of this word are added by a second hand.*
[2] cnihtes?
[3] ſaide sæide *man. pr., but the second word struck out man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to þan bur-cnihtes.
Wreoð nu wel þene king:
þ he ligge a fwæting.
for ich fugge eou þurh alle þing:
al hal beoð aure[1] king.
& ich wulle to mine inne:
and fpeken wiþ mine monnen.
& to þere mid-nihte:
ich cum̃ forð rihtes.
mid oðer lache-c̃afte:
þa fculleð beon him liðe.
Forð wende þe fwike:
þe king læi on sweuete.
Appaf to hif inne:
& fpec wiþ his monnē.
mid ftilleliche rune:
biftal of þan tune.

and þe leche ftille:
bi-ftal vt of þan halle.
and awei him wēt:
toward Gillomar and Pafcent.

To þere mid-nihte:
þa fende þa burh-cnihtes.
sixe of heore monne:
to Appafes inne.

knights: "Wrap now the king well, that he lie in sweating; for I say to you through all things, all whole shall your king be. And I will *go* to my inn, and speak with my men, and at the midnight I will come *again* forthright, with other leechcraft, that shall be to him healing." Forth went the traitor,—the king lay in slumber,—Appas to his inn, and spake with his men'; 'with stilly counsel stole from the town.' [And the leech stilly stole out of the hall (palace), and away went he toward Gillomar and Pascent.] 'At the midnight then sent the chamber-knights six of their men to Appases inn; they weened to find him, and bring him to the king. Then was he

[1] coure?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo wenden hine to finden :/
and longi hine to þan kinge.
þa wes he iflo3en :/
& feondes hine uæreden.
þa men a3ein comē :/
þer þe king wunede. [c. 2.]
& cuddē[1] i þan bure :/
of Appafes fore.
þa mihte me ifeon :/
for3en ino3e beon.
cnihtes feollen a-dun :/
& 3irnden heore dæðes.
þer wes muchel wanīg :/
heortne granīg.
þer wes moni reolic fpel :/
þer wes gumene i3el.
Heo leopen to þan bedde :/
& þene king hedden.
þa 3et he lai on fweouete :/
& on muchele fwate.
Þæ cnihtef mid weope :/
þene king awehten.
& heo him to-cleopeden :/
mid mildere fteuene.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

And 3it þe king :/
al to-fwate an hi3enge.
and cleopede his cnihtes :/
to him anon rihtes.

flown, and *the* fiends him carried! The men came back where the king dwelt, and made known in the chamber of Appases departure. Then might men see sorrow enow be! Knights fell down, and yearned their deaths; there was mickle lamentation *and* heart-groaning, there was many *a* piteous speech, there was yell of men! They leapt to the bed, and beheld the king; the yet he lay in slumber, and in great sweat. [And yet the king all over sweated speedily; and called his knights to him anon right.] 'The knights with weeping awakened the king, and they called to him with

[1] cuðden ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Lauerd hu mid þe:
hu beoð þine beouſte[1].
for nu if ure læche:
ifaren buten laue.
iliðen ut of hirede:
for hæne uf bilæued.
þe king heom ȝif andſware:
Al ic æm to-ſwollen.
& þer nif nan oder[2] ræd:
nu nan ich wurðe dæd.
& ich bidde forð rihtes:
ȝe beoð mine cnihtes.
þat ȝe græten Vther:
þe if min aȝe broðer.
& biddeð hine halden:
mi lond an on-walde.
Godd ſeolf þurh alle þing:
lete hine beon god king.
& hateð hine beon kene:
& æiwær riht deme.
wærcche[3] uolke for fæder:
hænen to frouere.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ſeide ȝam an ſtrongne read:
þat he moſte beo dead.
And ȝeo cnihtes hende:

mild voice: "Lord, how *is it* with thee? how is thy harm? For now is our leech departed without leave, gone out of court, *and* left us as wretches.' The king gave them answer: "I am all over swollen, and there is no other hap, now anon I shall be dead. And I bid forth-right, ye *who* are my knights [and said to them an evil hap, that he must die. "And ye, fair knights], 'that ye greet Uther, who is my own brother, and bid him hold my land in *his* sway. God *him*self through all things let him be *a* good king! And bid him be keen, and always deem right, as *a* father to *the* poor folk, to *the* destitute for comfort;—then may he hold *the* land in

[1] *Perhaps an error for* beorſte? *A plummet-mark in the margin indicates some mistake.*

[2] oðer?

[3] wræcche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þenne maie he halde:	
lond an on-walde.	
& nu to dai þennè ich beo dæd:	
nimeð alle anne ræd.	
& leteð me ilenge: [f. 102.c.1.]	
riht to Stanhenge.	bringeþ me at Stōhenge.
þer lið muchel of mine cunne:	
þurh Sæxen a-qualde.	
& of-fended[1] biſcopes:	
& boc-ilarede men.	
mi gold and mi ſeoluer:	
deled[2] for mire ſaule.	
& legged me an æſt ænde:	and leggeþ me þar in:
inne Stan-henge.	ware liþ mochel of mine cun.
Næs þer nan oðer ræd:	
þer iward[3] þe king dæd.	
& al ſwa hiſ men duden:	And al þus hit was iwroht:
swa þe king demde.	alſe þe king hit hadde idiht.
Inne Wæles[4] wes Vther:	And Vther was in Walis:
& her of næs naðing war.	
neuere þurh nare liſte:	
her of naþing nuſte.	and noht her of nuſte.

power. And now today, when I be dead, take *ye* all one counsel, and' 'cause me to be brought right [bring me] to Stonehenge, ' where lie much of my kindred, by *the* Saxons killed. And send for bishops, and book-learned men; my gold and my silver distribute for my soul,' and lay me 'at *the* east end, in Stonehenge [therein, where lie much of my kindred]. ' There was no other hap,—there was the king dead!' And all 'so his men did [thus it was wrought] as the king 'directed. [had ordered it. And] Uther was in Wales, and hereof ' was nothing ware, never through any art hereof' 'nothing [nought] wist; nevertheless he had with him the prophet

[1] of-ſendeð? [2] deleð? [3] iwarð?

[4] *The first hand has only written* wæs, *which is corrected by the second into* Wæles wes.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
naðeles he hafede mid him:	noþeles he hadde mid him:
þene witeȝe M^{9}lin.	þane wittẏ Merlẏn.
aȝeineden[1] þere uerde:	
þe icumē wef to ærde.	
Vther lai inne Wales:	
in anne wilderne.	
& fundede to uarene:	
wið Paſſent to fehten.	
þa a þan auen time:	In þan euetime:
þe mone gon to ſcine.	þe mone gan to ſcẏne.
wel neh al ſwa brihte:	
swa þe ſūne-lihte.	
þa iſehȝen heo feorre:	hii iſeȝen a-vorre:
ænne ſelcuðe ſterre.	one ſelcouþe ſtorre.
he wes brad he wes muchel:	
he wes unimete.	
of hī comē leomen:	
igaſtliche ſcinē.	
þe ſteorre if ihate:	þat his ihote:
a latin comete.	a latȳn Comete.
Com of þan ſteore:	Com of þan ſtorre:
a leome ſwiðe ſturne.	a leom ſwiþe ſturne.
at þeos leomen ende:	at þe leomes ende:
wes a drake hende.	was a drake hende.
of þef draken muðe:	of þan drakes mouþe:
leomen comē inohȝe.	leames come inowe.

Merlin; *he* proceeded towards the army that was come to *the* land. Uther lay in Wales, in a wilderness, and prepared to march, to fight with Pascent. Then' in the eventime, the moon gan to shine, 'well nigh all as bright as the sun-light. Then' they saw afar a marvellous star; 'it was broad, it was large, it was immense! From it came gleams terribly shining'; 'the star [that] is named in Latin, comet. Came from the star a gleam most fierce; at 'this [the] gleams end was a dragon fair; from 'this [the] dragons

[1] aȝenden, *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Ah tweien þer weoren muchele:	Ac tweie þar were mochele:
þere oðere vnimete.	þe oþre oniliche.
þe an droh touward France:	þe on droh to F^{n}nce:
þe oðer touward Irlonde. [c.2.]	þe oþer to Ỳrlonde.
Þe leome þe toward France droh:	Þe leame þat toward France droh:
he wes briht vnifoh.	he was him seolf briht inoh. [c.2.]
to Mut[1] Giu wæs ifeȝen:	
þa feolcuðe takne.	
þe leome þa ſtrehte weſt riht:	þe leome þạt ſtrahte weſt riht:
a ſeouen bæmen wes idiht.	a ſeoue bemes hit was idiht.
Þiſ iſah Vðer:	Þis i-ſeh Vther:
ah nas he noht her of war.	ac he nas noht fale war.
fær him wes an heorte:	
& feolliche auæred[2].	
ſwa wes al þat muchele folc:	
þat wes in þere uerde.	
Vðer cleopede M^{y}lin:	Vther cleopedę Merlỳn:
& bad hinc cume to him.	and bad hine coṁe to him.
& þuſ ſeide him to:	and þus ſaide him to:
mid ſwiðe ſofte worden.	mid mildere ſpeche.
Mærlin M^{y}lī: leoue freond:	Merlỳn leoue freond:
fonde þi ſeoluen.	fonde þi ſeolue.
& ſæie uſ of þan tacne:	and ſei vs of þan tockne:

mouth came gleams enow! But twain there were mickle, unlike to the others; the one drew (spread) 'toward [to] France, the other 'toward [to] Ireland. The gleam that toward France drew, it was [itself] bright enow; 'to Munt-Giu was seen the marvellous token!' The gleam that stretched right west, [it] was disposed in seven beams. Uther saw this,—but he was not 'hereof [much] wary,—' sorrow was to him in heart, and strangely *he was* frightened; so was all the great folk that was in the host.' Uther called Merlin, and bade him come to him, and thus said to him with 'very soft words [mild speech]: "Merlin, 'Merlin,' dear friend, prove thyself, and say to us of the token that we have seen; for 'I wot not

[1] Munt?

[2] *Some alteration has been made in this word.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þe we i-fæȝen habbeoð.
for nat ich on worlde-riche:
to whan hit ſcal ſwurðen.
buten þu uf raden:
aȝæn we moten riden.
Mærlin ſæt him ſtille:
longe ane ſtunde.
swulc he mid ſweuene:
swunke ful ſwiðe.
Heo ſeidē þe hit iſeȝen:
mid heore aȝen æȝen.
þat ofte he hine wende:
ſwulc hit a wurem weore.
Late he gō awakien:
þa gon he to quakien.
& þas word ſeide:
M[9]lin þa witeȝe.
Wæilawæi wæilawæi:
a þiſſere worlde-riche.
muchel if þa forȝe:
þe iſiȝen if to londe.
Whær ært þu Vther:
ſiten me biuoren her.
& ich þe wulle suggen:
of forȝen inoȝen.
Dæd if Aurilie:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat we iſeihȝe habbeþ.

for bote þou vs reade:
aȝein we mote ride.
Merlýn ſat wel ſtille:
one lange ſtunde.
alſe he mid ſweune[1]:
wel ſore ſwonke.
Hii ſaide þat hit iſehe:
mid hire owene heȝe.
þat ofte he hine wende:
alſe hit a worm were.
Late he gan a-wakie:
þo gan he to cwakie.
and þeos word ſaide:
Merlýn þe wiſe.
Waý la waý:
in þiſſe worle-riche.
moche his þe ſorewe:
þat iſeȝen his to londe.
War hart þou Vther:
ſete me bi-vore her.
and ich þe wolle ſegge:
of maný cunnes ſorewe.
Dead his Aurelie þi broþer:

in *the* worlds realm to what *end* it shall befall;' unless thou us counsel, back we must ride." Merlin sate 'him [well] still, a long time, as *if* he with dream 'full greatly [well sorely] labored. They said who saw it with their own eyes, that oft he turned him, as *if* it were a worm! At length he gan to awake, then gan he to quake, and these words said Merlin the 'prophet [wise]: "Walaway! Walaway! in this worlds realm, much is the sorrow that is come to *the* land! Where art thou, Uther? Set before me here, and I will say to thee of 'sorrows enow [many kind of sorrow].

[1] ſweuenc?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

kingene aðeleſt.
ſwa if þe oðer: [f. 102ᵇ.c.1.]
Coſtanz þi broðer.
þe Uortigᵉne biſwac:
mid his ſwike-dome.
Nu haueð Vortigernes cun:
Aurilien aquald.
nu þu ært al ane:
of aðele þine cunne.
Ah ne hope þu to ræde:
of heom þat liggeð dede.
ah þenc of þe ſeoluen:
ſeolðen þe beoð ȝiueþe.
for ſelde he aſwint:
þe to him ſeolue þencheð.
þu ſcalt wurðen god king:
& gumenene lauerd.
& þu to þere mid-nihte:
wepne þine cnihtes.
þat we i þan morȝen-liht:
mæȝen come forð riht.
forn at Meneue:
þer þu ſcat[1] fihtē.
ær þu þenne wende:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and Conſtance þin oþer.
þat Vortiger bi-ſwok:
mid his ſwikedome.
Nou haueþ Vortigerne his cun:
Aurelie acwelled.
nou hart þou al one:
of alle þine kunne. [f.82.c.1.]
Ac ne hope þou to reade:
of hā þat liggeþ deade.
ac þench ou þou miht þi ſeolf:
þine kinedom werie.
for ſealde he aſwint:
þat to him seolue treſteþ.
þou ſalt worþe god king:
and ſteorne þorh alle þing.
And þou at þare midniht:
wepne þine cnihtes.
þat þou at þan moreliht:
maȝe be a-redi to þe filt.

Dead is Aurelie [thy brother], 'noblest of kings'; 'so is the other, Constance, thy brother [and Constance, thine other], whom Vortiger betrayed with his treachery. Now hath 'Vortigers [Vortiger his] kin killed Aurelie; now art thou alone of 'thy noble [all thy] kindred. But hope not thou for counsel of them that lie dead, but think 'of thyself,—prosperity shall be given to thee [how thou mightest thyself defend thy kingdom];—for seldom he faileth, who to himself 'thinketh [trusteth]. Thou shalt become good king, and 'lord of men [stern through all things]. And thou at the midnight weapon thy knights, that 'we in [thou at] the morning-light may 'come forth-right [bè ready for the fight], 'before Meneve,—there thou

[1] *R.* ſcalt.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho. C. xiii.
ſclæht þu ſcalt makien.	
þu ſcalt beien flæ þer:'	for þou ſalt beiene flen þar:'
Paſſent and Gillomar.	Paſcent and Gillomar.
& monie þuſend of þan gumen:'	and mani þouſend of þan gomes:'
þat beoð mid heom hider icumen.	þat beoþ mid ȝam icome.
þat taken of þan ſteorre:'	þe tockne of þan ſtorre:'
þe we iſaȝen swa feorre.	þat we iſehen ſo forre.
soð hit if Uðer leof:'	soþ hit was Vther leof:'
þ tacnede þines broðer dæd.	hit tocknede þine broþer deaþ.
Biuoren þa ſteorre wes þæ drake:'	Bi-fore þan ſtor was þe drake:'
elcches wurmeſ vnimake.	eche worme onimake.
þ takē wes a[1] þire half:'	þat tockne was in þine half:'
þ weore[2] þu Uðer þi ſeolf.	þat were Vther þou þi ſeolf.
þu ſcalt habben þis lond:'	
& þin æie beon muchel & ſtrong.	
Swulche toknen beoð uncuðe:'	þe tocknes oncouþe:'
of þaſ draken muðe.	þat come of þe drakes mouþe.
eoden tweien leomen:' [c. 2.]	þat weren tweie leomes:'
wunder ane lihte.	wonderliche lihte.
þe an ſtrehte feor foð:'	þe on ſtrehte for fuþ:'
ut ouer France.	vt ouer France.
þ if an æiȝef-ful ſune:'	þat his a witfol ſone:'
þ of þine licame ſcal cume.	þat of þine licame ſal come.

shalt fight; ere thou thence depart, slaughter thou shalt make'; [for] thou shalt both slay there, Pascent and Gillomar, and many thousands of the men that are with them 'hither' come. The token of the star, that we saw so far, sooth it 'is [was], Uther dear, 'that [it] betokened thy brothers death. Before the star was the dragon, to each worm unlike; the token was on thy half, that was thou, Uther, thyself! 'Thou shalt have this land, and thy authority be great and strong.' 'Such [The] tokens 'are' marvellous [that came] of the dragons mouth; two gleams 'proceeded *forth* [that were] wondrously light. The one stretched far south, out over France,—that is (signifies) a 'powerful [wise] son, that of thy body shall come, who shall

[1] a *is interlined.* [2] *At first written* weoren, *but* n *struck out.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe ſcal moni kine-lōd:	þat ſal many cūne lond:
mid compe biwinne.	a-winne to his hond.
& an ende he ſcal rede:	
moniane þeode.	
þe oðer leome þe ſtrahte weſt:	þe oþer þat ſtrealhte weſt:
wunder ane liht̃e.	
þat bið a dohter:	þat ſal beon a dohter:
þa þe bið swiðe deore.	
þe leome gon ſtriden:	þe leomeſ þat þar ſtrehte:
a ueire ſeoue ſtrengen.	in to ſoue ſtrengeſ. [c. 2.]
þ beod[1] ſeouen uæire ſunen:	þat beoþ ſoue ſones:
þe of þine dohter ſculleð cumen.	þat ſolleþ of þine dohter come.
þe ſcullen moni kine-lond:	
biȝiten to heore aȝere hond.	
heo ſculleð beon wel ſtronge:	hii ſollen beo wel ſtronge:
a water & a londe.	a water and a londe.
Nu þu haueſt of me ihærde:	Nou þon haueſt of me ihord:
þe wule halpen.	wat þe wolleþ helpe.
ſwiðe uorð rihteſ:	ſwiþe forþ riht:
far to þine fihte.	wend to þine fihte.
& Merlin gon to ſlume[2]:	
ſwulc he wolde ſlæpen.	
Vp araſ Vðer:	Vp aros Vther:

win many 'kingdoms with conflict [kind of land to his hand], 'and in *the* end he shall rule many a nation.' The other gleam that stretched west, 'wondrously light,' that shall be a daughter, 'that to thee shall be exceeding dear.' The gleams that 'gan to spread in [there stretched into] seven 'fair' strings, are seven 'fair' sons, who shall come of thy daughter, 'who shall win to their own hand many *a* kingdom'; they shall be well strong, on water and on land. Now thou hast of me heard what will thee help, quickly forth-right march to thy fight." 'And Merlin gan to slumber, as *if* he would sleep.' Up arose Uther, 'now he [who then] was [both] wise and

[1] beoð ?

[2] *Written at first* ſlum̃e, *for* ſlumen, *but the stroke above the* m *afterwards erased.*

[3] *Interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
nu he wef[3] wif & war.	þat was þo boþe wis and war.
& hæhte his cnihtes:	and hehte his cnihtes:
to horſe forð rihtes.	to horſe forþ rihteſ.
& hæhte heom biliue:	and hehte heō bliuē fare:
faren to Meneue.	toward Menue.
& alle heore fare græiðen:	
alle[1] heo ſcullē fehten.	
I þan flokke biforen:	In þan flocke bi-vore:
he hafde cnihtes wel icoren.	weren cnihtes wel icore.
ſeouen þuſend cnihte:	soue þouſend cnihtes:
ohte men & wihte.	ohte men and wihte.
hafde he amidde:	hadde he a-midde:
cnihteſ wel bihedde.	cnihtes wel bi-hedde.
oðer ſeoue þuſend:	oþer ſoue þouſend:
ſelere þeinen.	boldere cnihtes.
hæ hede[2] bæfte: [f.103.c.1.]	and eke he hadde bi-hinde:
ohtere cnihten.	
ahtene þuſen[3]:	ehtetene þouſend.
ohtere kempen.	
& of ganninde uolke:	and of goinge folk:
ſwa feole þuſend.	ſo many þouſendes.
þ a nane ſpelle:	þat in none ſpelle:
ne mihte heom na mon tellen.	ne mihte heom no man telle.
Forð heo wenden biliue:	Forþ hii wende blife:
þ heo comē to Meneue.	þat hii come to Menue.

wary, and ordered his knights forth-right to horse, and ordered them quickly to proceed 'to [toward] Meneve; 'and all their expedition (*or* forces) to prepare, as *if* they should fight.' In the troop before 'he had [were] knights well chosen; seven thousand knights,' brave men and active. He had in *the* middle knights well beseen, other seven thousand 'good thanes. [bold knights. And eke] he had behind 'brave knights' eighteen thousand, 'brave warriors,' and of folk on foot so many thousands, that in no speech might any man tell them! Forth they marched quickly, until they came

[1] alſe? [2] he hafede? [3] þuſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þer iſah Gillomar:	þo i-ſeh Gillomar:
Whar him com Vther.	war hī com Vther.
& hæhde[1] hiſ cnihtes:	and hehte his cnihtes:
to wepne forð rihtes.	wepni heom forþrihteſ.
& heo to-biliue:	And hii to-bliue:
&[2] gripen heore cniues[3].	neomen hire cniues.
& of mid here breches:	
ſcolcuðe weoren heore lecheſ.	
& igripen an heore hond[4]:	and gripen on hire honde:
heore ſperen longe.	hire ſperes longe.
hengen an heore æxle:	
mucle wi-æxe.	
þa fæide Gillomar þe king:	þo ſaide Gillomar þe king:
a ſwiðe ſeollic þing.	a ſwiþe ſellich þing.
Her cumeð Vðer:	Her comeþ Vther:
Aurilies broder.	Aurelie his broþer.
he wule bidden mi grið:	he wole bidde min griþ: [f.82ᵇ.c.1.]
& noht fehten me wið.	and noht fihte me wiþ.
þa formeſte beoð hiſ ſweines:	
farē we heom to-ȝeines[5].	
ne þurfē ȝe nauere rehchen:	
þah ȝe flæn þa wrecchen.	
For ȝif Vther Coſtantineſ ſune:	And ȝef Vther Conſtantines ſone:

to Meneve. 'There [Then] saw Gillomar where Uther came to him, and commanded his knights to weapon [them] forth-right. And they very speedily grasped [took] their knives, 'and off with their breeches—strange were their looks,'—and grasped in their hands their long spears, '*and* hung on their shoulders great battle-axes.' Then said Gillomar the king a thing very strange:—" Here cometh Uther, 'Aurelies [Aurelie his] brother; he will ask my peace, and not fight with me. 'The foremost are his swains; march we against them; ye need never reck, though ye slay the wretches!' 'For [And] if Uther, Constantines son, will here become my man, 'and give

[1] hæhte?
[2] *Redundant?*
[3] *Partly on an erasure, but by original hand.*
[4] honde *pr. man., but* e *erased.*
[5] ȝeines *man. pr.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
wulle her mi mon bicume.	wole her mi man bi-come.
& Paſſente aȝeuen :/	
hiſ fader richē.	
ich hine wullen griðien :/	ich hine wolle griþie :/
& latten hine liuien.	and lete hine libbe.
& inne fæire bēden :/	and in faire bendes :/
læden hine to mine londe.	him lede to mine londe.
Þe king wordede þus :/	Þe kīg wordede þus :/
þa while him a-lomp wurſ.	þe wile hit bi-fulle worſ.
Weoren Vtheres cnihtes :/	Weren Vther his chnihtes :/
at þan tune forð rihtes.	in þan toune forþrihtes.
leiden fur a þene tun :/	and ſetten fur oueral :/
& fehten biliue. [c. 2.]	in bour and in hal.
mid ſweorden heom to rakeden :/	and faſte to ȝam rakede :/
and þa Iriſce weoren nakede.	and hii were alle nakede.
Þa iſeȝen Iriſce mē :/	Þo i-ſehȝe Yriſſe men :/
þat Brutten wes an eorneſt.	
feondliche heo fuhten :/	
and neoðeles heo feollen.	þat hii þuſſe fullen.
heo clcopedē on heore king :/	hii gradde to hire king :/
Whar ært þu niðing.	War hart þou niþing.
whi nult þu hider wenden :/	wi nelt þou hider wende :/
þu lezſt uſ her ſcenden.	þou leteſt vs alle aſende.
and Paſſent þin ifere :/	
iſih us fallen here.	

to Pascent his fathers realm,' I will him grant peace, and let him live, and in fair bonds lead him to my land." The king spake thus, the while worse 'him [it] befell! 'Uthers [Uther his] knights were in the town forth-right, [and] 'laid [set] fire 'in the town, and fought sharply; with swords [over all, in bower and in hall, and fast] rushed *towards* them; and 'the Irish [they] were [all] naked. When *the* Irish men saw, that '*the* Britons were in conflict, they fought fiercely, and' 'nevertheless [thus] they fell; they called 'on [to] their king: "Where art thou, nithing! why wilt thou not come hither? thou lettest us 'here [all] be destroyed;—' and Pascent, thy comrade, saw us fall here;—come *ye* to us to help, with great strength!' '.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
cumeð us to halpe:	
mid hahȝere ſtrengðe.	
Þiſ iherde Gillomar:	Þis ihorde Gillomar:
þer foren wes hiſ heorte ſær.	þar vore his heort was for.
mid hiſ Iriſce cnihten:	mid his Yreſſe cnihtes:
he com to þan fihte.	he com to þan fihte.
and Paſſend vorð mid him:	and Paſcent forþ mid him:
beien heo weoren uæie.	beine hii weren veie.
þa iſeh Vðer:	þo iſeh Vther:
þat icumen wes þer Gillomar.	þat icome was Gillomar.
to him he gon riden:	to him he gan ride:
and ſmat hine i þere ſide.	and ſmot hī in þan ſide.
þat þat ſpere þurh-rade:	þat þe ſpere þorh-rod:
& þa heorte to-glad.	and þe heorte to-glod.
Hiȝendliche he hine biwet[1]:	Hiȝenliche he hine bi-went:
& of-toc Paſſent.	of-tock he ſone Paſcent.
and þas word sæide:	and þeos word ſaide:
Vther þe ſele.	Vther þe ſæle.
Paſſent þu ſcalt abiden:	Paſcent wi nelt abide:
her cumeð Vther riden.	her comeþ Vther ride.
He ſmat hine uuenen þat hæued:	He ſmot hine ouenon þat heued: [c.2.]
þat he adun halde.	þat he ful to þan grunde.
and þat ſweord putte in his muð:	and þat ſweord put in his muþ:
swulc mete him wes uncuð.	ſoch mete him was oncouþ.

Gillomar heard this; therefore his heart was sore; with his Irish knights he came to the fight, and Pascent forth with him,—both they were fated! When Uther saw, that Gillomar was 'there' come, to him he gan ride, and smote him in the side, *so* that the spear through pierced, and glided to the heart. Hastily he passed by him, 'and [he soon] overtook Pascent; and said these words Uther the good: "Pascent, 'thou shalt [why wilt thou not] abide; here cometh Uther riding!" He smote him upon the head, *so* that he fell 'down [to the ground], and the sword put in his mouth—

[1] biwent?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat þe ord of þan sworde:	þat þe ord of þe ſweord:
wod in þere eorðe.	wond in þan eorþe.
Þa ſæide Vther:	Þo ſaide Vther:
Paſſent liȝ nu þer.	Paſcent lý nou þar.
nu þu haueſt Brutlond: [f.103b.c.1.]	nou þou haueſt Brutlond:
al bi-tald to þire hond.	al awonne to þin hond.
Swa þe if nu iræd:	
þer on þu ært ded.	
wikien ȝe ſcullen here:	wonieþ nou here:
þu and Gillomar þin ifere.	þou an Gillomare.
& brukeð wel Brutlōd:	and broukeþ wel Brutlond:
for nu ic hit bitæche inc an hond.	for nou ȝe hit habbeþ an hond.
þat ȝit maȝen to-ȝere:	
mid uf wunien here.	
ne þurue ȝe nauere adrede:	ne þerh he[1] noht drede:
wha eou ſcullen feden.	þat ȝou ſal feode.
Þuf ſæide Vder[2]:	
and seoððe he arnde þer.	
and drof Iriſce men:	
ȝeond wateres and ȝeond fenes.	
and floh al þa uerde:	
þe mid Paſſent commen to ærde.	
Summe to þere sæ iwiten:	

such meat to him was strange,—*so* that the point of the sword went in th earth. Then said Uther: "Pascent, lie now there; now thou hast Britai all won to thy hand! 'So is now hap to thee; therein thou art dead dwell 'ye shall [now] here, thou, and Gillomar 'thy companion,' and posses well Britain! For now 'I deliver it to you [ye it have] in hand, '*so* tha ye may presently dwell with us here'; ye need not 'ever' dread who yo shall feed!" 'Thus said Uther, and afterwards he there ran, and drov *the* Irish men over waters and over fens, and slew all the host that wit Pascent came to land. Some to the sea fled, and leapt in*to* their ships

[1] ȝe?

[2] *R.* Vðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& leoppen in heore ſcipen.
mid wederen & mid wateren:
þær heo forferden.
þuſ heo iſpædden her:
Paſſent and Gillomar.
Nu wes þiſ feht idon:
and Vther aȝē com.
and forð rihtes wende:
into Winchæſtre.
in are brade ſtrete:
he igon mete.
þreo cnihteſ & heore ſweines:
cumen hī to-ȝeines.
A-nan ſwa heo ine[1] imette:
fæire heo hine igrætten.
Hail ſeo þu Vther:
þeof æðeles beod[2] þin æȝen.
ded if Aurilie:
kingene aðeleſt.
he þe haueð iſet an hond:
al hiſ kinewurðe lond.
he bad þe beon a ſele:
& þenchen on hiſ ſaule. [c. 2.]
þa weop Vðer:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þus i-ſped here:
Paſcent and Gillomare.
NOu was þas fiht i-don:
and Vther aȝen com.
and forþrihtes wēde:
toward Wincheſtre.
in one brode ſtrede:
he i-gan mete.
þreo cnihteſ & hire ſweines:
comē him to-ȝeýnes.
A-non ſo hii hine i-mette:
faire hii hine grette.
Haýl beo þou Vther:
dead his þin broþer.
he þe haueþ iſet an hond:
al þiſ ilke kinelond.
þo wep Vther:

with weather and with water there they perished!' Thus 'they' sped here, Pascent and Gillomar. Now was this fight done (finished); and Uther back came, and forth-right marched 'into [toward] Winchester. In a broad way he gan meet three knights and their swains, *who* came toward him. Anon as they met him, fair they him greeted: "Hail be thou, Uther; 'these territories are thine own.' Dead is 'Aurelie [thy brother], 'noblest of kings'; he hath set to thee in hand all 'his regal land [this same kingdom]; 'he bade thee be in prosperity, and think of his soul.'" Then wept

[1] hine?
[2] beoð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
wunder ane ſwiðe.	wonderliche ſwiþe þer.
Vðer wende forð riht:	Vther wende forþ riht:
into Winchæſtre.	toward Wincheſtre.
þa weoren him biforen:	þo weren him bi-vore:
wiðuten þere burȝe.	wiþ houte þan boure[1].
alle þa burh-men:	alle þe borhmen:
mid reouliche iberen.	fore wepīge.
Sone ſwa heo hine iſeȝen:	
heo hī to ſæiden.	and ſaide Vther þin ore: [f.83.c.1.]
Vther þin are:	
nu & æuere mare.	nou an euere more.
ure king we habbeoð ilore:	houre king we habbeoþ for-lore:
wa if uf þer fore.	wo his ous þar vore.
þu weore[2] hiſ broðer:	þou were his broþer:
nafde he nænne oðer.	nafeþ he non oþer.
no he nefde[3] nenne ſune:	ne he naueþ nanne ſone:
þe mihte king bicumē.	þat mawe king bi-come.
Ah nim þu þene kine-halm:	Ac nim þou þane kinedom:
he if þe icunde.	for he his þe icunde.
& we þe wulleð helpen:	and we þe wolleþ helpe:
& halden for lauerd.	
mid wapnen & mid æhten:	
and al ure mihte.	mid wepne and mid mihte.
þiſ iherde Vðer:	þis i-horde Vther:

Uther wondrously much [there]. Uther proceeded forth-right 'into [toward] Winchester; then were before him, without the burgh, all the burghers 'with piteous cries [sore weeping]. 'So soon *as* they saw him,' 'they [and] said 'to him': "Uther, thy favor, now and evermore! Our king we have lost, woe is to us therefore. Thou wert his brother,—he 'had [hath] no other, nor he 'had [hath] no son, who 'might [may] become king. But take thou the 'crown, [kingdom, for] it 'is thy right, and we will help thee, 'and hold for lord,' with weapons and with 'goods, and with all our' might." Uther heard this; he was wise and 'he was [very] aware, that there

[1] borh? [2] weoren *pr. man., but* n *erased.* [3] niefde *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
he wes wis & he wes war.	he was wis and fwiþe war.
þat þer næs coſt nan oder[1] :	þat þar nas read non oþer :
seoȝðen dæd wes hiſ broðer.	wane dead was his broþer.
He nom þenne kine-helm :	He nā al þis kinelond :
þe hī bicom fwiðe wel.	to his owene hond.
and he wurðeliche :	
iwarð him to kinge.	
& heold gode laȝe :	and heold gode lawes :
and hiſ folc lufede.	and his folk lofuede.
Imong þat he king wæf :	Amang þif motinge :
& hiſ wikenares[2] chæs.	
M^{9}lin him æt-wende :	Merlýn at-wende.
nuſte he nauere whideī.	nuſte man in þiſſe riche :
no nauere a worlde-riche :	
to whan he bicome.	to wan he bi-come.
wa wes þā kinge :	wo was þan kinge :
swa wes al hiſ duȝeðe. [f.104.c.1.]	ſo weren alle his cnihteſ.
and alle hiſ hiſ[3] hird-men :	
þer uore murnende weoren.	
þe king lette riden :	þe king lette ride :
widen & ſidē.	wide and ſide.
he bad gold & gerſume :	and bi-hehte gold and gariſome :
ælche farinde gume.	to eche varen gome.

was no other 'course [counsel], since his brother was dead. He took 'the crown, that came to him exceeding well [all this kingdom in his own hand]; 'and he worthily became king,' and held good laws, and loved his folk. 'Whilst that he was king, and chose his ministers [Among this transaction] Merlin disappeared; 'he [men] knew not 'ever whither, nor ever' in '*the* worlds realm [this realm] to what he became (what became of him). Woe was the king, so 'was [were] all his 'people [knights], 'and all his courtiers were therefore mourning.' The king caused *men* to ride wide and far; 'he offered [and promised] gold and treasure to each travelling man, 'whoso-

[1] oer? [2] wikemares *pr.* man. [3] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

wha ſwa mihte finde:
Merlin an londe.
þer to he læide muchel lof:
ah ne herde he him nawhit of.
þa biðohte Vther:
whæt Merlin him ſæide ær.
in þan hire-ȝeonge:
inne Waliſc londe.
þer heo iſeȝen þene drake:
ælches wurmes vnimake.
and he þohte of þan tacnen:
þe M[9]lin him tahte.
þe king wes swiðe ſæri:
and sorhful an heorte.
for ne leſ he næuere leouere mon:
seoððen he wes an liuen.
neouere nēne oðer:
ne Aurelie hiſ broðer.
þe king lette wurchen tweiē ima-
ken:
tweien guldene draken.
al for Mærlines liue[2]:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat couþe þorh eny ginne:
Merlyn ifinde.
ac nas þar non ſo witti:
þat hinc cuþe finde.
þar fore was þe king:
ſori on heorte.
for ne leos he neuere leuere man:
ſeoþþe he was on liſue. [c. 2.]
þe king of[1] þan drake:
þat Merlyn to him ſpac.
and makede tweie ymages:
þane drake iliche.
al of reade golde.
for Merlynes loue:

ever might [who could through any stratagem] find Merlin 'in *the* land;' 'thereto he laid (added) mickle praise, but he heard no whit of him [but there was none so witty that could him find]. 'Then bethought Uther, what Merlin said to him ere, in the expedition *into* Welsh land, where they saw the dragon, to each worm incomparable; and he thought of the tokens that Merlin taught him.' The king was 'exceeding [therefore] sorry, 'and sorrowful in' heart, for he lost never *a* dearer man, since he was alive, 'never any other, not *even* Aurelie, his brother.' The king 'caused to be worked [*thought* of the dragon, of which Merlin to him spake, and made] two images, 'two golden dragons [all of red gold], 'all' for Merlins love,—'so greatly he

[1] þohte of?

[2] luue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ſwa ſwiðe he wilnede hiſ cume.	
Þa þe draken ȝaru weoren:	Þo þe drakes ȝaru were:
þe oðer wes iuere.	þe oþer was his i-vere.
whar ſwa he an ærde:	war þat he on erþe:
ladde hi[1] ferde.	ladde his ferde.
he wes his hire-mærke:	
in æuer ælche happe.	
þene oðerne he wurðliche ȝaf:	þan oþer he ȝaf:
into Winchæſtre.	in to Wincheſtre.
into þā biſcop-ſtole:	in to þan biſſopes ſtol:
þer he ſtude haldeð.	þare he ſtude holdeþ.
Þer to he ȝef hiſ gode ſpere: [bere.	Þar to he ȝaf his gode ſpere:
þer mid me ſculde þene drake	þat me mihte þane drake bicre.
þenne me ſcolde halidom: [c.2.]	wane me ſolde halẏdomes:
beren to proceſſiun.	beare at proceſſions.
Þiſ iſeȝen Bruttef:	Þis i-ſeȝen Bruttus:
Þaſ draken þa weoren imaked þ[o].	þes draken þat were imaked þus.
æuer ſeoððen[2] heo cleopeden Vther:	and makede bi Vther:
þe to hermærke þene drake bar.	one to-name þer.
þene nome heo him laiden on:	and cleopede hine anon:
Vther Pendr[agon.] Þet wes Vðer Pendragon.	Vther Pendragon.
Pendragun an Brutiſc:	Pendragon on Bruttiſch:

desired his coming.' When the dragons were ready, the one was [his] companion; 'wheresoever [where that] he in *the* land led his army, 'it was his standard, in every hap'; the other he 'worthily' gave into Winchester, into the bishops see, where he stead holdeth. Thereto he gave his good spear, 'wherewith [that] men 'should [might] bear the dragon, when men should carry relics at processions. *The* Britons saw this, these dragons that were thus made; 'ever since they called Uther, who for *a* standard bare the dragon, the name they laid on him, that was [and made for Uther a sur-name there, and called him anon] Uther Pendragon; Pendragon in

[1] his?

[2] ſeoððen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Draken-hefd an Engliſc.
Nu wes Vther god king:
ah of Merlin nefde he na þing.
þiſ word iherde Octa:
þer he norð wunede.
& Ebiſſa his wend-broðer[1]:
and Oſa þe oðer.
þa Aurilien ſende þider:
& ſette heom þer on hiſ griðe.
and bi-tahte heom an honde:
ſixti hidē of londe.
Octa iherden ful iwiſ:
al hu hit ifaren wes.
of Aurilief dæðe:
& of Vtheres kinedome.
Octa him to-cleopede:
hiſ cun þe wes aneoſte.
nomē heō to ræde:
of heore alde dede.
þat heo wolden bi heore liue:
criſtīdom bilaue.
Heo heolden huſtig[2]:
& hæðene bicomen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Drake-heued on Engliſſe.
NOu was Vther god king:
ac of Merlyn ne horde he
þis ihorde Octa: [noþing.
þar he norþ wonede.
and his wedbroþer Ebyſſa:
and his i-vere Oſſa.

of Aurelies deaþe:
and of Vtheres kinedome.

Hii nemen heom to reade:
of hire holde deades.
þat hii wolden bliue:
criſtendom bi-leue.
Hii heolden hire ſpeche: [f.83b.c.1.]
and heaþene bi-come.

British, Dragons-head in English. Now was Uther good king, but of Merlin he 'had [heard] nothing.' This 'word (tiding)' heard Octa, where he dwelt north*ward*, and Ebissa his wed-brother, and Ossa 'the other [his companion], 'that Aurelie sent thither, and set them there in his peace, and gave them in hand sixty hides of land. Octa heard full truly all how it was transacted,' of Aurelies death, and of Uthers kingdom. 'Octa called to him his kin that was nearest'; [they] betook them to counsel, of their old deeds, that they would 'by their life [quickly] desert Christendom. They held 'husting [their conference], and became heathens; then came

[1] *R.* wed-broðer.

[2] huſting?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þa comen þer to-gadere :/
of Hengeſtes cunne.
fif & fixti hundred :/
of heðene monnen.
Sone wes þat word cuð :/
an ȝeond þan londe icud.
þ Octa Hengeſtes ſune :/
wes[1] hæðene bicume.
& þaſ ilke gumen alle :/
þa Aurilien igriðed hæfuede. [f. 104b. c. 1.]
Octa ſende hiſ ſonde :/
in to Waliſce londe.
after þan Iriſce :/
þæ Vðer æt-urnen.
and after þan Alemainen :/
þe weoren awei idraȝene.
þa weoren to wude iwende :/
þe while men floh Paſſent.
and huden heō wel iwhær :/
þe while men floh Gillomar.
þat folc ut of wude teh :/
& touward Scotlonde beh.
Auer þer comen ma & ma :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þar comen þo to-gadere :/
of Hengeſt his cūne.
fifue and fixti hundred :/
of heaþene manne.
Sone was þat word couþ :/
and widene ichnowe.
þat Octa Hengeſt his ſone :/
was heaþene bi-come.
and þe men alle :/
þat Aurelie i-greþid hadde.
Octa ſende his ſonde :/
in to Walſe londe.
after þaie Ÿreſſe :
þat Vther weren of-vrne.
and after þe Alemains :/
þat a-chaped were.
þat were to wode a-wend :/
þe wile me floh Paſcent.

þat folk vt of wode teh :/
and to Scotlonde beoþ.
Euere þar comen mo and mo :/

there together, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kindred, five and sixty hundred of heathen men. Soon was the word reported and 'over the land [wide] known, that Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, was become heathen, and all 'these same [the] men to whom Aurelie had granted peace. Octa sent his messengers into Welsh land, after the Irish that from Uther [were] fled, and after the Alemains (Germans), that 'away were drawn [were escaped], that were gone to *the* wood, the while men slew Pascent, ' and hid them well everywhere, the while men slew Gillomar;' the folk out of *the* wood drew, and to' ward' Scotland proceeded. There came ever

[1] Nes *pr. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and ferden touward Octa.
þa heo to-fomme[1] weoren iwende:
þa weoren þer þritti þuſend.
wiþ uten þa wifmen:
of Hengeſtes cunnen.
Heo nomen heore uerde:
& gunnen to farene.
& ſetten al an heore hōd:
biȝeonden þere Humbre lond.
&[3] þat leoden:
þer heo gunnē liþen.
ferde þer wes ſellic:
and wenden riht to[4] Eouerwic.
and an ælche ſide:
þa burh gunnē biride.
& þa burh bilæien:
hæþene leoden.
and nomen hit al to heore honde:
forð into Scotlonde.
al þat heo iſeȝen:
heo talden heore aȝen.
Ah Vtheres cnihtes:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þat wende to Octa.
þo hii to-gadere were alle hii-come[2]:
þo weren þar þritti þuſend.
wiþ oute þan wimmen:
of Hengeſt his cunne.
Hii nemen hire ferde:
and forþ gonnewende.
and ſette al in hire hōd:
bi-ȝeonde Norþhumberlond.
ferde þar was ſellich:
and wende riht to Euerwich.
and in eche ſide:
þane borh gonne bi-ride.
and þe þorh bi-leien:
heaþene hundes.
and nemen al to hire hond:
forþ into Scotlond.
al þat hii i-ſehȝen: [c. 2.]
hii tolden hire owene.
Ac Vther hiſ cnihteſ:

more and more, and proceeded to' ward' Octa; when they together were [all] come, then were there thirty thousand, without the women, of 'Hengests [Hengest his] kin. They took their host, and [forth] gan to fare, and set all in their hand beyond 'the Humber [Northumberland], 'and the people, where they gan march;' there was *a* marvellous host! And *they* proceeded right to York, and on each side *the* heathen 'people [hounds] gan ride about the burgh, and the burgh besieged'; and took 'it' all in their hand, forth into Scotland; all that they saw they accounted their own. But 'Uthers [Uther his] knights who were in the

[1] to-fomne?
[2] i-come?
[3] *A word seems here wanting.*
[4] *Interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þa weoren i þan caſtle.
wereden þene tun wiþ innen :/
þat ne mihten heo næuere binnen.
ne iherde mon in nane ſtude :/
lute men þat ſwa wel duden.
Swa ſone ſwa Vþer :/
of þiſſen þingen iwarð war.
færde he bad ſtronge :/
ȝeōd al hiſ kinelonde.
and he ſwiðe hiȝend-liche :/
ferde touward Eouerwic.
ferde uorð riht anan :/
þer him læi Octa.
Octa and his ferde :/
fuſde heom to-ȝeineſ.
wurueden heom to-gadere[1] :/
mid grīmere ſtrengðe.
heowen hardliche :/
hælmes gullen.
falewede feldes :/
of fæie blode.
& þa heðene ſaulen :/
helle iſohten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat weren in þan caſtle.
werede þane toun wiþ ine :/
þat hii ne mihte hine awinne.
ne horde no man in no ſtude :/
feuwe men þat bet dude.
So ſone ſo Vther :
of þis þinge was war.
ferde he bad ſtronge :/
of al his kinelonde.
and he ſwiþe hiȝenliche :/
wende toward Euerwich.
ferde forþriht ſo :/
þar him laỳ Octa.
Octa and his ferde :/
wende him to-ȝeines.
þrongen heom to-gadere :/
mid grettere ſtrengþe.
hewen hardeliche :/
healmeſ þar ȝolle.
falewede þe feldes :/
of hire blodes.

castle, defended the town within, *so* that they might 'never *get* within [not it win]; in no place heard [any] one, of few men that did so well [better]! So soon as Uther of this thing was aware, he assembled *a* strong army, 'over [from] all his kingdom, and he very speedily marched toward York; proceeded forth-right 'anon [so], where Octa him laỳ. Octa and his forces marched against 'them [him]; encountered them together with 'grim [great] strength; hewed hardily; helms [there] resounded; [the] fields were dyed with '*the* blood of *the* slain [their blood], ' and the heathen souls hell sought '! When the days end 'arrived [came], then was

[1] To *is interlined man. sec.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þa þes dæies ende bicom:
þa wes hit swa ufel idon.
Þ þat hæðene uolc:
þa ufere hond hafeden.
& mid muchelere ſtrengðe:
ſturmden þa Bruttef.
and driuen heom to ane munte:
þæ wes unimete ſtor.
& Vðer mid hif monnen:
teh to þan munte.
and hæuede iloren in fihte:
leofe hif cnihtes.
fulle feouen hundred:
hif hælp[1] wes þa wurfe.
Þe munt hæhte Dunian:
þe Vther wes ufenan.
wes þe munt þurh-wexen:
mid ane wude feiren.
Þe king wes þer wiðinnen:
mid ſwiðe feole monnen.
& Octa hine bi-læi:
mid hæðene monnen niht and dæi.
bilæi hine al abuten:
wa wes þan Brutten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þo þes daiȝes ende com:
þo was hit ſo vuele idon.
þat þe heaþene folk:
þe ouere hond hadde.
and mid mochele ſtrengþe:
ſweinde þe Bruttus.
and driuen heom in on mund:
þat was onimete ſtor.
And Vther to þan hulle:
wende mid his manne.
and hadde ilore in fihte:
leofue his cnihtes.
folle ſoue hundred:
his heap was þe worſe.
Þe hulle hatte Dinian:
þar Vther laẏ ouenan.
was þe hul þorh-woxe:
mid one wode faire. [f. 84. c. 1.]
Þe king was þare wiþ ine:
mid ſwiþe fale manne.
and Octa hine bi-laẏ:
mid his folke niht and day.

it so evilly done, that the heathen folk had the upper hand, and with great strength routed the Britons, and drove them 'to [on] a mount that was exceeding strong. And Uther with his men 'drew [went] to the 'mount [hill], and had lost in *the* fight his dear knights, full seven hundred,—his hap was the worse! The 'mount [hill] hight Dunian, 'that [where] Uther 'was [lay] upon; the 'mount [hill] was overgrown with a fair wood. The king was there within with very many men, and Octa besieged him with '*the* heathen men [his folk] night and day,—'besieged

[1] hæp?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Wa wes þan kinge Vðer ⁊	Wo was þan kīge Vther ⁊
þat he nef ær wær.	þat he nadde beo car war.
þat he nefde an londe ⁊	
bet vnder-ſtonde.	
Ofte heo eoden to ræde ⁊	ofte hii ȝeode to reade ⁊
of fwucchere neode.	of ſolchere neode.
hu heo mihten ouer-cumen ⁊	ou hii mihte ouercome ⁊
Octa Hengeſtes ſune.	Octa Hengeſt his ſone.
Gorlois. ¶ þer wes an eorl Gorloiſ ⁊	þar was a man Gorloȳs ⁊
ocht mon ful iwiſ.	on ſtrong eorl foliwis.
cniht he wes wel idon ⁊	
he weſ Vðeres mon.	
eorl of Cornwaille ⁊	eorl of Cornwale ⁊
cuð he wes wide.	he waſ couþ wide.
he wes ſwiðe wiſ mon ⁊	he was ſwiþe wiſman ⁊
of alle þinge wel idō.	of alle þinge wel idon.
To him fæide Vther ⁊	To him ſaide Vther ⁊
færi an heorten.	ſori on heorte.
Hail ſeo þu Gorlois ⁊	
gumenene lauerd.	
þu ært min aȝe mon ⁊	Gorloȳs þou hart mi mon.
& ſwiðe wel ich þe on.	
þu ært cniht wel idon ⁊	
muchel is þi wiſdom.	and mochel caneſt of wiſdom.
alle mine leoden ⁊	alle mine leode ⁊

him all about, woe was *to* the Britons!' Woe was the king Uther, that he 'was not [had not been] ere aware, 'that he had not in land better understood.' Oft they went to counsel of such need, how they might overcome Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son. There was 'an earl [a man] Gorlois, 'bold man [a strong earl] full truly,—'knight he was good, he was Uthers man,'—earl of Cornwall, known he was wide,—he was *a* very wise man, in all things excellent. To him said Uther, sorry in heart: "'Hail be thou, Gorlois, lord of men!' [Gorloys] thou art 'mine own [my] man, and 'very well I thee treat; thou art knight good,' great is thy [much knowest of] wisdom; all my people I put in thy counsel, and 'all'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ich don in þine ræden.
& alle we ſculle wurchen:
after þine iwille.
Þa hing his breowen adun:
þe king Vther Pendragū.
and ſtod him ful ſtille:
& bad Gorlois ſuggen hiſ iwille.
Þa andſwarede Gorlois:
he wes hende ful iwiſ.
Sæie me Vther Pendragun:
whi halſt þu þin hafed adun.
naſt þu þat godd ane:
if betere þene we al clæne.
he mai wham swa he wule:
wurðcipe bitachen.
Bihate we him on liue:
þat we him nulleð liȝe.
& leten we uſ ræden:
of ure miſdeden.
ælc mon forð riht:
of alle hiſ ſunnen nimen ſcrift.
ælc mon ſcriuen oðer:
ſwulc hit weoren hiſ broðer.
& æuer ælc god cniht:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ich do in þine reade.
and we ſollen weorche:
after þine wille.
Þo heng he his brouwes a-dun:
Vther Pendragon.
and ſtod him ful ſtille:
and bad Gorloys ſegge hiſ wille.
Þo anſwerede Gorloys:
þat was hende foliwis.
Sai me Vther Pendragon:
wi hangeſt þou þin heued adun.
noſt þou þat god one:
his betere þane we alle cleane.
he may wam ſo he wole:
worſipe bi-take.
Bi-hote we him on lifue:
þat we hine loueie wolleþ.
and lete we vs reade:
of vre miſdede.
ech man forþ riht:
of his ſunne nime ſcrift.
ech man ſcriue oþer:
aſe hit were hiſ broþer.
and euerech god cniht:

we shall work after thy will. Then hung [he] his brows down, 'the king' Uther Pendragon, and stood him full still, and bade Gorlois say his will. Then answered Gorlois, who was fair (*or* courteous) full truly: "Say me, Uther Pendragon, why 'bowest [hangest] thou thy head down? Knowest thou not that God alone is better than we all clean? He may to whomso-*ever* he will give worship. Promise we him in life that we will 'not him deceive [love him]; and let we counsel us of our misdeeds. Each man forth-right take shrift of 'all' his sins; each man shrive other, as *if* it were his brother, and every good knight 'take on him much [receive good]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

nime on him muchel ſcrift.
& godde we ſcullen bihatē:
ure ſunnen to betē.
& to þere midnihte:
ȝarkien uſ to fihten.
þeos hæðene hundes:
talleð uſ al ibunden.
Octa Hengeſtes ſunæ:
weneð þ we beon alle inumen.
heo leggeð i þiſſen felden:
ihæled in heore telden.
heo beoð swiðe werie:
iboren heore wepnen.
nu nan heo ſculleð flumen:
& ſeoððen flæpen.
of uſ nabbeoð heo nane kare:
þ we aȝen heom wulleð faren.
To þere midnihte:
we ſculleð forð rihtes.
ſwiðelicche ſtille:
adun of þiſſen hulle.
na wurðe cniht ſwa wod:
þat he ſcire æi word.
ne nauer nan hæleð:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ondernime god ſcrift.
and god we ſollen bi-hote:
houre sunne to beate.
And to þare midniht:
ȝarke we ous to fiht.
þeos heaþene hundes:
telleþ ous alle ibunde.
Octa Hengeſt his ſone:
weneþ þat we beo alle inome.
hii liggeþ in þiſſe feldes:
iheled in hire teldes.
hii beoþ ſwiþe weri:
ibore hire wepne.
nou non hii ſolle heueȝi:
and ſuþþe hii ſolle ſleape.
of vs nabbeþ hii nanne care:
þat we wolleþ aȝein heom vare.
To þare midnihte:
we ſollen forþriht.
swiþeliche ſtille:
adun of þiſſe hulle.
ne worþe non cniht ſo wod:
þat ſpeke eni word.
ne neuere non man:

shrift, and God we shall promise to amend our sins. And at the midnight prepare [we] us to fight; these heathen hounds account us all *here* bound. Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, weeneth that we are all taken; they lie in these fields covered in their tents, they are very weary of carrying their weapons; now anon they shall 'slumber [*grow* heavy], and afterwards [they shall] sleep; of us they have no care, that we will march against them. At the midnight we shall forth-right *go* exceeding still, down from this hill; be no knight so mad, that 'he ask [speak] any word, nor ever any man *be so mad*, that he blow horn. But we shall step to

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat he[1] horn blawe.	þat he horn blowe.
Ac we ſcullen ſteppen heom to:	Ac we ſollen ſtap heom to:
ſwa we ſtelen wolden. [f.105b.c.1.]	alſe we ſtele wolde.
ær heo wurðen iware:	her hii beon ware:
we ſcullen heōm amarre.	we ſolle heom a-morre.
we ſcullen heom to teō:	we ſollen heom to teon:
& tidende tellen.	and tȳdinge telle.
And æuerælc ocht mon:	And euerech oht man:
ſtærkliche heom legge on.	ſtarliche heom legge an.
and ſwa we ſcullen of londe:	and ſo we ſolle of londe:
driuen vnicunde.	driuen onicunde.
and mid mihte of ure drihten:	and mid mihte of houre drihte:
bitellen ure irihten.	bi-tellen oure rihte. [f.84b.c.1.]
Al þas ferde idude:	Al hii dude:
swa Gorlois heom hauede ibede.	aſe Gorloȳs hit hadde ibode.
ælc mon forð rihte:	
dude hine vnder ſcrifte.	
bi-hehten god[2] to donne:	
and þat afel to forgonne.	
To þeꝛ̄ mid-nihte:	To þare midnihte:
wepnede heom cnihtes.	wepnede heom cnihteſ.
and aueremeſte uerde adun:	and fomeſt ver[3] adun:
Vðer Pendragun.	Vther Pendragon.
and his cnihtes alle:	and his cnihtes alle:

them as *if* we would steal; ere they are aware, we shall destroy them; we shall approach to them, and tell *them* tidings. And *let* every brave man strongly lay on them; and so we shall drive *the* foreigners from *the* land, and with *the* might of our Lord, win our rights." 'All this host [They all] did as Gorlois had bid them; 'each man forth-right put him under shrift; promised to do good, and to forsake the evil.' At the midnight *the* knights weaponed them; and Uther Pendragon foremost went down, and all his knights, exceeding still; and smote in the 'wealds,

[1] *Interlined man. sec.*

[2] godd *man. pr., but* d *erased.*

[3] formeſt verde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
swiðeliche ſtille.	ſwiþeliche ſtille.
and ſmiten i þa waldes:	and ſmiten in þan teldes:
imong alle þa teldes.	þar hii were in þe feldes.
and ſlozen þa hæðene:	and ſwo hii gonne þe hæaþene:
mid hæhzere ſtrenðe[1].	legge to grunde.
ſluzen ȝeōd þan feldes:	
falewe lockeſ.	
uolken hit wes ærmeſt:	
heo drozen heore þermes.	
mid muchele vniſunde:	
heo feollen to þan grunde.	
þer wes forð riht inume:	And þar was forþriht inome:
Octa Hengeſtes ſune.	Octa Hengeſt his ſone.
& hiſ wedbroðer: Ebiſſa:	and his wed-broþer Ebyſſa:
& hiſ iuere Oſſa.	and his i-vere Oſſa.
þe king heom lette binden:	[c. 2.] þe king heom lette binde:
mid irene bænde.	mid yrene bendes.
and bi-tahte heom ſixti cnihten:	and bi-tahte heð ſixti cnihtes:
þe gode weoren to ſihten.	þat goden were to ſihte.
ufennen þan walden:	ouenan þan wollde:
uaſte to halden.	faſte to holde.
& he ſeolf draf him forð:	And him seolf drof heom forþ:
and muchel dune makede.	and moche dune makede.

among all the tents [tents, where they were in the fields], and 'slew the heathens with great strength [so they gan to lay the heathens to ground]; "slew over the fields *the* yellow locks; of folk it was most wretched, they drew *along* their bowels; with much destruction they fell to the ground!' [And] there was forth-right captured Octa, 'Hengests [Hengest his] son, and his wed-brother Ebissa, and his comrade Ossa. The king caused them to be bound with iron bonds, and delivered them to sixty knights, who were good in fight, fast to hold (guard) over the weald. And 'he *him*self [*he* himself] drove 'him [them] forth, and made much din; and

[1] ſtrengðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& Gorlois þe hende:
uorð an oðer ende.
& alle heore cnihtes:
æuere forð rihtes.
adū rihtes flozen:
al þat heo neh comen.
Summe heo crupē to þan wude:
an heore bare cneowen.
heo weoren amærȝe:
volken alre ærmeſt.
Octa wes ibunden:
& ilad to Lunde.
and Ebiſſa & Oſſa:
nes heom nauere al ſwa wa.
þiſ feh[1] wes idon:
& þe king wende forð.
in to Norð-humbre:
mid hæȝere bliſſe.
& ſeoððe to Scotlonde:
& ſette hit al an hiſ aȝere hond.
He ſette grið he ſette frið:
þ ælc mon mihte faren wið.
from londe to londe:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and Gorloys þan hende:
forþ an oþer eande.
and alle hire cnihtes:
euere forþrihtes.
adun riht flowen:
al þat hii neh comen.
Somme hi crope to þan wode:
on hire bare cnowes.
and þaie were amorwe:
alle idon to deaþe.
Octa was ibūde:
and ilad to Londene.
and Ebyſſa and Oſſa:
nere heō neuere ſo wo.
þis fiht was al idon:
and þe king forþ com.
into Norþhumbre: [c. 2.]
mid heȝere bliſſe.
and ſuþþe to Scotlond:
and ſette hit al in his hond.
He ſette ſwiþe god griþ:
þat ech man mihte faren wiþ.
fram londe to londe:

Gorlois the fair, forth on *the* other side; and all their knights, ever forthright slew downright all that they came nigh. Some they crept to the wood on their bare knees, [and] they were on *the* morrow 'most miserable of all folk [all put to death]. Octa was bound, and led to London, and Ebissa, and Ossa,—'was never to them such [were they never so] woe! This fight was [all] done, and the king forth 'marched [came] into Northumber*land* with great bliss; and afterwards to Scotland, and set it all in his 'own' hand. He established peace [most good], 'he established quiet,' that each man might journey with from land to land, though he bare gold in *his* hand; of

[1] feht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þeh he bere gold an hode.	þeh[1] bere gold an honde.
of grið he dude ſwulc þīg :/	of griþe he dude ſoch þing :/
þat ne mihte næuer ær na king.	þat ne mihte her no king.
from þan ilke time :/	fram þan ilke time :/
ꝥ Bruttes comen her liðen.	þat Brut⁹ her com liþe.
And seoððenvmbe ſtunde :/ [f. 106. c. 1.]	And ſuþþe bi one ſtunde :/
he ferde to Lunden.	he verde to Lundene.
he wes þere an æſt⁹ :/	he was þar on eaſter :/
mid aleðele[2] hiſ uolke.	and alle his folke.
bliðe wes þe Lundeneſ tun :/	bliþe was Londene his toune :/
for Vthere Pendragun.	for Vther Pendragon.
He ſende hiſ sonde :/	He ſende his ſonde :/
ȝeond al hiſ kinelonde.	oueral his kinelonde.
he bæd þa eorles :/	he bad eorles and cnihtes :/
he bæd þa cheorles.	and alle oþer þeines.
he bæd þa biſcopes :/	
þa boc-ilærede men.	
ꝥ heo comen to Lunden :/	þat hii come to Londene :/
to Vðer þan kingen.	to Vther þan kinge.
in to Lundenes tun :/	
to Vðer Pendragun.	
Riche men ſone :/	Riche men ſone :/
to Lundene comen.	to Londene come.

peace he did such things, that no king might 'ever' ere, from that time that *the* Britons here arrived. And then, after *a* time, he proceeded to London; he was there at Easter, 'with [and all] his 'good' folk; blithe was 'the Londons [London his] town, for Uther Pendragon. He sent his messengers over all his kingdom; he bade 'the' earls, 'he bade the churls, he bade the bishops, *and* the book-learned men [and knights, and all *the* other thanes], that they should come to London, to Uther the king, 'into Londons town, to Uther Pendragon.' Rich men soon to London came; they brought

[1] þeh he ?

[2] *R.* aðele.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
heo brohten wif heo brohten child:	hii brohten wif hii brohten child:
ſwa hehte Vther þe king.	aſe hii were ihote.
Mid muchele godnæſſe:	Mid mochele godniſſe:
þe king iherde mæſſe.	þe king ihorde hiſ maſſe.
& Gorlois þe eorl of Cornwale:	and Gorloys eorl of Cornwale:
& mid him cnihtes uale.	and mid him cnihtes fale.
muche bliſſe wes i þan tun:	moche bliſſe was in þan toun:
mid Vðer kinge Pendragun.	mid Vther Pendragon.
þa þe mæſſe wes iſungē:	þo þe maſſe was iſonge:
to halle heo þrungen.	to halle hii þronge.
bemē heo bleowen:	and bordes hii leidē:
bordes heo brædden.	and adun ſeten.
al þat folc æt & dronc:	hii eotē hii drongen: [f.85.c.1.]
& bliſſe heom wes imong.	biliſſe[1] waſ a-mang heom.
þer ſæt Vðer þe king:	þar ſat Vther þe king:
an hiſ hæh ſetle.	in his heȝe ſetle.
forn aȝan him Gorloiſ:	aforneȝen him Gorlois:
hēde cniht ful iwiſ.	þat was hende foliwis.
þe eorl of Cornwale:	
mid aðele hiſ wife.	
þa heo weoren alle iſeten:	þo hii were alle iſete:
eorles to heore mete. [c.2.]	eorles to þare mete.
þe king ſende his ſonde:	þe king ſende his ſonde:

wife, they brought child, as 'Uther the king [they were] commanded. With much goodness the king heard [his] mass, and Gorlois, 'the' earl of Cornwall, and many knights with him; much bliss was in the town, with 'king' Uther Pendragon. When the mass was sung, to *the* hall they crowded; 'trumpets they blew, boards (tables) they spread; all the folk [and boards they laid, and down sate; they] ate 'and [they] drank, 'and' bliss was among them. There sate Uther the king in his high chair; opposite to him Gorlois, 'fair knight [who was fair] full truly, 'the earl of Cornwall, with his noble wife.' When they were all seated, *the* earls to their meat, the king sent his messengers to Ygærne the fair, 'Gorlois *the*

[1] bliſſe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Igær[ne]. to Igærne þere hende.	to Igerne þan hende.
Gorloif eorles wif:	
wifmone alre hendeſt.	
Ofte he hire lokede on:	Ofte he hire lokede on:
& leitede mid eȝene.	and leitede mid eȝene.
ofte he his birles ſende:	ofte he his borles ſende:
fron to[1] hire borde.	to hire borde.
ofte he hire loh to:	ofte he hire loh to:
& makede hire letes.	and makede hire letef.
and [heo] hine leofliche biheold:	and ȝeo hine lofueliche bi-heold:
ah inæt[2] whær heo hine luuede.	I not[2] ware ȝeo hine lofuede.
Næs þe king noht swa wif:	Nas þe king noht ſo wis:
ne ſwa ȝære witele.	ne ſo war witele.
þ imong his duȝeþe:	þat couþe his þoht hudė:
his þoht cuðe dernen.	a-mang his doȝeþe.
Swa long þe king þif him droh:	So lange þe king þis game drof:
þat Gorloif iwærð him wrað.	þat Gorloys iwarþ wroþ.
& him gromede ſwiðe:	and him gramede ſwiþe:
wið þene king for hif wife.	to þe king for his wifue.
þe eorl & hif cnihtes:	þe eorl and his cnihtes:
ariſen forð rihtes.	a-riſen forþ rihtes.
& forð mid þan wife:	and forþ mid þan wifue:
cnihtes ſwiðe whraðe.	cnihtef ſwiþe wroþe.

earls wife, woman fairest of all.' Oft he looked on her, and glanced with *his* eyes; oft he sent his cup-bearers 'forth' to her table; oft he laughed at her,' and made glances to her; and she him lovingly beheld,—'but' I know not whether she loved him. The king was not so wise, nor so far prudent, that among his folk *he* could his thoughts hide. So long the king this 'practised [game drove], that Gorlois became 'him' wrath, and angered him greatly with the king, for (on account of) his wife. The earl and his knights arose forth-right, and *went* forth with the woman, knights most wrath. King Uther saw this, and 'herefore' was 'sorry [wrath full truly],

[1] forn to? *Cf. l.* 19019.

[2] ich næt? ich not?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Vther king þif ifah:	King Vther ifah þis:
& here fore færi wes.	an was wroþ foliwis.
& nom him forð rihtes:	and nam a-non rihtes:
twælf wife cnihtes.	twalf wife cnihtes.
& fende aft[9] Gorloif:	and fende after Gorloys:
gumenene ældere.	eorl of Cornwale.
and beden hine an hiȝinge:	and bad hine an hiȝenge:
cumē to þan kinge.	come to þan kinge.
& don þan kinge god riht:	and don þan kinge god riht: [c.2.]
& beon icnowen of hif pliht.	and beon icnowe of his pliht.
þ he hafde[1] þene king ifcend:	þat he hadde þane king ifend:
& from hif borde wes iwende.	þat he was fram his borde iwend.
he and hif cnihtes:	he and his cnihtef:
mid muchele vn-rihte. [[f.106ᵇ.c.1.]	mid mochele onrihtes.
for the king him wæs glad wið:	for þe king him louede afe his lif:
& for he hailede in hif wif.	and haylede to his wif.
& ȝif he nalde aȝein cumen:	And ȝef he nolde þis owe:
& hif gult beon icnawen.	and of his gult beo cnowe.
þe king him wolde aft[9]:	þe king him wolde after:
and don al hif mahten.	and don al his mihte.
binimen him al hif lond:	bi-nimen al his lond:
and hif feoluer & his gold.	þat he hadde an hond.
þif iherde Gorlois:	þis ihorde Gorloys:
gumenene lauer[2].	eorl of Cornwale.

and took 'him forth-right [anon right] twelve wise knights, and sent after Gorlois, 'chieftain of men [earl of Cornwall], and bade him come in haste to the king, and do the king good right, and acknowledge his fault, that he had disgraced the king, 'and [that] from his board [he] had departed; he, and his knights, with mickle wrong, for (because) the king 'was cheerful with him [loved him as his life], and 'for he' hailed (drank health?) to his wife. And if he would not 'back come [this own], and acknowledge his guilt, the king would *follow* after him, and do all his might; take from him all his land, 'and his silver, and his gold [that he had in hand]. Gorlois heard this, 'lord

[1] *R.* hafde. [2] lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& he andſware ȝaf:
eorlene wraðeſt.
Næi ſwa me helpe drihte:
þa iſcop þaſ daȝeſ lihte.
nulle ich nauere aȝæn cumen:
no hif grið ȝirnen.
ne ſcal he neuere on liue:
me ſcende of mine wife.
& ſuggeð Vðer kinge:
at Tintaieol he mai me finden.
ȝif he þuder wule ride:
þer ich him wulle abiden.
and þer he ſcal habbe hærd gome:
& mucle weorldes ſcome.
Forð wende þe eorl:
ire on his mode.
he wes wærð[1] wið þene king:
wunder ane ſwiðe.
and þretede Vther þene king:
and alle his þeines mid him.
ah he nuſte whæt com ſeoððe:
ſone þer æfter.
þe eorl anan wende:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and he anſwerede:
wroþliche ſwiþe.
Naẏ ſo me helpe drihte:
þat ſceop þes daiȝes lihte.
nelle ich neuere aȝein come:
ne his griþ ȝerne.
ne ſal he neuere on lifue:
me ſcende of mine wifue.
Ac ſeggeþ Vther þan king:
at Tyntagel he maẏ me finde.
ȝef he þider wole ride:
þar ich him wole abide.

FOrþ wende þe eorl:
ẏr on his mode.
he was wroþ wiþ þan king:
wonderliche ſwiþe.
and wreþþede[2] Vther þane kīg:
and alle his cnihteſ mid him.
ac he nuſte wat com ſuþþe:
ſone þar after.
þe eorl a-non wende: [f.85b. c. 1.]

of men [earl of Cornwall], and he 'answer gave, wrathest of earls [answered exceeding wrathly]: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord, that formed the day-light, will I never back come, nor yearn his peace; nor shall he ever in life disgrace me of my wife! 'And [But] say *ye* to Uther [the] king, at 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he may find me; if he thither will ride, there will I abide him, 'and there he shall have hard game, and mickle worlds shame.'" Forth proceeded the earl, angry in his mood; he was wrath with the king wondrously much, and threatened Uther the king, and all his 'thanes [knights] with him. But he knew not what should come subsequently, soon thereafter. The earl proceeded anon into Cornwall; he had there two castles

[1] wræð?

[2] þretede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

in to Cornwaille.
he hafde þer tweie caſtles:
bicluſed ſwiðe uaſte.
þæ caſtles aðele[1] weore:
of hiſ eoldrene iſtreon.
To Tintaieol he ſende:
hiſ leofmon þa wes hende.
Ygerne ihatē:
wifene aðeleſt. [c.2.]
and heo bicluſde uæſte:
inne þan caſtle.
Ygerne weſ færi:
& forhful an heorte.
þat ſwa moni mon for hire:
ſculden habbē þer lure.
þe eorl ſende ſonde:
ȝeōd al Brutlonde.
and bæd alcne ohte gome:
þat he him ſculde to cume.
for gold and for ſeolure:
& for oðere ȝiuen gode.
þat heo ful ſone:
to Tintaieole comen.
& hiſ hiſ[3] aȝene cnihtes:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

into Cornwale.
he hadde þare tweie caſtles:
bi-walled ſwiþe faſte.
þe caſtles gode were:
of his hilderne ſtreone.
To Tyntagel he ſende:
his wif þat was ſo hende.
Igerne i-hote:
treouweſt alre wifue.
and he bi-cluſdere[2] faſte:
ine þane caſtle.
Igerne was ſori:
and forhfolle an heorte.
þat ſo mani man for hure:
ſolde habbe þare lure.
þe eorl ſende ſonde:
oueral Brutlond.
and bad echene ohte gome:
þat he ſolde to him come.
for ſeoluer and for golde:
and for oþer ȝeftes gode.
þat he wel ſone:
to Tyntagel come.
and his owene cnihtes:

'inclosed [be-walled] most fast; the castles were good, of (*and* belonged to) *the* race of his ancestors. To 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] he sent his 'mistress [wife] who was [so] fair, named Ygærne, 'best [truest of all] women; and [he] inclosed her fast in the castle. Ygærne was sorry, and sorrowful in heart, that so many men for her should there have destruction. The earl sent messengers over all Britain, and bade each brave man, that he should come to him, for gold and for silver, and for other good gifts, that 'they [he] full soon should come to 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]; and *bade* his own

[1] *Written at first* alðele, *but* l *expunged.* [2] bi-cluſde hire? [3] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
comen forð rihtes.	comen forþrihtes.
þa heo to-gædere weoren:	þo hii to-gadere weren:
fele þeines.	alle hi-fomed.
þa hafde he fulle:	þo hadde[1] fulle:
fiftene þufend.	fiftene þufend.
& heo Tintaieol:	and he Tyntagel:
faſte bitunden.	faſte bi-tunde.
Uppen þere fæ ſtronde:	Vppe þare ſtronde:
Tintaieol ſtondeð.	Tyntagel ſtondeþ.
he is mid fæ cliuen:	he his mid ſéé cluues:
faſte bicluſed.	faſte bi-tuned.
þat ne bið he biwunne:	þat ne worþ he bi-wonne:
þurh nanes cunnes monnen.	þorh neuere none manne.
bute ȝif hunger:	bote of ſtrang honger:
cumen þer an vnder.	come þar honder.
þe eorl uerde þenne:	þe eorl wende þanne:
mid ſeouē þufend monnen.	mid ſcoue þouſend manne.
& wende to ane oðere caſtle:	and wende to an oþer caſtel: [c.2.]
and bichiſde hi[2] ful uæſte.	and bi-tunde him wel faſte.
Tintaieol. and bilefde hiſ wif in Tintaieol:	bilefde his wif in Tyntagel:
mid ten þufend monnen.	mid hehte þouſen[3] manne.
For ne þurue þa cnihtes:	For ne þeorte þe cnihtes:
dæies na nihtes.	daiȝes no nihtes.

knights to come forth-right. When they were together, 'the good thanes [all assembled], then had he full fifteen thousand, and 'they [he] fast inclosed 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]. Upon the 'sea' strand 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel] standeth; it is with *the* sea cliffs fast inclosed, *so* that it may not be won, by 'no kind of [ever any] man, but if (except) [strong] hunger come there 'in' under. The earl marched thence with seven thousand men, and proceeded to another castle, and inclosed it 'full [well] fast, 'and' left his wife in Tintaieol [Tyntagel], with 'ten [eight] thousand men. For *it* needed the knights, day or night, only to guard [well] the castle gate,

[1] hadde he? [2] bicluſde hine? [3] þouſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
buten buten[1] biwiten þat caſtel ȝat:	bote witie wel þan caſtel ȝeate:
& careles liggen flæpen.	and careles ligge fleape.
and þe eorl wuſte þene oþer:	and þe eorl wuſte þan oþer:
& mid hī hiſ a[2] broðer.	mid him his owe broþer.
þiſ iherde Vther:	þis ihorde Vther:
þe king wes ſwiðe ſteorc.	þat king in londe was her.
þat Gorloiſ hiſ eorl:	þat Gorloys his eorl:
hiſ ferde hafde igadere. [f.107.c.1.]	ferde hadde i-gadered.
and wolde halde weorre:	and wolde holde werre:
mid muchelere wraððe.	mid mochelere wraþþe.
þe king bad hiſ ferde:	þe king bad his ferde:
ȝeond al þiſen ærde.	oueral his erþe.
& ȝeond al þan londe:	
þa ſtoden an hiſ honde.	
monieſ kinnes leoden:	mani cunnes leode:
liðen heom to-gæderes.	liþede heom to-gaderes.
and comen to Lundene:	and comen to Londene:
to þan leod-kinge.	to þan leod-kinge.
Ut of Lundenes tun:	UT of Londenes toun:
ferde Vðer Pendrāg.	verde Vther Pendragon. *Vðer Pendragun.*
he & hiſ cnihtes:	he and his cnihtes:
ferde uorð rihtes.	wende forþrihtes.
ſwa longe þat heo comen:	so lange þat hii come:
into Cornwæille.	in to Cornwale.

and lie careless asleep; and the earl kept the other, 'and' with him his own brother. Uther heard this, who was king 'most stark [in land here], that Gorlois, his earl, had gathered 'his' forces, and would hold war, with much wrath. The king summoned his host over all 'this [his] territory, 'over all the land that stood in his hand'; people of many kind marched them together, and came to London to the sovereign. Out of Londons town fared Uther Pendragon; he and his knights proceeded forthright, so long, that they came into Cornwall, and over the water 'they'

[1] *Sic MS.* [2] aȝen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& ouer þat water heo tueoȝen :/
þat hatten Tambreif.
riht to þan caſtle :/
þer heo Gorlois wuſten.
Mid muchelere læðe :/
þene caſtel heo bilæien.
ofte heo to-ræſden :/
mid ræȝere ſtrengðe.
to-ſomne heo leopen :/
leoden þer feollen.
Fulle ſeouen nihte :/
þe king mid his cnihten.
bilæi þene caſtel :/
his men þer hafeden forȝen.
ne miſte[1] he of þan eorle :/
naþing iwinnen.
and alle þa ſeouen nihte :/
ilaſte þat ſelliche feoht.
Þa iſeh Vðer kīg :/
þat him ne ſpedde naðing.
ofte he hine biþohte :/
whæt he don mahte.
for Ygærne him wes ſwa leof :/
æfne alſe hiſ aȝen lif.
and Gorloiſ him wes on leodē :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ofer þat water wende :/
þat Tambre his ihote.
riht to þan caſtle :/
þar hii Gorloys wuſte.
and al þar aboute :/
þane caſtel bi-leye.
ofte hii to-reſde :/
mid reȝere ſtrengþe.

Folle ſoueniht ef :/
þe king mid his cnihtef.
bi-laý þane caſtel :/ [f.86.c.1.]
his men þare hadde teone.
ne mihte he of þan eorl :/
noþing a-winne.
ac al þat ſoueniht :/
ilaſt þat ſelliche fiht.
þo iſeh Vther þe king :/
þat him ne ſpedde noþing.
ofte he hine bi-þohte :/
wat he don mihte.
for Igerne him was ſo leof :/
ſo his owene lif.
and Gorloys in londe :/

passed, that Tambres 'hight [is named], right to the castle, where they knew Gorlois *to be*. 'With much enmity [and all thereabout] the castle 'they' besieged; oft they assaulted *it* with fierce strength; 'together they leapt, people there fell.' Full seven nights the king with his knights besieged the castle; his men there had sorrow; he might not of the earl anything win, 'and [but] all the se'nnight lasted the marvellous fight. When Uther [the] king saw, that nothing sped to him; oft he bethought him what he might do; for Ygærne was so dear to him, 'even' as his own life, and

[1] mihte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

monnen alre læðeſt.
& ælches weieſ him wes wa:
a þiſſere weorlde-riche. [c. 2.]
for he ne mihte beon wurðe:
na þing of hiſ wille.
Þa wes mid þan kinge:
an ald mon ſwuðe hende.
he wes a ſwiðe riche þein:
and ræh on ælche dome.
he wes ihaten Vlfin:
muche wiſdō wes mid him.
Þe king bræid up his chin:
and biſah an Vlfin.
swiðe he murnede:
hiſ mod wes iderued.
Þa quað Vðer Pendragun:
to Ulfin þan cnihte.
Ulfin ræd me ſumne ræd:
oðer ich beō ful raðe dæde.
swa ſwiðe me longeð:
þ ne mai i noht[1] libben.
after þere faire Ẏgærne:
þis word halt me derne.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

man alre loþeſt.
and in eche weyes him was wo:
in þiſſe worle-riche.
for he ne mihte habbe:
noht of his wille.
¶ Þo was mid þan kinge:
an hold man ſwiþe hende.

he was ihote Vlfin: *Vlfin.*
moche wiſdom was mid him.
Þe king i-breid vp his chin:
and bi-heold Vlfin.

and ſeide mid his mouþe:
toward his cnihte.
Vlfin read me ſomne read:
oþer ich worþe ſone dead.
ſo ſwiþe me langeþ:
þat ich ne may noht libbe.
after þare faire Igerne:
þis word halt me deorne.

Gorlois was to him in *the* land 'of all men [man of all] most loathsome; and [in] each way was woe to him in this worlds realm; because he might not have 'anything [aught] of his will. Then was with the king an old man exceeding well-informed; 'he was a very rich thane, and skilful in each doom'; he was named Ulfin; much wisdom was with him. The king drew up his chin, and 'looked on [beheld] Ulfin; 'greatly he mourned; his mood was disturbed.' 'Then quoth Uther Pendragun to Ulfin the [and said with his mouth toward his] knight: "Ulfin, say me some counsel, or I shall be 'full' soon dead, so much *it* longeth me after the fair Ygærne, that I may not live.

[1] ich noht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
for Ulfin þe leoue:	for ich wole ilifue:
aðele þine lare.	al þine lore.
lude & ſtille:	loude and ſtille:
don ich heom wulle.	don ich wolle.
þa andſwarede Ulfin:	þo anſwerede Vlfin:
þan kinge þet ſpac wið him.	þan king þat ſpac wiþ him.
Nu ihere ich muche ſeollic:	Nou ihire ich mochel ſellich:
ænne king ſuggen.	one king ſegge.
þu luueſt Ẏgærne:	þou loueſt Igerne:
and halſt hit swa deorne.	and holdeſt hit ſo deorne. [c. 2.]
þe wifmon if þe to leof:	þe wifman his þe to leof:
& hire lauerd al to lað.	and hire louerd to loþ.
hiſ lond þu forberneſt:	his lond þou for-bearneſt:
& hine blæð wurcheſt.	
and þratteſt hine to ſlænne:	and him seolue þreteſt.
& his cun to fordōne.	
Weneſt þu mid ſwulche hærme:	Weneſt þou mid ſoche hærme:
to biȝeten Ẏgærne.	to bi-ȝete Igerne.
þenne heo ſculde don:	þanne ȝeo ſolde don:
ſwa ne deð na wifman.	aſe ne doþ no womman.
mid æie vnimete:	mid heẏe onimete:
halden luue ſwete.	holde loue ſwete.
Ah ȝif þu luueſt Ẏgærne:	Ac ȝef þou hire louedeſt:
þu ſculdeſt hit halden derne. [f.107b. c.1.]	þou ſoſt[1] hire ſondes ſende.

This word hold to me secret; for 'Ulfin the dear, thy good [I will believe all thy] counsels, loud and still I will do 'them'. Then answered Ulfin to the king who spake with him: "Now hear I a king say great marvel! Thou lovest Ygærne, and holdest it so secret; the woman is to thee dear, and her lord 'all' loath; his land thou consumest, 'and makest him destitute,' and threatenest him[self] 'to slay, and his kin to destroy.' Weenest thou with such harm to obtain Ygærne? She should do then as no woman doth, with dread unmeet hold love sweet. But if thou 'lovest Ygærne [lovedest her],

[1] foldeſt?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and ſendē hire ſone:	
of ſeoluere and of golde.	
& luuien hire mid liſte:	and louie hire mid liſte:
& mid leofliche bihæſte.	and mid faire bi-heſte.
Þa ȝet hit weore a wene:	And ȝet hit were a wene:
whar þu heo mihtes aȝe.	war þou hire habbe mihtes.
for Ẏgærne if wel idon:	for Igerne his wel idon:
a ſwiðe treowe wimmon.	a ſwiþe treouwe womman.
swa wes hire moder:	so was hire moder:
& ma of þan kunne.	and mo of hure cunne.
To ſoðe ich þe ſuggē:	
leofeſt alre kinge.	
þat oðere weief þu moſt agunnen:	Ac oþer weies þou moſt a-gẏnne:
ȝif þu hire wult awinnen.	ȝef þou hire wolt a-winne.
For ȝurſtendæi me com to:	For ȝorſtnendai me com to:
an æremite wel idon.	on heremite wel idon.
& ſwor bi his chinne:	and ſwor bi his chinne:
þat he wuſte Merlī.	þat he wiſte of Merlẏn.
whar he ælche nihte:	ware he eche nihte:
reſteð vnder lufte.	reſte onder lufte.
and ofte he hī ſpæc wið:	and ofte he ſpac him wiþ:
& ſpelles him talde.	and ſpelles him tolde.
& ȝif we mihte M^{9}lin:	And we mihte þorh eni þing:
mid liſte biwinnen.	a-winne þiſſne Merlẏn.
þenne mihteſt þu þine iwille:	þanne mihtes þou ſone:

thou shouldest 'hold it secret, and' send her 'soon of silver and of gold [messengers], and love her with art, and with 'loving [fair] behest. 'The [And] yet it were a doubt, whether thou mightest 'possess [have] her; for Ygærne is chaste, a woman most true; so was her mother, and more of the [her] kin. 'In sooth I thee say, dearest of all kings,' 'that [But] otherwise thou must begin, if thou wilt win her. For yesterday came to me a good hermit, and swore by his chin, that he knew [of] Merlin, where he each night resteth under heaven; and oft he spake with him, and stories him told. 'And' if we might 'with art [through any thing] get [this] Merlin,

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

allunge biwinne.
þa wes Vðer Pendragun:
þa ſofter an his mode.
& ȝif[1] andſware red:
Vlfin þu haueſt wel iſæd.
Ich þe ȝiue an honde:
þritti ſolh of londe.
þ þu M^{9}lin biwīne:
& don mine iwille.
Vlfin ȝeond þat folc wende:
& ſohte al þa uerde. [c. 2.]
& he vmbe ſtunde:
þene æremite finde[3].
and an hiȝinge:
brohte hine to þan kinge.
and þe king him ſette an hond:
ſeouen fulȝene lond.
ȝif he mihte bringen:
M^{9}lin to þā kinge.
þe æremite gon wēde:
in þene weſt ænde.
to ane wilderne:
to ane wude muchele.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

habbe þine wille.
þo was Vther Pendragun:
þe ſohtere in his mode.
and anſwerede þane read:
Vlfin þou haueſt wel iſeid.
Ich ȝeue an honde þe[2]: [f.86^{b}. c.1.]
þritti ſolh of londe.
þat þou Merlỳn a-winne:
and do mine wille.
Vlfin in þan londe wende:
and ſohte al þe ferde.
and bi one ſtunde:
þane heremite [funde].
and an hiȝenge:
brohte hine to þan kinge.
and þe king him ſette an hond:
ſcoue ſolwene lond.
ȝef he mihte finde:
Merlỳn and to þe kinge bringe.
þe heremite gan wende:
to þan weſt eande.
to one wilderne:
to one wode mochele.

then mightest thou thy will 'wholly obtain [soon have].'' Then was Uther Pendragun the softer in his mood, and 'gave answer [answered]: '' Ulfin, thou hast well said [the] counsel; I give thee in hand thirty ploughs of land, *so* that thou get Merlin, and do my will.'' Ulfin went 'through the folk [in the land], and sought all the host, and 'he' after [a] time found the hermit, and in haste brought him to the king. And the king set to him in hand seven ploughs of land, if he might [find and] bring Merlin to the king. The hermit gan wend 'in [to] the West end, to a wilderness, to a mickle wood, where he had dwelt well many winters; and Merlin very

[1] ȝaf? [2] *R.* þe an honde. [3] funde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer he iwuneð[1] hafde:
wel feole wintre.
and M^{9}lin fwiðe ofte:
þer inne[2] fohte.
Sone þe armite com in:
þa ifunde he Mærlin.
vnder ane treo ftonden:
and fære him gon longē.
þene æremite he ifæh cume:
alfe while wes his iwune.
he orn him to-ȝænes:
beiene heo uæineden þas.
heo cluptē heo cuften:
and cuðliche fpeken.
þa fæide M^{9}lin:
muchel wifdom wes mid him.
Sæie þu mi leofe freond:
wi naldeft þu me fuggen.
þurh nanef cūnes þinge:
þat þu wældeft to þā kinge.
Ah ful ȝare ich hit w^{9}te:
anan fwa ich þe mifte.
þat þu icumen weore:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þar he iwoned hadde:
wel fale wyntres.
and Merlyn fwiþe hofte:
þare hine fohte.
Sone fo þe heremite com in:
he ifeh Merlyn.
vnder one ftunde:
and fore him gan longye.
þan heremite he ifeh come:
afe wile was if wone.
he orn him to-ȝeines:
and to him faide þus.
hii clupten hii cuften:
an cuþliche fpeke.
þo faide Merlyn:
moche wifdom was mid him.
Sai þou me leofue freond:
wi noldeft þou me couþe.
þorh none þing:
þat þou woldeft to þan kinge.
Ac fol ȝare ich hit wifte:
anon afe ich þe mifte.

oft sought him there. *So* soon [as] the hermit came in, 'then found he [he saw] Merlin, 'standing under a tree [after a time], and sore gan for him long; he saw the hermit come, as whilom was his custom; he ran towards him, 'both they rejoiced for this [and said to him thus]; they embraced, they kissed, and familiarly spake. Then said Merlin,—much wisdom was with him,—" Say thou, 'my [to me,] dear friend, why wouldest thou not 'say [make known] to me, through no 'kind of' thing, that thou wouldest *go* to the king? But full quickly I it knew anon as I thee missed, 'that thou wert come to Uther *the* king'; and what the king spake with thee,

[1] iwuned?

[2] hine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

to Vðere kinge.
and what þe ḳing þe wið ſpæc:
and of hiſ londe þe bæd.
þat þu me·ſculdeſt bringe:
to Vðer kinge. [f.108.c.1.]
And Vlfin þe ſohte:
& to þan kinge brohte.
& Vðer Pendragun:
forð rihtes anan.
ſette him an honde:
þritti ſolh of londe.
& he ſætte þę an honde:
seoue ſulhȝene lōd.
Vther if[1] of-longed:
æfter Ẏgærne þere hende.
wunder ane ſwiðe:
after Gorloiſes wiue.
Ah longe if æuere:
þ ne cummeð nauere.
þ he heo biwinne:
bute þurh mine ginne.
for niſ na wimmon treowere:
in þiſſere worlde-riche.
& neoðeles he ſcal aȝe:
þa hende Ẏgærne.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and wat þe king þe wiþ ſpac:
and of his londe þe bead.
þat þou me ſoldeſt bringe:
to Vth[9] þan kinge. [c.2.]
and Vlfin þe ſohte:
and to þan kinge brohte.

and Vther ſette hī an hond:
þritti ſolwene lond.
and þe he ſette an honde:
ſoue ſolwene lond.
Vther his of-longed:
after Igerne.
wonderliche ſwiþe:
after Gorloẏs his wifue.
Ac lange his euere:
þat ne comeþ neuere.
þat he hire awinne:
bote mid mine gẏnne.
for niſ no wommā treuwere:
in þiſſe worle-riche.
And noþeles he ſal habbe:
þe hendi Igerne.

and of his land thee offered, that thou shouldest bring me to Uther [the] king. And Ulfin thee sought, and to the king brought, and Uther 'Pendragon forth-right anon,' set him in hand thirty ploughs of land; and he set thee in hand seven ploughs of land. Uther is desirous after Ygærne 'the fair,' wondrously much, after 'Gorloises [Gorloys his] wife. But *so* long *as* is eternity, that shall never come, that he obtain her, but (except) through my stratagem; for *there* is no woman truer in this worlds realm. And ne-

[1] *R.* if.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

on hir[1] he ſcal ſtreonē:
þat ſcal wide ſturien.
he ſcal ſtreonien hire on:
ænne ſwiðe ſellichne mon.
Longe beoð æuere:
dæd ne bið he næuere.
þe wile þe þiſ world ſtænt:
ilæſten ſcal iſ worðmunt[2].
and ſcal inne Rome:
walden þa þæineſ.
Al him ſcal abuȝe:
þat wuneð inne Bruttene.
of him ſcullen gleomen:
godliche ſingen.
of his breoſten ſcullen æten:
aðele ſcopes.
ſcullen of hiſ blode:
beorneſ beon drunke.
of hiſ eȝene ſcullen fleon:
furene gleden.
ælc finger an hiſ hond: [c.2.]
ſcarp ſtelene brond.
ſcullen ſtan walles:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

in hire he ſal ſtreni:
þat ſal wide ſturie.
he ſal ſtreoni hire on:
one felliche man.
Lange his euere:
dead ne worþ he neuere.
þe wile þat þe worle ſteond:
me wole of him telle.
he ſal in Rome:
welde þe cnihtes.
Al him ſal abouwe:
þat wonieþ in Bruttene.
of hī ſolle gleomen:
couþliche ſinge.
of his broſt ſollen eate:
ſtaleworþe kempeſ.
ſolle of his blode:
cnihtes beo dronge.
of his eȝene ſolle fleo:
furie gledeſ.
ech fenger of his hond:
ſcarp ſtelene brond.
ſollen ſton walles:

vertheless he shall 'possess [have] the fair Ygærne; *and* he shall beget on her what shall widely rule; he shall beget on her a man 'exceeding' marvellous (*or* famous). *So* long *as* is eternity, he shall never die; the while that 'this [the] world standeth, 'his glory shall last [men will of him tell]; 'and' [he] shall in Rome rule the 'thanes [knights]. All shall bow to him that dwelleth in Britain; of him shall gleemen 'goodly [familiarly] sing; of his breast 'noble poets [stalworth warriors] shall eat; of his blood shall 'men [knights] be drunk; from his eyes shall fly fiery embers; each finger 'on [of] his hand *shall be* a sharp steel brand; stone walls shall before him

[1] *Interlined by a second hand.*

[2] word munt, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

biuoren him to-fallen.
beornes ſcullen ruſien:
reoſen heoꝛ mærken.
þuſ he ſcal wel longe:
liðen ȝeoð londen.
leoden biwinnen:
& hiſ laȝen ſette.
þiſ beoð þa tacnen[1] of þan ſune:
þe cumeð of Ure[2] Pendragune.
and of Ẏgærne:
þes ſpeche if ful derne.
for ȝet næt hit neoðer:
Ẏgærne no Uðer.
þat of Vðere Pendragune:
ſcal ariſe ſwilc a ſune.
for ȝet he beoð unſtreoned:
þa ſturieð al þa þeoden.
Ah laured quað Merlin:
nu hit is iwille þin.
þat forð I[3] ſcal fuſe:
to uerde þaſ kingeſ.
þi word ich wulle heren:
and nu ich wulle wende.
and faren ich wulle for þire lufe:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

to-vore hi to-falle.
beornes ſolle ruſie:
reſe hire marke.
þuſ he ſal wel lange:
wende ouer al þan londes.
folk to bi-winne: [f.87.c.1.]
and his laȝef ſette.
þiſ beoþ þe tockne of þan ſone:
þat comeþ of Vther Pendragon.
and of Igerne:
þat ȝet his wel deorne.
for ȝet not hit noþer:
Igerne no Vther.
for ȝet he his on-ſtreone:
þat ſtorie ſal þeos þeode.
Ac louerd cwaþ Merlẏn:
nou hit his wille þin.
þat forþ ich ſal vare:
to folke þeos kinges.
þi word ich wolle iheren:
and nou ich wolle wende.
and faren ich wolle for þine loue:

tumble; barons shall give way, *and* their standards fall! Thus he shall well long fare over [all the] lands, people to conquer, and set his laws. These are the tokens of the son, that shall come of Uther Pendragon and of Ygærne. "This speech [That yet] is 'full [well] secret; for yet neither it knoweth, Ygærne nor Uther, 'that of Uther Pendragon such a son shall arise'; for yet he is unbegot, that shall govern 'all the [this] people. But, Lord," quoth Merlin, "now it is thy will, that forth I shall go to *the* 'host [folk] of 'the [this] king; thy words I will obey, and now I will depart, and

[1] beoð þacnen, *pr. m.* [2] Uðer? [3] ich?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to Vthere Pendragune.
and habben þu ſcalt þat lond:
þ he þe ſette an hond.
þuſ heo þa iſpecken:
þæ æremite gon to weopen.
deorliche he hine cuſte:
þer heo gunnen dælen.
Merlin ferde riht ſuð:
þat lond him wæs ful cuð.
forð riht he fuſde:
to þes kinges ferde.
Sone ſwa Vðer hine iſæh:[f. 108b, c. 1.]
swa he him to-ȝeines bæh.
& þuſ quað Vder[3] Pēdragune:
Mærlin þu ært wilcume.
Her ich ſette þe an honde:
al þene ræd of mine londe.
and þ þu me ræde:
to muchere neode.
Vther him talde:
al þ he walde.
& hu Ygærne him wes on leodē:
wimmonnen[4] leofeſt.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to Vther Pendragon.
and habbe ȝe ſolle þat lond:
þat a[1] ȝou ſette an hond.
Dorneliche[2] hii cuſte:
þo hii gonne to-deale.
Merlȳn wende riht forþ ſuþ:
þat lond him was wel couþ.
forþ riht he wende:
to þis kingeſ ferde.
Sone ſo Vther hine iſeh:
aȝeines him he beh.
and þus cwaþ Vther Pendragon:
Merlȳn þou hart wilcome.
Here ich þe ſette an hond:
al þane read of mine lond.
for nou þou moſt me reade:
at mochele mine neode.

proceed I will for thy love to Uther Pendragon. And 'thou shalt [ye shall] have the land that he set 'thee [you] in hand." 'Thus they then spake: the hermit gan to weep'; dearly 'he him [they] kissed; 'there [then] they gan to separate. Merlin went right 'forth' south, the land was well known to him; forth-right he proceeded to 'the [this] kings host. *So* soon as Uther him saw, 'so' he approached towards him; and thus quoth Uther Pendragon: "Merlin, thou art welcome! Here I set thee in hand all the counsel of my land, 'and that [for now] thou [must] me advise, at [my] great need." 'Uther told him all that he would, and how Ygærne was to him in *the* land dearest of women, and Gorlois, her lord, most odious

[1] he? [2] deoreliche? [3] *R.* Vðer. [4] wimmonnen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and Gorlois hire lauerd :/	
momnenen[1] alre laðeſt.	
& buten ich habbe þīne ræd :/	for bote ich habbe þine read :/
ful raðe þu iſihſt me dæad.	wel ſone ich worþe dead.
	for ich langȳ ſo ſwiþe :/
	after Gorloȳs his wifue.
Þa andſwerede M^{9}lin :/	Þo anſwerede Merlȳn :/
Let nu cume in Vlfin.	Let nou come Vlfin. [c. 2.]
& bitæc him an honde :/	and bi-tak him an hond :/
þritti fulȝene lond.	þritti ſolwene lond.
& bi-tæc þan æremite :/	and bi-tak þe heremite :/
þat þu him bihete.	þat þou hine bi-heate.
for nulle ich aȝæn na lond :/	for nelle ich of þe habbe :/
neouðer[2]	none cunne ȝeftes.
for ich am on rade :/	
rihcheſt alre monnen.	
& ȝif ich wilne æhte :/	for ȝef ich wilnede hahte :/
þenne wurſede ich on crafte.	þanne werſede ich on crafte.
Ah al þī iwille :/	Ac al þine wille :/
wel ſcal iwurðen.	wel þou ſalt habbe.
for ich cō ſwulcne leche-craft :/	for ich can on ſoch craft :/
þe leof þe ſcal iwurðen.	þat þe ſal wel likie.

of all men.'—"'And [For] unless I have thy counsel, 'full [well] soon 'thou wilt see me [I shall be] dead, [for I long so greatly after Gorloys his wife]." Then answered Merlin: "Let Ulfin now come 'in,' and give him in hand thirty ploughs of land, and give to the hermit what thou him promisedest; for I will not 'possess any land, neither silver nor gold [have of thee any kind of gifts]; for 'I am in counsel most skilful of all men, and' if I wished for possessions, then should I become worse in craft. But all thy will well 'shall come to pass [thou shalt have]; for I know such 'leech'-craft, that shall 'be to thee lief [to thee well like], *so* that all thy

[1] monnen?

[2] *Part of a line is here wanting. We should doubtless read* neouðer ſeoluer na gold. *Cf. l.* 18579. *et alib.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat al ſcullen þine gareres[1]:	þat al ſolle þine cheres:
iwurðen ſwulc þas eorles.	iworþe alſe þe eorles.
þi ſpeche þi dede:	þi ſpeche þin dede:
imong þere duȝeðe.	
þine horf & þine iwede:	
& al ſwa þu ſcalt ride.	þin hors and ſo ſalt ride.
Þenne Ẏgæne[2] þe ſcal iſeon:	Wane Igerne þe ſal iſen:
a mode hire ſcal wel beon.	a mode þe bet hire ſal ben.
heo lið inne Tintaieol:	ȝeo liþ ine Tyntagel:
uaſte bituned.	faſte bi-tuned.
Nif nan cniht ſwa wel iboren:	Nis no king ſo wel ibore:
of nane londe icoren. [[c.2.]	of none londe icore.
þe mihte[3] ſtrēgðe of Tintaieol:	þat mid ſtrengþe of Tyntagel:
þe ȝeten mihten un-tunen.	þe ȝeates mihte ontune.
buten he[4] weoren ibirſted:	bo[5] hii were burſted:
mid hungere & mid þurſte.	mid honger and mid þorſte.
Þat if þ ſoðe:	Ac þat his þat ſoþe:
þat ich þe ſugge wulle.	þat ich þe ſegge wolle.
þurh alle þinge þu ſcalt beon:	þorh alle þīg þou ſalt beo:
ſwulc þu eorl weore.	aſe hit þe eorl were.
& ich wulle beon iwil del:	and ich wolle beon evereideal:
swulc him if Brutael.	aſe him his Bricahel.
þat if a cniht swiðe herd:	þat his a cniht ſwiþe hard:

appearance shall become as the earls; thy speech, thy deeds 'among thy people'; thy horse and 'thy weeds (garments); and so shalt 'thou' ride. When Ygærne shall see thee, in mood shall *it* be 'well [the better] to her; she lieth in 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], fast inclosed. *There* is no 'knight [king] so well born, of no land chosen, that might with strength unfasten the gates of 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel], unless they were burst with hunger and with thirst. [But] that is the sooth that I will say to thee; through all things thou shalt be as *if* 'thou wert [it were] the earl; and I will be every bit as Britael he is, who is a knight most hardy, he is this earls

[1] *The first letter of this word is sup. ras.*
[2] R. Ygærne.
[3] mid?
[4] heo?
[5] bote?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
he is þeos eorles ſtiward.	he his þis kingef[1] ſtiward.
Jurdan is hif bur-cniht:	Jordan þat his bour-cniht:
he if swiðe wel idiht.	
ich wulle makien anan:	
Ulfin ſwulc if Jurdan.	
þenne biſt þu lauer[2]:	
& ich Brutael þi ſtiward.	
& Ulfin Jurdan þi bur-cniht:	
& we ſcullen faren nu to niht.	ſoch ſal Vlfin beo to niht.
faren þu ſcalt bi ræde:	and fare þou ſalt to reade:
wuder swa ich þe læde.	woder þat ich þe leode.
Scullen nu to nihte:	Sollē nou to niht:
half hundred cnihten.	alf an hundred cnihtef. [f.87b.c.1.]
mid ſperē and mid ſcelden:	mid ſpere and mid ſcealde:
beon abuten þine telden.	beo a-boute þine teldes.
þ nauere nan quiðð[3] mon:	þat neuere non cwicmon:
ne cumē þer aneoſten.	ne come þar a-neweſt.
& ȝif þer auer æi mon cume:	and ȝef þar eni þare come:
þat hif hæued him beon bi-numē.	þat his heued him beo bi-nome.
for þa cnihtes ſcullen ſuggen:	For þe cnihtes ſolleþ ſegge:
selen þīe beornen.	feale þine þeines.
þat þu ært ilete blod:	þat þou har hi-lete blod:
and reſteſt þe on bædde.	and reſteſt on bedde.

steward; Jurdan 'is his [who is] chamber-knight, 'he is exceeding well dight; I will make Ulfin anon such *as* Jurdan is. Then wilt thou be lord, and I *be* Britael, thy steward, and Ulfin *be* Jurdan, thy chamber-knight.' 'And we shall go now [such shall Ulfin be] to-night; [and] fare thou shalt by counsel, whither 'so*ever* [that] I lead thee. Now to-night shall half [a] hundred knights, with spear and with shield be about thy tents, *so* that never any man alive come there near; and if ever any 'man' come there, that his head be taken from him. For the knights shall say,—thy good 'men [thanes],—that thou art let blood, and restest 'thee'

[1] eorles? [2] lauerd? [3] quik?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þas þīgges forð rihte:
þuſ weoren idihte.
Forð ferde þe king:
næs hit cuð na þing.
and ferden forð mid him:
Vlfin & M^{9}lin.
he[1] tuȝen riht þen wæi:
þa in to Tintaieol læi.
heo comen to þaſcaſtles ȝæte: [f.109, c.1.]
& cuðliche cleopeden.
Vndo þiſ ȝæt eſſel:
þe eorl if icumen here.
Gorlois þe læuerd:
& Britael hiſ ſtiward.
and Jurdan þe burcniht:
we habbeoð ifaren al niht.
þe ȝæteward hit cudde ouer al:
& cnihtes urnen uppen wal.
and ſpeken wið Gorloiſ:
and hine icneowen mid iwis.
þa cnihtes weoren ſwide[3] whæte:
and wefden up þa caſtles ȝæte.
& letten hine binnen fare:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þes þingeſ weren forþriht:
in þilke manere idiht.
Forþ wende þe king:
nas hit couþ noþing.
and forþ wende mid him:
Vlfin and Merlyn.
hii wende riht þane waẏ:
þat in to Tẏntagel laẏ.
hii come to þan caſtel ȝeate:
and couþliche ſpeke.
Vndo þis ȝeate eſſel:
þe eorl his icomen her.
Gorloẏs þin louerd:
and Britahel his ſtiward.
and Jordan his bourcniht:
we habb hii-riden[2] al niht.
þe ȝeateward hit cudde oueral:
and cnihtes ẏrnen vppe wal.
and ſpekē wiþ Gorloẏs:
and hine i-cnewe foliwis.
Þeos cnihtes weren ſwiþe wate:
and wefde vp þe caſtel ȝate.
and lete hine in vare:

in bed. These things were forth-right 'thus [in this manner] dight. Forth went the king; it was nothing known; and forth went with him Ulfin and Merlin; they proceeded right the way that lay into 'Tintaieol [Tyntagel]; they came to the castle-gate, and 'called [spake] familiarly: "Undo this gate-bolt; the earl is come here, Gorlois 'the [thy] lord, and Britael his steward, and Jordan 'the [his] chamber-knight; we have 'journeyed [ridden] all night!" The gateward made it known over all, and knights ran upon *the* wall, and spake with Gorlois, and knew him full surely. 'The [These] knights were most alert, and weighed up the castle-gate, and let

[1] heo? [2] habbeþ i-riden? [3] ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa læſſe wes Þa heore care.
heo wēden mid iwiſſe:
to habben muchel bliſſe.
Þa hædden heo mid ginne:
M^{o}lin Þer wiþ inne.
& heo[1] Vþer Þene king:
wiþ īne heore walding.
and ledde Þer mid him:
his gode Þein Ulfin.
Þiſ tidinde com biliue:
in to Þā wife.
Þæt hire læuerd wes icumen:
and mid him his Þreo gumen.
Vt com Ẏgærne:
forþ to Þan eorle.
and Þas word ſeide:
mid wunſume wurde.
Wilcume læuerd:
monne me leofeſt.
& wilcume Jurdan:
and Britael if aſwa[2].
beo ȝe mid iſūde:
to-dæled from Þan kinge.
Þa quæð Vþer ful iwiſ:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þe laſſe was hire [kare].
hii wende mid iwiſſe:
to habbe mochel bliſſe.
Þo haden hii mid gẏnne:
Merlȳ Þar wiþ ine. [c.2.]
and Vther Þane king:
wiþ hinne hire weldẏng.
and ladde Þare mid him:
his leoue freond Merlẏn.
Þes tidinge com bliue:
into Þan wifue.
Þat hire louerd was icome:
and mid him his Þreo gomeſ.
Vt com Igerne:
forn to Þan eorl.
and Þeſ word ſeide:
mid wonſome ſpeche.
Wolcome louerd:
manne me leoueſt.
and wolcome Jordan:
and Britaeh al ſon[3].
be ȝeo mid iſunde:
idealed frā Þan kinge.
Þo cwaþ Vther foliwis:

him come 'with 'in,—the less was 'then' their care;—they weened certainly to have much bliss. Then had they with stratagem Merlin there within, and Uther the king within their possession, and led there with him his good thane Ulfin [dear friend Merlin]. These tidings came quickly unto the lady, that her lord was come, and with him his three men. Out came Ygærne forth to the earl, and said these words with winsome speech: "Welcome, lord, man to me dearest; and welcome, Jordan, and Britael 'is' also;—be ye in safety parted from the king?" Then quoth Uther full truly as *if* it were Gorlois: "Mickle [is] the multitude that

[1] *Redundant? Perhaps we should read* æc? [2] al ſwa? [3] Britahel al ſo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

swulc hit weore[1] Gorlois.
Muchel þat mōkun :/ [c.2.]
þæt is mid Vther Pend"gun.
and ich æm bi nihte :/
bi-ſtole from þan fihte.
for æfter þe ic wes of-longed :/
wifmonne þu ært me leofueſt.
Buð in to bure :/
& let mi bed makien.
and ich me wulle ræſten :/
to þiſſere nihte uirſte.
& alle dai to mærwe :/
to bliſſien mire duȝeðe.
Ẏgærne beh to bure :/
& lætte bed him makien.
wes þat kinewurðe bed :/
al mid palle ouer bræd.
þe kīg hit wel bihedde :/
& eode to his bedde.
and Ẏgærne læi adun :/
bi Uðere Pendragun.
Nu wende Yg͛ne ful iwis :/
þat hit weoren Gorloiſ.
þurh neuere nænes cunneſ þing :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

aſe hit were Gorloẏs.
Mochel his þat mancun :/
þat his mid Vther þe king.
and ich ham al bi nihte :/
bi-ſtele fram þan fihte.
for after þe ich was of-langet :/
womman þou hart me leoueſt.
Bou into boure :/
and let min bed makie.
and ich me wolle reaſtè :/
to þiſſe niht his forſte.
and al dai to morewe :/
to gladie mine doȝeþe.
Igerne wende to boure :/
and lette bed makie.
was þat kineworþe bed :/
al mid palle ouer ſprad.
þe king hit wel bi-hedde :/
and eod to his bedde.
and Igerne laẏ adun :/ [f.88.c.1.]
bi Vther Pendragon.
Euere wende Igerne foliwis :/
þat hit were Gorloẏs.

is with Uther 'Pendragon [the king]; and I am [all] by night stolen from the fight, for after thee I was desirous, woman thou art to me dearest. Go into *the* chamber, and cause my bed to be made, and I will rest me for this 'nights [night his] space, and all day tomorrow, to gladden my people. Ygærne went to chamber, and caused *a* bed to be made 'for him'; the kingly bed was all overspread with *a* pall. The king viewed it well, and went to his bed; and Ygærne lay down by Uther Pendragon. 'Now [Ever] weened Ygærne full truly, that it were Gorlois; 'through

[1] weoren *pr. m., but* n *erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
no icneou heo Vðer þene king.	
þe king hire wende to:	þe king hire wende to:
swa wapmō fculde to wimmon do.	fo wepman fal to wifue do.
& hæfde him to done:	
wið leofueſt wimmonne. •	
& he ſtreonede hire on:	and ſtreonede hire on:
ænne ſelcuðne mō.	one ſelcouþe man.
kingen alre keneſt:	king alre kenneſt:
þæ æuere com to monnen.	þat euere com to londe.
& he wes on ærde:	and was on erþe:
Arð[ur]. Ærður ihaten.	Arþour ihote.
Nuste noht Ẏg⁹ne:	
wha læie on hire ærme.	
for æuere heo wende ful iwif:	
þat it weoren þe eorl Gorloif.	
Næs þer na mære uirſt: [f.109ᵛ.c1.]	Nas þar na more ſohriht:
buten þ hit wes dæi-liht.	bote þat hit was daẏ-liht.
þer forð rihtes:	a-non forþ rihtes:
vnderȝeten þa cnihtes.	onderȝeten Vther his cnihtes.
þat þe king wes iuaren:	þat þe king was awend:
ut of þere uærde.	vt of þan ferde.
Þa ſæiden þa cnihtes:	Þo ſaide þe cnihtes:
soð þæh hit neoren.	ſoþ þeh hit nere.
þat þe king wes iflozen:	þat þe king was aflózе:

never any kind of thing knew she Uther the king.' The king approached her as man should do to woman, 'and had him to do with *the* dearest of women'; and 'he' begat on her a marvellous man, keenest of all kings, that ever came 'among men [to land], and 'he' was on earth named Arthur. 'Ygærne knew not who lay in her arms; for ever she weened full surely, that it were the earl Gorlois.' There was no greater 'interval [right sooth] but until it was day-light, 'there [anon] forth-right 'the [Uther his] knights understood, that the king was departed out of the host. Then said the knights, sooth though it were not, that the king was flown, 'filled with dread [for dread of the earl]; 'but it all was leasing that

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid ærhþen afeolled.
ah al hit wes leſſinge:
þ heo ſeiden bi þan kinge.
her of heo heoldē muchel run:
uppen Vder[1] Pendragun.
þa ſeiden þa eorles:
& þa hæhſte beōrneſ.
Nu þenne hit waht Gorlois:
hu hit iuaren if.
þat ure kīg if ifaren:
& hif ferde bilæiued.
he wule forð rihtes:
wepni hif cnihtes.
and ut he wule to fihten.
& feollen uf to grūden.
mid woden hif þeines:
muchel wæl makien.
þenne weore uf beteren:
þat we iboren neoren.
Ah leten we blawen bemen:
& bonnien ure uerde.
& Cador þe kene:
ſcal beren þaf kinges marke.
hæbben haȝe þene drake:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

for drede of þan eorle.
and heolde her of mochel roun:
vppe Vther Pendragon.
Þo faide þe eorles:
and þe hehſte beornes.
Nou wane hit wot Gorloȳs:
ou hit ivaren his.
þat oure king his afloȝe:
and his ferde bi-lefued.
he wole anon rihtes:
wepni his cnihtes.
and vt he wole to fihte:
and falle ous to grunde.
þanne were vs betere:
þat we ibore nere.
Ac lete we blowe bumes:
and banni oure ferde.
and Cador þe kene:
ſal bere þis kinges marke.
holden heȝe þane drake:

[Cado]r.

they said of the king;' 'they [and] held hereof much converse upon Uther Pendragon. Then said the earls and the highest barons; "Now when Gorlois shall know it, how it is passed, that our king is 'departed [fled], and *has* left his host, he will 'forth-right [anon right] weapon his knights, and out he will to fight, and fell us to ground, 'with his furious thanes make mickle slaughter;' then were *it* better for us, that we were not born. But cause we *the* trumpets to be blown, and our army to assemble; and Cador the brave shall bear 'the [this] kings standard; 'heave [hold]

[1] *R.* Vðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
bi-foren þiffere duȝeðe.	bi-vore þeof ilke ferde. [c. 2.]
and faren to þan caſtle:	and wende to þan caſtle:
mid kene ure folke.	mid al oure mihte.
and þe eorl Aldolf:	and þe eorl Aldolf:
ſcal beon ure aldre.	ſal beon oure eldre.
& we him ſcullen here:	and we him ſolle herie:
swulc hit þe king weoren.	aſe he þe king were.
& ſwa we ſwullen mid rihte:	and ſo we ſollen mid ſihte[1]:
wið Gorloiſ ſihten. [c. 2.]	wiþ Gorloÿs ſihte.
and ȝif he uf wule ſpeken wið:	and ȝif he wole ſpeke vs wiþ:
& ȝernē þiſ kinges grið.	and ȝerne þis kinges griþ.
ſetten ſæhtn^{o}ſe:	
mid æðen ſoð-fæſte.	
þenne maȝen we mid wurðſcipen:	þanne mawe[2] mid worſipe:
heonene iwenden.	hinne wende.
þenne nabbeoð ure æfterlinges:	þat nabbeþ oure onderlinges:
nane up-breidingeſ.	none vp-breidinges.
þat we for ærhſcipe:	þat we for enÿ ȝearſipe:
heonene at-ærnden.	hinene beoþ at-hourne.
Al þat leodliche folc:	Al þat ilke folk:
bilufde þeſne ilke ræd.	lofuede þane ilke read.
Bemen heo bleowē:	Bvmes hii bleowen:
bonneden uærden.	and bannede hire ferde.
up heo hafden þene drake:	vp hii houe þane drake:

high the Dragon before this 'people [same host], and march to the castle, with 'our keen folk [all our might]. And the earl Aldolf shall be our chief, and we shall obey him, as *if* he were the king; and so we shall with right with Gorlois fight; and if he will speak with us, and yearn this kings peace, 'set amity with soothfast oath,' then may we with worship go hence; 'then [*so* that] our underlings will have no upbraidings, that we for any timidity hence [are] fled." All 'the nation-folk [that folk] praised 'this [the] same counsel.' Trumpets they blew, [and] assembled [their] host;

[1] rihte?

[2] mawe we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
ælches mærken vnimake.	eche marke onimake.	
þer wef moni bald fcalc:	þar was many bold cniht:	
þe fceld weiden on fculdre.	þat fceal[1] fweynde on foldre.	
moni þein kene:		
& wenden to þan caſtle.	and wende to þan caſtle:	
Gorloiſ wes wiδ innē:	þar Gorloy[2] was wiþ ine.	*Gorloiſ.*
mid kene his monnen.		
he lette blawen beomen:		
& bonnien hiſ ferden.		
leopen an fteden:		
cnihtes gunnē riden.		
Þæs cnihtes weoren fwiδe wate:	And hii were fwiþe wate:	
& wenden ut at þan ȝate.	and fweinde vppe caſtel ȝate.	
to-fomne heo comen fone:	and come to-gadere fone:	
faſtliche heo on-floȝen.	and faſtliche on-floȝe.	
feolle fæie men:		
uolden iſohten[3].		
þer wes muche blod gute:	þar was mochel blod iȝote:	
balu wes on folke.	wowe was mid folke.	
imong þan fihte ful iwif:	amang þan fihte foliwis:	
mon floh þene eorl Gorloiſ.	me floh þā eorl Gorloys.	
Þa gunnen hiſ men fleon:	Þo gonne his men fléo:	
& þa oδere after teon.	and þe oþer after teo.	

up they heaved the Dragon, by each standard unmatched; there was many *a* bold man, that hung shield on shoulder, 'many *a* keen thane'; and proceeded to the castle, [where] Gorlois was within, 'with his keen men. He caused trumpets to be blown, and his host to assemble; *they* leapt on steed; knights gan to ride.' 'These knights [And they] were exceeding active, and `went out at the gate; [swung up the castle-gate, and] together 'they' came soon, [and] quickly 'they' attacked; 'fell *the* fated men; *the* ground *they* sought; there was much blood shed, harm was `among [with] *the* folk; amidst the fight full certainly men slew the earl Gorlois. Then gan his

[1] fceald? [2] *R.* Gorloys. [3] heo ſohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
heo comen to þan caſtle :- [f.110.c.1.]	hii comen to þan caſtle :-
and binnen heo þraſtē.	and hii in þraſte.
Sone hit comen binnen :-	
ba twa þa uerden.	
þer ileſte þat fiht :-	þar ilaſte þat fiht :-
þurh þene dæi-liht.	þorh vt þan daẏ-liyt. [f.88ᵇ.c.1.]
ær þe dai weore al a-ſceken :-	her þe dai were al a-ſake :-
wes þe caſtel biȝeten.	was þe caſtel bi-ȝeate.
næs þer nan ſwa wracche ſwein :-	
þat he nes a wel god þein.	
Comen þa tidinde :-	Come þe tẏdinge :-
into Totintageol[1] an hiȝende.	to Tẏntagel an hiȝenge.
forð into þan caſtle :-	
þer Vðer wes inne.	
þat iflaȝen wes ful iwiſ :-	þat iflawe was foliwis :-
þe eorl heore læuerd Gorloiſ.	þe gode eorl Gorloẏs.
& alle his hiſ[2] here-gumen :-	and alle his hiſ hired-gomes :-
and hiſ caſtel inumen.	and þe caſtel inome.
þiſ iherde þe king :-	þis ihorde þe king :-
þer he læi an ſkentting.	þar he lai a ſwetīg.
& leop ut of bure :-	and leop vt of boure :-
ſwulc hit an liun weore.	aſe hit a lẏon were.
þa quað þe king Vðer :-	þo ſaide king Vther :-

men to flee, and the others to pursue after; they came to the castle, and 'within [in] they thrust. 'Soon it came within, both the two hosts;' there lasted the fight through[out] the day-light; ere the day were all gone, the castle was won; was there no swain so mean, that he was not a well good thane.' The tidings came 'in'to Tintageol in haste, 'forth into the castle wherein Uther was,' that the [good] earl 'their lord' Gorlois was slain full truly, and all his soldiers, and 'his [the] castle taken. The king heard this, where he lay 'in amorous play [a-sweeting], and leapt out of bower, as *if* it were a lion. Then 'quoth the [said] king Uther, [who]

[1] *R.* Tintageol. [2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ðf þiſſen tiðende he wes wær.
Beoð ſtille beoð ſtille:
cnihtes inne halle.
here ich æm ful iwiſ:
eore læuerd Gorloiſ.
and Jurdan mi burward:
and Brutael mi ſtiward.
Ich & þas tweie cnihtes:
leopen ut of þan fihte.
and hider in we beoð idraȝen:
neore we noht þeꝛ iflaȝen.
Ah nu ich wulle fuſe:
& ſumnien mine ferde.
and ich & mine cnihteſ:
ſcullen al bi nihte.
faren in ænne tun:
and imeten Vðer Pendragun.
and buten he of fæhneſſe[1] ſpeken:
ich wulle me wuðliche[2] awrake.
& ȝe þeſne caſtel:
bi-cluſeð swiðe uaſte.
and hateð me Ẏgerne:
þat heo noht ne murne.
Nu ich fare forð riht:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat of þe tẏdinge was war.
Cnihtes in halle:
beoþ ſwiþe ſtille.
her ich ham foliwis:
ȝoure louerd Gorloȳs.
and Jordan mẏ bourward:
and Britahel mi ſtiward.
Ich and þeſ tweie cnihteſ:
leopen vt of þan fihte.
and hider in we beoþ idraȝe:
nere we noht þare iflaȝe.

Ac nou ich and mine cnihtes:
ſollen alle bi nihte.
varen into on toun:
and imete Vther Pendragon.
bote he of ſahneſſe[1] ſpeke:
ich wole me worþliche a-wreke.
[[c. 2.] And ȝe þiſne caſtel:
bi-tuneþ ſwiþe faſte.
and biddeþ Igerne:
þat ȝeo noht ne morne.
Nou ich wende forþriht:

of 'this [the] tiding 'he' was ware: "Be 'still, be [most] still, knights in hall! Here I am full truly, your lord Gorlois; and Jordan, my chamberlain, and Britael, my steward. I and these two knights leapt out of (withdrew from) the fight, and in hither we are arrived,—we were not there slain. But now I 'will march, and assemble my host; and I' and my knights shall all by night proceed into a town, and meet Uther Pendragon, 'and' unless he speak of reconciliation, I will worthily avenge me! And inclose ye this castle most fast, and bid Ygærne that she mourn not. Now go I

[1] fæhtneſſe? ſahtneſſe?

[2] wurðliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

habbeoð alle gode niht.
Bi-foren ferde M^{o}lin:
& þe þein Vlfin.
& feoðden Uðer Pendragun:
ut of Tītageoleſtun.
æuere heo uerden alle niȝt:
þat hit wes dæi-liht.
Þa com he to þan ærde:
þer læi his ferde.
Merlin hafde a þene king:
hiſ wlite iſet þurh alle þing.
þa icneowen cnihtes:
heore kinelauerd.
þer wes moni oht Brut:
mid bliſſen afeolled.
þa weoren inne Bruttene:
bliſſen inoȝe.
hornes þer bleowen:
gleomen gen[2] gleowen.
glad æuer ælch cniht:
al mid pælle bi-þæht.
þreo dæies wes þe king:
wuniende þere.
& þan feorðe dæie:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

habbeþ alle gode niht.
Bi-vore wende Merlỳn:
and þe cnih[1] Vlfin.
and fuþþe Vther Pendragon: [c. 2.]
vt of Tỳntageleſ toun.
euere hii wende al niht:
þat hit was dai-liht.
Þo com he to þan ſtude:
war laỳ his ferde.
Merlỳn hadde al his craft:
ondo of þan kinge.
þo icnewe his cnihteſ:
hire kinelouerd.
þar was manỳ bold Brut:
ifulled mid bliſſe.

glad was ich cniht:
al mid palle bi-þehte.
þreo daȝeſ waſ þe king:
woniende þare.
in þan feorþe daie:

forth-right; have *ye* all good night!" Merlin went before, and the 'thane [knight] Ulfin, and afterwards Uther Pendragon, out of Tintageols town; ever they proceeded all night, until it was day-light. When he came to the spot where his army lay, Merlin had 'on the king set his *own* features through all things [undone all his craft from the king]; then [his] knights knew their sovereign; there was many *a* bold Briton filled with bliss; 'then was in Britain bliss enow; horns there blew, gleemen gan chant' glad [was] 'every [each] knight, all arrayed with pall! Three days was the king dwelling there; 'and [on] the fourth day he went to Tintaieol. He

[1] cniht? [2] *Originally written* gleowen, *but the letters* leow *erased; read* gon.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

tŏ Tintaieol he wende.
He ſende to þan caſtle:
hiſ ſeleſt þeines.
& grætte Ẏgærne:
wifuene aðeleſt.
& ſende hire taken:
whæt heo i bedde ſpeken.
hehte heo þat heo aȝéuen:
þene caſtel biliue.
þer nes nan oðer ræd:
for hire lauerd wes dæd.
ȝet wende Ẏgærne:
þat hit foð weoren.
þat þe dæde eorl:
iſoht hafede hiſ duȝeðe. [f.110b. c.1.]
and al heo ilæfde:
þat hit læf weore.
þat þe king Vðer:
æuere weorē icumen her.
Cnihtes eoden to ræde:
cnihteſ eoden to rune.
radden þat heo nalden:
þene caſtel lengere halden.
heore brugge heo duden adun:
& bitahte hine Vðer Pendragū.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

to Tyntagel he wēde.
He ſende to þan caſtle:
his wiſeſte cnihteſ.
and grette Igerne:
wifuene hendeſt.
and ſende hire tockne:
wat hii in bedde ſpeke.
hehte þat ȝeo aȝeoue:
þane caſtel bliue.
þar naſ non oþer read:
for hire louerd wes dead.
ȝet wende Igerne:
þat hit foþ were.
þat þe deade eorl:
iſoht hadde his cnihteſ.
and al wende:
þat hit les were.
þat þe king Vther:
euere weren icome þer.
Cnihtes eoden to reade:
cnihteſ eoden to roune.
radden *þat hii nolde:*
þane caſtel lengere holde.
hire brugge hii dude adun:
and leten him[1] Vther Pendragon. [f.89.c.1.]

sent to the castle his 'best thanes [wisest knights], and greeted Ygærne, 'noblest [fairest] of women, and sent her token what they spake in bed; *and* ordered 'her' that she should yield the castle quickly,—*there* was no other counsel, for her lord was dead. Yet Ygærne weened that it were sooth, that the dead earl had sought his 'people [knights], and 'she' all 'believed [weened], that it were false, that the king Uther had ever come there. Knights went to counsel, knights went to communing; *they* resolved that they would not hold the castle *any* longer; their bridge they let down,

[1] ine?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa ſtod al þiſ kinelond:
æft an Vtheres hond.
þer Vðer þe kīg:
nom Ygærne to qúene.
Ygærne wes mid childe:
bi Vðer kīge.
al·þurh M[9]lines wiȝel:
ær heo biwedded weore.
þe time cō þe wes icoren:
[*Natus est Arthurus.*] þa wes Arður iboren.
Sone ſwa he com an eorðe:
aluen hine iuengen.
heo bigolen þat child:
mid galdere ſwiðe ſtronge.
heo ȝeuē him mihte:
to beon bezſt alre cnihten.
heo ȝeuen him an oðer þing:
þat he ſcolde beon riche king.
heo ȝiuen hī þat þridde:
þat he ſcolde longe libben.
heo ȝifen him þat kine-bern:
cuſten ſwiðe gode.
þat he wes mete-cuſti:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo ſtod al þis kinelond:
in Vtheref owe hond.
þar Igerne iwarþ:
Vther his cwene.
and ȝeo was gret mid childe:
bi Vther þan knge[1].
al þorh Merlynes craft:
here ȝeo bi-wedded were.
þe tyme com þat was icore:
þo was Arþur ibore.
Sone ſo he to worle com:
aluene him onderſenge.

and ȝeuen him mihte:
to beon beſt alre cnihte.
hii ȝeuen him an oþer þing:
þat he ſolde beo riche king.
hii ȝeuen him þat þridde:
þat he ſolde lange libbe.
hii ȝeuen þane beorn:
ȝeftes ſwiþe gode.
þat he wes mete-cuſti:

and 'delivered it to [let in] Uther Pendragon. Then stood all this kingdom 'eft' in Uthers [own] hand. There 'Uther the king took Ygærne for queen; Ygærne was [Ygærne became Uther his queen, and she was great] with child by Uther [the] king, all through Merlins craft, before she was wedded. The time came that was chosen, then was Arthur born. *So* soon as he came 'on earth [in *the* world], elves 'took [received] him; 'they enchanted the child with magic most strong,' 'they [and] gave him might to be the best of all knights; they gave him another thing, that he should be *a* rich king; they gave him the third, that he should live long; they gave to 'him the prince [the child] virtues [gifts] most good,

[1] *R.* kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

of alle quikemonnen.
þis þe alue him ȝef:
and al fwa þat child iþæh.
Æfter Arður wes iboren:
þeo ædie burde.
heo wes ihaten Æne:
þ ædien maiden.
& feoðden heo nom Loð: [c.2.]
þe Leoneſ ahte.
heo wæs inne Loeneif:
leodene læfdi.
Longe luuede Vðer:
mid muchelere bliſſe her.
mid gode griðe mid gode friðe:
freo on kinedome.
þa þe he wes ald mō:
þa com him ufel on.
þat vfel hine læide adun:
seoc wes Vðer Pendragun.
fwa he wes here:
seoc ſeoue ȝere.
þa iwurðen Bruttes:
swiðe ibalded.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

of alle cwike manne.
þis þe alfe him ȝeaf:
and al ſo þat child i-þeh.
After Arþur was ibore:
þat edie maide.
ȝeo waſ i-hote Anna.[1]

þat Leoneif hahte.
ȝeo was in Leoneis:
folkene leafdi.
Lang lifuede Vther:
mid mochele bliſſe her.

þo þat he was hold man:
þo com him vuel an.
þat vuel hine laide adun:
ſeac was Vther Pendragon.
ſo he was here:
ſeac ſeoue ȝere.
þar vore weren Bruttus: [c.2.]
moche onbalded[2].

so that he was *most* generous of all men alive. This the elves gave him, and thus the child thrived. After Arthur, the blessed 'lady [maid] was born, she was named Anna, 'the blessed maiden; and afterwards she took (married) Loth,' who possessed Leoneis (Lothian); she was in Leoneis lady of *the* people. Long lived Uther with mickle bliss here, 'with good peace, with much quiet, free in *his* kingdom.' When that he was *an* old man, then came illness on him; the illness laid him down, sick was Uther Pendragon; so he was here sick seven years. 'Then became [Therefore were] *the* Britons much emboldened; they did oft wickedly, all for abs-

[1] *A line is here apparently wanting.*

[2] ibalded?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
heo duden ofte unwræfte:	hii dude ofte onwrefte:
al for æie-lefte.	al for heye-lefte.
þe ȝet læi ibunden:	ȝet lai ibunde:
in þe quarterne of Lunden.	in þe tour of Londene.
Octa Hengeftef fune:	Octa Hengeftes fone:
þa at Eouerwic wes inume.	þat at Euerwich was inome.
and hif iuerē Ebiffa:	and his ivere Ebiffa:
& hif oder Offa.	and þe oþer Offa.
heom biu⁹ten twælf cnihtes:	ȝam bi-wufte twalf cnihtes:
dæief and nihtes.	daies and nihtes.
þa weoren weri of-læien:	þat weri were for-leie:
inne Lundenne.*	ine Londene.
Octa iherde fuggen:	
of feocneffe þaf kinges.	
& fpac wiþ þa wardes-men:	Octa to þis cnihtes:
þe hine witen fcolden.	fpac þus forþrihtes.
Hærcneþ me nu cnihtes:	
þat ich eou wulle cuþen.	
We liggeþ here i Lundene:	
uafte ibunden.	
and ȝe monienne longne dæi:	
ouer uf ilæien habbeoþ.	
bettere uf weoren to libben:	Betere ȝou were libbe:
inne Sexlonde.	ine Saxlonde.
mid muchele richedome:	mid moche bliffe:

ence of dread. 'The' yet lay Octa, Hengests son, bound in the 'prison [tower] of London, who was taken at York, and his comrade Ebissa, and 'his [the] other Ossa. Twelve knights guarded them day and night, who were wearily oppressed with watching, in London. Octa 'heard say of *the* sickness of the king, and' spake 'with the guardsmen, who should keep him [thus forth-right to these knights]: "'Hearken *to me* now, knights, what I will make known to you. We lie here in London fast bound, and ye many a long day have watched over us.' Better were *it* for 'us [you] to live in Saxland, with much [bliss and] wealth [certainly], than thus

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
[1]	and richedom iwiſſe.
þene þuſ reouliche here:'	þane þus rouliche here:'
[1]	liggen aſwounde.
& ȝif ȝe wolden iwurðen:' [f.111.c.1.]	and ȝef[2] þiſſe wolde:'
& don mine iwille.	alþing i-wourþe.
ich eou wolden ȝiuen lond:'	ich ȝou wolde ȝeue lond:'
muchel feoluer & gold.	boþe feoluer and gold.
þat a ȝe mihten riche:'	þat ȝeo mihte richeliche:'
rixliẽ in þan londe.	rixli on lond.
and eoure lif libben:'	
ſwa eou bið alre leofueſt.	[þing:'
For no biden ȝe nauere ȝiuen gode:'	For ne ſolle ȝeo neuere habbe ſoch
of Vðer kinge.	of Vther ȝoure king.
for nu ful raðe he bið dæd:'	for his[3] almeſt dead:'
and hiſ duȝeðen al bilæueð.	þanne nabbe ȝeo nanne read.
þenne nabben ȝe nouðer:'	ne þanne nabbe ȝe noþer:'
þat an no þat oðer.	þat on ne þat oþer.
Ah biðenche eou ohte mẽ:'	
& doð uf eoure mildze on.	
& þencheð whæt eou weoren leof:'	Ac bi-þencheþ wat ȝou were leof:'
ȝif ȝe þuſ ibūden leien.	ȝef ȝe ibunde were.
& mihten in eouwer londe:'	and mihte in oþer londe:'

miserably here [lie asleep]. And if ye would [*in* all things] accomplish [this], 'and do my will,' I would give you land, 'much [both] silver and gold, *so* that 'ever' ye might richly rule in 'the' land, 'and live your life as to you shall be liefest of all.' For ye shall never have 'good gifts [such things] of Uther, [your] king, for 'now full soon he will be dead, and his people all desert; [*he* is almost dead; then will ye have no counsel, nor] then will ye have neither, the one nor the other. But bethink 'you, brave men, and give to us your compassion, and think' what were lief to you, if ye 'thus lay [were] bound, and might in 'your [other]

[1] *Two lines seem to be missing here.*
[2] ȝeþe ? [3] he his ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
libben inne winne.	libbe mid winne.
Swiðe ofte Octa:	Swiþe ofte Octa:
wið þæs cnihtes ſpac swa.	wiþ þis cnihtes ſpac ſo.
Cnihtes gunnen runen:	Cnihtes gonne roune:
cnihtes gunnen ræden.	cnihteſ gonne reade.
to Octa heo ſeiden ful ſtille:	and to Octa ſaide wel ſtille: [f. 89ᵇ. c. 1.]
We ſcullen don þine iwille.	We ſollen don þine wille.
aðes heo ſworen:	oþes hii ſworen:
ſwiken þat heo nalden.	ſwike þat hii nolden.
Hit wæs in ane nihte:	
þ þe wind wende rihte.	
forð iwenden cnihtes:	Forþ wende cnihtes:
to þere mid-nihte.	to þare ſee forþ rihteſ.
and ledden uorð Octa:	
& Ebiſſa & Oſſa.	
after þere Temeſe:	
tuhten forð into þere sæ.	
forð heo iwenden:	and ouer wende:
into Sæxlonden.	in to Saxlonde.
Heore cun heom cō aȝeines:	Hire cun heom com to-ȝeineſ:
mid mucle flockes.	mid mochelere flockes.
heo liðen ȝeond þan leoden: [c. 2.]	hii wende oueral þan londe:
ſwa heō wes alre leofueſt.	ware heom were leueſt.
me heom bi-tahte lond:	me ȝaf ham ȝeftes and lond:

land live 'in [with] joy." Very oft Octa spake so with these knights. *The* knights gan to commune, *the* knights gan to counsel; [and] to Octa *they* said 'full [well] still: "We shall do thy will." Oaths they swore, that they would not deceive. 'It was on a night that the wind went right'; forth went *the* knights 'at the midnight [to the sea forth-right], 'and led forth Octa, and Ebissa, and Ossa; along the Thames *they* proceeded forth into the sea'; 'forth they [and over] passed into Saxland. Their kindred came towards them with great flocks (forces); they marched over [all] the land, 'as [where] to them was liefest [of all]; men gave them [gifts and] land; 'men gave them silver and gold.' Octa bethought him what he

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

me ȝæf heom feoluer & gold.
Octa hine bidohte[2] :/
whæt he don mahte.
he þohten hider wenden :/
& wræken his fader wunden.
Ferden heo biȝæten :/
of folke vnimete.
to þere ſa heo wenden :/
mid muchele þrætte.
1
to Scotlonde heo comen.
sone heo fuſden alond :/
and mid fure hit igrætten.
Sæxes weoren ræie :/
Scottes heo floȝen.
mid fure heo adun læiden :/
scotti[4] hundred tunef.
Scottes heo floȝē :/
moni and unifoȝen.
Comē þa tidende :/
to Vðer kinge.
Vðer wes ſwiðe wa :/
& wunderliche ihærmed.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

1
Octa hine bi-þohte :/
wat he don mihte.
he þohte hider wende :/
and wreke his fader wonde.
Ferde he bi-ȝet :/
of folke onimet.
to þare ſéé hii wende :/
mid moche þretinge.
forþ hii wende ſone :/
þat hii to Scotlond come.
sone hii þraſte lond[3] :/
and mid fure hit grette.

and þritti tounes :/
hii leide to þan grunde.
Scottef hii floȝe :/
manie ād inowe.
COmen þe tidinge :/
to Vther þan kinge.

might do; he thought to come hither, and avenge his fathers wounds. 'They [He] procured *a* host of innumerable folk; to the sea they proceeded with great 'threats; [threatening; forth they went soon, *so* that] they came to Scotland; soon they pushed on land, and greeted it with fire; '*the* Saxons were cruel, *the* Scots they slew; with fire' 'they down laid [and they laid to the ground] thirty 'hundred' towns; *the* Scots they slew, many and 'innumerable [enow]. The tidings came to Uther [the] king. 'Uther [he] 'was exceeding woe, and wonderfully grieved, and' sent 'in 'to

[1] *A line is deficient in both these places.*
[2] biðohte?
[3] an lond?
[4] þritti?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and ſenden into Loæines :/	he ſende to Leoneys :/
to leofen hiſ freondē.	to leoſe hiſ freonde.
and grette Lot hiſ aðum :/	and grette Loth his oþom :/
& hehte hine beon an ſund.	and bad hine beo hol and ſund.
& hahte hine nimen an his hond :/	and hehte hine nime his kinelond :/
al his kinewurðe lond.	to his owene hond.
cnihtes and freomen :/	cnihtes and freomen :/
and freoliche heom halden.	and freoliche heom holde.
& leden heō to ferde :/	
ſwa laȝen beoð an ærde.	
& he hæhte hiſ cnihteſ leoue :/	and he hehte his cnihtes :/
beon hærſume Loðe.	beo horſom to Loth.
mid leofliche læten :/	mid alle ſcines þing :/
swulc he weoren leodene king.	aſe he were leod-king. [c. 2.]
For Lot wes ſwiðe god cniht :/	
&hafdeihaldenmoniſiht.[f.111b.c.1.]	
and he wes mete-cuſti :/	
æuer alche mōne.	
he bitahten him þa warde :/	þe kīg bi-tahte Loth þe ferde :/
of alle þiſſen ærde.	of alle þis erþe.
Octa heold muche vnfrið :/	Octa ne ſohte no griþ :/
& Lot faht him ofte wið.	and Loth [faht] him ofte wiþ.
& ofte he ahte biȝæt :/	and ofte he bi-ȝet :/
& ofte he heom loſede.	and heft hit loſede.

Loeneis, to his dear friends; and greeted Loth, his son-in-law, and bade him be 'in health [whole and sound], and ordered him to take in his [own] hand all his 'royal land [kingdom]; knights and freemen, and freely hold them, 'and lead them in *a* host, as *the* laws are in *the* land.' And he ordered his 'dear' knights to be obedient to Loth, with 'loving looks [all kind of thing], as *if* he were sovereign. 'For Loth was very good knight, and had held many fight, and he was liberal to every man,' 'he [The king] delivered 'to him [Loth] the 'government [host] of all this land. Octa 'held much war [sought no peace], and Loth often fought with him, and oft he gained 'possessions,' and 'oft he them [eft it] lost. *The* Britons had mickle

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Bruttes hafden muchel mode:	Bruttes hadde mochel mod:
& vnimete prute.	and onimete prude.
& weoren æieleleſe[1]:	
for þaſ kinges alde.	
and lætten ſwiðe hokerliche:	and leten ſwiþe moche hoker:
of Lote þan eorle.	of Loth þane eorle.
and dudē ſwiðe vnwraſte:	
&[2] alle hiſ haſte.	
and weoren alle twiræde:	and weren of twireade:
heore teone wes þa mare.	hire care was þe more.
Þiſ wes iſæid ſone:	Þiſ was ſone ibroht:
ſeockē þan kinge.	to þan ſeake kinge.
þat hiſ hæȝe men:	þat his owene men:
Lot al for-hoȝeden.	Loth al for-howede.
Nu ich þe wulle tellen:	Nou ich þe wolle telle:
a þiſſen boc-ſpællen.	of þiſſe bok-ſpelle.
hu Vðer þe king:	hou Vther þe king:
uurede hine ſeolven.	fondede him ſeolue.
He ſæide þat he wolde:	He ſaide þat he wolde:
wende to hiſ ferde.	wende to his ferde.
and mid hiſ eȝene iſeon:	and mid his eȝen iſen:
wæ þer wolde wel don.	wo þar wolde wel don.
He lette makien þere:	He lette makie þere:
gode horſe-bere.	gode horſe-bere.

mood, and immoderate pride, 'and were void of dread, for (on account of) the kings age'; and looked very 'contemptuously [much derision] on Loth the earl, 'and did very evilly all his commands,' and were 'all [of] two counsels,—their care was the more! This was soon 'said [brought] to the sick king, that his 'high [own] men Loth all despised. Now will I tell thee, in this history, how Uther the king disposed himself. He said that he would go to his host, and see with his eyes who would there do well. He caused there to be made *a* good horse-litter, and caused *an* army to be

[1] æieleſe?

[2] *Redundant?*

	MS. Cott. Cąlig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	& letten beoden uerde:	and lette bede ferde:
	ȝeond al his kine-ærde.	oueral his kine-erþe.
	þat ælc mon bi hif liue:	þat ech man bi his liue:
	comen to him fwiðe.	come to him blifue.
	bi heore liue & bi heore leme:	
	to wræken þas kinges fcome.	
	& ȝif þær if æi gume:	And ȝef þar is eni gome:
	þæt nulle hiȝenliche cume. [[c. 2.]	þat nele an hiȝenge come.
	ich wulle hine hiȝenliche fordon:	ich hine wole ahon:
	oðer flæn oðer an-hon.	and cwikliche al for-don.
	Alle ful fone:	
	to hirede heo comen.	
	no durfte þær bilæuen:	Ne dorfte þar non bi-lefue:
	na þǽ uatte no þe læne.	for þis kinges heye.
	þe king forð rihtes:	þe king forþ rihtes:
	nom alle his cnihtes.	nam alle his cnihtes.
	& ferde him anan:	and wende him a-non:
Verolam.	to þā tune of Merelam[1].	to þan toune of Verolam.
	abuten Uerolames tun:	a-boute Verolamef toun: [f.90.c.1.]
	com him Vder[2] Pendragun.	com Vther Pendragon.
Octa.	Octa wes wið innen:	Octa was wiþine:
	mid alle hif imonnen.	mid alle his manne.
	þa wes Verolam:	þo was Verolam:

assembled over all his kingdom; that each man by (on pain of) his life should come to him quickly, 'by their lives and by their limbs, to avenge the kings shame.'—"And if there is any man, who will not come 'hastily [in haste], I will 'speedily destroy him, either slay either hang [him hang, and quickly all destroy]." 'All full soon to *the* court (*or* to *the* army) they came'; durst there [none] remain, 'nor the fat nor the lean [for dread of this king]. The king forthright took all his knights, and marched him anon to the town of Verulam; about Verolams town came 'him' Uther Pendragon; Octa was within with all his men. Then was Verolam a most

[1] Verolam? [2] Vðer? *here and below.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
a ſwiðe kinewurðe hō.	a ſwiþe worþlich hom.	
Seint Alban wes þes [1] iflæȝen:	Saint Alban was þar iſllaȝe:	
& idon of lif-dæȝeiɪ.	and idon of lif-daȝe.	
þe burh weſ ſeoðde for-uaren:	þe borh was suþþe for-vare:	
& muchel folc þer wes iflæȝen.	and moche folk þar was iflaȝe.	
Vðer lai wið utē:	Vther laẏ wiþ houte:	
& Octa wið innen.	Octa wiþ ine.	
Vðeres ferde:	Vther his ferde:	
fuſde to wal[2].	fuſde to þan walle.	
ræſden to feondliche:		
þeines riche.		
ne mihte heo of þā walle:	ne mihten hii of þan walle:	
ænne ſtan falle.	one ſton falle.	
no mid nare ſtrengðe:		
þene wal amærre.		
Wælle bliðe wes þæ:	Wel bliþe was þo:	
Hangeſteſ ſune Octa.	Hengeſtes ſone Octa.	
þa he iſæh Bruttes:	þo he iſah Bruttus:	
buȝen from walle.	bouwe fram þe walles.	
& ſorhful wenden:		
aȝæin to heore teldē.		
þa fæide Octa:	þo ſaide Octa:	*Octa.*
to hiſ iueren Ebiſſa.	to his ivere Ebẏſſa.	
Her iſ icumen to Æuerlam[3]:	Her his icome to Verolam:	*Verolamia.*

'royal [worthy] town; Saint Alban was there slain, and deprived of life-day; the burgh was subsequently destroyed, and much folk there was slain. Uther lay without, 'and' Octa within. 'Uthers [Uther his] army advanced to [the] wall; '*the* powerful thanes fiercely assaulted *it*'; they might not of the wall one stone detach, 'nor with any strength the wall injure.' Well blithe was then Hengests son Octa, when he saw *the* Britons recede from [the] walls, 'and go sorrowful again (back) to their tents.' Then said Octa to his

[1] þer?
[2] *An* e *is added above, so as to make* wale, *for* walle?
[3] Verolam?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Vder þe lome mon.	Vther þe lame man.
& wulle wiþ uſ here:	and wole wiþ houre here:
fihten in his bære.	fihte in his bere.
he wænde mid hiſ crucche:	
uſ adun þrucche.	
Ah to mærȝe wæne hit dæi buð:	Ac to morewe wane hit his daỳ:
duȝeðe ſcal ariſen.	cnihtes ſolle a-riſe.
& oppenien ure caſtel-ȝæten: [f. 112. c. 1.]	and hopeni þeof caſtel-ȝeate:
þas riche we ſwullen al biȝeten.	and þes riche we ſolle bi-ȝete.
ne ſcullen we nauære here liggen:	nolle we here ligge:
for ane lomme monne.	for one lame manne.
Ut we ſcullen riden:	
uppen ure ſteden goden.	
and to Uðere ſuſen:	
& hiſ folc fællen.	
for alle heo beoð fæie:	
þat hider beoð iridenen.	
and nimen þene lome mon:	ac him we ſolle a-welde:
and leggen in ure benden.	and legge in houre bendes.
and halden þene wræcche:	and holde þane wrech:
a þat he for-wurðe.	forte he for-worþi.
& ſa me ſcal lacnien:	and ſo me ſal lechni:
hiſ leomes þat beoð ſare.	his leomeſ þat beoþ ſore.
and hiſ ban rihten:	

comrade Ebissa: "Here is come to Verulam Uther, the lame man, and will with 'us here [own forces] fight in his litter; 'he weened with his crutch to thrust us down!' But to-morrow when it is day, *the* 'people [knights] shall arise, and open 'our [this] castle-gate, [and] this realm we shall 'all' win; 'shall we never [we will not] lie here for one lame man! 'Out we shall ride upon our good steeds, and advance to Uther, and fell his folk; for all they are fated (shall die) that hither are (have) ridden; 'and take the lame man [But him we shall get possession of], and lay in our bonds, and hold the wretch until 'that' he dies; and so men shall leach his limbs that are sore, 'and heal his bones with bitter steel!'" Thus spake 'him' Octa with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
mid bitele[1] ſtelen.		
Þuſ him iſpac Octa:	Þus ſpac Octa:	
wiþ hiſ iuere Ebiſſa.	wiþ his ivere Ebyſſa.	
ah al hit iwraþ[2] oþer:	ac al hit iwende:	
Þene heo iwenden.	oþer Þane hii wende.	
Amarȝe Þa hit daȝede:	A morwe Þo hit daȝede:	[c.2.]
duren heo un-tunden.	doref hii on-tunde.	
up araf Octa:	vp a-rof Octa:	*Octa.*
Ebiſſa & Oſſa.	Ebyſſa and Oſſa.	*Ebiſſa.* *Oſſa.*
and hehten heore cnihtes:	and hehte hire cnihtef:	
ȝarkien heom to fihte.	greiþi heom to fihte.	
vndon her brade ȝætē:		
burȝen un-tunen.		
Octa him ut ræd:	Octa him vt rod:	
& muche folc him aft[9] glæd.	and moche folk him after glod.	
mid balden hiſ beornen:		
Þer he bælu funden.		
Vþer him Þiſ iſæh:	Vther Þis iſeh:	
Þat Octa heom to bæh.	Þat Octa him to beoh.	
& Þohten hiſ ferde:	and Þohte his ferde:	
feolen to grūde.	fallen to Þan grunde.	
Þa cleopede Uþer:	Þo cleopede Vther:	
mid quickere ſtefene Þer.	mid cwickere ſtemne Þer.	
Wær beo ȝe Bruttes:	Ware beo ȝe Bruttes:	

his comrade Ebissa; but all it happened other*wise* than they weened. On *the* morrow when it dawned, they unfastened *the* doors; up arose Octa, Ebissa and Ossa, and ordered their knights to prepare them for fight, to undo their broad gates, *and* unfasten *the* burgh.' Octa rode him out, and much folk followed after him; 'with his bold warriors there he bale found!' Uther saw 'him' this, that Octa approached to 'them [him], and thought to fell his host to [the] ground. Then called Uther with quick voice there: "Where be ye, Britons, [Where be ye,] my 'bold thanes [champions]?

[1] bitere?

[2] iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
balde mine þeines.	ware beo ȝeo mine kempes.
nu is icumen þe ilke dæi:	nou his icome þe ilke dai:
þe drihtē uf helpen mai. [c. 2.]	þat drihte vs holde maẏ.
þat Octa ſcal ifinden:	þat Octa milte ifinde:
þat he þrættede me to binden.	þat he þretede me to binde.
Iþenched[1] on eoure aldren:	Bi-þencheþ of ȝoure eldre:
hu gode heo weoren to fehten.	ou gode hii were to fihte.
iþenched[1] þene wurðſcipe:	bi-þencheþ in þan worſipe:
þ ich eou habbe wel biwiten.	þat ich ȝou habbe wel iwited.
ne læten ȝe næuere þas hæðene:	ne lete ȝe neuere þis heaþene:
bruken eoure hames.	brouke ȝoure homeſ.
þæs ilke awedde hundes:	þeſ ilke a-wende[2] hundes:
walden eouwere lōdes.	habbe ȝoure londeſ.
And ich wullen bidden drihten:	And ich wolle bidde drihte:
þ ſcop þæs dæies lihten.	
& alle þaie halȝen:	and alle his halwe.
þa an hæfeuene[3] hæhȝe ſitteð.	
þat [ich] on þiſſen felde:	þat ich in þiſſe wolde:
mote beon ifroured.	mote beon ifreuered.
Nu fuſeð heom to ſwiðe:	Nou fouſeþ heom to ſwiþe:
fulſte eou drihten.	fulſte vs drihte.
þe al waldinde god:	
bi-witen mine þeines.	

Now is come that day, that *the* Lord may 'help [sustain] us;—that Octa 'shall (may) find, *in* that he threatened me to bind. Think of your ancestors, how good they were in fight; think of the worship that I have to you well given; nor let ye ever this heathen enjoy your homes, *or* these same raging hounds 'possess [have] your lands. And I will pray to *the* Lord 'who formed the day-light,' and to all 'the [his] hallows, 'that sit high in heaven,' that I on this 'field [weald] may be succoured. Now march quickly to them,—may *the* Lord aid 'you [us], 'may the all-ruling God protect my thanes!'" Knights gan to ride, spears gan to glide,

[1] Iþencheð? [2] awedde? [3] hæfene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Cnihtes gunnen riden :/
gæres gunnen gliden.
breken bræde ſperē :/
br^{u}sleden ſceldes.
helmeſ þer ſcenden :/
ſcalkes feollen.
þe Bruttes weoren balde :
& biſie to fihten.
& þa hæðene hundes :/
hælden to grunde.
þer wes iflaȝen Octa :/
Ebiſſa & Oſſa.
þer ſeouentene þuſend :/
fiȝen into helle.
feole þer at-wenden :/
touward þan norð enden.
Al þene dæi-lihte :/
Vðeres cnihtes.
floȝen and nomen :/
al þat heo neh comen.
þa hit wes eauen :/
þa wes hit al biwunnen.
þa ſunggen hired-men :/
mid hæȝere ſtrengðe. [f. 112^{b}.c.1.]
& þæs word ſæidē :/
inne murie heore ſongen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Cnihtes gonne ride :/
ſpereſ gonne glide.
and breken brode ſperes :/
braſtelede feldeſ.
healmes þar ȝolle :/
cnihtes þar folle.
þe Bruttus weren bolde :/
and buſie to fihte.
and þe heaþene hundes :/ [f. 90^{b}.c.1.]
fulle to grunde.
þar was iflawe Octa :/
Ebiſſa and Oſſa.
þare ſouentene þuſend :/
ſeȝen into helle.
and fale þare at-wende :/
to þan norþ ende.
And al þan daȳ-liht :/
Vter his cnihtes.
floȝen and nemen :/
þat hii neh comen.
þo eode a-dun þe sonne :/
þan was hit al a-wonne.
þo ſaide hired-men :/
mid murie hire ſonges.

[and] broad spears brake, shivered shields,—helms there 'were severed [resounded], men [there] fell! The Britons were bold, and busy in fight, and the heathen hounds fell to *the* ground. There was slain Octa, Ebissa, and Ossa; there seventeen thousand sunk into hell; [and] many there escap[ed] 'toward [to] the North end. [And] all the day-light 'Uthers [Uther h[is] knights slew and captured 'all' that they came nigh; when 'it was even [the sun went down], then was it all won. Then 'sung [said] *the* soldiers with 'great strength, and said these words in' their merry songs: "Here

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Her is Vder Pendragū :'	Her his Vther Pendragon :'
icume to Verolameſ tun.	icome to Verolames toun.
& he hæfueð idubbed ſwa :'	and he haueþ idobbed ſo :'
Octa & Ebiſſa & Oſſa.	Octa Ebiſſa and Oſſa.
& itah heom a londē :'	and itaht heom in þat lond :'
laȝen ſwiðe ſtronge.	lawes ſwiþe ſtrong.
þat men maȝen tellen :'	þat men mawe telle :'
heore cun to ſpelle.	hire cun ſpelles.
and þer of wurchen ſonges :'	
inne Sæxlonde.	
Þa wes Vðer bliðe :'	Þo was Vther bliþe :'
& igladed swuðe.	and glad ſwiþe.
and ſpac wið his duȝeðe :'	
þe deore him wes an heorte.	
& þas word ſæide :'	and þeſ wodrd[1] ſaide :'
Vðer þe alde.	Vther þe holde.
Sexiſce men me habbeod[2] :'	
for hene ihalden.	
mine unhæle me atwiten :'	Saxiſſe men min heolde atwite :'
mid heore hoker worden.	mid hire hokere wordes.
for ich wes here :'	for ich waſ here :'
ilad inne horſe-bere.	ilad in horſe-bere.
& ſæiden ꝥ ich wes[3] ded :'	and ſayde þat ich was dead :'
& mi duȝeðe aſwunden.	and min folk aſwōde.

is Uther Pendragon come to Verulams town; and he hath so beaten Octa, 'and' Ebissa, and Ossa, and given them in [the] land laws most strong, *so* that men may tell their kin 'in story [stories], 'and thereof make songs in Saxland!'" Then was Uther blithe, and exceeding glad, and 'spake with his people, that was dear to him in heart,' and these words said Uther the old: "Saxish men 'have accounted me for base'; my 'sickness [age] *they* twitted 'me' with their scornful words, because I was led here in *a* horse-litter; and said that I was dead, and my folk asleep. And now

[1] *R.* word. [2] habbeoð? [3] *This word is interlined, sec. man.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

And nu if muchel fellic :/
ifiȝen to þiffere riche.
þat nu haueð þeos dede king :/
þaf quiken aqualden.
& fūme he heō flæmde :/
uorð mid þan wedere.
Nu iwurðen her after :/
drihttenes wille.
Fluȝen Sæxifce men :/
feōdliche fwiðe.
þe weoren bihalues :/
ihalden from þā fihte.
forð heo gunnen fcriðen :/
into Scotlonde.
and nomen heom to kinge :/
Colgrim þene hende. [c. 2.]
He wes Hængefteſ mæie :/
& monnen him leofueſt.
and Octa hine lufuede[2] :/
þæ while þe he leouede.
Weoren þa Saxifce mē :/
swiðe ifwūten.
& ifcriðen heō to-fomne :/
into Scotlonde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

And nou his moche wonder :/
ifeȝe to þiffe londe.
þat þis deade king :/
þe cwike haueþ alle acwelled.

Nou iworþe here after :/
drihtene wille.
FLowen Saxiffe men :/
feōdeliche fwiþe :/
þat weren bi-halues. [c. 2.]
iholden fram þan fihte :/
forþ hii gonne gon :/
riht into Scotlond.
and nemen him[1] to kinge :/
Colgrim þan hende.
He was Hengeftes may :/

and Octa hine louede.

is much wonder come to this 'realm [land], that 'now' this dead king hath killed 'these [all the] quick; 'and some he *hath* them driven forth with the weather!' Now hereafter be done *the* Lords will!" *The* Saxish men fled exceeding fast, that were (had) aside retreated from the fight; forth they gan 'proceed [go right] into Scotland; and took to them for king Colgrim the fair. He was Hengests relation, 'and dearest of men to him'; and Octa loved him, 'the while that he lived. The Saxish men were greatly discouraged, and proceeded them together into Scotland; and

[1] ham?

[2] lufiede *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& Colgrim þene hende:	
heo makeden to kinge.	
& fumneden færde:	He[1] gaderede ferde:
wide ȝeond þan ærde.	wide ȝeond þan erþe.
and fæiden þat heo wolden:	and faide þat hii wolde:
mid heore wiðer-craften.	mid hire wiþere-craftef.
inne Winchaſtre tun:	ine Wincheſtre his toun:
quellen Uðer Pēdragun.	cwelle Vther Pendragon.
Wa la wa:	Wo la wo:
þat hit ſculde iwurðen ſwa.	þat hit ſolde iworþe ſo.
Nu fæiden Saxiſce men:	Nou faide Saxiſſe men:
in heore ſom runen.	in hire deorne wordes.
Nime we ſix cnihtes:	þat hii wol ſix cnihtef:
wiſe men and wihte[2].	ſende forþrihtef.
and[3] hæweres witere:	
& ſenden we to hiredede[4].	
læten heom uorð liðen:	to þis kinges ferde:
an almeſ monnes wiſē.	in pore men guyse.
& wunien an hirede:	
mid heȝe þan kinge.	
and æuer ælche dæie:	þat ſolde ȝam þorh gon:
þurh-gon al þa duȝeðe.	and tydinge hercnẏ on.
and gan to þas kinges dale:	and go to þe kingeſ dole:

they made Colgrim the fair for king,' 'and assembled [They gathered] *a* host, wide over the land, and said that they would with their wicked craft in Winchester [his] town kill Uther Pendragon. Alas, that it should so happen! Now said *the* Saxish men in their 'communing together: "Take we [secret words, that they would send] six knights, 'wise men and active, and skilful spies,' 'and send we to *the* court [forth-right to this kings host], in 'almsmans [poor mens] guise, 'and dwell in *the* court, with the high king,' 'and every day pass through all the people [that should themselves through pass, and hearken to *the* tidings]; and go to the kings dole, as *if*

[1] Hii?
[2] widtes *pr. man.*
[3] *Struck out by the second hand.*
[4] hirede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
swulc heo weoren vn-hale.	aſe hii weren on-hole.
& imong þan wracchē:	and a-mang þan wrecchen:
harcnien ȝeorne.	hercnẏ wel ȝeorne.
ȝif mon mihte mid crafte:	ȝef man mihte mid crafte:
a dæi oðer a nihte.	bi daiȝe oþer bi nihte.
inne Winchæſtres tun:	in Wẏncheſtres toun:
cumen to Vder Pendragun.	come to Vther Pendragō.
& mid morð-ſpelle:	and mid morþre-ſpelle:
þene king aquellen.	þane king a-cwelle.
þenne weorē heore iwil: [f. 113.c.1:]	
allunge iwurden[1].	
þēne weoren heo care-læſe:	þanne weren hii careles:
of Coſtantines cunne.	of Conſtantineſ cunne.
Nu wenden forð þa cnihtes:	¶ Nou wende forþ þe cnihtes:
al bi dæieſ lihten.	[2]
on ælmes mōnes claðef:	
cnihtes forcuðeſt.	
to þaſ kingeſ hirede:	and al dude in dede:
þer heo hærm wrohten.	alſe hii raþer demde.
Heo eoden to þære dale:	
swulc heo weoren un-hale.	
& hærcneden ȝeornen:	
of þas kingeſ hærme.	
hu me þæne kīg mihte:	
to dæðe idihte.	

they were infirm, and among the poor *people* 'hearken [well] studiously if man might with craft, by day or by night, in Winchesters town come to Uther Pendragon, and kill the king with murder;—'then were (would be) their will wholly accomplished,' then were they careless of Constantines kin. Now went forth the knights 'all by daylight, in almsmans clothes,—knights most wicked,—to the kings court,'—'there they harm wrought. They went to the dole, as if they were infirm, and hearkened studiously of the kings sickness, how men might put the king to death, [and all did in

[1] iwurðen?

[2] *A line is here missing.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þa imetten heo enne cniht:
from þan kinge he com riht.
he wes Vðeres mæi:
& monnen him leofueſt.
Þas ſwiken þer heo fætē:
on longē þere ſtreten.
cleopeden to þan cnihte:
mid cudliche[2] worden.
Lauerd we beoð wracche men:
a þiſſere weorlde-riche.
while we weoren on londe:
for gode men iholden.
a þat Sæxiſce men:
ſetten uf a-dune.
& al bi-ræiueden uf:
& ure æhtē binomen uf.
Nu we beden ſīgeð:
for Vðer kinge.
ælche dæie on a mæl:
ure mete trukeð[3].
ne cumeð nauere inne ure diſc:
neoþer flæſ na no fiſc.
no nanes cunnes drǣc:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Hii i-mette wiþ on cniht:
frā þan kinge he com forþ riht. [f.91.c.1.]
he was Vther his may:
and manne him leouiſt.
Þeſ ſwikes þar iſete[1]:
in langes þane ſtrete.
cleopede to þan cnihte:
mid couþliche wordes.
Louerd we beoþ wrecche men:
a þiſſe worle-riche.
wile we were on londe:
for gode men iholde.
forte Saxiſſe men:
ſette vs a-doune.

Nou we bedes ſingeþ:
for Vter þan kinge.
eche day on halmeſ:
me houre mete bringeþ.
ne comeþ neuere in oure diſce:
noþer flef noþer fiſce.
ne none cunnes drīgke:

deed, as they previously *had* determined]. 'Then' met they [with] a knight, from the king he came [forth-]right; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] relation, and dearest of men to him. These deceivers, where they sate along the street, called to the knight with familiar words: "Lord, we are wretched men in this worlds realm; whilom we were in land accounted for good (wealthy) men, until Saxish men set us adown, 'and bereaved us of all, and our possessions took from us.' Now we sing beads (prayers) for Uther [the] king; each day 'in a meal our meat faileth [in alms men bring our meat]; cometh never in our dish neither flesh 'nor any [neither] fish, nor any kind

[1] hii ſete?
[2] cuðliche?
[3] *At first written* bruke*ð*, *but altered by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
buten water ſcenc.		bote water ſenche.
buten water clæne:		
for þi we beoð þus læne.	[c. 2.]	
þiſ iherde þe cniht:		þis ihorde þe cniht:
aȝæn he eode forð riht.		aȝen he wende forþriht.
& com to þā kinge:		and com to þan kinge:
þer he lai on bure.		þar he lay a ſweuekinge[1].
& ſeide to þan kinge:		
Lauerd beo þu on ſunde.		
her ute ſitteð ſix men:	10	Here vte ſetteþ ſix men:
iliche on heouwen.		iliche of ewe.
alle heo beoð iferen:		alle hii beoþ ivere:
iſcrudde mid heren.		iſcrud mid herde here.
While heo weoren:		Wilc hii weren riche:
a þiſſere worlde-richē.		
god-fulle þeines:		
mid goden afeolled.		and mihti of gode.
nu habbeoð Sæxiſce men:		nou habbeþ Saxiſſe men:
iſæt hō to grunden.		iſet heom to grunde.
þat heo beoð on weorlde:	20	þat hii beoþ in worle:
for wracchen ihaldē.[2]		for wrecchef iholde.
no raccheoð heo to borde:		ne habbeþ hii at borde:

of drink but *a* draught of water, 'but water clean,—therefore we are thus lean.'" The knight heard this; back he went forth-right, and came to the king, where he lay 'in chamber [in slumber], 'and said to the king: "Lord, be thou in health!' Here out sit six men, alike in hue (appearance); all they are companions, *and* clothed with [hard] hair-cloth. Whilom they were 'in this worlds realm goodly thanes, *and* 'filled with [rich, and mighty of] goods; now have Saxish men set them to ground, *so* that they are in *the* world accounted for wretches; they have not at board

[1] a ſweneninge?

[2] *This and the preceding line and half are on an erasure in the MS., but by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

buden[1] bræd ane.
no to heore drencches:
bute water ſcenches.
Þus heo leodeð heore lif:
inne þire leode.
& heore beoden biddeð:
Þ godd þe lete longe libben.
Þa quað Vder þe king:
Let heom cumen hider in in[2].
ich heom wulle ſcruden:
& ich heom wulle ueden.
for mineſ drihteneſ lufe:
þa wille þa ich liuie.
Comen into bure:
beörneſ þa ſwikele.
þe king heo lette fedē:
þæ king heom lette ſcruden.
& nihtes hom læiden:
ælc on hiſ bedde[4].
& ælc on hiſ halue:
heoȝede ȝeorne.
hu heo mihtē þene king:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bote bred one.
ne to hire dringke:
bote water cleane.
Þuſ hii leadeþ hire lif:
amang þine leode.
and hire bedeſ biddeþ: [c. 2.]
þat þou mote libbe.
Þo ſaide Vther þe king:
Let heom come hider in.
ich ȝam wole ſcrude:
and ich[3] wole feode.
for loue of mine drihte:
wile þat ich libbe.
Comen in to boure:
men ſwiþe ſwikele.
þe king heom lette fede:
þe king ȝam lette ſcrude.
and a nihtes ȝam leyde:
ech on his bedde.
and ech on his ſide:
aſpide wel ȝeorne.
hou hii mihte þane king:

but bread alone, nor for their drink but water 'draughts [clean]. Thus they lead their life 'in [among] thy people, and bid their beads, that 'God will let thee long [thou mayest] live." Then 'quoth [said] Uther the king: "Let them come in hither; I will them clothe, and I will them feed, for *the* love of my Lord, 'the' while that I live." 'The' [most] treacherous men came into *the* chamber; the king caused them to be fed, the king caused them to be clothed, and at night each laid them on his bed. And each on his 'part [side] aspied [well] earnestly how they might kill the king

[1] *R.* buten.

[2] *Sic MS. A word in the margin has been erased, as also the first two letters of* wulle *in the next line but one.*

[3] ich ȝam?

[4] *Interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid morðe aquellen.	[[f.113b.c.1.] mid morþre acwelle.
ah ne mihten heo þurh naþing:	ac ne mihten hii þorh no þing:
aquellen Vðer þene king.	a-cwelle Vther þane king.
ne þurh nane crafte:	
cumen to him ne nahten.[1]	
þa iwærd[2] hit in ane time:	þo iwarþ hit on an tyme:
þe ræin him gon rine.	þe reyn him gan ryne.
þa cleopede þer a læche:	þo faide a leche:
þer he læi on bure.	þat þar was in boure.
to ane bur-cnihte:	to one bourcniht:
and hahte hine forð rihtes.	and hehte him forþriht.
irne to þere welle:	heorne to þare wille:
þe wes on væſt þere halle.	þat waf bi þare halle.
and ſetten þene[3] ænne ohte swain:	and ſette þare one ohte ſweyn:
to biwiten heo wið ræin.	for to witye hine for þe reyn.
For þe king ne mai on duȝeðe:	For þe king ne may on worle:
bruken nanes drenches.	dringke none ſenche.
buten cald welles ſtræm:	bote cold welles water:
þat him if iquene[4].	þat him his icweme.
þat if to hiſ ufelc:	
aðeleſt alre drencche.	
Þas ſpeche uorð rihtes:	¶ Þeos ſpeche forþ rihtes:
iherden þas ſix cnihtes.	i-horde þes cnihtes.

with murder; but they might not through anything kill Uther the king, 'nor through any craft might come to him,.' Then happened it on a time, the rain it gan to pour; then 'called there [said] a leech, 'where he lay [who was there] in *the* chamber, to a chamber-knight, and ordered him forth-right to run to the well, that was 'near [by] the hall, and set there a good swain, [for] to keep it from [the] rain.—"For the king may not 'enjoy [drink] no draught in *the* world but *the* cold well 'stream [water], that is to him pleasant; 'that is for his sickness best of all draughts.'" This speech forth-right heard these 'six' knights,—to harm they were prompt,

[1] mahten? [2] iwærð? [3] þere? [4] iqueme?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
to harme heo weoren wiþte[1] :/	to harme hii weren lihte :/
and ut wenden bi-nihte.	and hout eode bi nihte.
forð to þere welle :/	to þan ilke wille :/
þer ho[2] hærm wrorhten[3].	þare hii harmeſ wrohte.
Vt heo droȝen ſone :/	Vt hii drowe ſone :/
amppullen ſcone.	ſix ampulles.
ifulled mid attere :/	mid hatter ifulled :/ [f.91b.c.1.]
weten alre bittereſt.	
six amppullen fulle :/	
heo ȝeoten i þan welle.	and caſte hit in þan wille.
þa wes þa welle anan :/	
al mid attre bi-gon.	
þa weoren ful bliðe :/	þo werē wel bliþe :/
þæ ſwiken on heore liue.	þe ſwikes on hire lifue.
& forð heo iwenden :/	and forþ anon wende :/
ne durſten heo þer bilæfen.	ne dorſten hii þare bi-lefue.
þa comen þer forð rihtes :/	þo com þar forþ rihteſ :/
tweien bur-cnihtes.	twei bourcnihteſ.
heo beren on heore honde :/ [c. 2.]	and bere on hire honde :/
twæie bollen of golde.	twei bolles of golde.
Heo comen to þare welle :/	Hii come to þare welle :/
and heore bollen feolde.	and hire bolles fulde.
aȝæin heo gunnen wēde :/	aȝein hi gonne wende :/
to Vðer þan kinge.	to Vther þan kinge.

—and went out by night 'forth to the [to the same] well,—there they harm wrought. Out they drew soon 'fair [six] phials, filled with poison, 'of all liquids bitterest; six phials full' 'they poured [and cast it] in the well; 'then was the well anon all with poison infected.' Then were 'full [well] blithe the traitors in their life, and forth 'they [anon] went; they durst not there remain. Then came there forth-right two chamber-knights; 'they [and] bare in their hands two bowls of gold. They came to the well, and filled their bowls; back they gan wend to Uther the king, 'forth into the

[1] *The letter* þ *is interlined.* [2] *Interlined.* [3] worhten? wrohten?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
forð in to þan bure:	
þer he læi on bedde.	
Hail ſeo þu Vðer:	and ſaide to Vther:
nu we beoð icumen her.	Nou we beoþ icome her.
and we habbeoð þe ibroht:	and we habbeþ ibroht:
þat þu ær bedde.	þat þou her bede.
clæld[1] welle water:	cold welles water:
bruc hit on wunne.	brouket[2] mid winne.
Vp araf þe ſeocke king:	Vp a-ros þe ſeake king:
& ſat on hiſ bedde.	and ſat on his bedde.
of þan watere he dronc:	of þan watere he drong:
& ſone he gon ſweten.	and ſone gan ſwete.
hiſ heorte gon to wakien:	his heorte gan to wokie:
his neb bigon to blakien.	his neb bi-gan to blokie.
hiſ wombe gon to ſwellen:	
þe king gon to ſwelten.	
Næs þer nan oðer ræd:	Nas þar non oþer read:
þer weſ Vðer king dæd.	bote þar iwarþ þe king dead.
alle heo iwurðen dede:	and alle hii dead were:
þat drunken of þan watere.	þat drongke of þan watere.
Þa þat hired iſah:.	
þat ſorhȝen of þan kinge.	
& of þas kinges monnē:	
þe niid attre weoren for-done.	

chamber, where he lay in bed.'—"Hail be thou, [and said to] Uther! Now we are come here, and we have brought 'thee,' what thou ere bade, cold well water; receive it with joy." Up arose the sick king, and sate on his bed; of the water he drank, and soon 'he' gan to sweat; his heart gan to weaken, his face began to blacken, 'his belly gan to swell, the king gan to burst. There was no other hap, [but] there was 'Uther [the] king dead; [and] all they were dead, who drank of the water. 'When the attendants saw the calamity of the king, and of the kings men, who with poison were

[1] cæld?

[2] brouk hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa wenden to þere welle:		þo wende to þan wille:
cnihtes þe weoren fnælle.		cnihtes fwiþe fnelle.
& þa welle for-duden:		and þane wel dutte:
mid derfulle fwincche.		
mid eorðe & mid ftanen:		mid ftones and mid erþe.
ftepne hul makedē.		
þa nomen þa duȝeðe:		þo nemen hii alle:
þene king dede.		þane king deade.
vnimete uolc:		
& forð hine uereden.	10	and forþ hine ladde.
stið imodede men: [f.114.c.1.]		
in to Stanhengē.		into Stonhenge.
& hine þer bureden:		and hine þare leyde:
bi leofen his broðer.		bi his leofue broþer.
side bi fide:		side bi fide:
beiene heo þer liggeð.		þare hii boþe liggeþ.
þa com hit al to-gadere:		þo comen to-gadere: [c. 2.]
þat hæhft wes on londe.		þe heheft of þis londe.
eorles & beornes:		
& boc-ilarede men.	20	
heo comen to Lundene:		
to muchelere huftinge.		
Nomen heom to rade:		and nomen alle to reade:
þeines riche.		
þat heo wolden ouer fæ:		þat hii fende wolde.

destroyed,' then went to the well knights 'that were [exceeding] active, and 'destroyed [stopt up] the well ' with painful labor,' with earth and with stones ' made *a* steep hill.' Then 'the people [they all] took the dead king, —' numerous folk,'—and forth him carried '*the* stiff-minded men' into Stonehenge, and there 'buried [laid] him, by his dear brother; side by side there they lie both. Then came ' it all' together, 'that was [the] highest 'in *the* [of this] land, ' earls and barons, and book-learned men; they came to London, to *a* mickle husting,' [and] '*the* rich thanes' betook ' them ' [all] to counsel, that they would send ' messengers over sea ' into 'Britanny

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

ſenden ſonde.
in to Bruttainne:
after bezſt alre ȝeoȝeðe.
þa a þiſſere weorlden-riche:
a þan dæȝen weore.
Ærður ihaten:
bezſt alre cnihten.
and ſuggen þat he cumen ſone: and bidden hine ſone:
to hiſ kinedome. come to his kinedome.
for dæd him wes Vðer: for dead was Vther Pendragon:
al swa Aurilien wes ær.
and Vðer Pendragune:
nefde nenne oðerne ſune. nadde he non oþer ſone.
þat mihte after his daȝen: and þat mihte after his daiȝe:
halden Bruttes to laȝe. holde Bruttus to lawe.
mid wurðſcipe halden: mid worſipe holden:
& þiſne kinedom walden. and þiſne kinedom welden.
For ȝæt weoren in þiſſen londe: FOr ȝet weren in þiſſe londe:
Sæxes at-ſtonden. Saxiſ at-ſtonde.
Colgrim þe kene: Colgrim þe kene: *Colgrim.*
and moni þuſend of his iuerē. and mani þouſend of his ivere.
þa ofte ure Bruttes: þat ofte oure Bruttus:
makeden hufele burſtes. makede ſcondes.
Bruttes ful ſōe: Bruttus wel ſone:
þreo biſcopes nomen. þreo biſſopes neme.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

into Britaynes lond:
after Arthur þan ſtrong.

[Britannys land], after '*the* best of all youth that was in the worlds realm in those days, named' Arthur [the strong], '*the* best of all knights; and 'say that he should [bid him] come soon to his kingdom; for dead was 'he' Uther [Pendragon], 'as Aurelie was ere', 'and Uther Pendragon [he] had no other son, [and] that might after his days hold by law (govern) *the* Britons, maintain with worship, and rule this kingdom. For yet were in this land *the* Saxons settled; Colgrim the keen, and many thousands of his companions, that oft made to our Britons 'evil' injuries. *The* Britons 'full [well] soon took three bishops, and seven riders, 'strong in [high of] wis-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and ridæres ſcouene :/
ræiȝe on wiſdome.
forð heo gunnen buȝen :/
ī to Bruttaine.
& heo ful ſone :/
to Ærðure comen. [c. 2.]
Hail ſeo þu Arður :/
aðeleſt cnihten.
Vðer þe græten :/
þa he ſculde iwihten.
& bæd þat þu ſculdeſt :/
a Bruttē þe ſeoluen.
halden laȝen rihte :/
& hælpen þine folke.
and wihten þiſne kinedom :/
swa god king ſculden don.
þine feond flæmen :/
& driuen heom of londen.
& he bad þe to fultume :/
þene milde godeſ ſune.
þat þu moſtes wel don :/
& þat lond of godde a-fon.
For dæd iſ Vðer Pendragun :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ridares ſouene :/
heh of wiſdome.
forþ hii gonne bouwe :/
in to Brutaÿne.
and hii fol ſone :/
to Arthur come.
Haÿl beo þou Arthur :/

þe king þe gan grete.
þo he wende ſolde :/
vt of þiſe liſue.
and bad þat þou ſoldeſt :/
holde gode lawes.

and witie þine kinedom :/
ſo god king ſolde don.
þine freond[1] fleome :/
[2]
And beo þe nou to foltome :/
þane milde godes ſone.
þat þou mote wel don :/
and of god vnderfon.
for dead his Vter þe king :/

dom; forth they gan proceed into Britanny, and they full soon came to Arthur.—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of knights! 'Uther thee greeted [The king gan thee greet], when he should 'depart (die) [go out of this life], and bade that thou shouldest 'thyself in Britain' hold 'right [good] laws, 'and help thy folk,' and defend 'this [thy] kingdom, as good king should do; defeat thy enemies, 'and drive them from land.' And 'he prayed [be] the mild Son of God '*to be*' to thee [now] in aid, that thou mightest do well, and 'the land' receive from God. For dead is Uther

[1] ſeond?

[2] *A line is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& þu ært Ærður hiſ ſune.
& dæd iſ þe oðer :
Aurilien hiſ broðer.
Þus heo gūnen tellen :
& Arður fæt ful ſtille.
ænne ſtunde he wes blac :
and on heuwe ſwiðe wak.
ane while he weſ reod :
and reouſede on heorte.
Þa hit alles up brac :
hit weſ god þat he ſpac.
Þuſ him ſæide þer riht :
Arður þe aðele cniht.
Lauerd criſt godes ſune :
beon uſ nu a fultume.
þat ich mote on life :
goddes laȝen halden.
Fiftene ȝere wes Ardur[1] ald :
þa þiſ tiðende him wes itald.
& alle heo weoren wel bitoȝen :
for he wes ſwiðe iðoȝe.
Ærður forð rihteſ :
cleopede hiſ cnihteſ.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and þou hart Arthur his [ſone].
and dead his þe oþer : [f.92.c.1.]
Aurelie his broþer.
Þus hii gonne telle :
and Arthur ſat ſtille.
one while he was blac :

an oþer wile he ſtille ſat.

Þo hit alles vp brac :
hit was god þat he ſpac.
and þus him ſaide forþriht :
Arthur þe gode cniht.
Louerd criſt godeſ ſone :
beo me nou to foltome.
þat ich mote on lifue :
gode lawes lofuie.
Fiftene ȝer was Arthur holde :
þo þes tȳdinge him was itold.
and alle þe ȝeres weren wel bi-toȝe :
for he was wel iþoȝe.
Arthur forþrihtes :
cleopede his cnihtes.

Pendragon [the king], and thou art Arthur, his son; and dead is the other, Aurelie his brother." Thus they gan tell, and Arthur sate 'full' still; one while he was wan, 'and in hue exceeding pale'; 'one while he was red, and was moved in heart [an other while he sate still]. When it all brake forth, it was good that he spake; [and] thus said he 'there [forth]-right, Arthur the 'noble [good] knight: "Lord Christ, Gods Son, be to 'us [me] now in aid, that I may in life 'hold Gods [love good] laws!" Arthur was fifteen years old, when this tiding was told to him, and all 'they [the years] were well employed, for he was 'much [well] instructed. Arthur

[1] Arður?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
&hæhte æuerælcne mon: [f.114b, c.1.]	and hehte euerech man:
bonnien hiſ weppnen.	louie[1] his wepne.
& heore hors ſadelie:	and hire hors ſadelie:
hiȝendliche ſwiðe.	hiȝenliche ſwiþe.
for he wolde buȝe:	for he wolde wende:
to þiſſere Brutene.	to þiſſere londe.
To þere ſæ wenden:	To þare ſéé wende:
ſele þeines.	ſelie cnihtes.
at Mihæles munte:	at Mihȝeleſ munte:
mid muchelere uerede.	mid mochelere ferde.
þa ſæ heo[2] ſætten a þat ſtrond:	þe ſee ȝam ſette a þan ſtronde:
at Suð-hamtune heo comen alond.	at Suþhamtone hii come a londe.
Forð hī gon ride:	Forþ hii wende rihteſ:
Arður þe riche.	
riht to Selechæſtre:	toward Cireceſtres.
þer him ſel þuhte.	
þer wes[3] Bruttene weored:	þar was Bruttene ferde:
baldeliche iſomned.	boldeliche igadered.
Muchel wes þa bliſſe:	Moche was þe bliſſe:
þa Arður com to burhȝe.	þo Arthur com to borewe.
þa wes bemene blæſt:	
& swiðe glade beornes.	
þer heo houen to kinge:	þar hii houen to kinge:

forth-right called his knights, and bade every man get ready his weapons, and saddle their horses very speedily, for he would go to this 'Britain [land]. To the sea proceeded *the* good 'thanes [knights], at Michaels mount, with *a* mickle host; the sea set them on the strand, at Southampton they came ashore. Forth 'he gan ride, Arthur the powerful, right to Silchester [they went right toward Cirencester]; 'there *it* seemed good to him;' there was *the* host of Britons boldly 'assembled [gathered]. Great was the bliss when Arthur came to *the* burgh; 'then was blast of trumpets, and men most glad';

[1] banni? [2] heom? [3] *The last letter of this word is sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Arður þene ȝūge.
Þa þe Arður wes king:
hærne[1] nu feollic þing.
he wes mete-cuſti:
ælche quike monne.
cniht mid þan bezſte:
wunder ane kene.
he wes þan ȝungen for fader:
þan alden for frouer.
and wið þan vnwiſe:
wunder ane ſturnne.
woh him wes wūder lað:
and þat rihte a leof.
Ælc of his birlen:
& of hiſ bur-þæinen.
& hiſ ber-cnihtes:
gold beren an honden.
to ruggen and to bedde:
iſcrud mid gode webbe.
Nefde he neuere nænne coc:
þ he neſ keppe ſwide[2] god.
neuær nanes cnihtes swein: [c.2.]
þat he næs bald þein.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Arthur þan ȝonge.
PO Arthur was king: [c.2.] [*Arðu*]r.
hercne nou ſellech þing.
he was mete-couſti:
to eche cwike manne.
cniht mid þan beſte:
wonder one kene.
he was þan ȝonge for fader:
þane holde for froure.
and wiþ þan onwiſe:
wonderliche ſteorne.
woh him was ſwiþe loþ:
and riht him was ſwiþe leof.

Nade Arthur nanne cok:
þat he nas kempe god.

there they raised to *be* king Arthur the young. When Arthur was king,—hearken now *a* marvellous thing;—he was liberal to each man alive, knight with the best, wondrously keen! He was to the young for father, to the old for comforter, and with the unwise wonderfully stern; wrong was to him exceeding loathsome, and 'the' right 'ever [was to him exceeding] dear. 'Each of his cupbearers, and of his chamber-thanes, and his chamber-knights, bare gold in hand, to back and to bed, clad with gold web.' 'He [Arthur] had 'never any [no] cook, that he was not champion 'most' good; 'never any knights swain, that he was not bold thane!' The king held

[1] hærcne?
[2] ſwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þe king heold al hif hired :/
mid hæȝere blifc.
& mid fwulche þinges :/
he ouer-com alle kingef.
mid ræhȝere ftrengðe :/
& mid riche-dome.
fwulche weoren hif cuftes :/
þat al uolc hit wufte.
Nu wes Arður god king :/
hif hired hine lufede.
æc hit wes cuð wide :/
of hif kinedome.
Þe king huld i Lundene :/
ane muchele huftinge.
þer to weoren ilaðede :/
hif leond-cnihtes alle.
riche men and hæne :/
to hæȝen þan king.
Þa þe hit wef al icume :/
uolc vnimete.
vp araef Arður :/
aðeleft kingen.
& lette bringen him biforen :/
halidomes wel icoren.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þe king heold al his folk :/
to-gadere mid bliffe.
and mid foche þinges :/
he ouer-com alle kỳmges[1].
mid reȝere ftrengþe :/
and mid richedome.

Nou was Arthur god king :/
and al folk hine louede.
þat hit was widene couþ :/
of his kinedome.
Þe king heold in Londene :/
one mochele fpeche.
þar to weren ilaþed :/
his riche cnihtef alle.

Þo þe hii were alle icome :/
folk onimete.
vp a-ros Arthur þe gode king :/

and lette bringe halidomes to him.

all his folk [together] with 'great' bliss; and with such things he overcame all kings, with fierce strength and with treasure. 'Such were his qualities, that all folk it knew.' Now was Arthur good king; 'his people [and all folk] loved him; 'eke [*so* that] it was known wide, of his kingdom. The king held in London a mickle husting; thereto were arrived all his [rich] knights, 'rich men and poor, to honor the king.' When that 'it was [they were] all come, *a* numerous folk; up arose Arthur 'noblest of kings [the good king], and caused to be brought 'before [to] him reliques 'well

[1] *R.* kynges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer to gon cneoli:
þe king fume[1] þrie.
nᵒte noht his duȝeðe:
what he deme wolde.
Arður heold up his riht hond:
ænne að he þer swor.
þat næuere bi hif liue:
for nanes monnes lære.
ne fculden īne Brutene:
Sæxes wurðē bliðe.
londef beon wurðen:
no wurðfcipe bruke.
ah he heom wolde flemen:
for heo weoren iuæid wið him.
flozen Vðer Pendragune:
þe wes Coftaces[3] fune.
swa heo duden þene oder[4]:
Aurilien hif broðer. [f.115.c.1.]
for þi heo weoren on londe:
laðeft alre uolke.
Arður forð rihtes:
nom hif wife cnihtef.
weore heom lef weore heom lað:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and gan þar to cneolȳ:
þe king fone þries.
nufte noht his cnihtef:
wat he feggen wolde.
Arthur held vp his rih[2] hond:
an oþ he fwor a-non.
þat neuere bi hif lifue:
for none mannes lore. [f.92ᵇ.c.1.]
ne folde in Brutaȳne:
Saxeffe bliþe worþe.
ne londes brouke:
ne homes habbe.
ac he ȝam wolde fleme:
and falle heō to grunde.
For hii floȝe Vther þane king:
þat was fader mīn.
so hii dude þan oþer:
Aurelie his broþer.
for þi hii me beoþ in londe:
loþeft alre folke.
ARthur forþ rihtes: *Arður.*
nam his wifeſte cnihtes.
were heom leof were heom loþ:

choice'; [and] thereto the king gan soon to kneel thrice;—his 'people [knights] knew not what he would 'pronounce [say]. Arthur held up his right hand, an oath he 'there [anon] swore, that never by his life, for no mans lore, should *the* Saxons become blithe in Britain, [nor] 'be landholders [possess lands], nor 'enjoy worship [have homes]; but he would drive them out, 'for they were at enmity with him; [and fell them to ground. For they] 'slew Uther 'Pendragon [the king], who was 'son of Constance [my father]; so they did the other, Aurelie, his brother; therefore they 'were [are to me] in land loathest of all folk. Arthur forth-right took his 'wise

[1] fune? [2] riht? [3] *R.* Coftances. [4] oðer?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

alle heo ſworen þene að.
trouliche þat heo woldē:
mid Arðure halden.
& wreken þene king Vðer:
þat Sæxes aqualden her.
Arður hiſ writen ſende:
wide ȝeond hiſ londe.
after alle þan cnihten:
þe he biȝiten mihte.
þat heo ful ſone:
to þan kinge comen.
& he heom wolde on londe:
leofliche at-halden.
ſcipien heom mid londe:
mid ſeoluere & mid golde.
Forð þe kīg ferde:
mid vnimete uerde.
folc he ledde fællic:
& ferde riht to Eouerwic.
þer he læi ane niht:
amærwe he ferde forð riht.
þer he wuſte Colgrim:
& hiſ iuerē mid him.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

alle hii ſwore þan ilke oh.
treuliche þat i[1] wolde:
mid Arthur holde.
and wreke þan king Vther:
þat hii acwelde her.
Arthur his wretes ſende:
to manicunne londe.
after alle þe cnihtes:
þat he bi-ȝete mihte.
þat hii fol ſone:
to þan kinge come.
and he ȝam wolde on londe:
loueliche at-holde.

Forþ þe king wende:
mid onimete ferde.
folk he ladde ſellich:
and wende riht to Euerwich.
þar he laẏ one niht:
a morwe he wende forþriht.
þar he wiſte Colgrim:
and his i-veres mid him.

[wisest] knights; were *it* lief to them were *it* loath to them, they all swore the [same] oath, that they would truly hold with Arthur, and avenge the king Uther, whom 'the Saxons [they] killed here. Arthur sent his writs 'wide over his [to many kind of] land, after all the knights that he might obtain; that they full soon should come to the king, and he would in land lovingly maintain them; 'reward them with land, with silver and with gold.' Forth went the king with *a* numerous host; he led *a* surprising multitude, and marched right to York. There he lay one night; on *the* morrow he proceeded forth-right where he knew Colgrim *to be*, and his

[1] hii?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Swedðden[1] Octa wes of-flaȝen:	
& idon of lif-dæȝen.	
þe wes Hengeſtes ſune:	
vt of Sæxlonde icumen.	
Colgrim wes þe hæhſt mon:	Colgrī was þe baldeſte man:
þat ut of Saxlonde com.	þat vt of Saxlonde com.
aft[9] Hengeſte:	after Hengeſt and Octa:
& Horſe hiſ broðer.	
& Octa & Oſſa:	
and heore iuere Ebiſſa.	Ebiſſa and Oſſa.
Heold a þan ilke dæȝen:	Heold a þan ilke daȝe:
Colgrim Sæxes to laȝen.	Colgrim Saxes to laȝe.
ladde & radde:	ladde and radde: [c. 2.]
mid ræȝere ſtrengðe.	mid reȝere ſtrengþe.
muchel wes þat moncun:	moche was þe mankun:
þat ferde mid Colgrim. [c. 2.]	þat ferde mid Colgrim.
Colgrim iherde tidende:	Colgrim ihorde tydinge:
of Arðude[2] þā kīge.	of Arthur þan kinge.
þat he touward him com:	þat he toward him com:
and wolde him vfel don.	and wolde him vuel don.
Colgrim hine biþohte:	Colgrim hine bi-þohte:
whæt he dō mahte.	wat he don mihte.
& bonnede hiſ uerde:	and bannede his ſerde:
ȝeond al þan norð ærde.	oueral þan Norþ ende.

comrades with him. 'Since Octa was slain, and deprived of life-day, who was Hengests son, out of Saxland come,' Colgrim was the 'noblest [boldest] man that came out of Saxland, after Hengest, and 'Hors, his brother, and' Octa, 'and Ossa, and their companion Ebissa [Ebissa and Ossa]. At that day Colgrim ruled *the* Saxons by authority, led and counselled, with fierce strength; mickle was the multitude that marched with Colgrim! Colgrim heard tiding of Arthur the king, that he came toward him, and would do to him evil. Colgrim bethought him what he might do, and assembled his host over all thè North 'land

[1] feoðden?

[2] *R.* Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þer liðen to-ſomne:	Þar comen to-gaderes:
alle Scotleode.	al Scotleode.
Peohtes & Sæxes:	Peutef and Saxif:
fiȝen heom to-gæderes.	wende heom to-gaderes.
& moniennef cunnef men:	and maniane cunnes man:
uuleden Colgrimē.	folwede Colgrim.
Forð he gon fuſen:	Forþ he gan fouſe:
mid vnimete verde.	mid onimete ferde.
to-ȝaines Arðure:	to-ȝeinef Arthure:
aðeleſt kingen.	baldeſt alre kinge.
he þohte to quellen:	he þohte to cwelle:
þe king on hif þeodē.	þane king in his londe.
& hif folc ualden:	
uolden to grūden.	
& ſetten al þiſ kine-lond:	
an hif aȝere hond.	
& fallen to þan grūde:	
Arður þene ȝunge.	
Forð wende Colgrī:	Forþ wende Colgrim:
& hif ferde mid him.	and his Saxiſſe mid him.
& wende mid hif ferde:	and wende mid ferde:
þat he com to ane watere.	þat hii come to one watere.
Dug[las]. þat water if ihaten Duglaſ:	þat his ihote Duglas:
duȝeðen hit aquelle.	manie þare fulle.
Þer com Arður him aȝein:	Þar com Arthur him aȝein:

[end]. There came together all *the* Scottish people; Peohtes and Saxons joined them together, and men of many kind followed Colgrim. Forth he gan to march with *an* immense force, against Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; he thought to kill the king in his land, 'and fell his folk to *the* ground, and set all this kingdom in his own hand, and fell to the ground Arthur the young.' Forth marched Colgrim, and his 'army [Saxons] with him, and proceeded with 'his' host until 'he [they] came to a water; 'the water [that] is named Duglas; 'people it destroyed [many there fell]! There came Arthur against him, ready 'with his [to]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ȝaru mid hif fehte[1].	redi to fihte.
in ane brade forde:	in one brode forde:
þa ferden heom imetten.	þe ferde hire hii-mette[2].
faſtliche on-floȝen:	fafteliche hii flowen:
ſnelle heore kenpen[3].	
feollen þa uæie:	follen þe ẏeie.
uolden to grunde.	
þer wes muchel blod gute:	þar was moche blod iȝote:
balu þer wes riue.	and wowe þar was riue.
bruſtlede ſcæftes:	
beornes þer ueollen. [f.115b.c.1.]	
þat iſæh Arður:	þis iſeh Arthur:
on mode him wes unneðe.	þat ȝam lute lofuede.
Arður hine biðohte:	and him bi-þohte:
whæt he dō mahte.	wat he don mihte.
& thehte hine a bacward:	and teh hine a bacward.
in enne uald brade.	in one brode felde.
þa wenden hif feond:	þo wende his fon:
þat he flæn walde.	þat he fleon wolde.
þa wes glad Colgrim:	þo was glad Colgrim: [f.93.c.1.]
and al hif ferde mid him.	and his iveref mid him.
heo wenden þat Arður:	
mid arhredðe weore afallæd þere.	
& tuȝen ouer þat water:	and after him wende:

Primum bellum Arthuri.

fight; on a broad ford the hosts them met; vigorously 'their brave champions attacked [they slew]; the fated fell 'to the ground!' There was much blood shed, [and] woe there was rife; 'shivered shafts; men there fell!' Arthur saw 'that; in mood he was uneasy; Arthur [this, who loved them little, and] bethought him what he might do, and drew him backward on a broad field (plain). When his foes weened that he would fly, then was Colgrim glad, and 'all his host [his comrades] with him; 'they weened that Arthur had with fear retreated there,' and 'passed over the water [after him

[1] *At first written* ferde. [2] ȝam i-mette? [3] kempen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

alſe heo wode weoren.
þa Arður þat iſah:
þat Colgrim him wes ſwa neh.
& heo weoren beien:
bihalues þan wateren.
þuſ ſeide Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
Iſeo ȝe mine Brutteſ:
here uf bilalfues[1].
uꝝ iuan uulle:
criſt heom aualle.
Colgrim þene ſtronge:
ut of Sæx-londe.
Hiſ cun i þiſſe lōde:
ure ælderne aqualden.
ah nu if þe dæi icumen:
þe drihten haueð idemed.
þat he ſcal þat lif leoſen:
& leoſien hiſ freonden.
oðer we ſculle dæde beon:
ne muȝe we hine quic iſeon.
ſcullen Sæxiſce men:
ſorȝen ibiden.
& we wrekē wurhliche:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

aſe he wod were.
þo Arthur þat iſeh:
þat Colgrim him was ſo neh.
þat hii weren beẏne:
in on half þan watere.
þo ſaide Arthur:
and ſpac to his cnihtes.
Ne ſe ȝe mine Bruttus:
her vs bi-halues.
houre iſon folle:
criſt ȝam a-cwelle.
Colgrim þane ſtrōge:
vt of Saxlonde.
His cun in þiſſe londe:
oure eldre a-fulde.
ac nou his þe dai i-come:
þat drihte haueþ idemid.
þat hii hit ſolle a-bugge:
of[2] ich mote libbe.
oþer ich wolle dead bean:
ne maẏ ich hine cwik i-ſen.
ſolle Saxiſſe men:
ſorewe ibide.

pursued], as *if* 'they [he] were mad. When Arthur saw that, that Colgrim was so nigh to him, 'and [that] they were both 'beside [on one side of] the water, 'thus [then] said Arthur, 'noblest of kings [and spake to his knights]: "See ye [not], my Britons, here beside us, our full foes,—Christ destroy them!—Colgrim the strong, out of Saxland? His kin in this land killed our ancestors; but now is the day come, that *the* Lord hath appointed, that 'he shall lose the life, and lose his friends [they shall pay for it, if I may live], or *else* 'we shall [I will] be dead; 'we [I] may not see him alive! *The* Saxish men shall abide sorrow, 'and we avenge worthily our friends

[1] *R.* bihalfues. [2] ȝef?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ure wine-maies.	
Vp bræid Arður hiſ ſceld :/	Vp brayd Arthur his ſeald :/
foren to hiſ breoſten.	forn to his breoſte.
& he gō to ruſien :	and he gan to reſe :/
ſwa þe runie wulf. [c. 2.]	ſo þe wode wolf.
þenne he cumeð of holte :/	wane he comeþ of holte :/
bi-honged mid ſnawe.	bi-honge mid ſnowe.
and þencheð to biten :/	and þencheþ to bite :
swulc deor ſwa him likeð.	woch ſeap þat him likeþ.
Arður þa cleopede :/	Arthur þo cleop[1] :/
to leofe hiſ cnihten.	to leoue hiſ cnihtes.
Ford[2] we biliue :/	Wende we blifue :/
þeīeſ ohte.	and do ȝam vt of lifue.
alle ſomeð[3] heom to :/	
alle we ſculleð wel don.	
& heo uorð hælden :/	
swa þe hæȝe wude.	
þēne wind wode :/	
weieð hine mid mæine.	
Fluȝen ouer þe woldeſ :/	Floȝen ouer þe feldes :/
þritti þuſend ſceldeſ.	þritti þuſend ſeldes.
& ſmiten a Colgrimes cnihtes :/	and ſmiten Colgrim his cnihtes :/
þat þa eorðe aȝæn quehte.	þat þe erþe aȝein cwehte.

(*or* relatives)." Up caught Arthur his shield, before his breast, and he gan to rush as the howling wolf, when he cometh from *the* wood, behung with snow, and thinketh to bite 'such beasts as [which sheep that] he liketh. Arthur then called to his dear knights: "Advance we quickly, 'brave thanes! all together to*wards* them; we all shall do well, and they forth fly, as the high wood, when *the* furious wind heaveth it with strength [and put them out of life]!" Flew over the 'wealds [fields] thirty thousand shields, and smote 'on' 'Colgrims [Colgrim his] knights, *so* that the earth shook again. 'Brake *the* broad spears, shivered shields;' *the* Saxish men

[1] cleopede? [2] Forð? [3] ſomed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
breken braden ſperen ⁊	
bruſtleden ſceldes.	
feollen Sæxiſce men ⁊	folle Saxiſſe men ⁊
folden to grunden.	folde to grunde.
Þat iſah Colgrim ⁊	Þat iſch Colgrim ⁊
Þer uore wa wes him.	Þar fore wo was him.
Þe alre hendeſte mon ⁊	
Þe ut of Sexlonde com.	
Colgrim gon to flænne ⁊	and he gan to fleonde ⁊ [c. 2.]
feondliche ſwiðe.	wonderliche ſwiþe.
& hiſ horſ hine bar ⁊	and hiſ horſ hine bar ⁊
mid hæhȝere ſtrengðe.	mid mochelere ſtrengþe.
ouer Þat water deope ⁊	ouer Þat water deope ⁊
& ſcelde hine wið dæðe.	and readde hine fram deaþe.
Saxes gunnen ſinken ⁊	Arthur to Þan watere ⁊
forȝe heom wes ȝiueðe.	hiȝede ſwiþe.
Arður wende hiſ ſperef ord ⁊	and tornde Þe ſperes hord ⁊
and for-ſtod heō Þene uord.	and forſtod ȝam Þane ford.
Þer adruncke Sexef ⁊	Þar ha-drongke Saxiſſe ⁊
fulle ſeoue Þuſend.	folle ſoue Þuſend.
Summe heo gunnen wondrien ⁊	Somme hii gonne wondri ⁊
ſwa doð Þe wilde cron.	ſo doþ Þe wilde crane.
i Þan moruenne ⁊	in Þan mor-fenne ⁊
Þenne hiſ floc if awēmed. [f. 116. c. 1.]	wane his fliht his a-wemmid.
& him halded[1] after ⁊	and him holdeþ after ⁊

fell to the ground! Colgrim saw that, therefore he was woe,—'the fairest man of all that came out of Saxland.' 'Colgrim [and he] gan to flee, exceeding quickly; and his horse bare him with great strength over the deep water, and saved him from death. '*The* Saxons gan to sink,—sorrow was given to them!' Arthur [hastened speedily to the water, and] turned 'his [the] spears point, and hindered to them the ford; there *the* Saxons were drowned, full seven thousand. Some they gan wander, as the wild crane doth in the moorfen, when his flight is impaired, and swift hawks pursue

[1] halde̊ ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

hauekes ſwifte.
hūdes ī þā reode:
mid reouðe hine imeteð.
þēne nif him neouðer god:
no þat lond no þat flod.
hauekes hine ſmiteð:
hundes hine biteð.
þenne bið þe kinewurðe foȝel:
fæie on his ſiðe.
Colgrim ouer feldes:
flæh him biliuef.
þat he com to Eouerwic:
riden ſwiðe ſellic.
he wenden into burȝe:
& faſte heo biclufde.
hafuede he binnen:
ten þuſend monnen.
burh-men mid þa bezſte:
þe him bihalues weoren.
Arður halde after:
mid þritti þuſend cnihten.
& ferde riht to Eouerwic:
mid folke ſwiðe ſellic.
and bi-læi Colgrim:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hauekes ſwifte.
houndes in þan reode:
mid rouþe hine imeteþ.
þanne nis him noþer god:
no þat lond ne þat flod.
hauekes hine ſmiteþ:
houndeſ hine biteþ.
þan his þe kineworþe foȝel:
adrad in eche ſide.
Colgrim ouer feldes: *Colgrim.*
fleþ him wel ſwiþe.
þat he com to Euerwich:
ride ſwiþe ſellich.
he wende in to borewe:
and faſte hine bi-tunde.
and hadde þar ine:
ten þuſend manne.
Arthur him heol[1] after:
mid þritti þouſend cnihtes.
and bi-laȳ at Euerwich Colgrim:

after him, *and* hounds with mischief meet him in the reeds; then is neither good to him, nor the land nor the flood; *the* hawks him smite, *the* hounds him bite, then is the royal fowl 'at his death-time [adread on each side]! Colgrim fled him over *the* fields 'quickly [well speedily], until he came to York, riding most marvellously; he went into the burgh, and fast it inclosed; 'he [and] had within ten thousand men, 'burghers with the best; that were beside him.' Arthur pursued after [him] with thirty thousand knights, 'and marched right to York with folk very numerous,' and besieged Colgrim [at York], who defended *it* against him. Seven nights therebefore

[1] heold?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
	Þe weorrede aȝæin him.	Þat werrede a-ȝein him.
	Seouen niht þer biuoren:	Soueniht þar bi-vore:
	wes suðward ifaren.	was fuþward ivare.
Baldulf.	Baldolf þe hende:	Baldolf þe hende:
Colgrim.	broðer Colgrimef.	Colgrimes broþer.
	and lai bi þare fæ brimme:	and laý bi fé́é fellich:
	& abad Childrichen.	abidende Cheldrich.
Childric.	Childric wes i þan daȝen:	Cheldrich was a þane daȝe: [f. 93b. c. 1.]
	cæifer of riche laȝen.	kaifer of heȝe laȝe.
	inne Alemaine:	in Alemaine:
	Þat aðel wes hif aȝene.	Þat lond was his owe.
	Þa iherde Baldolf:	Þo ihorde Baldolf:
	þer he bi fæ lai.	þar he bi fé́é laý.
	Þat Arður hafde inne Eouerwic:	Þat Arthur hadde in Euerwich:
	Colgrim biclufed.	Colgrim bi-clufed.
	Baldolf hæfde ibonned: [c. 2.]	Baldolf hadde ibanned:
	fcouen þufēd monnen.	foue þufend manne.
	baldere beornnen:	
	þe bi fæ leien.	
	heo nomen heom to ræden:	and nemem him[1] to reade:
	Þat aȝæin heo woldē riden.	Þat aȝen hii wolde ride.
	and bi-læuen Childric:	and bi-léue Cheldrich:
	& faren in to Eouerwic.	and wende riht to Euerwich.
	& fehten wid[2] Arðure:	and fihte wiþ Arthur:
	& aquellen al hif duȝeðe.	and a-cwelle his doȝeþe.

Baldolf the fair, Colgrims brother, was gone southward, and lay by 'the sea-side, and abode [*the* sea strangely, abiding] Childric. Childric was in those days *a* kaiser of powerful authority; the land in Alemaine was his own. When Baldolf heard, where he lay by *the* sea, that Arthur had inclosed Colgrim in York, Baldolf had assembled seven thousand men, 'bold fellows, who by *the* sea lay'; 'they took them [and took him] to counsel, that back they would ride, and leave Childric, and proceed 'into [right to] York, and fight with Arthur, and destroy 'all' his people. 'Baldolf swore in his

[1] nemen ȝam? [2] wið?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Baldolf fwor ō hif grome :	
þat he wolde beon Ardureref[1] bone.	
& bruken al þaf riche :	
mid Colgrime hif broðere.	
Nolde Baldolf abide :	Nolde Baldolf abide :
þan keifere Childriche.	þane cayfer Cheldriche.
ah þenne he ferde uorð :	ac þanene he ferde forþ :
and droh him forð rihtes nord[2].	and droh him riht norþ.
from dæie to dæie :	
mid baldre[3] duȝeðe.	
þat he com in ane wude :	forte he come to one wode :
in ane wilderne.	to one wilderne.
frō Ardures[4] ferde :	fram Arthures ferde :
fulle feoue milen.	folle foue mile.
He hafde iþohte bi nihten :	He hadde iþoht bi nihte :
mid feouen þufend cnihten.	mid alle his cnihtes.
to riden uppen Arður :	comen vppen Arthur :
ær þe king wore ware[5].	are þe king were war.
and hif folc afeollen :	and his folk falle :
& hine feolf aquelle.	and him seolf a-cwelle.
Ah al hit oðer iwarð :	Ac oþer weies hit was idiht :
oðer he iwēde.	here hit were dai-liht.
for Baldolf hafede on hirede :	for þar was mid Baldolf :

anger, that he would be Arthurs bane, and possess all this realm, with Colgrim his brother.' Baldolf would not wait for the kaiser Childric, but thence he marched forth, and drew him 'forth' right north, 'from day to day, with *his* bold folk,' until he came 'in [to] a wood, 'in [to] a wilderness, full seven miles from Arthurs host. He had thought by night with 'seven thousand [all his] knights to 'ride [come] upon Arthur, and fell his folk, and himself kill. But 'all it other*wise* happened, other *than* he weened [otherways it was disposed, ere it were daylight]; for 'Baldolf had in *his* host [there was with Baldolf] a British knight; he was Arthurs relative,

[1] Arðures?
[2] norð?
[3] balde *pr. m.*
[4] Arðures?
[5] *The last two words of this line are interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ænne cniht Bruttiſcne.	on cniht Bruttiſſc.
he wes Arðures mæi :/	he was Arthures may :/
Mau[rin]. Maurin ihaten.	Moriſſe ihote.
Maurin bi-halues :/	Moris wende bi-halues :/
to þan wude halde.	
þurh wude & þurh feldes :/	þorþ wode and þorh feldes.
þat he com to Arðures teldes.	forte[1] to Arthur come :/
and þus ſeide ſone :/ [f.116b.c.1.]	and him ſaide ſone.
to Arður kinge.	
Hail ſeo þu Arður :/	Hayl beo þou Arthur :/
kingene aðeleſt.	kingene wiſeſt.
ich æm hidere icume :/	ich ham hider icome :/
ich æm of þine cunne.	ich ham of þine cunne.
Her if Baldulf icumen :/.	Her his Baldolf icome :/
mid ſwiðe hærde hære-gumen.	mid ſwiþe kene gomes. [c. 2.
& þencheð in þiſſere nihte :/	and þencheþ in þiſſe nihte :/
to ſlæn þe & þine cnihtes.	ſlea[2] þe and þine cnihtes.
to wracken his broðer :/	
þe ſwiðe if vnbalded.	
ah godd him ſcal forwrænen[3] :/	ac god hit ſal for-werne :/
þurh hiſ muchele mihten.	þorh his mochele mihte.
[*Cado*]*r*. & ſend nu uorð Cador :/	Ac ſende nou forþ Cador :/
þene eorl of Cornwaile.	þan eorl of Cornwale.
and mid him ohte cnihtes :/	and mid him gode cnihtes :/

named 'Maurin [Moris]. Maurin went aside 'to the wood,' through woods and through fields, until he came to 'Arthurs tents [Arthur]; and 'thus' said soon to 'Arthur *the* king [to him]: "Hail be thou, Arthur, noblest of kings! I am hither come; I am of thy kindred. Here is Baldolf arrived with 'warriors [men] most 'hardy [keen], and thinketh in this night to slay 'thee and thy knights, 'to avenge his brother, who is greatly discouraged;' but God shall prevent 'him [it], through his mickle might. 'And [But] send now forth Cador, the earl of Cornwall, and with him 'bold [good] knights, 'good and brave [that are keen to fight], full seven hundred good

[1] fort he ? [2] ſlean ? [3] forwærnen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
gode and wihte.		þat kene beo to fihte.
fulle feoue hundred:		folle foue hundred:
felere þeines.		felie kempes.
& ich heom wulle ræden:		and ich ȝam wolle reade:
& ich hō wulle leden.		and ich ȝam wolle leade.
hu heo muwē Baldulf:		ou hii mawe Baldolf:
flæn al fe enne wulf.		flean afe hit were a wolf.
Forð ferde Cador:		Forþ wende Cador:
& alle þas cnihtes.		and alle þes cnihtes.
þat heo comen bihaluef:	10	þat hii come bi-halues:
þer Baldulf[1] lai on comele.		þar Baldolf lay in teldes.
heo hī to helden:		
on ælchere haluē.		
heo flozen heo nomen:		and flozen and nemen:
al þat heo aneh comen.		al þat hii neh comen.
þer weorē aqualde:		þar weren a-cweld:
nizen hundred alle italde.		folle nize hundred.
Baldulf wes bi-halues:		Baldolf was bi-halues:
igan him aburhzes[2].		i-gon vt of teldes.
& þurh þa wilderne flæh:	20	and þorh the wilderne fleoh:
fcondliche fwiðe.		wonderliche fwiþe.
and hafde hif men leofe:	[c. 2.]	
mid reouðe bilæfued.		
& fleh him fwa feor norð:		and fleþ him so for norh:

'thanes [champions]; and I will counsel them, and I will lead them, how they may Baldolf slay as *if* [it were] a wolf." Forth went Cador and all these knights, *so* that they came aside where Baldolf lay in tents; 'they advanced to him on each side'; 'they [and] slew, 'they [and] captured all that they came nigh;—there were killed [full] nine hundred 'all *out* told.' Baldolf was gone aside 'to save himself [out of *the* tents], and fled through the wilderness, wondrously fast; 'and had his dear men with sorrow deserted'; and fled him so far north, that he came so forth, where

[1] Balulf *pr. m.* [2] aburhzen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat he com ſwa feor forð.[1]	
þat he com ſwa uorð:	þat he com ſo forþ.
þer Arður lai in uolde.	þar Arthur lay on felde:
mid richen hiſ ferde.	mid riche his ferde.
al abuten Eouerwic:	al aboute Euerwich:
kīg ſwiðe ſeollic.	ferde ſwiþe ſellich.
Colgrī weſ wið innen:	Colgrim was wiþ ine:
mid Sæxiſce monnen.	mid Saxiſſe manne.
Baldulf hine biþohte:	Baldolf hine bi-þohte:
what he don mihte.	wat he don mihte.
mid wulches cunnes ginne:	mid woche cunnes gynne:
he mihte cumen binnen.	he mihte come wiþ ine.
in to þere burhȝe:	
to Colgrime hiſ broðere.	
þe wes him on liue:	
leofeſt alre monne.	
Baldulf lette ſtiken:	Baldolf lette ſtrike:
to þan bare lichen.	to þan bare liche.
his bærd and hiſ chinne:	
and makede hine to croſſe.	
he lette ſceren half hiſ hæfd:	and lette ſeren his heued:
	aſe me doþ an fole.
and nō him ane harpe an hond.	and nom him an honde:
	one harpe longe.

Arthur lay on *the* 'weald [field], with his powerful host, all about York,—'king [host] most surprising! Colgrim was within with *the* Saxish men, *and* Baldulf bethought him what he might do; with what kind of stratagem he might come within, 'into the burgh, to Colgrim his brother, who was to him *the* dearest of all men alive.' Baldulf caused to be shaved to the bare skin 'his beard and his chin, and made him as *a* fool'; 'he [and] caused 'half' his head to be shorn, [as men do a fool]; and took him in hand a [long] harp. He could harp [exceeding] well in his childhood; and with his

[1] *This line is evidently superfluous.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

He cuðen harpien wel:
an hif child-haden.
& mid hif harpe he ferde:
to þaf kingef hirede.
& gon þær to gleowien:
& muche gome to makien.
Ofte me hine fmæt:
mid fmærte ȝerden.
ofte me hine culde:
swa me deð crofce.
ælc mon þe hine imette:
mid bifmare hine igratte.
fwa nauere na mon nufte:
of Baldulfes cufte. [f.117.c.1.]
buten hit weore croffe:
icumen to þan hirede.
Swa he eode longe[3] upward:
swa longe he eode adunward.
þat heo weoren warre:
þe weoren þær wið innen.
þat hit wes Baldulf:
Colgrimes broðer.
Heo wurpen ut enne rap:
& Baldulf hine fafte igrap.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

He couþe harpi fwe[1] wel:
in his child-hode. [f.94.c.1.]
and[2] his harpe he wende:
to þan kingef ferde.
and gan þare to pleoye:
and moche game makie.
Ofte me hine fmot:
mid fwiþe fmorte ȝerdes.
ofte me hine culde:.
fo me fal an fole.
so neuere no mā nufte:
of Baldolf his cufteſ.
bote þat hit a fol were:
i-come to þan folke.
So lang he ȝeode vpward:
fo lange he ȝeode a-dunward.
þat hii were war wiþ ine:
þat hit was Baldolf wiþ houte.
Corgrim[4] his broþer: *Baldulf.*
nadde he non oþer.
Hii worpen vt one rop:
and Baldolf hine igrop.

harp he went to the kings host, and gan there to play, and much game to make. Oft men him smote with wands [most] smart; oft men him struck (?) as men 'do [shall a] fool; 'each man that met him, greeted him with derision; so never any man knew of 'Baldulfs [Baldolf his] appearance, but [that] it were [a] fool come to the folk! So long he went upward, so long he went downward, that they were aware, 'who were there' within, that it was Baldulf [without], 'Colgrims [Colgrim his] brother [he had no other]. They cast out a rope, and Baldulf grasped it

[1] fwiþe? [2] and mid? [3] *Better* fwa longe he eode. [4] *R.* Colgrim.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and brudden up Baldolf:		
þat he binnen com.		
mid ſwulches cunneſ ginnes:		and mid þan ilke gỳnne:
Baldulf com wiþ innen.		hii brohte him þar ine.
þa wes bliðen Colgrī:		Þo was bliþe Colgrim:
and alle hiſ cnihtes mid hī.		and alle his cnihteſ mid him.
and ſwiðe heo gunnen þrattien:		and ſwiþe hii gonne þretie:
Arður þene king.		Arthur þan kinge.
Arður bihaluef weſ:		
& þiſ gomen iſæh.	10	Artur þis game iſeh:
and wraðde hine ſulfne:		and wreþþede him ſwiþe.
wunderliche ſwiðe.		
and hæhte anan wepnien:		and hehte a-non wepni:
al hiſ wunliche uolc.		alle his cnihtes.
he þohte þe burhȝe:		he þohte þane borh:
mid ſtrengðe to biwinnen.		mid ſtrengþe bi-winne.
Alſe Arður wolde:		Al ſo Arthur wolde:
to þan walle ræſe.		to þan walle reaſe.
þa com þer riden:		þar com ride anon:
Patric. Patric þe ricche mon.	20	Patrich þe riche man.
þat wes a Scottiſc þein:		
ſcone an hiſ londen.		
& þuſ clupien a-gon:		and þus him ſaide:
to þan kinge anan.		to Arthur þan kinge.
Hail ſeo þu Arður!		Hayl beo þou Arthur þe king:

'fast,' and '*they* drew up Baldulf, *so* that he came within'; with 'such kind of [that] stratagem 'Baldulf came within [they brought him therein]. Then was Colgrim blithe, and all his knights with him, and greatly they gan to threaten Arthur the king. Arthur 'was beside, and saw' this game, and wrathed himself 'wondrously much'; and ordered anon all his 'brave folk [knights] to weapon *them*; he thought to win the burgh with strength. As Arthur would (was about to) assault the wall, 'then [anon] came there riding Patrick, the rich man, 'who was a Scottish thane, fair in his land'; and thus 'began to call to the king anon [he said to Arthur the king]:

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

aðeleſt Brutten.
Ich þe wulle tellen: [c. 2.]
neouwe tidende.
of þā kæiſere Childriche:
þan wode & þan richen.
þan ſtrongen & þan balden:
He if inne Scottlōde.
ihælde to are hafene:
& hames forberneð.
and waldeð al ure lond: 10
after hiſ ahȝere hond.
He haueð uerde wel idone:
al þa ſtrengðe of Rome.
he ſæið mid hiſ ȝelpe:
þenne me him win ſcencheð.
þat þu ne dærſt in nare hude:
hiſ ræſſes abiden.
no on uelde no on wude:
no nauere nane ſtude
& ȝif þu him abideſt: 20
he þe wule binden.
quellen þine leoden:
and þi lond aȝen.
Ofte wes Arðure wa:
nauere wurſe þene þa.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Bruttene deorlyng.
Ich þe wolle telle:
neowe tidynge.
of þan kaiſer Childrich: [c. 2.]
þan wode and þan riche.
þan bolde and þan ſtronge:
He his in Scotlonde.

and haueþ i-nome al oure lond:
to his owane hond.
He haueþ ferde wel idone:
al þe ſtrengþe of Rome.
he ſaiþ mid his ȝelpe:
wane me him win ſencheþ.
þat þou ne darſt in none ſtude:
his reaſes a-bide.

and ȝef þou him abideſt:
he þe wole acwelle.

OFte was Arthur wo:
neuere worſe þane þo.

"Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], 'noblest of Britons [Britons darling]! I will tell thee new tiding, of the kaiser Childric, the furious and the powerful, the 'strong [bold] and the'bold [strong]. He is in Scotland 'arrived in a haven, and *the* homes consumeth,' and 'wieldeth [hath captured] all our land in his own hand. He hath *a* host brave; all the strength of Rome; he saith with his boast, when men pour to him *the* wine, that thou darest not in any spot his attacks abide, 'neither in field, nor in wood, nor *in* ever any place.' And if thou him abidest, he will thee 'bind [kill]; 'destroy thy people, and possess thy land.'" Oft was Arthur woe, *but* never worse than

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and he droh hine abac:	and he droh hine abac:
bihalues þere burȝe.	bi-halues þare borewe.
clupede to ræde:	cleopede to reade:
cnihtes to neode.	cnihtes to ueode.
beornes and eorlef:	
& þa hali biſcopes.	
& bad þat heo him radden:	and bad þat hii him radde:
hu he mihte on richen.	ou he miht on riche.
mid his mon-weorede:	mid his man-ferde:
hiſ monſcipe halden.	his manſipe holde.
& fehten wiþ Childriche:	and fihte wiþ Childrich:
þan ſtrōge & þan richen.	þane ſtronge and þan riche.
þa hider wolde liðe:	
to helpen Colgrime.	
Þa ādſwarede Bruttes:	Þo ſaide Bruttes:
þa þere weoren bihalueſ. [f.117b.c.1.]	þat þare were bi-halues.
Faren we riht to Lundene:	Wend þe[1] riht to Londene:
and lete hine liðē after.	and let hine come after.
& ȝif he cumeð ridē:	and ȝef he comeþ ride:
forȝe he ſcal ibiden.	forwe he ſal a-bide.
he ſeolf and hiſ ferde:	him seolf and his ferde:
fæie ſcal iwurðen.	fæie ſal iworþe.
Arður al bilufedē:	Arthur al wrohte:
þat radden hiſ leoden.	aſe radde his cnihteſ.
forð he gon liðen:	forþ he gan wende:

then; and he drew him backward, beside the burgh; called to counsel knights at need, 'barons and earls, and the holy bishops'; and bade that they should him counsel, how he might in *the* realm with his army his honor maintain, and fight with Childric, the strong and the powerful, 'who hither would come, to help Colgrim.' Then answered *the* Britons, that were there beside: "Go we right to London, and let him come after; and if he cometh riding, sorrow he shall abide; 'he [him]self and his host shall die!" Arthur 'approved [wrought] all 'that [as] his 'people [knights] counselled; forth

[1] we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
þat he to Lundene com.	toward Lǒndene.	
Colgrim wes in Eouerwic:	Colgrim was in Euerwich:	
& þær abad him Childric.	and þar abod him Childrich.	
Childric gon wende:	Cheldrich gan wende:	
ȝeon[1] þan norð ende.	to þan Norþ ende.	
& nom on honde:	and nam on his hond:	[f.94b.c.1.
muchæl dal of londe.	mochel deal of londe.	
Al Scot-þeode:		
he ȝaf hif ane þeine.		
& al Norð-humberlond:		
he fette hif broðer an hond.		
Galeweoie & Orcaneie:	and dealde alle þe londes:	[*Gale*]*waie.*
he ȝaf hif ane eorle.	amang his eorles.	
him feolf he nō from Humbre:	and him seolf nam fram Humbre:	
þat lond into Lundene.	þat loud into Londene.	
Ne þohte he nauere mare:	Ne þohte he neuere more:	
of Arður habben are.	of Arthur habbe ore.	
buten he wolden hif mō bicume:	bote he wolde his man bi-come:	
Arður Vðeres sune.	Arthur Vther his sone.	
Arður wes in Lundene:	Arthur was in Londene:	
mid alle Brutleoden.	mid al Brutleode.	
he bed hif ferde:	he bad his ferde:	
ȝeond alle þiffen ærde.	ouer al þan erþe.	

he gan march 'until he came to [toward] London. Colgrim was in York, and there he abode Childric. Childric gan proceed 'over [to] the North end, and took in [his] hand *a* great deal of land 'All Scotland he gave to a thane of his, and all Northumberland he set in *the* hand of his brother; Galloway and Orkney he gave to an earl of his; [and dealt all the lands among his earls, and] himself he took the land from Humber into London. He thought never more of Arthur to have mercy, unless he would become his man, Arthur, 'Uthers [Uther his] son. Arthur was in London, with all *the* Britons; he summoned his forces over all 'this [the] land, that

[1] ȝeond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat æuer ælc mon ſ̓	þat ech man ſone ſ̓
þe hī god vðen.	
ræðe & ful ſone ſ̓	
to Lundene comen.	to Londene come.
Þa weſ Æn̄glene lond ſ̓	Þo was Englene lond ſ̓
mid ærmþe of-fulled.	mid harme i-fulled.
her wes wop & her wes rop ſ̓	
and reouðen vniuoȝe.	
muchel hunger & hæte ſ̓ [c. 2.]	her was honger an hate ſ̓
at æuer ælche monneſ ȝete.	at euereche mannes[1] ȝeate.
Arður ſende ouer ſæ ſ̓	Arthur ſende [ouer] ſéé ſ̓
ſele tweie cnihtes.	tweie wiſe cnihteſ.
to Hoele hiſ mæie ſ̓	to Howel his may ſ̓
þe wes him leofeſt monnē.	þat he louede ſwiþe.
þe ahte Bruttaine ſ̓	þat hahte Brutayne ſ̓
cniht mid þan bezſte.	cniht mid þan beſte.
and bad hine ful ſone ſ̓	and bad hine wel ſone ſ̓
þat he hider come.	þat hii[2] hider come.
liðen to londe ſ̓	
leodē tó helpen.	
Cheldric. for Chældrich hafde an honde ſ̓	for Childrich hadde an honde ſ̓
muchel of þiſſen londe.	mochel of his londe.
Colgrim. Baldulf. and Colg[i]m & Baldulf ſ̓	and Colgrim and Baldolf ſ̓

'every [each] man, 'that good would grant to him, quickly and full' soon to London should come. Then was England filled with harm; here was 'weeping and here was lament, and sorrow immoderate; mickle' hunger and strife (?) at every mans gate! Arthur sent over sea two 'good [wise] knights, to Howel his relation, 'who was to him dearest of men [whom he loved greatly], who possessed Britanny, knight with the best; and bade him 'full [well] soon, that he hither should come, 'sail to land, to help *the* people;' for Childric had in hand much of 'this [his] land, and Colgrim and Baldulf were come to him, and thought to drive Arthur the king 'out

[1] *R.* mannes. [2] he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
him to iboȝen weoren.	i-wend to him were.	
and þohten Arður þene king:	and þohte Arthur þane king:	
driuen ut of cuððen.	driuen of londe.	
binimen him hiſ icunde:	bi-nimen his cunde:	
and his kineriche.	and hiſ kine-riche.	
þenne were hiſ cun iſcend:	þat were his cun iſend:	
mid ſcomeliche witen.	for ene and for euere.	
heore wurðſcipe iloren:		
a þiſſere worlde-richē.		
þenne weoren þan kingge betere:	þanne betere þan kinge were:	
þat he iboren neore.	þat he ibore neore.	
þiſ iherde Howel:	þis ihorde Howel:	*Howel.*
þa hahſte of Brutaine[1].	and ſori was in heorte.	
& he cleopien agon:		
his fele cnihtes anan.		
& bæd heō to horſe:	and bad his cnihtes ſwiþe:	
hiȝenliche ſwiðe.	bi hire bare lifue.	
& faren into France:	wenden into France:	
to þan freo cnihten.	to þan freo cnihteſ.	
& ſeide heom þat heo comen:	and ſaide þat icome[2]:	
raðe & ful ſone.	raþe and fol ſone.	
to Mihæles munte:	to Mihhelef monte:	*Miheles munte.*
mid muchere ſtrenðe.	mid mochelere ſtrengþe.	

of [from] *the* land; take from him his right, and his kingdom;—'then were [*so* that should be] his kindred disgraced with shameful injury; their worship lost in this worlds realm [once and for ever]; then were *it* better for the king, that he were not born! Howel heard this, 'the highest of Britanny [and was sorry in heart]; 'and he gan to call his good knights anon,' and bade 'them to horse exceeding speedily, and [his knights quickly, by their bare life] go into France, to the free knights, and should say 'to them' that they should come, quickly and full soon, to Michaels Mount, with mickle strength, all who would of silver and of gold, win worship in this

[1] Bruaine *pr. m.*

[2] hii come?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
alle þa þe wolden:	alle þe þat wolde:
of feoluere & of golde.	of seoluer and of golde.
wurhfcipe iwinne:	worfipe bi-winne:
a þiffere weorlde-richen. [f.118. c.1.]	a þiffe worle-riche.
To Peito he fende:	To Peyto he fende:
fele hif þeines.	
& fumme touward Flandres:	
feondliche fwiðe.	
and to Turuine:	and into Turuyne.
tweie þer wēden.	
& into Gafcuinne:	and in to Gafcoyne:
cnihtes æc gode.	cnihtes þar wende.
& hahten heom mid maine:	and fomne[1] cnihtes:
touward Mihhæleſ munte.	to Mihelef monte.
& ær heo eoden to ulode:	and þer hii eode to flode:
heo fculden habbeon ȝiuen gode.	hii folde habbe ȝeftes gode.
þat heo mihte þa bliðere:	þat hii mihte þe bloþelokere:
buȝē from heore ærde.	wende vt of londe.
& mid Howele þan hende:	mid Howel þan hende:
cumen to þiffen lōde.	in to More Britayne.
to helpen Arðure:	to helpe Arthur his meȳ:
aðeleſt kingen.	þat narewe was bi-þronge.
þreottene dæies igon weoren:	

worlds realm. To Poitou he sent 'his good thanes; and some toward Flanders, exceeding quickly'; and 'to [into] Touraine, 'two there proceeded'; and into Gascony, knights 'eke good [there proceeded]; and 'ordered them *to come* with strength toward [summoned *the* knights to] Michaels Mount; and ere they went to flood (embarked), they should have gifts good, that they might the blither 'depart from their [go out of] land, 'and' with Howel the fair 'come to this land [into Greater Britain], to help Arthur, 'noblest of kings [his relative, who was narrowly pressed]. 'Thirteen days were passed since the messengers came there'; then ad-

[1] fomnede.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
seoððen þa beoden commen þære.	
þa halden hit[1] to ſæ:	þo held hii toward ſéé:
ſwa hahȝel deh from wolcne.	aſe þe hawel þat falleþ.
twa hundred ſcipene:	and two hundred ſipes ſūde:
þer weoren wel biwitene.	bi þare ſéé grunde.
me feoldē heom mid folke:	and ȝam alle fulde:
and heo forð wenden.	mid cnihteſ ſwiþe gode.
wind ſtond & þat weder:	
after heore wille.	
and heo at Hamtone:	and hii at Hamtone:
halden to londe.	come to londe.
Up leoppen of ſcipe:	Vp leopen of ſipes:
wode ſcalkkes.	buſie cnihtes.
beren to londe:	and to londe berę:
halmeſ & burnen.	healmes and bṛunieſ.
mid ſpæres & mid ſceldes:	mid ſpereſ and mid ſcealdes:
heo wriȝen al þa feldes.	hii wreȝen al þe feldes.
þer wes moni bald Brut:	þar waſ mani bold Brut:
þat beot wes aræred.	þat mid worde ſeide.
heo beoteden ſwiðe:	
bi heore quiken liue.	
þat heo wolden igræten:	þat hii wolde grete: [f.95.c.1.]
Cheldric þene richen.	Cheldric þan riche.

vanced they [toward] *the* sea, as [the] hail 'doth from *the* welkin [that falleth]; [and] two hundred ships 'were there well prepared; men filled them with folk, and forth they voyaged [*they* found, by the sea-shore, and filled them all with knights most good]; '*the* wind and the weather stood after their will'; and they came to land at Hamtone. Up leapt from *the* ships *the* 'furious men; [busy knights, and] bare to *the* land helms and burnies; with spears and with shields they covered all the fields. There was many *a* bold Briton that 'threat had raised; they threatened greatly, by their quick life [said with words], that they would greet Childric the powerful,

[1] heo?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	þene [bolde] kæiſere:		þane bolde caỳſere:
	mid muchele harme þere.	[c. 2.]	mid mochelere harme þere.
	And ȝif he nolde awæi fleon:		
	& touward Alemaine teon.		
	and he wolde on londe:		ȝef he wolde in londe:
	mid fehte atſtonden.		mid fihte at-ſtonde.
	mid balde hif beornen:		
	beorkes abiden.		
	here heo ſculde bilauen:		here he ſolde bi-leafue:
	þat heom weore alre ladeſt[1].	10	þat him were alre leoueſt.
	hafden and heore honden:		hauekes and hundes:
	& heore white halmes.		and hire brihte healmes.
	& ſwa heo ſcullen on londē:		and ſo hii ſolle in þiſſe lond:
	loſien heore freonden.		loſie hire freondeſ.
	hælden into hælle:		and fallen into helle:
	hæðene hundes.		heaþene hundes.
Arð[ur].	Arður wes i Lūdene:		Arthur was in Londēne:
	aðeleſt kingen.		
	& iherde ſuggen:		and ihorde telle:
	ſuðere ſpellen.	20	
	þat waf icumen to londe:		of Howel his maỳ:
Howel.	Howel þe ſtronge.		þat hi-come[2] was to londe.
Hamt[une].	to Hamtune forð rihtes:		to Hamtone forþriht:
	mid þritti þuſen[3] cnihten.		mid þritti þuſēd cnihteſ.

the [bold] kaiser, with much harm there. 'And if he would not flee away, and toward Alemaine proceed, and' [if] he would in *the* land with fight resist; 'with his bold people *the* barks (vessels?) abide;' here 'they [he] should leave what to 'them [him] were dearest of all, 'their heads and hands [hawks and hounds], and their 'white [bright] helms; "and so they shall in [this] land lose their friends, [and] fall into hell,—*the* heathen hounds!" Arthur was in London, 'noblest of kings,' and heard 'say [tell] 'sooth relation,' 'that Howel, the strong [of Howel, his relation, that he] was come to land, forth-right to Hamtone, with thirty thousand knights, and with

[1] leoſeſt? [2] icome he? [3] þuſend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& mid vnimete uolke:	and mid onimete folk:
þat wolleȝede þan kinge.	þat folwede him a fote.
Arður him to-ȝaines bah:	and Arthur him to-ȝeines beoh:
mid hæhȝere bliſſe.	mid mochelere bliſſe.
mid muchelere mon-weorede:	mid mochele manferde:
to-ȝæines his mæie.	to-ȝeines his mæye.
To-ſomne heo comen:	To-gadere hii comen:
bliſſe wes on hirede.	
cuſten & clupten:	an cuſte wel ilome.
& cuðliche ſpeken.	
& anan forð rihteſ:	and anon forþ rihtes:
ſomneden heore cnihteſ.	bannede hire cnihtes.
Þa weoren þer to-ſomne:	Þo weren þar to-gadere:
ſele twa ferden.	two gode ferdes.
Howel ſculde dihten:	Howel ſolde dihte:
þritti þuſend cnihten.	þritti þuſend cnihtes.
& Arður hafde an londe:	and Arthur hadde an londe:
feouwerti þuſend an honde.	fourti þouſend an hond.
Forð rihtes he[1] wenden:	[f.118b.c.1.]Forþ hii anon wende:
touward þā norð ænde.	to þan Norþ ende.
toward Lincolne:	toward Lyncolne niht and day: [Linc]olne.
þe Cheldric þe kaiſere bilai.	þar Childrich þe borh bi-lay.
Ah he heo þa ȝæte:	Ac he þe ȝet: [c.2.]
nefde noht biwūnen.	nadde noþing awonne.

innumerable folk, that followed 'the king [him on foot; and] Arthur towards him marched, with great bliss; with *a* mickle host, towards his relation. Together they came,—bliss was among *the* folk,—[and] '*they* kissed 'and embraced [well often], 'and spake familiarly'; and anon forth-right assembled their knights. Then were there together two good armies; *of whom* Howel should command thirty thousand knights, and Arthur had in land fourty thousand in hand. Forth-'right [anon] they marched, 'toward [to] the North end, toward Lincoln [night and day], 'that [where] Childric the 'kaiser [the burgh] besieged. But he the yet had 'nought

[1] heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
for þer weoren wiþ īnē:	for þare were wiþ ine:
ſeoue þuſen[1] monnen.	ſoue þuſend manne.
ohte men and wihte:	ohte men an wihte:
dæies and nihtes.	daiȝes and nihte.
Arður mid hiſ ferde:	Arthur mid his ferde:
fuſde touward burȝe.	wende touward borewe.
& Arður for-bæd his cnihtes:	Arthur for-bed his cnihtes:
dæies & nihtes.	daiȝes and nihtes.
þat heo liðen ſtille:	þat hii ȝeoden aſe ſtille:
ſwulc neo ſtelen woldē.	ſo hii ſtele wolde.
liðen ouer leoden:	
& luden[2] bilcfden.	
hornes & bemen:	
alle weoren bilaſde.	
Arður nom enne cniht:	Arthur nam one cniht:
þe wes oht mon and wiht.	þat was wis man and wiht.
& ſende hine to Lincolne:	and ſende hine into Lyncolne:
to leuē hiſ monnen.	to leoue his manne.
& he heō to ſoðe:	þat he ſolde to ſoþe:
fæide mid muðe.	ſegge mid mouþe.
þat cumen wolde Arður:	þat comen wolde Arthur:
aðeleſt kingē.	
to þere middernihte:	to þare midnihte.

[nothing] won; for there were within seven thousand men, brave men and active, by day and night. Arthur with his forces marched toward *the* burgh; and Arthur fore-ordered his knights, by day and night, that they should proceed [as] still, as *if* they would steal; 'pass over *the* country, and cease *any* noise; horns and trumpets, all should be relinquished.' Arthur took a knight, that was *a* 'brave [wise] man and active; and sent him to Lincoln to his dear men, 'and he said to them [that he should say] in sooth, with mouth, that Arthur would come, 'noblest of kings,' at the midnight, 'and with him many *a* good knight.'—"And ye within,

[1] þuſend?

[2] *The first two letters of this word are on an erasure.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& mid him moni god cniht.	
& ȝe wiꝺ inne:	And ȝe wiþ ine beoþ iwar:
þenne beoꝺ eou iwarre.	
þat þenne ȝe i-hereꝺ þene dune:	wane ȝeo þe dune ihereþ.
þat ȝe ȝæten untunen.	þat ȝe þe ȝeates vntune:
and fuſed[1] ut of burȝe:	and vt wendeþ ſwiþe.
& eoure feod[2] felleꝺ.	
& ſmiteꝺ a Cheldrichen:	and ſmiteþ on Cheldrich:
þan ſtrongen & þan richen.	þane ſtronge and þane riche.
and we heom ſculleꝺ tellen:	and we heom ſolle telle:
Bruttiſſe ſpelles.	Bruttuſſe ſpelles.
Hit waſ to þere middel-niht:	Hit was to þan midniht:
þe mone ſcæn ſcan[3] fuꝺ riht. [c. 2.]	þe mone ſon ſouþriht.
Arꝺur mid his ferde:	Arthur mid his ferde:
fuſde to burh.	wende to borewe.
þat folc wes ſwa ſtille:	þat folc was ſo ſtille:
swa heo ſtelen woldē.	ſo hii ſtele wolde.
forꝺ heo comen liꝺen:	forþ hii comen wende:
þat heo iſeiȝen Lincolne.	to Lyncolneſ ende.
Þuſ him cleopien agon:	Þo him cleopie agan:
Arꝺur þe kene mon.	Arthur þe kene man.
Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes:	Ware beo ȝeo mine cnihteſ:
mine hære-kemppen.	mine deorworþe kempes.
Iſeo ȝe þa teldes:	Nou ȝeo iſeþ þe teldes:

'then' be 'ye' ware, 'that' when ye hear the din, that ye [the] gates unfasten; and sally out 'of *the* burgh [quickly], 'and fell your foes'; and smite on Childric, the strong and the powerful; and we shall tell them British tales!"—It was at the midnight, *when* the moon shone right south, Arthur with his host marched to *the* burgh; the folk was as still as *if* they would steal; forth they proceeded until they saw 'Lincoln [to Lincolns end. 'Thus [Then] gan he call, Arthur the keen man: "Where be ye, my knights, my [dear-worthy] warriors? 'See ye [Now ye see] the tents,

[1] fuſeꝺ? [2] feond? [3] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

þer Childrich liđ i ueldef.
Colgrim & Baldulf:
mid baldere ſtrengđe.
þat Alemainiſce uolc:
þat uſ hæfeđ ihærmed.
& þat Sæxiſce uolc:
þat forȝen uſ bihateđ.
þat alle habbeođ aqualde:
þa hæhſte of mine cunne.
Conſtanz. Conſtantin. Conſtanz and Coſtantin:
Ver. & Vđer þe wes fader min.
Aurilie. and Auriliæn Ambroſie:
mineſ fader brođer.
& moni þuſend mōnen:
of ađele mine cunne.
Utē we heom to liđe:
and to grunde leggē.
and wreken wruđliche[2]:
ure cun & heore riche.
and alle ſomeđ[3] forđ riht:
nu ride æuer alc god cniht.
Arđur gon to riden:
þa ferde gon gliden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

war Childrich liþ in feldes. [f.95b.c.1.]
Colgrym and Baldolf:
mid boldere ſtrengþe.
þaxiſſe[1] folk:
þat habbeþ vs iharmid.

þat alle habbeþ acweld:
þe beſte of oure cunne.
Conſtance and Conſtantin:
and Vther þat was fader min.
and Aurelie Ambroſie:
þat was min fader broþer.
and many þouſend manne:
of gode mine cunne.
Hote to heō wende:
and to grunde legge.
and wreke worþliche oure cun:
and oure kine-riche.

Þo Arthur gan ride:
and þe ferde forþ glide.

where Childric lieth on *the* fields; Colgrim and Baldulf, with bold strength; the 'Alemainish [Saxish] folk, that us hath harmed, 'and the Saxish folk, that sorrow to us promiseth; that all hath killed, the 'highest [best] of 'my [our] kin; Constance and Constantine, and Uther, who was my father, and Aurelie Ambrosie, [who was] my fathers brother, and many thousand men of my 'noble [good] kindred? Go we out to them, and lay to *the* ground, and worthily avenge our kin and 'their realm [our kingdom]; 'and all together forth-right now ride every good knight!'" [Then] Arthur gan to ride, [and] the army 'gan [forth] to move, 'as *if* all the earth

[1] þa Saxiſſe? [2] wurđliche? [3] ſomed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

fwulc al þa eorðe:
wolde for-bærnen.
and fmiten i þa ueldef:
imōg Childriches teldes.
þæt wes þæ æreſte mon:
þe þer cleopien agon. [f.119.c.1.]
Arður þe heȝe gume:
þe wes Vðeres ſune.
kenliche & lude:
fwa bicumeð kinge.
Nu fulſte uf Marie:
goddes milde moder.
and ich ibidde hire ſune:
þat he uſ beon a fultume.
Æfne þan wordes:
turnden heo heore ordes.
ſtikeden & floȝen:
al þat heo neh comen.
And cnihtes ut of burhȝe:
buȝen heō to-ȝæines.
ȝif heo fluȝen to burȝen:
þer heo for-wurðen.
ȝif heo floȝen to þa wunde[1]:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ſmiten in þe feldes:
among Childrich his teldef.
þat was þe ereſte man:
þat þare cleopie agan.
Arthur þe heȝe gome:
þat his Vth[9] his ſone.
keneliche and loude:
ſo bi-comeþ kynges.
Nou fulſte vs Marie:
þat his godef moder.
and ich bidde hire ſone:
þat vs beo a foltome.
Efne þan worde:
hii tornde hire ordes.
ſtikede and flowe:
al þat hii neh come.
And cnihtes vt of borewe:
wende heom to-ȝenef.
ȝef hii floȝe to borewe:
þare hii hadde forewe.
ȝef hii floȝe to þare wode:

would be consumed'; and smote in the fields among 'Childrics [Childric his] tents. That was the first man, that there gan to shout,—Arthur the noble man, who 'was Uthers [is Uther his] son,—keenly and loud, as becometh 'a king [kings]: "Now aid us, Mary, 'Gods mild [that is Gods] mother! And I pray her son, that he be to us in succour!" Even with the words they turned their spears; pierced and slew all that they came nigh. And *the* knights out of *the* burgh marched against them (the enemies); if they fled to *the* burgh, there they 'were destroyed [had sorrow]; if they fled to the wood, there they [men] slaughtered them; come wher-

[1] *R.* wude.

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Bellum Arthuri.	þer hi heom forduden.		þare me heom for-dude.
	comen þer heo comen:		come ware hii come:
	æuere heo heom floȝen.		euere me hii slowe. [c. 2.]
	Nif hit a nare boc idiht:		Nis hit in none boke idiht:
	þat æuere weore æi fiht.		þat euere her were foch fiht.
	iñe þiffere Bruttene:		in þiffere Brutaine:
	þat balu weore fwa riue.		þare fleaht were fo riue.
	for volken him wes ærmeft:		
	þat æuere com to ærde.		
	þer wes muchel blod ȝute:		þar was mochel blod iȝote:
	balu wes on folke.		
	dæð þer wes rife:		deaþ þar waf riue.
	þe eorðe þer dunede.		
Childric.	Childrich þe kæifere:		CHildrich þe kaÿfer:
	hæfede ænne caftel here.		hadde one caftel her.
	a Lincolnef felde:		a Lÿncolnes felde:
	þer he læi wið innen.		þar he laÿ wiþ ine.
	þe wes neouwen iworht:		he was newene iwroht:
	& fwiðe wel biwuft.		and fwiþe wel he was idiht.
	& þere weoren mid him:		and þar weren mid him:
	Baldulf & Colgrim.		Baldolf and Colgrim.
	and ifeȝen þat heore uolc:		and ifehȝe þat hire folke:
	fæie-fih worhtē.		folle to grunde.
	& heo forð riht anon:		And hii forþ riht anon:
	on mid heore burnen, [c. 2.]		an mid hire brunief.

ever they might come, ever 'they [men] them slew. It is not in any book indited, that ever 'any [such] fight were [ere] in this Britain, 'that mischief [where slaughter] was so rife, 'for folk it was most miserable, that ever came to *the* land!' There was mickle blood-shed, 'mischief was among *the* folk'; death there was rife; 'the earth there became dun!' Childric the kaiser had a castle here, in Lincolns field, where he lay within, 'that [it] was newly wrought, and exceeding well 'guarded [it was made]; and there were with him Baldulf and Colgrim, and saw that their folk 'suffered death [fell to ground]. And they anon forth-right, on with their burnies, and

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
and fluȝen ut of caſtle:	and floȝen vt of caſtle:	
kenſcipe bidaled[1].	kenſipe bi-dealed.	
and fluȝen forð riht anan:	and floȝen forþriht anon:	
to þe wude of Calidon.	to þan wode of Calidon.	*Calid[on]*.
Heo hafden to iferen:	And hadde to i-vere:	
feouen þuſend rideren.	foue hundred rideref.	
and ho bilafden of-ſlaȝen:	and hii blefde of-slawe:	
& idon of lif-daȝen.	and idon of lif-daȝef.	
feowerti þuſude[2]:	fourti þuſend:	
ifeolled to þan grunde.	liggen on þare feldes.	
Alemainiſce mē:		
mid ærnðe[3] fordemed.		
and þa Sexiſce men:		
ibroht to þan gr^{u}den.		
Þa iſæh Arður:	Þo iſeh Arthur:	
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.	
þat Childrich wes ifloȝen:	þat Cheldrich was a-flowe:	
into Calidonie itoȝē.	and in to Calidoine itowe.	
and Colgrim & Baldulf:	and Colgrym and Baldolf:	
mid him iboȝen weoren.	mid him þare were.	
into þā^{r} haȝe wude:		
in to þan hæȝe holme.		
& Arður bæh after:	Arthur wende after:	
mid ſixti þuſend cnihten.	mid ſixti þuſend cnihteſ.	

fled out of *the* castle, of courage bereft; and fled forth-right anon to the wood of Calidon. They [And] had for companions seven thousand riders; and they left forty thousand slain, and deprived of life-day, felled 'to the ground [lying on the fields]; 'Alemainish men, with mischief destroyed, and the Saxish men, brought to the ground!' Then saw Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, that Childric was flown, [and] into Calidon gone, and Colgrim and Baldulf with him were 'gone [there,] 'into the high wood, into the high holm. And' Arthur pursued after with sixty thousand

[1] bidaleð *pr. m.* [2] þuſunde? [3] ærmðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Bruttene leoden :/
þene wude al bileien.
and an are halfe hine feolden :/
fulle feoue milen.
treo uppen oðer
treoliche faſte.
an oðer halue he hine bilai :/
mid hif leod-ferde.
þreo daȝes & þreo niht :/
þ wes heom muchel pliht.
Colg[rim]. þa iſæh Colgrī :/
alſe he læi þer in.
þat þer wes buten mete :/
ſcarp hunger & hete.
ne heō no heore horſen :/
hælp nefde nenne.
And þuf cleopede Colgrim :/ [f.119b c.1.]
to þan kaiſere.
Sæie me lauerd Childric :/
soðere worden.
for whulchef cunnes þinge :/
ligge we þuf here.
whi nulle we ut faren :/
& bonnien ure ferden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Bruttene leode :/
þane wode al bi-leie.
in one half hii hine fulde :/
folle ſoue mẏle.
treo vppe treo :/
kenliche ſwiþe.
an oþer half hine bi-leẏe :/
mid gode his folke.
þreo daiȝes and þreo niht :/
þat was to heom god riht. [f.96. c.1.]
þo ifeh Colgrim :/
afe[1] laẏ þar in.
þat þare was boute mete :/
ſcarp honger and hate.
ne hii ne hire hors :/
help nadde nanne.
þo ſaide Colgrẏm :/
to þan caẏſere Cheldrich.
Sai me louerd Childrich :/
foþere wordeſ.
for woche cunnes þinge :/
ligge we þus her ine.
wi nole we vt fare :/
and bannẏ oure ferde.

knights of British people; the wood *he* all surrounded; 'and' on one side [they] it felled, full seven miles, '*one* tree upon *an*other, truly fast [tree upon tree, very keenly]; on *the* other side 'he' surrounded it with his 'army [good folk], three days and three nights;—that was to them 'mickle harm [right good]. Then saw Colgrim, as he lay therein, that there was without meat sharp hunger, and strife (?); nor they nor their horses help had any. 'And thus called [Then said] Colgrim to the kaiser [Childric]: "Say me, lord Childric, sooth words; for what kind of thing lie we thus here[in]? Why should we not go out, and assemble our host, and begin

[1] aſe he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and biginnen[1] fehtes :/	and bi-ginne fihtef :/
wiδ Arδur & wiδ his cnihtes.	wiþ Arthur and his cnihtef.
for betere uf if on londe :/	for betere vs his on londe :/
mid mōfcipe to liggen.	manfipliche ligge.
þene we þus here :/	þane we þus here :/
for hungere to-wurδen.	mid honger forworþi.
ifwenched[2] uf fære :/	
folke to fcare.	
Oδer we fendeδ wiδ and wiδ :/	Oþer we fende him wiþ :/
and ȝeornen Arδures griδ.	and ȝeorne Arthur his griþ.
and bidden þuf hif milce :/	and bidde him milce :/
& ȝifles him bitechen.	and ȝifles bi-take.
& wurchē freondfcipe :/	
wiδ þan freo kīge.	
Þif iherde Childric :/	Þis ihorde Cheldrich :/
þer he læi wiδ inne dic.	þar he lai wiþ ine dich.
and he andfwarede :/	and anfwerede :/
wiδ ærmliche ftefene.	mid cwickere ftemne.
ȝif hit wulle Baldulf :/	ȝef hit wole Baldolf :/
þe if þin aȝe broδer.	þat his þin owe broþer.
and ma of uſ̄ iferen :/	and mo of oure feref :/
þe mid uf fundē here.	þat mid vs beoþ here.
þat we bidden Ardures[3] griδ :/	þat we bidde Arthures griþ :/

fight with Arthur and 'with' his knights? For better *it* is for us on land 'with honor [honorably] to lie, than *that* we thus here perish 'for [with] hunger; '*it* grieveth us sore, to *the* destruction of *the* folk.' Either send we 'again and again [to him], and yearn 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, and pray 'thus his [him] mercy, and hostages deliver him, 'and make friendship with the free king." Childric heard this, where he lay within *the* dyke, and 'he' answered with 'sorrowful [quick] voice: "If Baldulf it will, who is thine own brother, and more of our comrades, who with us are here, that we pray Arthurs peace, and make amity with him, after your

[1] bigunnen *pr. m.* [2] ifwencheδ? [3] Arδures?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& ſahtneſſe him wurchen wiȝ.
after æuwer wille:
dō ich hit wulle.
For Arȝur if swiȝe hæh mon:
ihalden on leoden.
leof alle hiſ monnen:
& of kine-wurȝe cunne.
al of kingen icume:
he wes Vȝeres ſune.
& of[2] hit ilimpeȝ:
a ueole cunne þeoden.
þer gode cnihtes:
cumeȝ to ſturne fihte. [c. 2.]
þat heo æreſt biȝiteȝ:
after heo hit leoſeȝ.
& al ſwa uſ to-ȝere:
if ilimpen here.
& æft uſ bet ilīppeȝ:
ȝif we motē liuien.
Sone forȝ rihtes:
andſwareden þa cnihtes.
Alle uſ biluuied[3] þiſne ræd:
for þu hafeſt wel iſæid.
Heo nomen twælf cnihtef:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and fæhtneſſe him werche wiþ.
after oure[1] wille:
don ich hit wolle.
For Arthur his wel heh man:
hi-holde in londe.
leof alle his manne:
and of kineworþe cunne.
al of kingef icome:
he was Vther his ſone.
And ofte hit bi-falleþ:
in manycunne leode. [c. 2.]
þar þe gode cnihtes:
comeþ to ſtrange fihtes.
þat þaye þat her bi-ȝeteþ:
eft hii leoſeþ.
and al ſo ous to-ȝere:
his ifalle here.

Sone forþrihtes:
answerede alle þe cnihtes.
Alle we louieþ þane read:
for þou haueſt wiſliche i-ſeid.
Hii nemen twalf cnihtes:

will I will do it. For Arthur is esteemed 'very [well] noble man in land; dear to all his men, and of royal kindred, all come of kings; he was 'Uthers [Uther his] son. And oft it befalleth, in many kind of land, where [the] good knights come to 'stern [strong] fight, that they [who] first gain, 'after*wards* [eft] they 'it' lose. And thus to us now is befallen here, 'and eft to us better will happen, if we may live.'" Soon forth-right answered [all] the knights: "We all praise 'this [the] counsel, for thou hast 'well [wisely] said!" They took twelve knights, and sent forth-right, where

[1] ȝoure? [2] oft? [3] biluuieȝ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ſenden forð rihtes.	and ſende forþrihtes.
þer he wes on telde:	þar Arthur was in telde:
bi þaſ wudes ende.	bi þan wodeſ hende.
þe an cleopeden anan:	and on cleopie agan:
mid quickere ſtefne.	loudere ſtemne.
Lauerd Arður þi grið:	Louerd Arthur þin griþ:
we wolden ſpeken þe wið.	we wollen ſpeke þe wiþ.
hider þe kaiſere uſ ſẽt:	hider þe kaiſer vs ſent:
Childric ihaten.	þat Cheldrich his ihote.
& Colgrim & Baldulf:	Colgrym and Baldolf:
beien to-ſomẽ.	beyne to-gadere.
Nu and æuere mare:	Hii biddeþ þin ore:
heo bidded[1] þine ære.	nou and euere more.
þine men heo wulleð bicumen:	þine men hii wolleþ bi-come:
& þine mõſcipe hæȝen.	and treouþe to þe holde.
& heo wulleð ȝiuẽ þe:	
ȝifles inowe.	
& halden þe for lauerð[2]:	
ſwa þe beoð alre leofeſt.	
ȝif heo moten liðe:	ȝef hii mo[3] libbe:
heonene mid liue.	and hire limes habbe.
into heor leoden:	and hinene wende:
& lað-ſpæl bringen.	in to hire londe.
For her we habbeod[4] ifunden:	For her we habbeþ i-funde:

'he [Arthur] was in tent, by the woods end; [and] 'the' one 'called anon [began to call] with 'quick [loud] voice: "Lord Arthur, thy peace! We would speak with thee; hither the kaiser sent us, [who is] named Childric, 'and' Colgrim and Baldulf, both together. Now and evermore they pray thy mercy; thy men they will become, and 'thy honor advance, and they will give to thee hostages enow, and hold thee for lord, as to thee shall be liefest of all, if they may depart hence with life, [troth to thee hold, if they may live, and have their limbs, and hence depart,] into their land;

[1] biddeð? [2] lauerd? [3] mowe? [4] habbeoð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
feole cunne forȝen.	fale cunnef forewe.
at Lincolne bilæued:	at Lyncolnes feldes:
leofe ure mæies.	bi-leaued oure freondes.
fixti þufend monnen:	sixti þoufend manne:
þa þer beoð of-flæȝene.	þaſ liggeþ of-flawe.
And ȝif hit þe weore:	And ȝef hit were þin wille:
wille an heorte. [f. 120. c. 1.]	
þat we moſten ouer sæ:	þat we moſt awaẏ wende.
winden mid feile.	
nulle we nauere mare:	nolde we neuere more:
æft cumen here.	eft comen here.
for her we habbeod[1] for-lorē:	for he[2] we habbeþ for-lore:
leoue ure mæies.	oure leafue meẏef.
swa longe fwa bid[3] æuere:	so lange fo beoþ euere:
her ne cume we næuerr.	her ne come we neuere.
Arður. þa loh Arður:	þo loh Arthur: [f. 96b. c. 1.]
ludere ſtefene.	loudere ſtemne.
Iþonked wurðe drihtene:	Ich þonki mine drihte:
þe alle domef walðeð.	þat alle domef weldeþ.
þat Childric þe ſtronge:	þat Childric þe ſtronge:
if fad of mine londe.	hif fad of mine londe.
Mi lōd he hafeð to-dæled:	Mi lond he haueþ idealed:
al hif duȝeðe-cnihtes.	amang his freo cnihtes.
me feoluē he þohte:	mi feolue he þohte:

'and bring evil tidings.' For here we have found sorrows of many kind; at 'Lincoln [Lincolns fields] left our 'dear relatives [friends]; sixty thousand men, 'that' there 'are [lie] slain. And if it were 'to thee will in heart [thy will], that we might 'pass over sea with sail [go away], we would nevermore eft come here; for here we have lost our dear relatives. So long as is ever, here come we *back* never!" Then laughed Arthur, with loud voice:—"'Thanked be the [I thank my] Lord, that all dooms wieldeth, that Childric the strong is tired of my land! My land he hath divided

[1] habbeoN? [2] *R.* her. [3] biŏ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
driuen ut of mire leoden.	driue vt of mine cuþþe.
halden me for hæne:	
& habben mine riche.	
& mi cun al for-uaren:	
mi uolc al fordemed[1].	
Ah of hī[2] biȝ iwurðen:	Ac of him hit his iworþe:
ſwa biȝ of þan voxe.	ſo hiſ of þā foxe.
þeñe he biȝ baldeſt:	wane he his boldeſt:
uſen an þan walde.	ouenan þe wolde.
& hafeȝ hif fulle ploȝe:	and haueþ hif folle pleaẏ:
& fuȝeles inoȝe.	and foweles inowe.
for wildſcipe climbiȝ:	for wildſipe clembeþ:
and cluden iſeched[3].	and cludef he ſecheþ.
i þan wilderne:	in þan wilde cleues:
holȝes him wurcheȝ.	holes he ſecheþ[4].
farē wha ſwa auere fare:	fare wo ſe þar fare:
naueȝ he næuere næñe kare.	naueþ neuere nanne care.
he weneȝ to beon of duȝeðe:	he weneþ þat he be þanne:
baldeſt alre deoren.	boldeſt alre deore.
þeñe[5] ſiȝeȝ him to:	Ac wane ſieþ him to:
ſegges vnder beorȝen.	hontef onder borewe.
mid hornen mid hundē:	mid hornes mid hundes:

'to all [among] his [free] knights; myself he thought to drive out of my country; 'hold me for base, and have my realm, and my kin all put to death, my folk all destroy.' But of him [it] is happened, as *it* is of the fox, when he is boldest over the weald, and hath his full play, and fowls enow; for wildness *he* climbeth, and rocks [he] seeketh; in the 'wilderness [wild cliffs] holes 'to him [he] worketh. Fare 'whosoever [whoso there] shall fare, he hath never any care; he weeneth 'to be of power [that he is then] *the* boldest of all animals. [But] when come to him *the* 'men [hunters] under *the* hills, with horns, with hounds, with loud cries; *the*

[1] fordemen?
[2] *At first written* hit.
[3] iſecheð?
[4] wircheþ?
[5] Ah þēne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid haȝere ſtefenėn. [c. 2.]	mid heȝere ſtemne.
hunten þar talieð:	hontef þar talieþ:
hundes þer galieð.	houndes þar galieþ.
þene vox driueð:	þane fox driueþ:
ȝeond dalef & ȝeond dunes.	ȝeond douneſ and dales.
he ulih to þā holme:	þanne flicþ he to þan cleoue:
& hiſ hol[1] iſecheð.	and his hol ſecheþ.
i þā uirſte ænde:	in to þan forreſt ende:
i þan holle wendeð.	of þan hole he wendeþ.
þenne if þe balde uox:	þanne his þe bolde fox:
bliſſen al bideled.	bliſſe al bi-dealed.
& mon him to-delueð:	and man him to-dealueþ:
on ælchere heluen.	in euereche halue.
þēne beoð þer forcuðeſt:	þanne his forcouþiſt:
deoren alre prutteſt.	deor alre proteſt.
Swa wes Childriche:	So was Childriche:
þan ſtrongen & þan riche.	þe ſtrange and þe riche.
he þohten al mi kinelōd:	he þohte al min kinelond: [c. 2.]
ſentten[2] an hiſ aȝere hond.	ſette on his owe hond.
ah nu ich habbe hine idriuen:	ac nou ich habbe hine idriue:
to þan bare dæðe.	to þan bare deaþe.
whæðer ſwa ich wulle don:	waþer so ich wolle don:
oðer flæn oðer ahon.	oþer flen oþer an-hon.
Nu ich wulle ȝifen hī grið:	Nou ich wolle ȝefue him griþ:

hunters there hollow, *the* hounds there give tongue, *they* drive the fox over 'dales and over downs [downs and dales, then] he fleeth to the 'holm [cliff], and seeketh his hole; 'in [into] the furthest end 'in [of] the hole [he] goeth; then is the bold fox of bliss all deprived, and men dig to him on 'each [every] side; then is 'there' most wretched *the* proudest of all animals! So was *it with* Childric, the strong and the rich; he thought all my kingdom to set in his own hand; but now I have driven him to the bare death, whether so (whatsoever) I will do, either slay or hang. Now will

[1] holt *pr. m., but* t *erased.*

[2] *R.* ſetten.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& leten hine me ſpecken wiþ.
nulle ich hine flæ no ahon:
ah hiſ bode ich wulle fō.
ȝifles ich wulle habbē:
of hæxten his monnen.
horſ & heore wepnen:
ær heo heōne wenden.
and ſwa heo ſcullen wræcchen:
to heoren ſcipen liðen.
ſæilien ouer ſæ:
to ſele heore londe.
& þer wirdliche[1]:
wunien on riche.
and tellen tidende:
of Arðure kīnge.
hu ich heom habbe ifreoied:
for mineſ fader ſaule.
& for mine freo-dome:
ifrouered þa wræcchen.
Her weſ Arður þe king:
aðelen bidæled.
nes þer nan ſwa reh3 mon:
þe him durſte ræden.
þet him of-þuhte ſære:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii..

and lete hine ſpeke me wiþ.
nolle ich hine flean ne an-hon:
al his bede ich wolle don.
ich wolle habbe ȝifles:
of þe hehteſt of his manne.
horſ and hire wepne:
her hii wende ine.
so hii solle wrecchef:
to hire ſipes wende.
sayli ouer ſéé:
to hire owe londe.
and þar worþlice:
wonie on hire riche.
and tellen tydinde:
of Arthur þan kinge.
hou ich hā ifroured:
for mine fader ſaule.
and for mine fredome: [f.120b. c.1.]
ifroured þe wrecches.
Her waſ Arthur þe king:
aþele bi-dealed.
nas þar non ſo reh mon:
þat him dorſte reade.
þat him of-þohte:

I give him peace, and let him speak with me; I will not him slay, nor hang, 'but [all] his prayer I will 'receive [do]. Hostages I will have of [the] highest of his men; their horses and weapons, ere they hence depart; 'and' so they shall *as* wretches go to their ships; sail over sea to their 'good [own] land, and there worthily dwell in [their] realm, and tell tidings of Arthur [the] king, how I them 'have freed [succoured], for my fathers soul, and for my freedom solaced the wretches." Here*by* was Arthur the king of honor deprived; was there no man so bold that durst him advise;—

[1] wirðliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ſone þer after.	ſone þar after.
[*Child*]*ric.* Childric cō of comela:	Cheldrich com of comelan:
to Arðure þan kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
& he hiſ mon þer bi-com:	and he his man þar bi-com:
mid hiſ cnihten alle.	and his cnihtes alle.
Feouwer and twenti ȝifles:	Four and twēti hoſtageſ:
Childric þer bitæhte.	Childrich þar bi-tahte.
alle heo weoren icorenę:	alle hii weren i-core:
and hæhȝe men iborenne.	and heȝe men i-bore.
heo bi-tahten heore horſ:	hii bi-tahte hire hors:
and heore burnen.	and al hire wepne.
ſcaftes & ſceldes:	ſcaftes and feldes:
& longe heore ſweordes.	and al hire ſweordeſ.
al heo bi-læfden:	al hii bi-lefden: [f.97.c.1.]
þat heo þer hæfden.	þat hii þar hadden.
Forð heo gunnen ſiȝen:	Forþ hii gonne wende:
þat heo to ſæ comen.	þat hii to ſéé come.
þer heore ſcipen gode:	þar hire ſipes gode:
bi þere ſæ ſtoden.	bi þare [ſéé] ſtode.
Wind ſtod on wille:	
weder ſwiðe murie.	
he[1] ſcufen from þan ſtronde:	and hi hii[2] ſouen fram þan londe:
ſcipen grete & longe.	hire ſipes ſtronge.

that repented him 'sore,' soon thereafter! Childric came from covert (?) to Arthur the king; and he there became his man, 'with [and] all his knights. Four and twenty hostages Childric there delivered; all they were chosen, and noble men born; they delivered their horses, and 'their burnies [all their weapons], spears and shields, and 'their long [all their] swords; all they relinquished that they there had. Forth they gan to march until they came to *the* sea, where their good ships by the sea stood. '*The* wind stood at will, *the* weather most favorable,' [and] they shoved from the 'strand [land their] ships 'great and long [strong]; 'the land they all left,'

[1] heo?

[2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat lond heo al bilæfden:		
& liðen after vðen.		and wende forþ so longe:
þat nǣne siht of londe:		þat no lond hii ne sehȝe.
iseō heo ne mahten.		
Þat water wes stille:		Þat weder was stille:
after heore iwille.		after hire wille.
heo lettē to-somne:		and gliden to-gaderes:
sæiles gliden.		and wordes speke.
bord wið borden:		
beornes þer spileden.	10	
sæiden þat heo wolden:	[c. 2.]	and saide þat hii wolde:
eft to þiffen londe.		eft to þiffe londe.
& wreken wurdliche[1]:		
heore wine-mæies.		
& westen Arðures lond:		and westen Arthur lond:
& leoden aquellen.		and hif folk cwelle.
and castles biwinnen:		
& wilgomē wurchen.		
Swa heo liðen after sæ:		
efne al swa longe.	20	
þat heo commen bitwiȝe:		
Ænglelonde & Normandie.		
heo wenden heore lofes:		Hii wende hire loues:
& liðen toward lōde.		and tornde to þiffe londe.

and 'floated with the waves [proceeded forth so long], that no 'sight of' land they 'might see [saw]. The 'water [weather] was still, after their will; 'they let together *their* sails glide, board against board, *the* men there discoursed [and glided together, and words spake; and] said that they would *return* eft to this land, 'and avenge worthily their relatives,' and waste Arthurs land, and kill [his] folk, 'and win *the* castles, and work *their* pleasure. So they voyaged on *the* sea even so long, that they came between England and Normandy'; they veered their luffs, and 'came toward [turned

[1] wurðliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat heo comen ful iwiſ:	þat hii come foliwis:
to Derte-muðe at Totteneis.	to Dertemuþ at Totenas.
mid muchelere bliſſe:	
heo buȝen to þan londe.	
Sone ſwa heo a lond comen:	Sone ſo hii a lond come:
þat folc heo aſloȝen.	þat folk hii a-ſlowe.
þa cheorles heo uloȝen:	þe cherles hii hilden:
þa tiledē þa eorðen.	þat telede þar erþe.
heo hengen þa cnihteſ:	þe cnihteſ hii an-hong:
þa biwuſten þa londeſ.	þat were in þan londe.
alle þa gode wiueſ:	alle þe gode wifes:
heo ſtikeden mid cnifes.	hii ſtekede mid cnifues.
alle þa maidene:	alle þe maidene:
heo mid morðe aqualden.	mid morþre hii acwelde.
and þaie ilærede men:	and alle þe learedemen:
heo læiden on gledē.	hii caste in fure.
Alle þa heorede-cnauen:	
mid clibben heo a-qualden.	
heo velledden þa caſtles:	
þat lond heo a-wæſten.	
þa chirechen heo for-barnden:	þe cheorcheſ hii for-barnde:
baluw wes on folke.	þe chaſtles hii afulde.
þa ſukende children:	
heo adrēten inne wateren.	
þat orf þat heo nomen:	þat horf þat hii nome:

to this] land, *so* that they came full surely to Dartmouth at Totnes; 'with much bliss they approached to the land.' So soon *as* they came on land, the folk they slew; the churls they drove off, that tilled 'the' earth [there]; the knights they hung, that 'defended [were in] the land; all the good wives they sticked with knives; all the maidens they killed with murder; and [all] the learned men (clergy) they laid on embers [cast in *the* fire]. 'All the domestics (*or* baser sort) they killed with clubs; they felled the castles, the land they ravaged'; the churches they consumed, [the castles they felled],—'grief was among *the* folk!—the sucking children they drowned in *the* water.'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
al heo flo3en.	al hii of-flowe.
to heore inne ladden:	to hire ine hii hit ladde:
and fudē and bradden. [f.121.c.1.]	and fude hit and bradde.
al heo hit nom̄:	al hii hit neme:
þat heo neh comen.	þat hii neh come.
Alle dæi heo fungen:	Al day hii fonge:
of Ardure[1] þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge. [c.2.]
and fæiden þat heo haueden:	and faide þat hii hadde:
hamef biwunnen.	homes bi-wonne.
þæ fcolden heom i-halden:	woche hii wolde holde:
in heore onwalden.	
& þer heo woldē wunien:	
wintres & fumeref.	wyntref and fomeres.
And 3if Arður weoren fwa kene:	and 3ef Arthur were fo kene:
þat he cumen wolde.	þat he comen wolde.
to fihten wiđ Childrichen:	to fihte wiþ Childrich:
þan ftrongen & þan richen.	þan ftrong and þe rich.
heo wolden of hif rugge:	We wolleþ of his rugge:
makien ane brugge.	makien one brugge.
and nimen þa ban alle:	and nime þe bones alle:
of aðele þan kinge.	
and teien heom to-gadere:	and ti3e heom to-gadere:
mid guldene te3en.	
and leggen i þare halle-dure:	and legge heom in þare halle-dore:

The cattle that they took, all they slaughtered; to their inns [they] carried [it], and boiled [it] and roasted; all they it took, that they came nigh. All day they sung of Arthur the king, and said that they had won homes, 'that [which] they 'should [would] hold 'in their power; and there they would dwell' winter and summer. And if Arthur were so keen, that he would come to fight with Childric, the strong and the rich, 'they would ["We will] of his back make a bridge, and take all the bones 'of the noble king,' and tie them together 'with golden ties,' and lay [them] in the hall

[1] *R.* Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þer æch mon ſculde uorð faren.	þar ęch man ſal forþ fare.
to wurðſcipe Chilche[1] ⁊	
þan ſtrongen & þan riche.	
þiſ wes al heore gome ⁊	þis was al hire game ⁊
for Arðures kingeſ ſceome.	for Arthur þe kingeſ ſame.
ah al hit iwraðˢ[2] on oðer ⁊	ac al hit iwarþ oþer ⁊
ſone þer after.	ſone þar after.
heore ȝelp & heore gōe ⁊	heore ȝeolp and hire game ⁊
ilomp heom seoluen to ſcāe.	ful ȝam ſeolue to gramc.
& ſwa deð wel iwære ⁊	so doþ wel iware ⁊
þe mon þe ſwa ibereð.	þe man þat vuel wircheþ.
Childric. Childric þe kaiſere biwon ⁊	CHildrich al a-won ⁊
al þat he lokede on.	þat he mid ehȝene lokede on.
he nom Sumerſete ⁊	he nam Somerte[3] ⁊
& he nom Dorſete.	he nam Dorſete.
and al[4] Deuene-ſcire ⁊	and in Deueniſſire ⁊
þat volc al for-ferde.	þat folk he for-ferde.
and he Wiltun-ſcire ⁊	
mid wiðere igrætte. [c.2.]	
he nom alle þa londes ⁊	he nam alle þe londes ⁊
in to þære ſæ ſtrōde.	to þare ſéé ſtrondes.
þa æt þan laſte ⁊	þo at þan laſte ⁊
þa lette heð blawē.	

door, where each man 'should [shall] go forth, 'to *the* worship of Childric, the strong and the rich!' This was all their game, for Arthur [the] kings shame; but all it happened 'in' other *wise*, soon thereafter; their boast and their game befell to themselves to 'shame [grief]; 'and' so doth well everywhere the man that 'so acteth [worketh evil]. Childric 'the kaiser' won all that he looked on [with eyes]; he took Somerset, 'and' he took Dorset, and in Devonshire the folk 'all [he] destroyed, 'and Wiltshire with hostility he greeted'; he took all the lands 'un'to the sea strand. Then at the last, 'then caused he horns and trumpets to be blown, and' his host 'to be as-

[1] Childriche. [2] iwarð? [3] Somerſete? [4] an? i?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
hornes & bemen:	
& bonniē hiſ ferden.	he bannede his ferde.
& forð he wolde buȝen:	and ſaide þat he wolde:
& Baðen al biliggen.	Baþe bi-ligge.
and æc Briſtouwe:	and eke Bruſtouwe:
abuten birouwen.	a-boute bi-rowe.
þiſ waſ heore ibeot:	þis was hire broc:
ær heo to Baðe comen.	are hii to Baþe come.
To Baðe com þe kæiſere:	þider wende þe cayſer:
& bilæi þene caſtel þere.	and bi-lay Baþe þer.
& þa men wið innen:	and þe men wiþ ine: [f. 97b, c. 1.]
ohtliche agunnen.	ahlice a-gonne.
ſtepen uppen ſtanene wal:	wenden vppe ſton wal:
wel iwepned ouer al.	wel iwepnid oueral.
& wereden þa riche:	and werede þe riche:
wið þan ſtronge Childriche.	wiþ þan ſtrong Childriche.
þer lai þe kaiſere:	
& Colgrim hiſ iuere.	
& Baldulf hiſ broðer:	
& moni an oðer.	
Arður wes bi norðe:	Arthur was bi Norþe:
and noht her of nuſte.	and noht her of nuſte.
ferde ȝeōd al Scotlond:	he wende oueral Scotlond:
& ſette hit an hiſ aȝere hond.	and ſette hit in his owe hond.
Orcaneie & Galeweie:	Man and Organeye:

sembled, and forth he would march, and [he assembled, and said that he would] Bath 'all' besiege, and eke Bristol about berow. This was their threat, ere they to Bath came. 'To Bath came [Thither went] the kaiser, and belay 'the castle [Bath] there; and the men within bravely began; *they* mounted upon *the* stone walls, well weaponed over all, and defended the place against Childric the strong. 'There lay the kaiser, and Colgrim his companion, and Baldulf his brother, and many another.' Arthur was by *the* North, and knew nought hereof; [he] proceeded over all Scotland, and set it in his own hand; 'Orkney and Galloway, Man and Moray [Man and

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Man & Murene[1].	Moraÿne and Galeweÿe.
and alle þa londes ⁊	
þe þer to læien.	
Arður hit wende ⁊	Arthur hit wende ⁊
to iwiflichē þinge.	þat hit foþ were.
þat Childric iliðen[2] weoren[3] ⁊	þat Childrich were ichord ⁊
to hiſ aȝene londe.	to his owe londe.
and þat he nauere mære ⁊	and þat he neuere more ⁊
nolde cumen here.	nolde comen here.
þa comen þa tidende ⁊	þo comen þe tidÿnge ⁊
to Arthure kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
þat Childric þa kæiſere ⁊	þat Cheldrich þe caÿſer ⁊
icumen wes to londen[4].	icome waſ to londe.
and i þan ſuð ende ⁊ [f. 121ᵇ. c. 1.]	in þan ſuþ eande ⁊
sorȝen þer worhten.	harmeſ he wrohte.
[Ar]ður. þa Arður ſeide ⁊	þo ſaide Arthur ⁊
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
Wala wa walawa ⁊	Wolawo ⁊
þat ich ſparede mine iuą.	þat ich ſparede mine fo.
þat ich nauede on holte ⁊	þat ich nadde on holte ⁊
mid hūgere hine adefed[5].	mid honger hine a-cwelled.
oðer mid ſweorde ⁊	oþer mid ſweorde ⁊

Orkney, Moray and Galloway], 'and all the lands that lay thereto.' Arthur it weened 'to be certain thing [that it were sooth], that Childric had departed to his own land, and that he never more would come here. When the tidings came to Arthur [the] king, that Childric the kaiser was come to land, 'and' in the South end 'sorrow there [harms he] wrought, then said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Alas! Alas! that I spared my foe! that I had not with hunger destroyed him in *the* wood, or with

[1] *The last two letters are sup. ras.*
[2] *The second letter of this word is sup. ras.*
[3] *The final* n *has been struck out by a second hand.*
[4] Lunden, *pr. m.*
[5] adrefed?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

al hine to-ſwugen[1].
Nu he me ȝilt mede:
for mire god dede.
ah ſwa me hælpen drihten:
þæ ſcop þæſ dæies lihten.
þer fore he ſcal ibiden:
bittereſt alre baluwen.
harde gomenef:
hiſ bone ich wulle iwurðen.
Colgim & Baldulf:
beiene ich wulle aquellen.
& al heore duȝeðe:
dæð ſcal iðolien.
ȝif hit wule ivnnen:
waldende hæfnen.
ich wulle wurðliche wreken:
alle his wiðer deden.
ȝif me mot ilaſten:
þat lif a mire breoſten.
& hit wulle me iunne:
þat i-ſcop mone & ſunne.
ne ſcal nauere Childric:
æft me bi-charren.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

al hine to-ſwongé.
Nou he me ȝelt mede:
for mine god hede[2].
al[3] ſo me helpe drihte:
þat ſop þis daiȝef lihte.
he hit ſal a-bugge:
ȝef ich mote libbe.

and Colgrim and Baldolf:
beyne ich wolle acwelle.
and alle hire cnihtes:
deaþ ſolle þolie.
ȝef hit wole drihte:
þat alle þinges dihteþ.
ich [wolle] worþliche a-wreke:
al his wiþere deades.
ȝef hit mot i-laſte: [c. 2.]
þat lif in mine breoſte.

ne ſal neuere Cheldrich:
eft me bi-chorre.

[Col]grim.

sword cut him all to pieces! Now he yields to me meed for my good deeds. But so help me *the* Lord, who formed 'the [this] daylight, he shall 'therefore abide bitterest of all bales,—hard games;—his bane I will be [pay for it, if I may live]! [And] Colgrim and Baldulf both I will kill, and all their 'people [knights] shall suffer death. If *the* 'Ruler of Heaven [Lord] will 'grant' it, [who ruleth all things] I will worthily avenge all his hostile deeds; if the life in my breast [it] may last 'to me, and *the Power* that formed moon and sun will grant it to me,' never shall Childric eft deceive me!" Now called Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings:—

[1] to-ſwungen?
[2] dede?
[3] ac?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Nu cleopede Arður :/
aðeleſt kingen.
Whar beo ȝe mine cnihtes :/
ohte men & wiðte.
to horſe to horſe :/
he[1] haleðes gode.
and we ſculled[2] buȝen :/
touward Baðe ſwiðe.
Leteð uþ fuſen :/
heȝe forkē.
& bringeð her þa ȝæſles :/
biforē ure cnihtes. [c.2.]
and heo ſcullen hongien :/
on hæȝe treowen.
þer he lette fordon :/
feouwer & tweti[3] childerren.
Alemainiſce mē :/
of ſwide[4] heȝe cunnen.
þa comē tidende :/
to Arðure þan kinge.
þat ſeoc wes Howel hif mæi :/
þer fore he wes ſari.
i Clud ligginde :/
& þer he hine bilæfde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Nou cleopede Arthur :/
boldeſt alre kinge.
Ware be ȝe mine cnihteſ :/
ohte men and wihte.
nou we mote wende :/
toward Baþes eande.
leteþ hongy þe ȝifles :/
þat hii ous bi-toke.
þar he lette for-don :/
four and twenti children.
Alamainiſſe :/
of ſwiþe heȝe cunne.
þo com tydinge :/
to Arthur þan kinge.
þat ſeak was Howel his may :/
þar vore he waſ fori.
faſte liggende :/
and ſo he hine bi-lefde.

" Where be ye, my knights, brave men and active! 'To horse, to horse, good warriors'; 'and we shall [now we must] march toward 'Bath speedily [Baths end]! Let 'high gallows be up raised, and bring here the hostages before our knights, and they shall hang on high trees [the hostages be hung, that they delivered to us]!" There he caused to be destroyed four and twenty children, Alemainish 'men' of very noble race. Then came tidings to Arthur the king, that Howel, his relation, was sick,—therefore he was sorry,—lying 'in Clud [fast]; and 'there [so] he left him.

[1] *Probably superfluous.*
[2] ſculleð ?
[3] *R.* twenti.
[4] ſwiðe ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
Hiȝenliche ſwiðe:	and he an hiȝenge:	
forð he·gon liðe.	toward Baþe wende.	
þat he bihalues Bade[1]:	þo he nehlehte:	
beh to ane ueſde.	bi-haluef þan toune.	
þer he alihte:		
& hif cnihtes alle.	he hehte alle his cnihtes:	
and on mid heore burnen:	an mid hire bruniȩs.	
beornef ſturne.		
& he a fif dæle:	and he a fif deale:	
dælde hif ferde[2].	to-deale[3] to-dealde hif ferde.	
þa he hafde al iſet:		
and al hit iſemed.		
þa dude he on hif burne:	And he warp on him:	
ibroide of ſtele.	one brunie of ſtele.	
þe makede on aluiſc ſmið:	þat makede an haluis ſmiþ:	
mid aðelen hif crafte.	mid his wiſe crafte.	
he wes ihatē Wẏgar:	he was i-hote Wigar:	*Wygar.*
þe witeȝe wurhte.	þe wittẏe wrohte.	
His ſconken he helede:	His legges he helede:	
mid hoſē of ſtele.	mid hoſen of ſtele.	
Calibeorne hif ſweorð[4]:	Caliburne his ſweord:	*Caliburne.*
he ſweinde bi hif ſide.	he ſweinde bi his ſide.	
hit wes iworht in Aualun:	hit was i-wroht in Auẏlun:	

'Forth he gan to push exceeding hastily, until he beside Bath approached to a plain; there he alighted, and all his knights; and [and he in haste toward Bath went. When he approached beside the town, he ordered all his knights] on with their burnies '*the* stern men,' and he in five divisions separated his army. 'When he had set (appointed) all, and it all beseemed, then' 'he put on his burny, fashioned of steel [And he threw on him a burny of steel], that an elvish smith made, with his 'excellent [wise] craft; he was named Wygar, the witty wright. His 'shanks [legs] he covered with hose of steel. Caliburn, his sword, he hung by his side; it

[1] Baðe?
[2] feorde *pr. m. but* o *expuncted.*
[3] *Superfluous.*
[4] ſweord?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
	miþ[1] wiȝele-fulle craften.	mid witfolle crafte.
	Halm he ſet on hafde:	One helm he ſette on his heued:
	hæh of ſtele.	heȝe of ſtele.
	þer ō wes moni ȝim-ſton:	þar an was mani ȝemſton: [f. 98. c. 1.]
	al mid golde bi-gon.	al mid golde bi-gon.
	he wes Vderes[2]:	
	þas aðelen kinges.	
Goſwhit.	he wes ihaten Goſwhit:	he waſ ihote Goſwiht:
	ælchen oðere vnilic.	alle oþer onilich.
	He heng an his ſweore: [f. 122. c. 1.]	He heng on his ſwere:
	ænne ſceld deore.	one ſceald deore.
	hiſ nome wes on Bruttiſc:	his name was in Bruttiſſe:
Prid.	Pridwen ihaten.	Pridewyn ihote.
	þer wes innen igrauen:	þat[3] was hine igraued:
	mid rede golde ſtauen.	on anlichniſſe of golde.
	an on-licnes deore:	þat was mid iſoþe:
	of drihtenes moder.	drihtene moder.
	His ſpere he nom an honde:	His ſpere he nam an honde:
Ron.	þa Ron wes ihaten.	þat Ron was ihote.
	þa he hafden al hiſ iweden:	þo he hadde al his wede:
	þa leop he on his ſteden.	þo leop he on his ſtede.
	þa he mihte bihalden:	þo hii mihte bi-holde:
	þa bihalues ſtoden.	þat þar bi-halues were.

was wrought in Avalon, with 'magic [witful] craft. [A] helm he set on [his] head, high of steel; thereon was many gemstone, all encompassed with gold; 'it was Uthers, the noble kings'; it was named Goswhit, 'each [all] other unlike. He hung on his neck a precious shield; its name was in British called Pridwen; therein was engraved 'with red gold tracings' 'a precious image of [an image of gold, that was in sooth] Gods mother. His spear he took in hand, that was named Ron. When he had all his weeds, then leapt he on his steed. Then might 'he [they] behold, who 'stood [were] beside, the fairest knight, that *ever* host should lead; 'never saw

[1] mid? [2] Vðeres? [3] þar?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þene uæireſte cniht:	þane faireſt cniht:
þe verde ſcolde leden.	þat ferde ſal leade.
ne iſæh næuere na man:	
selere cniht nenne.	
þene him wes Arður:	
aðeleſt cunnes.	
þa cleopede Arður:	þo cleopede Arthur:
ludere ſtæfne.	loudere ſtemne.
Lou war her biforen uf:	Lo war her bi-vore ous:
heðene hundes:	heaþene hundes.
þe floȝen ure alderē:	þat oure eldre floȝe:
mid luðere heore craften.	mid hire luþer craftes.
and heo us beoð on londe:	and hi ous beoþ on londe:
læðeſt alre þīge.	loþeſt alre þinge.
Nu fuſen we hom to:	Nou wende[1] to heom:
& ſtærcliche heom leggen on.	and ſtarlige ȝam legge an.
& wræken wunderliche:	
ure cū & ure riche.	
& wreken þene muchele ſcome:	and wreken þane mochele ſame:
þat heo uf iſcend habbeoð.	þat ous hii do habbeþ.
þat heo ouer vðen:	
comen to Derte-muðen.	
& alle heo beoð for-ſworene:	for alle hii beoþ for-ſworen:
& alle heo beoð for-lorene.	and alle hii beoþ for-loren.

any man better knight none, than Arthur he was, noblest of race!' Then called Arthur with loud voice: "Lo! where here before us *the* heathen hounds, who slew our ancestors with their wicked crafts; and they are to us in land loathest of all things. Now march we to them, and starkly lay on them, and avenge 'worthily our kindred, and our realm, and avenge' the mickle shame 'by which they have disgraced us [that they have done to us], 'that they over *the* waves should have come to Dartmouth.' 'And [For] all they are forsworn, and all they shall be de-

[1] wende we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

heo beoð for-demed alle:
mid drihttenes fulſte.
Fuſe we nu forð ward:
uaſte to-ſomē.
æfne al ſwa ſofte: [c. 2.]
ſwa we nan ufel ne þohten.
and þenne we heō cumeð to:
mi ſeolf ic wullen on-fon.
an alre freomeſte[1]:
þat fiht ich wulle biginnen[2].
Nu we ſcullen riden:
and ouer lond gliden.
and na man bi his liue:
lude ne wurchen.
ah faren fæſtliche:
drihten us fulſten.
Þa riden agon:
Arður þe riche mon.
beh oũ wælde:
& Baðe wolde iſechē.
Þa tidende com to Childriche:
þan ſtrongen & þan richen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Nou we ſolle ride:
nou we ſolle glide.
and al þe formeſt:
þat fiht ich wolle bi-gẏnne.
nou me helpe to dai:
drihte þat wel maẏ.
Þo riden agan:
Arthur þe riche man.
wende ouer wolde:
Baþe to ſeche.
Þe tẏding com to Childrich:
þane ſtronge and þane rich. [c. 2.]

Arðu[r].

stroyed; 'they shall be all put to death, with *the* Lords assistance! March we now forward, fast together, even all as softly as *if* we thought no evil; and when we come to them, mysclf I will commence; foremost of all the fight I will begin.' Now we shall ride, 'and over *the* land [now we shall] glide; and 'no man on *pain* of his life make noise, but fare quickly; *the* Lord us aid [all the foremost the fight I will begin; now help me to day *the* Lord that well may]!" Then Arthur the rich man gan to ride; *he* proceeded over *the* weald, 'and' Bath 'would [to] seek. The tiding came to Childric, the strong and the rich, that Arthur came

[1] feormeſte?

[2] *Written* bigunnen, *but a plummet line over the first limb of the* u *indicates the correction.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Þ Arður mid ferde com :	Þat Arthur mid ferde :
al ȝaru to fihte.	ȝaru cō to fihte.
Childric & hiſ ohte men :	Cheldrich mid his ohte men :
leopen heom to horſen.	leopen heom to horſe.
igripen heore wepnen :	and grepen hire wepne :
heo wuſten heom iſæied.	hii wiſte ȝam i-feiþed.
Þiſ iſæh Arður :	
aðeleſt kinge.	
iſæh he ænne hæðene eorl :	Þo iſeh Arthur an eorl :
hældē him to-ȝeines.	holde him to-ȝeneſ.
mid ſeouen hundred cnihten :	mid ſoue hundred cnihtef :
al ȝærewe to fihten.	al ȝaru to fihte.
Þe orl him ſeolf ferden[1] :	Þe eorl him seolf ferde :
bi-foren al hiſ genge.	bi-vore al his genge.
& Arður him ſeolf arnde :	and Arthur him ſeolf :
bi-uoren al hiſ ferde.	bi-vore al his ferde.
Arður Þe ræie :	Arthur Þe bolde :
Ron nom an honde.	his ſpere nam an honde.
he ſtræhte ſcaft ſtærcne :	
ſtiðimoden king.	
hiſ horſ he lette irnen :	his horſ he makede earnee :
Þat Þe eorðe dunede[2].	Þat al Þe erþe dunede.
Sceld he braid on breoſtē :	Sceald he breid to breoſte :

with host 'all' ready to fight. Childric 'and [with] his brave men leapt them to horse, [and] grasped their weapons,—they knew them*selves to be* hateful! 'Arthur saw this,' noblest of kings'; 'he [Then Arthur] saw a 'heathen' earl advance against him, with seven hundred knights, all ready to fight. The earl himself approached before all his troop, and Arthur himself 'rode' before all his host. Arthur the bold took 'Ron [his spear] in hand; 'he extended (couched) *the* stark shaft, *the* stiff-minded king'; his horse he 'let [made to] run, *so* that [all] the earth dinned. *His* shield he drew to *his* breast,—the king was incensed,—he smote 'Borel' the earl

[1] *The final letter has been struck out by a second hand.* [2] dune *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe king wes abolȝen.	[f.122b.c.1.]	þe king was a-bolwe.
[*Bor*]*el.* he ſmat Borel þene eorl:		he ſmot þan eorl:
þurh ut þa breoſten.		þorh vt þe breoſte.
þat þæ heorte to-chā:		þat þe heorte to-chon:
and þe king cleopede anan.		and þe king cleopede anon.
þe formeſte if fæie:		þe formeſte his oure:
nu fulſten uf drihte.		nou helpe ous drihte.
and þa hefenliche quene:		
þa drihten akēde.		
þa cleopede Arður:	10	
aðeleſt kinge.		
Nu heom to nu heō to:		Nou heom to nou heom to:
þat formeſt if wel idon.		þe formeſte his wel idon.
Bruttes hom leiden on:		Bruttus heom leide on:
ſwa me ſcal a luðere don.		ſo me ſal þe luþer don.
heo bittere ſwipen ȝefuen:		bitere ſwipes hii ȝeuen:
mid axes & mid ſweordes.		mid axes and mid cniues.
þer feolle Cheldriches men:		þar folle Childreches men:
fulle twa þuſend.		folle two þouſend.
ſwa neuere Arður ne leſ:	20	so neuere Arthur ne leas:
næuere ænne of hiſ.		on of his manne.
þer weoren Sæxiſce men:		
folken alre ærmeſt.		
& þa Alemainiſce men:		
ȝeomereſt alre leoden.		
Arður mid hiſ ſweorde:		Arthur mid his ſweorde:

throughout the breast, *so* that the heart sundered. And the king called anon, "The foremost is 'dead [ours]! Now help us *the* Lord, 'and the heavenly queen, who *the* Lord bore!" Then called Arthur, noblest of kings': "Now to them! now to them! The commencement is well done!" *The* Britons laid on them, as men should do on [the] wicked; they gave bitter strokes with axes and with 'swords [knives]. There fell of Childrics men full two thousand, so *that* never Arthur lost 'ever' one of his [men]; 'there were *the* Saxish men of all folk most wretched, and the Alemainish men most miserable of all people!' Arthur with his sword 'wrought destruction

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
fæie-ſcipe wurhte.		bitere ſwipeſ ſwipte.	
al þat he ſmat to:		al þat he ſmot to:	
hit wes ſone for-don.		hit was ſone for-do.	
Al wæs þe king abolȝen:		Al waſ þe king a-bolwe:	
swa biδ þe wilde bar.		ſo his þe wilde bor.	
þēne he i þan mæſte:		wane he in þan maſte:	
monie [ſwyn] imeteþ.		many ſwyn i-meteþ.	
þiſ iſæh Childric:		þis i-ſeh Cheldric:	[f. 98ᵇ. c. 2.]
& gon him to charren.		and gan him to flende.	
& beh him ouer Auene:	10	and iwende ouer Auene:	
to burȝen him ſeoluen.		to borȝe him fram arme.	
And Arður him læc to:		And Arthur heom leop to:	
ſwa hit a liun weoren.		aſe hit a lyon were.	
& fuſde heom to flode:		and wende him to flode:	
monie þer weoren fæie.	[c. 2.]	and manie weren fæie.	
þer ſunken to þan grūde:		þar ſunke to þan grunde:	
fif & twenti hūdred.		ſouene an twenti hundred.	
þa al wes Auene ſtram:		þat al was þe ſtrem of Auene:	*Auene.*
mid ſtele ibrugged.		mid ſtele i-brugged.	
Cheldric ouer þat wate[1] flæh:	20	Childrich ouer þan water fleaþ:	*Childric.*
mid fiftene hundred cnihten.		mid fiftene hundred cnihteſ.	
þohte forð ſiðen:		he þohte forþ wende:	
& ouer fæ liðen.		and ouer ſee faily.	
Arður iſæh Colgrim:		Arthur iſah Colgrim:	*Colgrim.*

[bitter strokes struck]; all that he smote at, it was soon destroyed! The king was all enraged as is the wild boar, when he in the beech-*wood* meeteth many swine. Childric saw this, and gan him to 'turn [flee], and 'bent him [went] over *the* Avon, to save 'himself [him from harm]. And Arthur 'approached [leapt] to 'him [them], as *if* it were a lion, and 'drove them [advanced him] to *the* flood; 'there [and] many were slain; there sunk to the bottom 'five [seven] and twenty hundred, *so* that all 'Avons stream [the stream of Avon] was bridged with steel! Childric over the water fled, with fifteen hundred knights; [he] thought forth to push, and sail over

[1] water?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	climben to munten.	clembe to on hulle.
	buȝen to þan hulle:	
Baðe.	þa ouer Baðen ſtondeð.	
Baldulf.	& Baldulf beh him after:	and Baldolf wende after:
	mid ſeoue þuſend cnihteſ.	mid ſoue þouſend cnihteſ.
	heo þohten i þan hulle:	hii þohten o þan hulle:
	hæhliche at-ſtonden.	hehliche at-ſtonde.
	weorien heom mid wepnen:	
	& Arður[1] awæmmen.	
Arður.	þa iſæh Arður:	
	aðeleſt kingen.	
Colgrim.	whar Colgrim at-ſtod:	
	& æc ſtal wrohte.	
	þa clupede þe king:	þo cleopede þe king:
	kenliche lude.	kenliche londe.
	Balde mine þeines:	Bolde mine cnihtes:
	buhȝeð to þā hulleſ.	boueþ to þan hulle.
	For ȝerſtendæi wes Colgrim:	For ȝorſtendai was Colgrim:
	monnen alre kenneſt.	man alre kenneſt.
	nu him if al ſwa þere gat:	nou hī his aſe wo aſe þe got:
	þer he þene hul wat.	þar he þane hulle wot.
	hæh uppen hulle:	heh vppen hulle:
	fehteð mid hornen.	fihteþ mid hornes.

the sea. Arthur saw Colgrim climb to '*the* mount [a hill], 'retreat to the hill that standeth over Bath'; and Baldulf went after 'him,' with seven thousand knights; they thought on the hill to withstand nobly, 'defend them with weapon, and do injury to Arthur. When Arthur saw, noblest of kings, where Colgrim withstood, and eke battle wrought,' then called the king, keenly loud: "My bold 'thanes [knights], advance to the 'hills [hill]! For yesterday was Colgrim 'of all men keenest [man keenest of all], *but* now '*it* is to him all as to [he is as woe as] the goat, where he guards the hill; high upon *the* hill *he* fighteth with horns, when the wild

[1] *The last two letters are interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þenne comed[1] þe wlf wilde:
touward hire winden.
þeh þe wulf beon ane:
butē ælc imane.
& þer weoren in ane loken:
fif hundred gaten.
þe wulf heom to iwiteð:
and alle heom abiteð.
Swa ich wulle nu to dæi: [f.123.c.1.]
Colgrī al fordemen.
ich am wulf & he if gat:
þe gume fcal beon fæie.
þa ȝet cleopede Arður:
aðeleft kingen.
ȝurftendæi wes Baldulf:
cnihten alre baldeft.
nu he ftant on hulle:
& Auene bi-halde ð.
hu ligeð i þan ftræme:
ftelene fifces.
mid fweorde bi-georede:
heore fund if awemmed.
heore fcalen wleoteð:
fwulc gold-faȝe fceldes.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

wane comeþ þe wólf:
wilde toward him winde.
þeh þe wolf be one:
wiþ houte heni imone.
and þar were on flockes:
two hundred gotes.
þe wolf to witeþ:
and alle a-biteþ.
So ich wolle nou to dai:
Colgrým for-deme.
ich ham wolf and he got:
þat fal deaþ þolie.
ȝet him fpekeþ Arthur: [c.2.]
baldeft alre kinge.
ȝorftendai was Baldolf:
cniht alre baldeft.
nou he ftond on hulle:
and Auene bi-holdeþ.
hou liggeþ in þan ftreme:
ftelene fifces.

wolf approacheth toward him. Though the wolf be alone, without 'each [any] herd, and there were in 'a fold five [flocks two] hundred goats, the wolf to them goeth, and all 'them' biteth. So will I now to-day Colgrim 'all' destroy; I am *the* wolf and he 'is' *the* goat; 'the man shall die [that shall suffer death]!" 'The' yet 'called [speaketh him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Yesterday was Baldulf 'of all knights [knight of all] boldest, *but* now he standeth on *the* hill, and beholdeth *the* Avon, how *the* steel fishes lie in the stream! 'Armed with sword, their life is destroyed; their scales float like gold-dyed shields; there float their fins,

[1] comeð?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
	þer fleoteð heore ſpiten:		
	ſwulc hit ſpæren weoren.		
	þiſ beoð ſeolcuðe þing:		þis wonderes beoþ:
	iſiȝen to þiſſē londe.		iſiȝe to londe.
	ſwulche deor an hulle:		ſoch fiſ in wille:
	ſwulche fiſces in walle.		ſoch deor on hulle.
Childric.	ȝurſtendæi wes þe kaiſere:		ȝorſtenday was Cheldrich:
	kenneſt alre kingen.		kenneſt alre kinge.
	nu he iſ bicumen hunte:		nou he his bi-come honte:
	& hornes him fulieð.	10	and horneſ him folweþ.
	fliheð ouer bradne wæld:		flicþ ouer brodne feld:
	beorkeð hiſ hundes.		borkeþ his hundeſ.
	he hafeð bihalueſ Baðen:		he haueþ bi-haluef Baþe:
	his huntinge bilæfued.		his hontyṅge bi-lefued.
	freom his deore he flicð:		fram his deor he flicþ:
	& we hit ſcullen fallen.		we hit ſolle falle.
	and hiſ balde ibeot:		
	to nohte ibrīgen.		
	and ſwa we ſcullē brukien:		
	rihte bi-ȝæten.	20	
Arður.	¶ Efne þan worde:		Efne þan worde:
	þa þe kīg seide.		þat þe king ſaide.
	he bræid hæȝe hiſ ſceld:		he breid hehȝe his ſcelde:
	forn to hiſ breoſten. [c. 2.]		vp to his breoſte.
	he igrap his ſpere longe:		he grop his ſpere longe:

as *if* it were spears'. These are 'marvellous things [wonders] come to 'this' land; such beasts on *the* hill, such 'fishes [fish] in *the* stream! Yesterday was 'the kaiser [Childric] keenest of all kings; now is he become *a* hunter, and horns him follow; *he* flieth over *the* broad 'weald [field]; his hounds bark; he hath beside Bath his hunting deserted; from his deer he flieth, 'and' we it shall fell, 'and his bold threats bring to nought; and so we shall enjoy *our* rights gained.'" Even with the words that the king said, he drew his shield high 'before [up to] his breast; he grasped his long spear, 'his horse he gan [and gan his horse] spur. Nigh

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
hiſ horſ he gon ſpurie.	and gan his horſ ſporie.
Neh al ſwa ſwi[1] ꝟ	Neh al ſo ſwiþe ꝟ
swa þe fuȝel fliȝeð.	ſo þe fowel flieþ.
fuleden þan kinge ꝟ	folwede þan kinge ꝟ
fif and twenti þuſend.	fif and twenti þouſend.
whitere monnen ꝟ	
wode under wepnen.	
hældē to hulle ꝟ	hii wende to þan hulle ꝟ
mid hæhȝere ſtrēgðe.	mid baldere ſtrengþe.
and uppen Colgrime ſmiten ꝟ	and vppe Colgrī ſmite ꝟ
mid ſwiðe ſmærte biten.	ſwiþe ſmorte biteſ.
And Colgrim[2] heom þer hente ꝟ	And Colgrim ȝam hende ꝟ
and feolde þa Bruttes to grūde.	and fulde þe Bruttus.
i þan uormeſte ræſe ꝟ	in þe forſte reaſe ꝟ
fulle fif hundred.	follē fif hūdred.
Þat iſæh Arður ꝟ	Þis iſah Arthur ꝟ
aðeleſt kingen.	
and wrað hī[3] him iwræððed ꝟ	and wraþþede him ſwiþe ꝟ
wunder ane swiðe.	
and þus cleopien a-gon ꝟ	and cleopie agan ꝟ
Arður þe hæhȝe mā.	Arthur þe hehȝe man.
War beo ȝe Bruttes ꝟ	Ware be ȝeo Bruttef ꝟ
balde mine beornes.	bolde mine cnihteſ.
her ſtondeð us biuoren ꝟ	here ſtondeþ vs bi-vore ꝟ [f. 99. c. 1.]

all so swift as the fowl flieth, five and twenty thousand 'of brave men, mad under arms,' followed the king; [they] proceeded to the hill with 'great [bold] strength, and smote upon Colgrim 'with' exceeding smart strokes. And Colgrim them 'there' received, and felled the Britons 'to ground'; in the 'foremost [first] attack fell five hundred. Arthur saw 'that '[this], 'noblest of kings,' and wrathed him 'wondrously' much; and 'thus' gan to call Arthur, the noble man: "Where be ye, Britons, my bold 'men [knights]! Here stand before us our foes all chosen; 'my good warriors,

[1] ſwiðe?
[2] grum, *pr. m., but corrected in the margin.*
[3] *Sic MS. These two words are probably superfluous.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

vre ifan alle icorē.
gumen mine gode:
legge we heom to grunde.
Arður igrap his sweord riht:
& he fmat ænne Sexiſe cniht.
þ þ fweord[1] þ wes fwa god:
æt þan toþen at-ſtod.
& he fmat enne oðer:
þat wes þas cnihtes broðer.
þat hiſ halm & hiſ hæfd:
halden to grunde.
þene þridde dunt he ſone ȝaf:
& enne cniht atwa clæf.
Þa weoren Bruttes: [f. 123b. c. 1.]
ſwiðe ibalded.
& leiden o þan Sæxen:
læȝen ſwi[2] ſtronge.
mid heore ſperen longe:
and mid ſweoreden swiðe ſtrōge.
Sexes þer uullen:
& fæie-ſih makeden.
bi hundred bi hundred:
hælden to þan grunde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

oure ſon al icore.
go we mid iſunde:
and legge we heom to grunde.
Arthur grop his ſweord riht:
and ſmot ane Saxiſſe cniht.
þat þe ſweord þat was ſo god:
at þe middel hit aſtod.
and he ſmot on oþer:
þes cnihtes broþer.
þat his helm and his heued:
wende in þan felde.
þane þridde dunt he ſone ȝeaf:
and one cniht he al to-cleof.
Þo weren Bruttus:
ſwiþe ibolded.
and leiden on þe Saxiſſe:
mid hire ſtronge mihte.
þat Saxiſſe þar folle:
manie to grunde.

[go we in safety, and] lay we them to *the* ground!" Arthur grasped his sword right, and 'he' smote a Saxish knight, *so* that the sword that was so good at the 'teeth [middle it] stopt; and he smote another, 'who was' this knights brother, *so* that his helm and his head fell 'to *the* ground [on the field]; the third blow he soon gave, and a knight 'in two clove [he all clove asunder]. Then were *the* Britons greatly emboldened, and laid on the Saxons 'laws (blows) most strong [with their strong might,] 'with their long spears and with swords most strong'; [*so* that] *the* Saxons there fell, 'and made *their* death-time, by hundreds and hundreds sank to the [many

[1] *Sup. ras.*

[2] ſwiðe? *Cf. v.* 19581.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

bi þufund & bi þufend:
þer feollen æuere in þene grund.
Þa iſeh Colgrim:
wær Arður com touward him.
ne mihte Colgrī for þan wæle:
fleon a nare ſide.
þer fæht Baldulf:
bi-ſiden his broðer.
Þa cleopede Arður:
ludere ſtefne.
Her ich cume Colgrim:
to cuðden wit ſcullen ræchen.
nu wit ſcullen þiſ lond dalen:
swa þe bið alre laðdeſt.
Æfne þan worde:
þa þe king ſæide.
his brode ſwærd he up ahof:
and hærdliche adun ſloh.
and ſmat Colgrimes hælm:
þ he amidde to-clæf.
and þere burē hod:
þat hit at þe breoſte at-ſtod.
And he ſweinde touward Baldulfe:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þo iſeh Colgrī:
war Arthur com toward him.
ne mihte he fliht makie:
in neuere one ſide.
Þo ſaide Arthur:
to Colgrim þan kene.
Nou we ſolle þis kinelond:
deale ous bi-twine.
EFne þan word: [Ar]ður.
þat þe king ſaide.
his brode ſweord he vt droh:
and vppe Colgrim his helm ſmot.
and to-cleof þane brunie hod:
þat hit at þe breoſte a-ſtod.
And he a wiþer ſweyncde:

to] ground, 'by thousands and thousands fell there ever on the ground!' When Colgrim saw where Arthur came toward him, 'Colgrim [he] might not 'for the slaughtered flee on any [make flight on ever one] side; 'there fought Baldulf beside his brother.' Then 'called [said] Arthur 'with loud voice [to Colgrim the keen]: "'Here I come, Colgrim! 'to *the* realm we *two* shall reach'; now we shall divide this 'land [kingdom between us], 'as shall be to thee loathest of all!'" Even with the words that the king said, his broad sword he 'up heaved [out drew], 'and hardily down struck,' and smote 'Colgrims [upon Colgrim his] helm, '*so* that he clove *it* in *the* midst, and [clove asunder] the burnys hood, *so* that it (the sword) stopt at the breast. And he smote to' ward' Baldulf [his brother] 'with his left

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid his swiðrē hōde.		to Baldolf his broþer.
& ſwipte þat hæfued of:		and ſwipte þat heued of:
forð mid þan helme.		forþ mid þan helme.
Þa loh Arður:		Þo loh Arthur þe king: [c. 2.]
þe alðele[1] king.		
and þus ȝeddien agon:		and þes word ſaide.
mid gomenfulle worden.		
Lien nu þere Colgim:		Li nou þar Colgrým:
þu were iclumben haȝe. [c. 2.]		þe[2] were iclemde to heȝe.
and Baldulf þi broðer:	10	and Baldolf þin broþer:
lið bi þire ſide.		liþ bi þine ſide.
nu ich al þiſ kine-lond:		nou ich al þiſ kinelond:
ſette an eorwer[3] ahȝere hond.		ſette in ȝoure tweire hond.
dales & dunef:		
Colgrim. & al mi drihtliche uolc.[4]		
Þu clumbe a þiſſen hulle:		ȝe clemde to hehȝe:
wunder ane hæȝe.		vppen þiſſe hulle.
ſwulc þu woldeſt to hæuene:		aſe þeh ȝe wolde to heuene:
nu þu ſcalt to hælle.		ac nou ȝe mote to helle.
þer þu miht kenne:	20	and þare ȝeo mawe kenne:
muche of þine cunne.		moche of ȝoure cunne.
And gret þu þer Hengeſt:		And greteþ þare Hengeſt:
þe cnihten wes faȝereſt.		þat was cniht faireſt.

hand [again], and struck off the head, forth with the helm. Then laughed Arthur, the 'noble' king, and 'thus gan to speak with gameful words [said these words]: "Lie now there, Colgrim; thou wert climbed [too] high; and Baldulf, thy brother, lie by thy side; now set I all this kingdom in your 'own [two] hands; 'dales and downs, and all my good folk!' 'Thou [Ye] climbed 'on [upon] this hill 'wondrously [too] high, as '*if* thou wouldst [though ye would] *ascend* to heaven; [but] now 'thou shalt [ye must] to hell, [and] there 'thou mayest [ye may] know much of 'thy [your] kindred. And greet 'thou [*ye*] there Hengest, that was fairest of knights, Ebissa, [Octa]

[1] *R.* aðele. [2] þou? [3] eower? [4] *This line is sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Ebiſſa & Oſſa:
Octa & of þine cūne ma.
and bide heom þer wunie:
wintres & ſumeref.
& we ſcullen on londe:
libben in bliſſe.
bidden for eower ſaulen:
þat ſel ne wurðen heom nauære.
& ſcullen her æuwer ban:
biſide Baðe ligen.
Arður þe king cleopede:
Cador þene kene.
of Cornwale he wes eorl:
þe cniht wes ſwiðe kene.
Hercne me Cador:
þu ært min aȝe cun.
Nu if Childric iuloȝen:
& awæiward itohȝen.
he þencheð mid iſunde:
aȝen cumen liðen.
Ah nim of mire uerde:
fif þuſend monnen.
& fareð forð rihtes:
bi dæie & bi nihte.
þat þu cumme to þare ſæ:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Ebiſſa Octa and Oſſa:
and of þine cunne mo.
and bide heom þare wonie:
wyntres and ſomeref.
and we ſollen here in londe:
libbe in bliſſe.
Arthur þo ſaide:
to Cador þe kene.
of Cornwale he was eorl:
þat was a cniht kene.
Hercne me Cador:
þou hart min eorl deore.
Nou his Childrich a-floȝe:
and a-weiward itowe.
and þencheþ mid iſunde:
aȝein hider wende.
Ac nim of mine ferde:
fif þouſend manne.
and far þe forþ riht:
bi daie and bi niht.
þat þou come to þare ſéé:

and Ossa, 'Octa,' and more of thy kin, and bid them there dwell winter and summer; and we shall [here] in land live in bliss; 'pray for your souls, that happiness never come to them; and here shall your bones lie, beside Bath!'" Arthur, 'the king, called [then said to] Cador, the keen;—of Cornwall he was earl, 'the knight was most [that was a knight] keen:—"Hearken to me, Cador, thou art 'mine own kin [my dear earl]. Now is Childric flown, and awayward gone; 'he [and] thinketh with safety again to come [hither]. But take of my host five thousand men, and go forth-right, by day and by night, until thou come to the sea, before (previous to) Chil-

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bi-foren Childriche.	bi-vore Childriche.
and al þat þu miht biwīnen :/	and al þat þou miht bi-winne :/
bruc hit on wunnen.	brouket[1] hit mid wonne.
& ȝif þu miht þene kaifere :/ [f. 124.c.1.]	and ȝef þou miht þan caỳſer :/
ufele aquellen þere.	eniwiſe a-cwelle þar.
ich þe ȝifue[2] to mede :/	ihc þe ȝefe to mede :/ [f. 99ᵇ.c.1.]
al Doreſete.	al Dorſete.
Al ſwa þe aðele king :/	Onneþe hadde þe kīg :/
þas word hafede iſæid.	þat word ibroht to þe hende.
Cador ſprong to horſe :/	þat Cador ne ſparng[3] to horſe :/
swa ſpærc him doh of fure.	aſe ſparc doþ of fure.
fulle ſeoue þuſend :/	folle ſoue þuſend :/
Cador. fuleden þan eorle.	folwede þan eorle.
Cador þe kene :/	
& muchel of hiſ cunne.	
wenden ouer woldes :/	hii wende ouer feldes :/
& ouer wildernes.	and ouer wilderneſ.
ouer dales & ouer dunes :/	
ouer deope wateres.	
Cador cuðe þene wæi :/	Cador couþe þane waỳ :/
þe toward his cunde læi.	þat touward his cuþþe laỳ.
an oueſte he wende fuliwiſ :/	and an hiȝenge wende foliwis :/
Tottenais. riht toward Toteneis.	riht touward Totenas.

dric; and all that thou mayest win, possess it with joy; and if thou mayest 'with evil [anywise] kill there the kaiser, I will give thee all Dorset to meed." 'All as the noble king these words had said, [Scarcely had the king brought the words to the end, before] Cador sprang to horse, as spark 'it' doth from fire; full seven thousand followed the earl. 'Cador the keen, and much of his kindred,' [They] proceeded over 'wealds [fields], and over wilderness, 'over dales and over downs, *and* over deep waters.' Cador knew the way that toward his country lay, 'by *the* nearest he [and in haste] proceeded full surely right toward Totnes, day and night, [until] he

[1] brouke? [2] ȝifuen, *pr. m., but* n *erased.* [3] ſprang?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

dæies & nihtes :/
he com þere forð rihtes.
swa neuere Childric nuſte :/
of his cume nane cuſte.
Cador com to cuððe :/
bi-uoren Childriche.
and lette hī fuſen[1] biforen :/
al þas londes folc.
cheorles ful ȝepe :/
mid clubben swiðe græte.
mid ſpæren and mid græte waȝen :/
to þan ane icoren.
and duden heom alle clane :/
into þan ſcipen grunde.
& hæhte heom þere lutie wel :/
þat Childric of heom neore war.
& þenne hiſ folc come :/
& in wolden climben.
heore botten igripen :/
and ohtliche on ſmiten.
mid heore waȝen & mid heore ſperen :/ [c. 2.]
murðren Childriches heren.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

daiȝes and nihtes :/
forte he com þer forþ rihtes.
Childrich noþing nuſte :/
of his come no cuſte.
Cador com to cuþþe :/
bi-fore Cheldriche.
he lette wende him bi-vore :/
al þat londef folk.
cheorles fol ȝepe :/
miḍ clubbes wel grete.
and dude ȝam alle cleane :/
into þan ſipef grūde.
and hehte heom lotie wel :/ *Childric.*
þat Cheldrich nere noht war.
ac wane his folk come :/
and in wolde clembe.
Nimeþ ȝoure badtef :/
and hahtliche ȝou ſtorieþ.

came there forth-right, 'so *that*' Childric 'never [nothing] knew any manner of his coming. Cador came to *the* country before Childric, 'and [he] caused to advance before him all '*the* folk of the land [the land-folk]; churls full sagacious, with clubs 'exceeding [well] great, 'with spears and with great staves, chosen for the purpose'; and placed them all clean into the ships holds, and ordered them 'there' to stoop well (low), that Childric were not aware 'of them'; 'and [but] when his folk came, and in would climb, 'to grasp their ["Take *ye* your] bats, and bravely 'on smite [stir you!"]; 'with their staves and with their spears to murder Childrics host.' The churls did all, as Cador them taught. To

[1] *This word is on erasure.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Al duden þa cheorles:
swa Cador heom tæhte.
To þan ſcipen wenden:
wiðer-fulle cheorles.
in æuer ælche ſcipe:
oder[1] half hundred.
And Cador þe kene bæh:
in toward ane wude hæh.
fif mile from þan ſtude:
þær þæ ſtoden þa ſcipen[2].
and hudde hine on wille:
wūder ane ſtille.
Childric com ſōe:
ouer wald liðen.
walde to þan ſcipen fleon[3]:
and fuſen of lōden.
Sone ſwa Cador iſæh:
þæ wes þe kene eorl.
þat Childric wes an eorðen:
bitweonen hī and þā cheorlen.
þa clupede Cador:
ludere ſtefne.
Wær beo ȝe cnihtes:
ohte men & wihte.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Al dude þe cheorles:
aſe Cador ȝam tahte.
To þan ſipes wend:
wiþerfolle cheorleſ.
in euereche ſipe:
oþer half hundred.
And Cador þe kene beh:
and toward one wode teh.
fif mile frā þan ſtude:
þar þe ſipes ſtode. [c. 2.]
and hudde him an wile:
wonderliche ſtille.
And Cheldrich com ſone:
ouer dounes wende.
wolde to þan ſipes fleon:
and ſtelen vt of londe.
Sone ſo Cador þis iſeh:
þat was þe eorl kene.
þat Childrich was bi-twixe:
him and þe cheorles.
þo ſaide Cador:
loudere ſtemne.
Ware beo ȝe cnihtes:
ohte men and wihte.

the ships proceeded *the* valiant churls; in every ship *a* hundred and half. And Cador the keen withdrew, 'in [and] toward a wood 'high [marched], five miles from the place where the ships stood; and hid him a while, wondrously still. [And] Childric soon approached, over *the* 'weald [downs]; *and* would flee to the ships, and 'push from [steal out of] land. *So* soon as Cador saw [this], who was the earl keen, that Childric was 'in land,' 'between [betwixt] him and the churls, then 'called [said] Cador, with loud voice: "Where be ye, knights, brave men and active?

[1] oðer? [2] þær þa ſcipen ſtoden? [3] *R.* fleon.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Iþenched[1] what Ardur[2]:	Iþencheð wat Arthur:
þe if ure aðele king.	þat his oure alre louerd.
at Baðen us bi-fohte:	at Baþe vs bi-fohte:
ær we wenden from hirede.	are we fram him wende.
Leou war fuſeð Childric:	Lo war wendeþ Childrich:
& fleō wule of londe.	and fare wole of londe.
and þencheð to Alemaine:	and þencheþ to Alemaine:
þer beoð hiſ ældren.	ware wonieþ his eldre.
and wule bi-ȝiten ferde:	and wole a-winne ferde:
and æft cumen hidere.	and eft þis lond feche.
and wule faren hider in:	
and þencheð awrækē Colgrim.	for to a-wreke Colgrim.
and Baldulf hiſ broðer:	and Baldolf his broþer:
þæ bi[3] Baðen reſteð.	
Ah no abide he nænere þære dæȝen:	Ac ne abide we neuere þane daȝ:
ne ſcal he no ȝif we maȝen.	ne ſal he no ȝef ich maȝ.
Æfne þere ſpæche: [f. 124ᵇ. c. 1.]	Efne þan ſpeche:
þa ſpac þe eorl riche.	þat ſpac þe eorl riche.
and on ueſt he gon ridē:	
þe reh[4] wes on moden.	
halden ut of wude ſcaȝe:	hii leopen vt of wode:
ſcalkes ſwiðe kene.	aſe hit lȳons were.

Bethink *ye* what Arthur, who is 'our noble king [lord of us all], at Bath besought us, ere we went from '*the* host [him]. Lo! where Childric wendeth, and will 'flee [fare] from *the* land; and thinketh *to pass* to Alemaine, where his ancestors 'are [dwell]; and will obtain *an* army, and eft 'come hither, [seek this land, for] 'and will fare in hither; and thinketh' to avenge Colgrim, and Baldulf, his brother, 'who rest at Bath.' But 'he [we] never shall abide the day; he shall not, if 'we [I] may *prevent him*!" Even with the speech, that the powerful earl spake, 'and promptly he gan ride, that was stern in mood; '*the* warriors most keen advanced out of *the* wood-shaw [they leapt out of *the* wood, as *if* it were lions], and

[1] Iþencheð?
[2] *R.* Arður.
[3] *This word is interlined by a second hand.*
[4] *On erasure, but by first hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and after Cheldriche:
þan ſtrongen & þan richen.
Cheldriches cnihtes:
bi-ſehȝen heom baften.
iſehȝen ouer wolden:
winden heore-mærken.
winnien ouer ueldes:
fif þuſēd ſceldes.
Þa iwærð Childric:
chærful[1] an heorten.
and þas word fæide:
þe riche kaiſere.
Þif if Arður þe king:
þe alle uf wule aquellen.
fleo we nu biliue:
& in to ſcipen fuſen.
and liðen forð mid watere:
ne recchen we nauere wudere.
Þa Childric þe kaiſere:
þas word hæuede iſæid.
Þa gon he to fleōne:
feondliche ſwiðe.
& Cador þe kene:
com him after ſone.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and after Cheldrich:
þan kene and þan riche.
Childreches cnihtes:
iſehȝe bi-hinde.
hearne ouer feldeſ:
fif þouſend ſcealdeſ.
þar iwarþ Cheldrich:
forþfolle in heorte.
and þes word ſaide:
þe riche cayſer.
Þif his Arthur þe king: [f.100.c.1.]
þat al vs wole a-cwelle.
fleo we nou ſwiþe:
and in to ſiþe wende.
and wende forþ mid wedere:
ne reche we neuere wodere.
Þo Childrich þe cayſere:
þis word hadde iſaid þare.
þo gonne hii to fleonde:
feondeliche ſwiþe.
and Cador þe kene:
com ȝam after ſone.

after Childric *pursued*, the 'strong [keen] and the rich. Childrics knights looked behind 'them; *they* saw over *the* weald *the* standards wind'; 'approach [run] over *the* fields five thousand shields. Then became Childric 'careful [sorrowful] in heart, and these words said the powerful kaiser: "This is Arthur the king, who will us all kill; flee we now quickly, and into ship go, and voyage forth with *the* 'water [weather], reck we never whither!" When Childric the kaiser had said [there] these words, then gan 'he [they] to flee exceeding quickly; and Cador the keen came soon after 'him [them]. Childric and his knights came to ship forth-right; they

[1] cærful?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
Childric and his cnihtes:	Childrich and his cnihtef:	
to fcipe comen forð rihtes.	to fipe come forþ rihtef.	
heo wenden þa fcipen ftronge:	hii wende þe fipef ftronge:	
to fculuen[1] from þan londe.	feue fram þan londe.	
Þæ cheorles mid heore botten:	Þe cheorles mid hire batte:	
weoren þer wið innen.	weren þar wiþ ine.	
þa botten heo up heouen:	þe battes hii vp houen:	
& adun riht floȝen.	and a-dun rihttef flowen.	
þer wes sone iflaȝen:	þar was fone iflaȝe:	
moni cniht mid heoꝛ wahȝen.	mani cniht mid hire wawes.	
wið heore pic-forcken: [c. 2.]	mid hire pic-forken:	
heo ualden heom to grundē.	feolde heom to grūde.	
Cador & his cnihtes:	Cador and his cnihtes:	
floȝen heō baften.	flowen heom bi-hinde.	
þa iſah Childric:	þo iſeh Cheldrich:	
þ heō ilomp liðerlic.	þat him bi-fulle luþerlich.	
þa al hif folc mucle:		
feol to þan grūde.		
nu i-fæh he þer bilaluef[2]:		
ænne swiðe mare hul.		
þat water tið þer under:	he fleoþ to one hulle:	
þat Teine if ihatē.	þat Teyne his i-hote.	*Teine.*
þa hulle ihaten Teinnewic:	to þan hul of Teyniſwich:	

weened to shove the strong ships from the land. The churls with their bats were there within; the bats they up heaved, and adown right swung; there was soon slain many *a* knight with their clubs; with their pitch-forks 'they' felled them to ground, *and* Cador and his knights slew them behind. 'Then [When] saw Childric, that *it* befell to 'them [him] evilly; 'that all his mickle folk fell to the ground; now saw he there beside a *hill* exceeding great'; 'the water floweth there under, that is named Teine; the hill *is* named Teinewic; thitherward [he fled to a hill, that is named Teyne; to the hill of Teyneswich fast] fled Childric, as quickly as he might, with

[1] fcuuen?

[2] bihaluef?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þider ward flæh Childric.	fwiþe fleoh Cheldrich.
swa fwiðe swa he mihte:	so fwiþe fo he mihte:
mid feouwer & twenti cnihten.	mid four and twenti cnihtes.
þa ifæh Cador:	þat ifeh Cador:
hu hit þa uerde þer.	ou hit þo ferde þar.
þat þe kaifere flæh:	
& touwarde þæ hulle tæh.	
and Cador him after:	he him went after:
swa swiðe fwa he mahte.	fo fwiþe fo he mihte.
and him to tuhte:	and him of-tok fone:
& hine of-toc fone.	in lutele tỳme.
þa faide Cador:	þo faide Cador þe eorl:
þe eorl swiðe kene.	þat cnih[1] was fwiþe kene. [c. 2.]
Abid abid Childic:	Abid abid Cheldrich:
ich wulle þe ȝefen Teinewic.	ich wole ȝeue þe Teỳnefwich.
Cador hif fweord an-hof:	Cador his sweord a-hof:
and he Childric of-floh.	and he Cheldrich of-sloh.
Monie þe þer fluȝen:	Manỳ þo þar floȝen:
to þan watere heo tuhȝen.	and to þan watere toȝen.
inne Teine þan watere:	and þar hi a-dreinte:
þer heo for-wurðen.	for Cador his heiȝe.
al Cador awælde[2]:	al Ca[dor] a-fulde:
þat he quic funde.	[wude: þat he cwik funde.
and fumme heo crupen ito þan	

four and twenty knights. 'Then [That] Cador saw, how it then fared there, 'that the kaiser fled, and toward the hill retreated;' 'and Cador *pursued* [he went] after him, as speedily as he might, and 'came up to him, and' overtook him soon [in little time]. Then said Cador, the earl [who was knight] most keen: "Abide, abide, Childric! I will give thee Teinewic!" Cador heaved up his sword, and he Childric slew. Many 'that [then] there fled, [and] to the water 'they' drew; [and] 'in Teine the water,' there they 'perished [were drowned, for Cador his dread]; Cador 'killed [felled] all that he found alive; 'and some they crept into the wood, and all he them there

[1] cniht?

[2] acwælde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and alle he heō þer for-dude.
Þa Cador heom haueden alle ouer cumen:
and æc al þat lond inumen.
he ſette gⁱt swiðe god:
þat þer after longe ſtod.
þeh ælc mon beere an honde:
behȝef of golde.
ne durſte nauere gume nan:
oðerne ufele igᶜten[1].
Arður wes forð iwende:
in to Scotlondē.
for Howel lai inne Clud:
faſte bicluſed.
Hafden Scottef hine bi-læien:
mid luðere heore craftē.
and ȝif Ardur[2] neore þe rader[3]
þenne weoren Houwel inumen.
and al hif folc þer iflaȝen:
and idon of lif-daȝen.
Ah Arður com sone:
mid ſelere ſtrengðe.
and Scottes to fleōne:
feor of þan ærde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and þat lond to him inome.
he ſette griþ ſwiþe god:
þat þar after lange ſtod.
þeh ech man bere an honde:
beȝes of golde.
ne dorſte no gome:
oþ[9] vuele igrete.
ARthur was forþ iwende: *Arður.*
in to Scotlonde.
for Howel laẏ ine Clud:
faſte bi-cluſed.
Hadde Scottef hine bi-leẏe:
mid hire luþer craftes.
and ȝef he nadde þe raþer bi-come:
Howel hadde bi nome[4].
and his folk þar iflaȝe:
and idon of lif-daȝe.
Ac Arthur com ſone:
and Scottes to fleonde.

destroyed.' When Cador had overcome 'them all [the fight], and 'eke all' the land [to him] taken, he set peace most good, that thereafter long stood; though each man bare in hand rings of gold, durst 'never' any man greet *an*other evilly. Arthur was forth marched into Scotland; for Howel lay in Clud, fast inclosed. *The* Scots had besieged him with their wicked crafts; and if 'Arthur were [he had] not the earlier 'come [arrived], 'then' 'were [had been] Howel taken, and 'all' his folk there slain, and deprived of life-day. But Arthur came soon, 'with good strength,' and *the* Scots

[1] igᶜæten *at first, but* æ expuncted.
[2] Arður?
[3] raðer?
[4] be inome?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
in to Muræine:	in to Moraỳne:
mid mucle mon-weorede.	mid mochelere ferde.
And Cador com to Scotlonde:	And Cador com to Scotlōd:
þer he Arður ifunde.	þar he Arthur funde.
Arður and Cador:	Arthur and Cador:
into Clud ferden.	into Clud wende.
& funden þer Howel:	and funden þar Howel:
mid hahȝere bliſſe an ſel.	mid baldere bliſſe.
of hiſ seocneſſe:	of al his seacniſſe:
iſund wes iwurðen.	hol was i-worþe. [f. 100b. c. 1.]
muchel wes þa bliſſe:	moche was þe bliſſe:
þæ þa wes in burȝe.	þat þo was in borwe.
Scottes weoren inne Mureine:	Scottef weren in Moraỳne:
and þer þeohten wunien.	and þare þohte wonie.
& mid bolde heore worden:	and ſaide heom bi-twine:
heore beot makeden.	mid hire bolde wordeſ.
and ſæiden þat heo wolden:	
þa riche walden.	
and Arður þer abiden:	
mid baldere ſtrenðe.	
for ne durſte nauere Arður:	þat Arthur nolde neuere:
for his life come þer.	for his lifue come þare.
Þa iherde Arður:	Þiſ ihorde Arthur:
ærhðen bidæled. [c. 2.]	baldeſt alre kinge.
whæt Scottes hafden iſæid:	wat Scottef hadde iſeid:

gan to flee 'far from the land,' into Moray, with *a* mickle host. And Cador came to Scotland, where he Arthur found. Arthur and Cador proceeded into Clud, and found Howel there, with 'great [bold] bliss 'in health,' of [all] his sickness whole *he* was become; great was the bliss that then was in *the* burgh! *The* Scots were in Moray, and there thought to dwell, and with their bold words 'made their boast, and said that they would rule the realm, and Arthur there abide, with bold strength; for [said them between that] Arthur 'durst [would] never for his life come there. 'When [This] Arthur heard, 'void of fear [boldest of all kings], what *the*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid heore hux wordē.	mid hire hokere wordes.
þa fæide Arður:	
aðeleſt kīgē.	
Whær ært þu Howel:	He cleopede Howel:
hæhſt of mine cunne[1].	þe hehȝeſt of his cunne.
and Cador þe kene:	and Cador þe kene:
ut[2] of Cornwæle.	vt of Cornwale.
Leteð blæwē bemen:	Leteþ blowe bemen:
& bonnien ure ferden.	and banni vre ferde.
& to þere mid-nihte:	and at þare midniht:
we ſculleð faren forð riht.	we ſolle wende forþriht.
toward Mureine:	
ure mon-ſcipe[3] to bi-tellen.	
ȝif hit wule drihte:	
þe ſcop þæs daȝes lihten.	
we heom ſculle tellen:	
forhfulle ſpelles.	
heore ȝælp fellen:	and hire ȝealp falle:
& heom ſeolue a-quellen.	and ȝam seolf a-cwelle.
To þere mid-nihte:	To þare md-niht[4]:
Arður aras forð riht.	Arthur a-ros forþ riht.
hornes me gon blawen:	
mid hahȝere ſtafnen.	

Scots had said with their scornful words, 'then said Arthur, noblest of kings': '"Where art thou, [he called] Howel, [the] highest of 'my [his] kindred, and Cador the keen, out of Cornwall? Let *the* trumpets blow, and assemble our host, and at the midnight we shall march forth-right 'toward Moray, our honor to win. If *the* Lord will it, who shaped the day-light, we shall them tell sorrowful tales,' [and] fell their boast, and themselves kill." At the midnight Arthur forth-right arose; 'horns men gan to blow with loud sound; knights gan arise, and stern words to speak.'

[1] *This word is interlined by second hand.*
[2] *Originally written* out, *but* o *expuncted.*
[3] ſcipe *is interlined sec. m.*
[4] *R.* mid-niht.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
cnihtes gunnen arifen :/	
and ræhȝe word fpeken.	
Mid muche mon-weorede :/	and wende mid his ferde :/
into Mureine.	toward Moraỳne.
forð gunnen wræftē :/	forþ gonne þreafte :/
þreottene þufend.	þrittene þoufend.
a feormefte flocke :/	
feondliche kene men.	
Seoððen com Cador :/	Suþþe com Cador :/
þe eorl of of[1] Cornwæille.	þe eorl of Cornwale.
mid feouentene þufen[2] :/	mid fouentene þoufend :/
felere þeinen.	felere cnihtes.
Seoððen com Heowel :/	þar after com Howel :/
mid hif kēppen swiðe wel.	
mid an and twenti þufen[2] :/	mid on and twenti þoufend :/
mid[3] aðelere kempen.	
Seoððen com Arður :/	þo com Arthur him feolf :/
aðeleft kingen.	
mid feouen & twenti þufend :/	mid fouene and twenti þoufend.
fiȝen heom afterward. [f. 125b. c. 1.]	
fceldes þer clifedē :/	fcealdes þar gliffenede :/
lihten hit gon dæȝen.	and liht hit gan daȝeie.
Þat word com to Scotten :/	þat word com to Scottef :/
þær þar heo wuneden.	þar þat hii wonede.

'With *a* great army *he marched* into [and marchēd with his host toward] Moray; forth gan press thirteen thousand 'in the foremost flock, men exceeding keen.' Afterwards came Cador, the earl of Cornwall, with seventeen thousand good 'thanes [knights]. 'Next [Thereafter] came Howel, 'with his champions exceeding well,' with one and twenty thousand 'noble champions.' Then came Arthur [himself], 'noblest of kings'; with seven and twenty thousand 'followed them afterward'; *the* shields there glistened, [and] light it gan to dawn. The tidings came to *the* Scots, 'there where [where that] they

[1] *Sic MS.* [2] þufend? [3] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
hu Arður þe kīg :/	hou Arthur þe king :/
com touward heore londe.	com to hire londe.
feōdliche ſwiðe :/	
mid vnimete folke.	
Þa weoren ærheſt :/	Þo weren hii ȝearþheſt :/
þat ær weoren baldeſt.	þat her weren baldeſt. [c. 2.]
and gunnen to fleonnen :/	and gonne to fleonde :/
feondliche ſwiðe.	feondeliche ſwiþe.
into þan watere :/	in to þan watere :/
þer wunderes beoð inoȝe.	þar wondres beoþ inowe.
þat is a ſeolcuð mere :/	þat his a wonder mere :/
iſet a middelærde.	iſet in middilerþe.
mid fenne & mid ræode :/	mid fenne and mid reode :/
mid watere ſwiðe bræde.	and mid water brode.
mid fiſcen & mid feoȝelen :/	
mid uniuele þīgē.	
þat water is unimete brade :/	þat water his onimete brod :/
nikeres þer badieð inne.	nikeres þar wonieþ.
þer if æluene ploȝe :/	
in atteliche pole.	
Sixti æit-londes :/	Sixti eÿllondes.
beoð i þā watere longe.	beoþ in þan mere longe.
in ælc of þan æit-londe :/	in ech of þan ÿllond :/
is a clude hæh and ſtrong.	his a chlud ſwiþe ſtrong.
þer næſtieð arnes :/	þar neſtleþ hearnes :/

dwelt, how Arthur the king came to 'ward' their land, 'exceeding quickly, with innumerable folk.' Then were [they] fearfullest, who ere were boldest, and gan to flee exceeding quickly into the water, where wonders are enow! That is a marvellous lake, set in middle-earth, with fen (marsh), and with reed, [and] with water 'exceeding' broad; 'with fish, and with fowl, with evil things!' The water is immeasurably broad; nikers 'therein bathe [there dwell]; 'there is play of elves in *the* hideous pool.' Sixty islands are in the long 'water [lake]; in each of the islands is a rock 'high and [most] strong; there 'nest [nestle] eagles, and other great fowls. The eagles

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& oðere græte uoȝeles.	and oþer grete foȝeles.
Þe ærnes habbeoð ane laȝe:	Þe hearnes habbeþ one lawe:
bi æuerælches kinges dahȝen.	bi euereche kingef dawe.
whænne fwa æi ferde:	wane fo enẏ ferde:
fundeð to þā ærde.	fundeþ to þan erþe.
Þeonne fleoð þa fuȝelef:	þanne fleoþ þe foȝeles:
feor i þan lufte.	for in to þan lufte.
moni hundred þufen[1]:	
& muchel feoht makieð.	
Þenne if þat folc buten wene:	
þat reouðe heō if to cumene.	
of fummef cunnef leoden: [c. 2.]	
þe þat lond wulleð ifechen.	
Tweien dæȝef oðer þreo:	Twei daȝef oþer þreo:
þus fcal þif taken[2] beo.	þus fal þe tockne beo.
ær unkuðe men:	
to þan londe liðen.	
ȝet þer if fellic:	ȝet þat his fellich:
to fuggen of þan watere.	to feggen of þan watere.
þer walleð of þan mærē:	þar falleþ in þan mere:
a moniare fiden.	
of dalen & of dunen:	
& of bæcchen deopen.	
fixti wateres:	manẏ cunnef watereſ:

have a law by every kings day; whensoever any army cometh to the country, then fly the fowls far in[to] the sky, 'many hundred thousands, and mickle fight make. Then is the folk without doubt, that sorrow is to come to them from people of some kind, that will seek the land.' Two days or three thus shall 'this [the] token be, 'ere foreign men approach to the land.' Yet 'there [that] is *a* marvellous *thing* to say of the water; there falleth in the lake, 'on many a side, from dales and from downs, and from deep valleys, sixty streams, all there collected; so (yet) never out of the lake any man

[1] þufend?

[2] *On erasure, but by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
alle þer iſomned.	
ſwa neuere ut of þan mære:	
na man no uindeð.	
þat þer ut wenden:	and vt noþing ne goþ:
buten an an ænde.	in neuere one ſide.
an imetliche broc:	
þe of þan mere ualleð.	
& swiðe iſemeliche:	
into fæ wendeð.	
þa Scotteſ weoren to-deled:	þar ine weren Scotteſ:
mid muclen vīſelen.	
ȝeond þa monie mūtē:	oueral þan munteſ.
þa i þan watere weoren.	
Arður biſeohte ſcipen:	and Arthur him bi-ſohte ſipes:
& gon heom to wenden.	and in him gan wende.
& ſloh þer vniuoȝe:	and ſloh þar onifoȝe:
moni and inoȝe.	mani and inoȝe.
& mōi þuſend[1] þer wes dæd:	
for heō trukede ælc bræd.	
Arður þe aðele:	Arthur þe king:
was an æſt ſide.	was on eaſt ende.
Howel þe ſele:	Howel þe ſele:
wes a suð halme[2].	was a ſuþ ende.

findeth that thereout *they* flow, except a small brook at one end, that from the lake falleth, and wendeth very stilly into *the* sea [waters of many kind, and nothing goeth out on never one side]. The Scots were 'dispersed [therein] 'with much misery,' over [all] the 'many' mounts 'that were in the water. [And] Arthur sought [him] ships, and 'gan to enter them [in him gan wend]; and slew there without number, many and enow; 'and many *a* thousand there was dead, because each (all) bread failed them.' Arthur the 'noble [king] was on *the* east 'side [end]; Howel the good was on *the* south 'half [end]; and Cador the keen guarded 'them [it]

[1] *On erasure, but by first hand.*

[2] halue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& Cador þe kene :/	and Cador þe kene :/
bi norðen heom biwuſten.	bi norþe hit wiſte.
and his ſmale uolc :/	and his ſmale folk :/
he ſetten alle bi weſte ſiden.	he ſette al bi weſte. [f.101.c.1.]
Þa weoren Scottes :/	Þo weren Scoteſ :/
ihalden for ſottes.	
þer heo leieien ȝeōd þa cliues :/	
faſte bi-cluſeð[1]. [f.126.c.1.]	
þer weoren ſixti þuſend :/	
mid forreȝe for-farene.	mid honger iburſted.
Gillomar. Þa wes Irlondes king :/	Þar[2] Irlondes king :/
icum̄ in to hafene.	icome was to haue[3].
twalf mileṇ frō Arðure :/	twealf mẏle fram Arthur :
þer he lai mid ferde.	þar he laẏ mid ferde.
Scotten to hælpen :/	Scotteſ to helpe :/
Howel to for-farene.	and Arthur to cwelle.
Þer[4] iherden Arður :/	
aðeleſt kinge.	
& nom hiſ ane ferde :/	Arthur his one ferde nam :/
& þiderward fuſden.	and þiderwardes wende.
& funde þene king Gillomar :/	and funde þane king Gillomar :/
þe icumen wes to londe þar.	þat icome was to londe þar.
Arður him faht wið :/	and Arthur heom faht wiþ :/
& nolde him ȝiuen na grið.	and ȝef ȝam no griþ.

by *the* north; and his inferior folk he set all by *the* west 'side'. Then were *the* Scots 'accounted for sots, where they lay around the cliffs, fast inclosed; there were sixty thousand' with 'sorrow [hunger] destroyed. 'Then [There] was come 'into [to] haven *the* king of Ireland; twelve miles from Arthur, where he lay with *an* army, to help the Scots, [and] 'Howel [Arthur] to 'destroy [kill]. Arthur 'heard this, noblest of kings, and' took one host of his, and thitherward marched; and found the king Gillomar, who was come there to land. [And] Arthur fought with 'him [them], and 'would give him [gave them] no peace (quarter), and felled

[1] bi-cluſed? [2] þa? [3] *R.* hauenc. [4] þis?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and feolde Iriſce men :	and fulde Ireſſe men :
feondliche to g^{u}den.	manye to grunde.
And Gillomar mid twalf ſcipen :	And Gellomar mid twelf ſipes :
teh from þan londe.	
& ferde to Irlonde :	fleoh to Irlonde :
mid harme swiðe ſtronge.	
And Arður a þan londe :	And Arthur in þan londe :
floh[1] al þat he uunde.	floh al þat he funde.
and ſeoððen he wende to þan mere :	and wende ſuþþe to þan mere :
þer he hiſ mæi lette.	þar he Howe[2] bi-lefde.
Howel þene hende :	
hahſt of Brutlonde.	
wið uten Arðure :	
aðeleſt kingen.	
Arður Howel uunde :	Arthur Howel funde :
þer he wes bi hauene.	þar he was bi hauene.
bi þan mere brade :	
þer he abiden hafde.	
Þa fainede ſwiðe :	
folc an hirede.	
of Arðures cume :	
& of aðele hiſ dede.	
þer wes Arður ford[3] riht :	and þar a-bide forþ riht :

the Irish men 'exceedingly [many] to *the* ground. And Gillomar with twelve ships 'departed from the land, and' 'proceeded [fled] to Ireland, 'with harm most strong.' And Arthur in the land slew all that he found; and afterwards 'he' went to the lake, where he left 'his relation' Howel 'the fair, noblest of Britain, except Arthur, noblest of kings.' Arthur found Howel, where he was by *the* haven, 'by the broad lake, where he had abode. Then rejoiced greatly *the* folk in *the* host, of Arthurs arrival, and of his noble deeds;' 'there was Arthur [and there abode] forthright, two days and two nights. 'The Scots lay over *the* rocks, many

[1] *The first letter has been corrected.* [2] *R.* Howel. [3] forð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

twei dæies & twa niht:
Scottef leie ȝeōd clude:' [c. 2.]
moni þuſend dede.
mid hungere for-uarene:'
folkene alre ærmeſt.
I þan þridde dæiȝe:'
faire hit gon daȝiȝen.
þa tuȝen touward hirede:'
alle þat weoren ihaddcd.
& þreo biſcopes wife:'
a boke wel ilæred.
preoſtes & mucnekes[1]:'
vnimete monie.
canones þer comen:'
monie & wel idone.
mid alle þan halidomē:'
þa hahſt an londe weoren.
and ȝeornden Arðuref grið:'
& his aðmeden.
þider þa wifes comen:'
þa i þan londen wuneden.
heo wæiden in hære ærmen:'
heore childrē ærmen.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

twei daȝes and two niht.

In þan þridde daiȝe:'
fair hit gan daȝeie.
þo come toward ferde:'
alle þat hoded were.
biſſopes and canounes:'
preoſtes and clerekes.
mid manẏ halidomes:'
[2]
and beden of Arthur griþ:'
þat hii moſte ſpeken him wiþ.
þider þe wifues come:'
þat in þan londe weren.

thousands dead, with hunger destroyed, most miserable of all folk!' On the third day, it gan to dawn fair; then came toward *the* host all that were hooded, 'and three wise bishops, in book well learned [bishops and canons]; priests and 'monks [clerks], 'many without number; canons there came, many and good,' with 'all the [many] reliques 'that were noblest in *the* land,' and 'yearned Arthurs [prayed of Arthur] peace, 'and his compassion [that they might speak with him]. Thither came the women, that 'dwelt [were] in the land; 'they carried in their arms their miserable children'; they wept before Arthur wondrously much, and their fair hair

[1] munekes?

[2] *A line is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
heo weopen on Arðure:	hii wepen vppen Arthur:
wunder ane ſwiðe.	wonderliche ſwiþe. [c. 2.]
and heore uæx fæire:	and hire her faire:
wælden to volde.	al hii to-tere.
curuen heore lockes:	corue hire lockes:
& þer niðer læiden.	and þar a-dun laide.
to þas kinges foten:	bi-vore þis kingeſ fote:
bi-foren al his duȝeðen.	to-fore alle his cnihteſ.
nailes to heore nebbe:	naȳleſ fette to nebbe:
þat æfter hit bledde.	þat after hit bledde.
Neh þan alle clæne:	
nakede heo weoren.	
sorhliche heo gunnen clupien:	and þus hii gonne grede:
to Arðure þan kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
and ſumed þuſ iſeiden:	
þer heo on ſið weoren.	
King we beoð on ærde: [f.126b, c.1.]	
ærmeſt alre uolke.	
we ȝeorneð þine milzce:	King we biddeþ þine milce:
þurh þæne milde godd.	for loue of al-mihti.
þu haueſt a þiſſe londe:	þou haueſt of oure londe:
ure leoden aflæȝen.	oure men iflawe.
mid hungere & mid hete:	mid hunger and mid hate:
mid feole cunne hærmē.	and mid fale harmes.
mid wapnen mid wæteren:	

'threw to *the* earth [they tore all in pieces]; cut off their locks, and there down laid 'at the [before this] kings feet, before all his people; [set] *their* nails to their face, *so* that after*wards* it bled. 'They were naked nigh (nearly) all clean;' *and* 'sorrowfully [and thus] they gan to 'call [cry] to Arthur the king, 'and together thus said, where they were in affliction' (?): "King, 'we are on earth most wretched of all folk'; we 'yearn [pray] thy mercy, 'through the mild God [for love of *the* Almighty]! Thou hast 'in this [of our] land our 'people [men] slain, with hunger and with strife (?), [and] with many kind of harms; 'with weapon, with water, *and* with many

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid feole wan-fiðen.[a]	
vre children imaked faderlefe:	
& frofre bidæled.	
Þu ært crifting mon:	Þou hart crifteneman:
& we al fwa funden.	and we beoþ al fon.
Sæxifce men beoð:	
hæðe[1] hundes.	
Heo comen to þiffe londe:	
and þif folc here aqualden.	
ȝif we heom hereden:	
þat was for ure hermē.	
for we nefden nænne mon:	
þe us wið heom mihtē griðien.	
Heo uf duden fwiðe wa:	þe heaþene vs dude moche wo:
& þu uf deft al fwa.	and þou vs doft al fo.
þa heðene uf hatieð:	
& þe criftine uf fari makieð.	
wær fcullen we bicumen:	ware folle we bi-come:
queðen þa wif to þan kinge.	cwaþ þe wifues to þan kinge.
Aȝef uf ȝet þa quicke men:	ȝef vs ȝet þe cwike men:
þa liggeð ȝeōd þas cluden.	þat liggeð ine clude.
and ȝif þu ȝiueft milze:	
þiffe moncunnen.	

mischiefs our children made fatherless and deprived of comfort.' Thou art *a* christian man, and we are also; '*the* Saxish men are heathen hounds. They came to this land, and this folk here killed; if we obeyed them, that was because of our harm, for we had no man that might accord us with them.' 'They [the heathens] did us much woe, and thou dost to us also; 'the heathens us hate, and the christians make us sorrowful';—where*to* shall we become (what will become of us)!"—quoth the women to the king. "Give us yet the men alive, who lie 'over these [in *the*] rocks; 'and if thou givest grace to this multitude, thy honor will be the greater,

[1] hæðene?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þi mon-ſcipe bið þa mare:	
nu and æuere mære.	
Lauer[1] Arður ure kīg:	Louerd Arthur þe king:
leoðe vre benden.	ſlake oure bendes.
þu hafuſt al þiſ lond inomen:	þou haueſt al þiſ lond inome:
& al þiſ folc ouercumen. [c. 2.]	and þis folk his ouercome.
we beoð under uote:	we beoþ vnder fote:
a þe iſ al þa bote.	in þe his al þe bote.
þiſ iherde Arður:	þis i-horde Arthur þe king:
aðeleſt kingen.	Bruttene deorling.
þeſne wop & þeſne rop:	
& reouðen vniuoȝe.	
þa toc he to ræde:	and ȝeode to reade:
and reoſede on heorte.	and roufede on heorte.
he uunde on his ræde:	and funde in his reade:
to don þat heo hīe bedē.	don þat hii hine bede.
he ȝæf heō lif he ȝef heom lumen:	
& heore lond to halden.	
He lette blæwen bemen:	He hehte blouwen bumes:
and þa Scottes bæcnien.	and bannien Scotteſ.
& heo ut of cluden:	hii cropen vt of cloudes:
to þan ſcipen comen.	
an auerælchen ſiden:	in euereche ſides.

now and evermore.' Lord Arthur 'our [the] king, loosen our bonds! Thou hast taken (conquered) all this land, and 'all' this folk [is] overcome; we are under *thy* foot; in thee is all the remedy." Arthur [the king] heard this, 'noblest of kings [Britons darling]; 'this weeping and this lament, and immoderate sorrow'; 'then took he [and went] to counsel, and had pity in heart; 'he [and] found in his counsel to do what they him prayed; 'he gave them life, he gave them limb, and their land to hold.' He caused *the* trumpets to be blown, and 'the' Scots to be summoned; 'and' they 'came [crept] out of *the* rocks 'to the ships'; on every side 'approached toward land. They were

[1] Lauerd?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
fiȝen touwar[1] londe.	
Heo weoren fwiðe iharmede:	
mid fcærpen þan hungre.	
aðes heo fworen:	and oþes þar fworen:
fwiken þ[2] nalden.	fwike þat hii nolden. [f.101b. c.1.]
and heo þa iȝefuen:	
ȝifles þan kingen.	
and alle ful fone:	and alle fol fone:
þaf kinges men bicomen.	þis kinges men bi-come.
& seoððen heo gunnen fufen:	And þo hii gonne wende:
þat folc þer to-delden.	
ælc mon to þan ende:	ech man to his ende.
þer[3] he wes wuniende.	
and Arður þer grið fette:	and Arthur griþ fette:
god mid þan bezfte.	god mid þan befte.
Whær ært þu Howel mi mæi:	þo fayde Arthur:
monne me leofeft.	to Howel his maye.
ifixft þu þifne muchelne mære:	i-fihte þifne mere:
þer Scottes beoð amærred.	þat her his bi-halues.
ifihft þu þaf hæhȝe treon:	
and fihft þu þas ærnefteon. [f.127.c.1.]	
inne þiffe uenne:	
if fifc unimete.	

greatly harmed by the sharp hunger;' [and] oaths 'they [there] swore, that they would not deceive; 'and they then gave hostages to the king,' and all full soon became 'the [this] kings men. And then they gan depart; 'the folk there separated,' each man to 'the [his] end, 'where he was dwelling;' and Arthur 'there' set peace, good with the best. [Then said Arthur:] '"Where art thou, [to] Howel, 'my [his] relation, 'dearest of men to me?' 'Seest thou [Behold] this great lake, 'where *the* Scots are harmed [that is here beside]; 'seest thou these high trees, and seest thou these eagles fly? In this fen is fish innumerable. Seest thou these islands, that stand over

[1] touward? [2] þ heo? [3] þær þer, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix. MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

iſihſt þu þas æit-londes :/
þe ȝeond þas watere ſtondeð.
Seollic þuhte Howel :/
of ſwulchere iſihðe.
and wonddrede wide[1] :/
bi þan watere flode.
and þus þer cleopede Howel :/
hæhef cunnes.
Seoððen ich wes mon iboren :/
of mire moder boſme.
no iſah ich a none londe :/
þuf ſeolcude[2] þinges.
swa ich here biuoren me :/
mid æȝenen bihalde.
Wundreden Bruttes :/
wunder ane ſwiðe.
Þa cleope Arður :/
aðeleſt kingen.
Howel min aȝe mæi :/
monnen me leofeſt.
luſt mire worden :/
of mucle mære wunder.
þat ic þe wulle tellen :/
of ſoðe mine ſpellē.
Bi þiſſe mære[3] enden :/ In to þan mere :/

this water?" Marvellous *it* seemed to Howel, of such *a* sight, and *he* wondered greatly by the water-flood; and thus there spake Howel, of noble race: "Since I was born man of my mothers bosom, saw I in no land things thus (so) wonderful, as I here before me behold with eyes!" *The* Britons wondered wondrously much. Then spake Arthur, noblest of kings: "Howel, mine own relative, dearest to me of men, listen to my words, of *a* much greater wonder that I will tell to thee in my sooth speech.' 'By this

[1] ſwiðe? [2] ſeolcuðe? [3] *This word is sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þer þis water wendeð.	on lutel water wendeþ.
if an lutel wiht mære ⁊	
monnen to wundre.	
he if end-longe ⁊	hit his on lengþe ⁊
feouwer & fixti munden.	four and twēti mundes.
he is imeten a bræde ⁊	hit his imete in brede ⁊
fif & twenti foten.	fif and twenti fote.
fif fotē he is deop ⁊	fif fote hit hit[1] his deop ⁊
alfene hine dŭlfen.	aluene hine dolue.
Feower noked he is ⁊	Four nokede hit his ⁊
and þer inē is feower kunnes fifc.	and þar in his four cunne fifc.
and ælc fifc an his ende ⁊	and ech fifc in his ende ⁊
þer he his cun findeð.	ware was his cunde.
ne mai þer nan to oðere ⁊ [c. 2.]	þat non þoh hii wolde ⁊
buten al fwa tacheð hif icunde.	[2]
Nes næuer nan mon iboren ⁊	þar nif no man ibore ⁊
ne of fwa wife crafte icoren.	no fo wittȳ icore.
no libbe he fwa longe ⁊	
þe maȝen hit vnder-ftonde.	
what letteð þene fifc ⁊	þat wite wat lette þane fifc ⁊
to uleoten to þan oðere.	for fleote to oþer.
for nif þer noht bitwenen ⁊	for noht nif bi-twine ⁊

lakes end, where this [Into the lake a little] water floweth, is a certain little lake, to *the* wonder of men! It is in length four and 'sixty [twenty] palms; it is in measure in breadth five and twenty feet; five feet it is deep; elves it dug! Four-cornered it is, and therein is fish of four kinds, and each fish in his end where 'he findeth [was] his kind; 'may there none *go* to other, except all as belongeth to his kind [*so* that none, though they would, *can pass to another*]. 'Was never any [There is no] man born, nor 'of so wise craft [so witty] chosen, 'live he *ever* so long,' that may 'understand it [know]; what letteth (hindereth) the fish [for] to swim to 'the' others; for 'there' is nought between but water clean!" 'The yet spake

[1] *Sic MS.*

[2] *A line is here wanting.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

buten water clæne.
þa ȝet cleopede Arður:
aðcleft kingen.
Howel i þiſſen lōdes ænde:
neh þere fæ ſtronde.
if a mære swiðe muchel:
þat water if un-fæle.
and whænne þa fæ vledeð:
swulc heo wulle aweden.
and falleð ine þene mære:
vnimete ſwiðe.
no bið næuere þæ mere:
on watere þa mare.
Ah þenne þa fæ falleð in:
and ſcen warð þa uolden.
and heo bið al inne:
in alden hire dēne.
þenne swelleð þe mære:
and ſwærkeð þa vðen.
vðē þer leppeoð ut:
vnimete g^te.
fleoð ut a þat lond:
þat leoden agriſeð an hond.
ȝif þer cumeð æi mon:
þat noht ne cunne þer on.
þat ſeollic to iſeonne:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

bote water cleane.

Arthur, noblest of kings: "Howel, in this lands end, nigh the sea-strand, is a lake exceeding great,—the water is evil,—and when the sea floweth, as if it would rage, and falleth in the lake exceeding quickly, the lake is never the more *increased* in water. But when the sea falleth in (ebbs), and the ground becomes fair (?), and in it is all in its old seat, then swelleth the lake, and the waves darken; out *the* waves there leap, exceeding great, flow out on the land, *and* the people soon terrify. If any man cometh there, that knoweth nought thereof, to behold the marvel by the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

bi þere fæ ſtrønde.
ȝif he hiſ neb wendeð:
tøuwærd þan mære.
ne beo he noht ſwa loh iboren:
ful wel he beoð iborȝen. [f.127b, c.1.]
þat wat[9] him glit biſiden:
and þe mon þer wuneð ſofte.
after hiſ iwille:
he wuneð þer uul ſtille.
þat no bið he for þan watere:
naðing idracched.
Þa ſæide Howel:
hæh mon of Brutten.
Nu ic ihere tellen:
ſeolcuðe ſpellen.
& ſeollic if þe lauerd:
þat al hit iſette.
Þa cleopede Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
Blaweð mine hørnes:
mid hæhȝere ſtæfne.
and ſuggeð mine cnihtef:
þ ic fare førð rihte.
Bemen þer blewen:
hørnes þer ſtureden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þo ſaide Arthur:
baldeſt alre kinge.
Leteþ blowe bumes:
warnie cnihtes.
þat ich faren wolle:
vt of þiſſe londe.

sea-strand; if he turneth his face toward the lake, be he nought (never) so low born, full well he shall be saved; the water glideth him beside, and the man there remaineth easy; after his will he dwelleth there full still, *so* that he is not for (on account of) the water anything injured!" Then said Howel, noble man of Brittany: "Now I hear tell *a* wonderful story, and marvellous is the Lord that it all made!" Then said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "'Blow *ye* my horns [Cause trumpets to be blown] 'with loud noise, and' 'say *ye* to my [to warn] knights, that I [will] march 'forth-right [out of this land]." 'Trumpets there were blown, horns there

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bliſſe wes an hiredere[1] :·	
mid biſie þan kinge.	
for ælc weſ ifreoured :·	
& ferde toward hiſ ærd.	
And þe king for-bæd heom :·	
bi heore bare liuen.	
þat na mon on worlde :·	
swa wod no iwurðe.	
no ſwa ær witte gume :·	
þat his grið bræke.	
and ȝif hit dude æi mon :·	
he ſculden dō ðolien.	
Æfne þan worde :·	Efne þan worde :·
fuſde þa uærde.	wende þe ferde.
þer ſuggen beornes :·	þar ſongen cnihtes :·
ſeolcuðe leoðes.	of ſelcouþe londes.
of Ardure[2] þā kinge :·	of Arthur þan kinge :·
& of his here-þringē.	and of his here-dringes.
and ſæiden on ſonge :·	and ſeiden on ſonge :·
to þiſſe worlde longe.	to þiſſe worle longe.
neo[3] neuere mære ſwulc king :·	ne worþ neuere ſoch king :·
aſe Arður þurh alle þing.	aſe Arthur þorh alle þing.
kīg no kæiſere :· [c. 2.]	king ne caÿſer icore :·
in næuere nare kuððe.	in neuere none cuþþe.

resounded; bliss was in *the* host with the busy king; for each was solaced, and proceeded toward his land. And the king forbade them, by their bare life, that no man in *the* world should be so mad, nor person so unwise, that *he* should break his peace; and if any man did it, he should suffer doom.' Even with the words the army marched; there sung 'warriors marvellous songs [knights of strange lands] of Arthur the king, and of his chieftains, and said in song, to this worlds end never more' would be such *a* king as Arthur, through all things, king nor [chosen] caiser, in ever any

[1] hirede? [2] *R.* Arðure. [3] neore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Arður forð to Eouuerwic :/
mid folke fwiðe feollic.
and wunede þer wiken fixe :/
mid muchelere wunne.
Þa burh walles weoren :/
to-broken & to-fallen.
þat Childric al for-barnden :/
& þa hallen alle clæne.
Þa cleopede þe king :/
Piram. Piram ænne preoſt mæren.
he wes swiðe wis mon :/
and witful on bocken.
Piram þu ært min aȝe preoſt :/
þe æð þe scal iwurden[1].
Þe king nō ane rode :/
hali and swiðe gode.
and[2] Piram an hond :/
and þer mid swiðe muchel lond.
and þene ærchebiſcopes ſtaf :/
þer he Pirā aȝaf.
ær wes Piram preoſt god :/
nu he if ærchebiſcop.
Þa hæhte hine Arður :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

ARthur forþ to Euerwich :/
mid folke ſwiþe ſellich. [c.2.]
and wonede þare fix wikes :/
mid mochelere winne.
Þe borh walleſ weren :/
to-broken and to-fallen.
þe chirchen for-barnd :/
þe halleſ to-fallen.
Þo cleopede þe king :/
one preſt Pẏram.
he was ſwiþe wiſ man :/
and witfol on boke.
Þe king an halidom nam :/
and bi-toc Pẏram.
and þan archebiſſop ſtaf :/
þare he Pẏram ȝaf.
her was Pẏram preoſt god :/
nou he his archebiſſop.
Þo him bad Arthur :/

realm! Arthur proceeded to York, with folk very surprising (numerous), and dwelt there six weeks with much joy. The burgh walls were broken and fallen down, 'that Childric all [the churches] consumed, 'and' the halls 'all clean [fallen down]. Then called the king a 'distinguished' priest, Piram;—he was *an* exceeding wise man, and learned in book:—'"Piram, thou art mine own priest, the easier *it* shall be for thee."' The king took a 'rood [relique], 'holy and most good,' and gave to Piram in hand, 'and therewith very much land'; and the archbishops staff he there gave to Piram;—ere was Piram *a* good priest, now is he archbishop! Then bade

[1] iwurðen?

[2] and bi-tok?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
aðeleſt kīgen.	
þat he rærde churechen :/	cherches a-rere :/
& þa ſonges rihten.	
and goddes folc biwuſten :/	and godef worc rihte :/
& fæire heō dihtten.	and þe folk dihte.
And he hæhte alle cnihtes :/	And he bad alle his cnihtef :/
demen rihte domes.	deme rihte domef.
and þa eorðe-tilien :/	and þe erþe-tilief :/
teon to heore cræften.	hire lond teorne.
& æuerælcne gume :/	and euerec[1] gome :/
oðerne igræten.	oþerne hi-grete.
& wulc mon swa wurf dude :/	And woch man oþer dude :/
þene þe king hafde ibodē.	þane þe king hadde ibode.
he wolde hine ifuſen :/	he ſolde dom þolie :/
to ane bare walme.	at þe king his wille.
& ȝif hit weore læð mon :/	
he ſculde hongie for þon.	
Þa ȝet cleope Arður :/ [f. 128. c. 1.]	ȝet clepede Arthur :/
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
hæhte þat alc mon :/	
þe hiſ lond hafde for-gan.	hehte þat his lond hadde ilore :/
mid wulchef cunnes wite :/	
swa he bi-wæiued weore.	

him Arthur, 'noblest of kings,' 'that he should arear [to arear] churches, and restore 'the hymns (?), and take charge of' Gods 'folk [work], and rule 'them fair [the folk]. And he bade all [his] knights to deem right (just) dooms; and the earth-tillers to 'take to their craft [turn their land]; and every man to greet other. And what man 'so*ever*,' did 'worse [other*wise*] than the king had ordered, he 'would drive him to a bare burning, and if it were *a* base man, he should for that hang [should suffer doom, at the king his will]. 'The' yet spake Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; ordered 'that each man' who had lost his land 'by whatso*ever* kind of punishment he were bereaved,' that he should come 'again [to him], 'full' quickly and

[1] euerech?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þat he aȝain come:	þat he to him come.
ful raðe & ful ſone.	raþe and ful ſone.
þe riche & þe laȝe:	þe riche and þe lowe:
and hefde æft hiſ aȝen.	to habbe ȝein his owe.
bute he weore swa fule[1] biwite:	bote he were ſo vuel bi-ȝete:
þ he weore lauerd-ſwike.	þat he were louerd-ſwike.
oðer touward hiſ lauer[2] man-swore:	oþer to his louerd man-ſwore:
þene þe king demde for-lore.	þane þe king demde ilore.
þer come þreo ibroðeren:	þar comen þe þreo broþers:
þe weore kiniborne.	þat weren kinebore.
Lot. Angel. Vrien. Lot & Angel & Vrien:	Loth Augel and Vrien:
welle hwulche þreo men.	wele woche þreo men. [f. 102. c. 1.]
þeos here-þrīges þreo:	þeos þre heredringes:
comen to þan kige[3].	come to þan kinge.
& ſetten an heore cneowen:	and ſete on hire cnouwes:
biforen þan kæiſere.	bi-fore þā caiſere.
Hal ſeo þu Arður:	Haỳl beo þou Arthur:
aðeleſt kīgē.	
and þi duȝeðe mid þe:	an alle þine cnihteſ.
a mote heo wel beo.	
We sundeð þreo broðeren:	We beoþ þreo broþereſ:
iboren of kīgen.	ibore al of kinges.

full soon,—the rich and the low,—'and should have eft [to have again] his own, unless he were so 'foully [evilly] conditioned, that he were traitor to *his* lord, or 'toward [to] his lord forsworn, whom the king should deem lost (out of the limits of pardon). There came [the] three 'brethren [brothers], that were royally born, Loth, 'and' Angel, and Urien;—well *are* such three men! These three chieftains came to the king, and set on their knees before the caiſer:—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of kings,' and 'thy people with thee [all thy knights]; 'ever may they well be!' We are three 'brethren [brothers], born [all] of kings. All our 'rightful land

[1] *The first two letters of this word are sup. ras. by a second hand.*
[2] lauerd?
[3] *R.* kinge.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

if al ure icũde lond :/
i-gan ut of ure hond.
for habbeoð hæðene men :/
uf hene imakede.
and iwæft[1] uf al Leonæis :
Scotlond & Muræf.
& we biddeð þe for godef luue :/
þat þu uf beo fultume.
and for þire mucle wurðfcipe :/
þat þu us wurðe milde. [c. 2.]
aȝif uf ure icunde lond :/
and we þe fculleð luuien.
hælden þe for lauer[2] :/
an ælche leod wifen.
þif iherde Arður :/
aðeleft king.
hu þeos þreo cnihtes :/
fæire hine bifohten.
reoufede on heorte :/
& he reordien gan.
and þas word fæide :/
feleft alre kinge.
Vrien bi-cum mi mon :/
þu fcalt to Muræiue aȝæn.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

his al oure kine-lond :/
igo vt of vre hond.
for þe heaþene men :/
pore vs habbeþ imaked.
and iweft vs Leoneys :/
Scotlond and Moraynes.
And we biddeþ þe for godes loue :/
þot þou vs be a foltome.
for þine mochele worfipe :/
þat þou vs milde worþe.
and ȝef vs oure icunde lond :/
and we þe wolleþ louie.
holde þe for louerd :/
on euereche wise.
þis ihorde Arthur :/
boldeft alre kinge.
ou þes þreo cnihtef :/
faire hine bi-fohte.
he reoufede on heorte :/
and þes word faide.
Vrian bi-com mi man :/
þou falt Moraýne habbe.

[kingdom] is gone out of our hand; for [the] heathen men have made us poor, and wasted us all Leoneis, Scotland, and Moray. And we pray thee, for Gods love, that thou be to us [in] aid, 'and' for thy great honor, that thou be mild to us, [and] give us our rightful land; and we 'shall [will] love thee, *and* hold thee for lord, in 'each land- [every] wise." Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, how these three knights fair besought him; [he] had compassion in heart, 'and he gan speak,' and said these words,—'best of all kings':—"Urien, become my man; thou shalt 'to Moray again [have Moray]; thereof thou

[1] iwræft, *pr. m.*

[2] lauerd ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þer of þu ſcalt beon icleoped:
king of þan londe.
& hæh an mine hirede:
mid þine[1] mon-weorede.
And Angele ich ſette an hond:
al to-gædere Scotlond.
habbe hit an honde:
and beon king of þan londe.
from þan fader to þan ſune:
þer of þu ſcalt mi mon bi-cumen.
And þu Lot mi leofe freond:
godd þe wurðe liðe.
þu haueſt mine ſuſter to wiue:
þæ bet þe ſcal iwurde[2].
Ich þe ȝifue Loenæis:
þat if is[3] a lond faier.
and ich wulle lengen[4] þer to:
londes swiðe gode.
biſide þere Hũbre:
wurð an hundred punden.
For mi fader Vðer:
þe while þe he wes king here.
lufede wel hiſ dohter:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þar of þou ſalt beon icleoped:
king of þan londe.
And Augel ich take þe an hond:
al to-gadere Scotlond.
habben hit an hond:
and beon king of þan londe.
fram þan fader to þan ſone:
þar of þou ſalt mi man bicome.
And þou Loth min leoue man:
god þe worþe milde.
þou haueſt mine ſoſter:
þe bet þe ſal iworþe. [c. 2.]
Ich þe ȝeue Leoneys:
þat his a lond riche.
and ich wolle legge þar to:
londeſ ſwiþe gode.
bi-ſides Norþhumbre:
worþ an hundred pund.
For mi fader Vther:
wile þat he was king her.
louede ſwiþe his dohter:

[f. 128ᵇ. c. 1.]

shalt be called king of the land, 'and high in my court (*or* host), with thy forces.' And 'to' Angel I 'set [give thee] in hand Scotland altogether; to have it in hand, and be king of the land, from the father to the son; thereof thou shalt my man become. And thou, Loth, my dear 'friend [man],—God be to thee mild!—thou hast my sister 'to wife'; the better *it* shall be for thee. I give thee Leoneis, that is a land 'fair [rich]; and I will lay (add) thereto lands most good, beside 'the Humber [North-humber], worth an hundred pounds. For my father Uther, 'the' while that he was king here, loved

[1] þinne, *pr. m.*
[2] iwurðe?
[3] *Sic MS.*
[4] leggen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þe wes hiſ bæd iþohte.	þorh alle cunnes þinge.
& heo iſ mi ſuſter:	
& haueð ſunen tweien.	And ſonef ȝeo haueþ tweie:
þeo me beoð ō londe:	leof hii beoþ me beie.
children alre leofeſt.	
Þus ſpæc Ardur[1] þe king:	
þa wes Walwain lute child.	þat was Woweyn and Modred: [*Wal*]*wein.*
swa weſ[2] þe oðer:	for ȝam þou ſalt iworþe bet.
Modræd hiſ broðrer[3].	
wale þat Moddræd wef ibore:	Ac walawo þat Modred was ibore: [*M*]*odrid.*
muchel hærm com þer fore.	moche harm com þar vore.
Ardur[1] for to Lundene:	Arthur com to Londene:
& mid him his leoden.	and mid him his leode.
he heold inne londe:	and he þare makede:
ane muchele huſtinge.	ſwiþe mochele ſpeche.
and ſette alle þa laȝen:	and ſette alle þe lawes:
þat ſtoden bi his ælderne daȝen.	þat ſtode bi his eldre daȝef.
alle þa laȝen gode:	
þe her ær ſtoden.	
he ſette grið he ſette frið:	
and alle freodomes.	
þenene he for to Coꝛwale:	Fram þanene he wende:

'well [greatly] his daughter, 'who was his desire (?) esteemed [through all kind of thing]; 'and she is my sister,' and sons [she] hath twain; they are to me 'in land dearest of all children [both dear].'' 'Thus spake Arthur the king.' 'Then was Walwain *a* little child; so was the other, Modred his brother. [that was Woweyn and Modred; "for them thou shalt be *the* better." But] alas! that Modred was born; much harm therefore came! Arthur 'proceeded [came] to London, and with him his peoplé; 'he held in *the* land a mickle husting [and he made there *an* exceeding great conference], and established all the laws that stood in his elders days; 'all the good laws that ere here stood; he set peace, he set protection, and all freedoms.' [From] thence he

[1] *R.* Arður. [2] *This word is interlined sec. m.* [3] broðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
to Cadores riche.	in to Cornwale.
he funde þer a mæide:	he funde þar a maỳde:
vnimete fæier.	Cador his mowe.
Wes þas mæidenes moder:	Was þeos maỳdes moder:
of Romaniſce mannen.	of Romaniſſe cunne.
Cadores maȝe:	
& þat maide[1] hī bi-tahte.	
& he heo fæire a-feng[2]:	
and ſofte heo fedde.	
Heo wes of heȝe cūne:	
of Romaniſce monnen.	
næs in nane londe:	nas in none londe:
maide nan swa hende. [c.2.]	maỳde ſo hende.
of ſpecche & of dede:	of ſpeche ne of deade:
and of tuhtle swiðe gode.	ne of alle þeues.
Wenhaver. heo wes ihatē Wenhauer:	ȝeo waſ i-hote Gwenaỳfer: *Gwenaỳfer.*
wifmonne hēdeſt.	maỳdene hendeſt.
Arður heo nom to wife:	Arthur hire nam to wifue:
& luuede heo wunder ſwiðe.	and louede hire ſwiþe.
þiſ maiden he gon wedde:	þiſ maide he gā wedde:
and nom heo to hiſ bedde.	and nam hire to bedde.
Arður wes i Cornwale:	ARthur was in Cornwale:
al þene winter þere.	al þane wỳnter.

marched 'to [into] Cornwall, 'to Cadors territory'; he found there a maid 'extremely fair [Cador his relation]. This maidens mother was of Romanish 'men [kindred], 'Cadors relative; and the maid *Cador* on him bestowed, and he received her fair, and softly her fed. She was of noble race, of Romanish men'; was in no land 'any' maid so fair, of speech 'and [nor] of deeds, 'and of manners most good [nor of all virtues]; she was named 'Wenhaver [Gwenayfer], fairest of 'women [maidens]. Arthur took her to wife, and loved her 'wondrously' much; this 'maiden [maid] he gan wed, and took her to 'his' bed. Arthur was in Cornwall all the winter 'there;

[1] maide he?

[2] *Written at first* afenge, *but the last letter expuncted by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and al for Wenhæuere lufe:
wimmonē him leofueſt.
Þa þe winter wes agan:
and ſumer com þer anan.
Arður hine biþohte:
whæt he don mahte.
þat his folc gode:
aſwunden ne læie þere.
He ferde to Æxchæſtræn:
to þan mid-feſten.
& heold þer hiſ huſtinge:
of hehȝen hiſ folke.
& ſeide þ he wolde:
in to Irlonde.
wenden[3] al þat kine-lond:
to his æhȝere hond.
buten þe kīg Gillomar:
to him raþer come ær.
and mid liſten hī ſpeken wið:
& ȝirnde Arðures grið.
he wolde weſtē his lond:
and luðere him gon an hond.
mid fure mid ſtele:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

for Gwenaẏfer his[1] loue: [f. 102.b c.1.]
womman heom[2] leofueſt.
Þo þat wẏnter was agon:
and ſomer com þar anon.
Arthur him bi-þohte:
wat he don mihte.
þat his folk gode:
a-ſwonde ne leẏe.
To Excetre he wende:
and heold þare ſpeche.
and ſaide þat he wolde:
in to Irlonde.
and winnen al þat kinelond:
to his owene hond.
bote þe king Gillomar: *Gillomar.*
þe raþer to him come her.
and faire him ſpeke wiþ:
and ȝornde Arthur his griþ.
Ich wolle waſti hiſ lond:
and luþer go him an hond.

and' all for Wenhavers love, dearest of women to him. When the winter was gone, and summer came there anon, Arthur bethought him what he might do, that his good folk should not lie 'there' inert. He marched to Exeter, 'at the mid-feast (of St. John Baptist?),' and held there 'his husting [*a* conference] 'of his noble folk,' and said that he would *go* into Ireland, [and] win all the kingdom to his own hand; unless the king Gillomar [the] sooner came ere to him, and spake with him 'with good will [fair], and yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace, 'he would ["I will] waste his land, and go (act) to him evilly in hand, 'with fire *and* with

[1] *Sic MS.* [2] *R.* him? [3] winnen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ſtreit gomen wurchen.		
& þat lond-folc aſlæn:		
þe wolde ſtonden him aȝein.		
Æfne þan worde:	[f. 129. c. 1.]	Efne þan worde:
þa þe kīg ſæide.		þat þe king ſayde.
þa andſwarede þat folc:		þo anſwerede alle:
fæire þan kinge.		in boure and in halle.
Lauuerd king hald þi word:		Louerd king hold þin word:
we beoð alle ȝarewe.		for we beoþ alle ȝarue.
to ganne & to ride:	10	to gon and to ride:
oueral to þire neode.		oueral in þine neode.
þer wes moni bald Brut:		þar was mani bold Brut:
þe hafde beres leches.		kene to neode.
heouen up heore bruwen:		
i-burſt an heore þonke.		
Wendē touwarde innen:		Hii wende to hire hinne:
cnihtes mid heore monnen.		cnihtes mid hire manne.
heo ruokedē burnen:		hii rollede wepne:
bonnedē helmeſ.		
heo wipeden horſ leoue:	20	
mid linnene claðe.		
heo ſceren[1] heo ſcoiden:		and ſoide hire ſtedeſ.
ſcalkes balde weorē.		

steel work hostile game, and the land-folk slay, who would stand against him.' Even with the words that the king said, then answered 'the folk, fair to the king [all, in bower and in hall]: "Lord king, hold thy word, [for] we are all ready, to go and to ride over all 'at [in] thy need." There was many *a* bold Briton 'that had boars glances [keen at need]; 'heaved up their brows, enraged in their thought.' [They] went toward [their] inns, knights with their men: they 'got ready burnies, prepared helms [rubbed *their* weapons], 'they wiped *their* dear horses with linen cloths;' 'they sheared, they [and their steeds] shod,—'*the* men were bold!' Some

[1] heore ſteden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
fū scæft horn fum fcaft ban:		somme fafde fceftef:	
sum ȝarked ftelene flan.		somme beoude longe fperes.	
sum makede[1] þwonges[2]:		somme makede þwanges:	
gode & fwiðe ftrong.		gode & fwiþe ftronge.	
summe beouweden[3] fperen:			
& beonneden fceldes.			
Arður letten beoden:		Arthur lette beode:	
ȝeond al his kine-þeoden.		oueral his kineþeode.	
þat æuerælc god cniht:		þat euer ech oht cniht:	
to him come forð riht.	10	to him come forþriht.	
and euerælc oht mon:		and euerech oht man:	[c. 2.]
comen forð riht anan.		to him come annon.	
& wa swa bilæfden:		and wofe leafde:	
hif leomen he fculde leofen.		his leome he folde leofe.	
& wha swa come gladliche:		and wofe come gladliche:	
he fculden wurðe riche.		h[4] folde i-worþe riche.	
Seouen niht uppen Æftre:		Soue niht vppe Eafter:	
þa men hafden iuaft.		þo men hadde ifafte.	
þa comen alle þa cnihtes:	[c. 2.]	þo comen alle þeof cnihtes:	
to fcipē ford[5] rihtes.	20	to fipe forþ rihtes.	
wind heom ftod an honde:		wind ȝam ftod an honde:	
þe fcaf heom to Irlonde.		þat faf ȝam to Irlonde.	

shaped (*or* shaved) 'horn; some shaped bone; some prepared steel darts [shafts; some bent (?) long spears]; some made thongs, good and very strong; 'some bent (?) spears, and made ready shields.' Arthur caused to be bidden over all his kingdom, that every 'good [brave] knight should come to him forth-right, and every brave man should come 'forth-right [to him] anon; and whoso should remain *behind*, his limbs he should lose, and whoso should come gladly, he should become rich. Seven nights after Easter, when men had fasted, then came all 'the [these] knights to ship forth-right; *the* wind stood to them in hand (favorably), that drove them to Ireland; [they embarked upon *the* strand, into

[1] make *pr. m.* [2] wonges, *pr. m.*
[3] *Altered by the second hand to* beoveden. [4] he? [5] forð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Arður a þet lond ferde :/
and þa leoden a-merden.
muchel uolc he aflo3 :/
orf he nom vniuoh.
& æuer hæhte ælcne mon :/
chireche-grið halden.
þet tidende com to þan kinge :/
þe lauerd wes of þan londe.
þat þer wes icunen[1] Arður :/
and ærmðen iwrohte þer.
He fumnede al his leoden :/
3eond hif kinelonde.
and hif Irifce uolc :/
fufden to fehte.
to-3æines Arðure :/
þan aðele kinge.
Arður and hif cnihtes :/
heo wepnede forð rihtes.
& fore heom to-3eines :/
folc vnimete.
Arðures men weoren :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

hii wenden vppe ftrode :/
in to þan ilke londe.
ARthur in þan londe ferde :/
and þat folk a-morde.
mochel folk he þare floh :/
and he nam horf inoh.
and euere he hehte ech man :/
cherch-griþ holde.
þe tyding com to þan kinge :
þat louerd waf of þan londe.
þat Arthur king was þider icome :/
and moche harm wrohte.
He fomne[2] alle his cnihtef :/

to-3einef Arthur fihte.
forþ hii wende fone :/
þat hii to Arthur come.

that land.] Arthur marched in the land, and the people destroyed; much folk he [there] slew, [and] he took cattle enow; and ever he ordered each man church-peace to hold. The tiding came to the king, who was lord of the land, that Arthur [*the* king] was come 'there [thither], and [much] harm 'there' wrought. He assembled all his 'people, over his kingdom; and his Irish folk marched to *the* fight, against [knights, against Arthur to fight; forth they soon marched, *so* that they came to] Arthur 'the noble king. Arthur and his knights they weaponed *them* forth-right, and advanced against them, *a* numerous folk.' 'Arthurs men were with arms

[1] *R.* icumen.

[2] fomnede?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid wepnen al bi-þehte.	
þa Irifce men weoren :/	ac hii weren nakede :/
nakede neh þan.	and þe oþ̄e hi-heled mid hire[1].
mid fperen & mid axen :/	
& mid swiðe fcærpe fæxen.	
Arðures men letten fleon :/	And Arthur his men :/
vnimete flā.	lette flou to ȝam fleon.
and merden Irisc folc[2] :/	and morde Ireffe folk :/
& hit fwiðe ualden.	þat hit ful fwiþe.
ne mæhten heo iþolien :/	ne mihten hii þis þolie :/
þurh nanef cūnes þingen.	þorþ none cunnef þinge.
ah fluȝen awai fiðe[3] :/	ac floȝe awaỳ fwiþe :/
fwiðe uæle þufend.	in euereche fide.
& Gillomar þe king flah :/ [f. 129ᵇ. c. 1.]	And Gillomar þe king :/
& awæwardes teh.	fleh fwiþe an hiȝeng.
and Arður him after :/	and Arthur him after :/
and þene king ikahte.	and þane king cahte. [f. 103. c. 1.]
he nom bi þan honde :/	he nam bi þan honde :/
þene king of þan londe.	þan kīg of þan londe.
Arður þe hæȝe :/	Arthur þe bolde :/
herbeorwe ifohte.	to his hinne wende.
an his mode him wes þa æðe :/	in his mode him was heþ :/

all covered, the Irish men were nearly naked [but they were naked, and the others covered with their *weapons*], 'with spears and with axes, and with sæxes exceeding sharp.' 'Arthurs [And Arthur his] men let fly [at them] 'numerous' darts, and killed *the* Irish folk; 'and [so that] greatly it 'felled [fell]; they might not [this] sustain, through any kind of thing, but fled away quickly, 'very many thousands [on every side]. And Gillomar the king fled, 'and awayward drew [greatly in haste], and Arthur *pursued* after him, and caught the king; he took by the hand the king of the land. Arthur the 'noble sought lodging [bold went to his inn]; in his mood

[1] hire wepne? *Perhaps* mid hire *is superfluous.*
[2] *Added by a second hand in the margin.*
[3] fwiðe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þat Gillomar him wes ſwa neh.
Nu dude Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
swiðe muche freondſcipe:
at-foren al hiſ folke.
he lette þene king ſcrude:
mid ælchere prude.
and æc bi Arðure ſat:
and æc mid him feolue æt.
mid Arðure he win dronc:
þat him wes mucheles unðonc.
Naðeles þa he iſah:
þat Arður wes ſwiðe glad.
þa cleopede Gillomar:
an his horte him wes fær.
Lauerd Arður þi grið:
ȝef me leomē & ȝif me lif.
ich wulle þi mō bicumē:
& biteche þe mine þreo ſunen.
mine ſunē deore:
to don al þine iwille.
& ȝet ich wulle mare:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat Gillomar him was ſo neh.
Ne[1] dude Arthur þe bolde king:
on ſwiþe freo þing.
he lette þane king ſcrude:
mid allere prude.
and bi Arthur he ſat:
and eke mid him seolf hate.
mid Arthur me[2] wyn drong:
þat was mid mochel onþong.
Noþeles þo he iſeh:
þat Arthur was ſo neh.
Gillomar him ſaide:
mid ſorþ-folle heorte.
Louerd Arthur þin griþ:
ȝef me leome and ȝef me lif.
and ich wolle þin man bi-come:
to hoſtage take þe mine ſone.
And ȝet ich wolle more:

it was the easier to him, that Gillomar was so nigh him. Now did Arthur 'noblest of kings, very great friendship before all his folk [the bold king, a thing most liberal]; he caused the king to be clothed with 'each [all] pride (richly); and 'eke' by Arthur [he] sate, and eke with himself ate; with Arthur he drank wine,—that 'to him' was [with] mickle unthank. Nevertheless when he saw that Arthur was 'most glad [so nigh], then said Gillomar [to him],—in his heart he was sore [with sorrowful heart]: "Lord Arthur, thy peace! Give me limb and give me life, [and] I will become thy man, 'and' deliver thee my 'three sons [son for hostage], 'my dear sons, to do all thy will.' And yet I will *do* more, if thou wilt give me

[1] Nou?

[2] he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ȝif þu me wult ȝefen ære.	ȝef þou me wolt ȝefue ore.
ich wulle þe bi-tache:	ich wolle þe bi-take:
ȝifles ſwiðe rich.	hoſtageſ riche.
children ſume ſixti:	children folle ſixti:
hæȝe & ſwiðe mæhti.	riche and wel milıti.
ȝet ich[1] wulle mære:	And ȝet ich wolle more:
ȝif þu me ȝifueſt ære.	ȝef þou me ȝeueſt ore.
ælche ȝere of mine londe:	eche ȝer of mine londe:
ſeouen þuſend punde. [c. 2.]	ſoue þouſend pound þe ſende.
& ſenden heom to þine londe:	
& ſixti mark of golde.	
& ȝet ich wulle mare:	
ȝif þu wult me ȝifuen are.	
alle þa ſteden:	and alle mine ſtedes:
mid alle heore iweden.	mid alle hire wedeſ.
þa hæuekes & þa hundes:	min hauekeſ and mine houndes:
& hehȝe mine maħmes.	and oþer riche ȝefteſ.
ich bitache þe to hōde:	ich take þe an honde:
of alle mine londe.	of al mine londe.
And þēne þu haueſt þiſ idon:	And wane þou haueſt þuſ idon:
ich wulle nimē halidom.	ich wolle nime halidomes.
of ſeīt Colūkille:	of ſeint Columkille: [c. 2.]
þe dude godes iwille.	þat dude godes wille.
& ſeint Brændeneſ hæfed:	and ſeint Brendan his heued:

grace; I will deliver thee hostages 'exceeding' rich, children 'some [full] sixty, 'noble [rich] and 'most [well] mighty. [And] yet I will more, if thou givest me grace; each year of my land seven thousand pounds [thee send]; 'and send them to thy land, and sixty marks of gold. And yet I will more, if thou wilt give me grace'; [and] all 'the [my] steeds, with all their trappings, 'the [my] hawks, and 'the [my] hounds, and 'my rich treasures [other rich gifts] I give thee in hand, of all my land. And when thou hast this done, I will take *the* reliques of Saint Columkille, who did

[1] *This word is interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þe godd feolf haleȝede.
& feinte Bride riht fot:
þe hali if & swiðe god.
& halidomef inoȝe:
þe comen ut of Rome.
& swerien þe to foðe:
fwiken þe þat ich nulle.
ah ich þe wulle luuien:
and halden þe for lauerd[1].
halden þe for hahne king:
& mi feolf beon þin vnderling.
þif iherde Arður:
aðeleft king.
& he gan lihȝē:
luddere fteftne[2].
& he gon andfwerie:
mid ædmode worden.
Beo nu glad Gillomar:
ne beo þin heorte noht fær.
for þv ært a wif mon:
þa bet þe fcal iwurðen.
for æuere me æhte wifne mon:
wurðliche igreten.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat god feolf halwede.
and feinte Bride riht fot:
þat his holy and god.
and halidomes inowe:
þat come vt of Rome.
and fwerien þe to foþe:
fwike þat ich þe nelle.
ac ich þe wolle louie:
and holde þe for louerd.

þIs ihorde Arthur:
boldeft alre kinge.

and him andfwerede:
mid mildeliche wordes.
Beo nou glad Gillomar:
ne beo þou noht in heorte for.
for þou hart a wifman:
þe fal þe bet for þan.

Gods will, and Saint 'Brandans [Brandan his] head, that God *him*self hallowed, and Saint Brides right foot, that is holy and 'most' good, and reliques enow, that came out of Rome, and swear to thee in sooth, that I will thee not deceive; but I will love thee, and hold thee for lord, 'hold thee for high king, and myself be thy underling.'" Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, 'and he gan laugh with loud voice,' and he 'gan answer [answered] with gracious words: "Be now glad, Gillomar; be 'not thy heart sore [thou not sore in heart]; for thou art a wise man,—the better [therefore] shall *it* 'be' to thee, 'for ever one ought worthily *a*

[1] lauer, *pr. m.*

[2] fteſne?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
for þine wiſdome:·	for þine wiſdome:·
no ſcal þe noht þa wurſe. [f. *129. c. 1.]	ne ſal þe noh þe worſe.
muchel þu me beodeſt:·	moche þou me bedeſt:·
þe ſcal beon þa betere.	þe ſal beon þe betere.
Her forð rihteſ:·	Her forþrihtes:·
bi-foren al mine cnihtes.	bi-vore alle mine cnihtes.
forȝiuen þe amare[1]:·	ich for-ȝeue of þine bode:·
al þæ haluen dæle.	al þan haluendeale.
of golde & of gærſūe:·	of gold and of gariſome:·
ah þu ſcalt mi mon bicumen.	ac þou ſalt min man bi-come.
and half þat gauel ſende:·	and half þat gauel ſende:·
ælche ȝere to mine londe.	in to mine londe.
Halfe þa ſteden:·	Halue þe ſtedes:·
& halfe þa iweden.	and halue þe wedes.
halue þa hauekeſ:·	halue þe hundes:·
& halue þa hundes.	and halue þe hauekes.
þæ þu me beodeſt:·	þat þou me bedeſt:·
ich wulle þe bi-lefen.	ich wolle þe bi-lefue.
ah ich wulle habben:·	ac ich wolle habbe þine ſone:·
þire hæhre monne childrē.	
þeo heom beoð alre leofueſt:·	
ich heom mai þe bet ileouē.	ich maẏ þe þe bet i-leue.
& ſwa þu ſcalt wunien:·	And þou ſalt wonie:·

wise man to greet';—for thy wisdom shall *it* not *be* the worse for thee; much thou me offerest, the better *it* shall be to thee. Here forth-right, before all my knights, I forgive thee 'the more, [of thy offer] all the half-part, of gold and of treasure; but thou shalt become my man, and half the tribute send 'each year' [in]to my land. Half the steeds, and half the weeds (garments), half the 'hawks [hounds], and half the 'hounds [hawks], that thou me offerest, I will relinquish to thee; but I will have '*the* children of thy noble men [thy son], 'who are to them dearest of all'; I may the better believe 'thee [them]. And 'so' thou shalt dwell in thy honor (honorably) in thy

[1] þa mare?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

in wurðſcipe þire.
a þine kine-dome:
i þine rihte icunden.
& ic þe wulle ȝeuen to:
þat ne ſcal þe king woh don.
butē he hit abugge:
mid hiſ brare[1] rugge.
þeo[2] hit ſæide Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
þa hafden he an hond:
al to-ſomne Irlond.
& þe kīg hiſ mon bicumen:
and bitæht hī hiſ þreo ſeonen.
þa ſpac Arður:
to ſele hiſ cnihten.
Faren[3] to Hiſ-lond:
& nimē we hit to ure honde.
Ferde þer fuſde:
& com to Iflonde. [c. 2.]
Ælcu[s.] Ælcuſ þe kīg wes ihatē:
hæh mon of þan ærd.
he iherde þa tidende:
of Arðure þan kinge.
he dude al ſo wiſ mon:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

in worſipe þine.
in þine kinelonde:
and þin rihte icunde. [f. 103b. c. 1.]
and ich þe wolle loke to:
þat no king ne ſal þe miſ-do.
bote he hit a-bugge:
mid his bare rugge.
þus him ſaide Arthur:
boldeſt alre kinge.
þo he hadde al Irlond:
to his owene hond.
and þe king his man bi-com:
and bi-tok Arthur his ſone.
þo ſpac Arthur:
to ſele hiſ cnihteſ.
Wende we to Iflond:
and nime hit to oure hond.
Forþ hii wende:
þat hii þider come.
Alcus hehte þe king:
he hadde mani onderlỳng.
he ihorde þan tỳdingge:
of Arthur þan kinge.
he dude aſe a wifman:

kingdom, 'in [and] thy right territory; and I will 'give [look] to thee, that 'the king shall not do wrong [no king shall misdo] to thee, unless he pay for it 'with his bare back!" Thus 'it said [said him] Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Then had he [all] Ireland 'all together' in [his own] hand; and the king became his man, and delivered 'him [Arthur] his 'three sons [son]. Then spake Arthur to his good knights: "Go we to Iceland, and take 'we' it in our hand." '*The* host there marched, and to Iceland [Forth they went, until they thither] came. The king 'was named [hight] Ælcus, 'high man of the land [he had many *an* underling]; he heard the tiding of Arthur the

[1] *R.* bare. [2] þus? [3] Faren we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& wende toȝeines him anan.
anan forð rihtes:
mid fixtene cnihtes.
he bar on hif honde:
ænne mucle ȝeord of golde.
Sone fwa he Arður ifæh:
fwa he on hif cneowen bæh.
& þas worð[1] him iquað:
þe king wes afæred.
Wulcume fire Arður:
wilcume lauerd.
Her ich biteche þe an hond:
al to-gadere Iflond.
þu fcal beō min hæhȝe king:
and ich[2] wul beon þen underling.
Ich þe wullen heren:
swa mon fcal don hif hærren.
& ich wulle þi mon bicumen:
& bitæche þe minne leofue fune.
Effcol if ihaten:
and þu hine fcalt iæðelien.
to cnihte hine dubben:
alfe þī aȝene mon.
Hif moder ich habbe to wife:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and wende aȝeneft him anon.
fwiþe forþ rihtef:
mid fixtene cnihtef.
he bar on his honde:
ane mochele ȝeord of golde.
Sone fo he Arthur ifeh:
on his cnowes he him beh.
and þeos word faide:
þe king waf a-fered.
Wolcome fire Arthur:
wolcome louerd.
Her ich bi-take þe an hond:
al to-gadere Iflond.
þou falt beo min hehȝe king:
and ich wolle beo þin onderling.
Ich wolle here þi man bi-come:
and take þe mine fone.
Efcol his ihote:
and þou hine moft teche.
to cnihte hine dobben:
afe þin owene man.
His moder his wel ibore:

Effco[l.]

[c. 2.]

king; he did 'all' as [a] wiseman, and marched against him anon; 'anon [quickly] forth-right, with sixteen knights; he bare in his hand a mickle wand (sceptre) of gold. 'So' soon as he saw Arthur, he bent [him] on his knees, and 'quoth [said] these words 'to him,'—the king was afraid:—"Welcome, sir Arthur! welcome, lord! Here I deliver thee in hand all together Iceland; thou shalt be my high king, and I will be thy underling. 'I will obey thee, as man shall do his master, and' I will become [here] thy man, and deliver thee my 'dear' son, *who* is named Escol; and thou 'shalt him honor (*or* reward) [must him teach], *and* dub him to knight, as thine own

[1] word?

[2] *Inserted in the margin by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þaſ kinges dohter of Ruſie.	þe kingeſ dohter of Ruſie icore.
And æc ælche ȝere:	And eke eche ȝere:
ȝiuen[1] þe wullė æhte.	ȝefen ich þe wolle.
seoue þuſend punde:	ſoue þouſend pound:
of ſeoluere and of golde.	of ſeoluer and of golde.
& to æuer ælche ræde:	and to euereche reade:
beon ȝæru to þire neode.	beo ȝaru to þine neode.
þiſ ich wullen þe swerien:	þis ich wolle ſwerie:
uppen mine sweorden.	vppen mine ſweorde.
þe halidom if a þere hilte:	þar his an halidom wel icore:
þe hexſte of þiſſe londe.	in þan helte bi-vore.
likien ſwa me liken:	likie ou me likie:
nulle ich þe nauere ſwiken.	nolle ich þe neuere ſwike.
þiſ iherde Ardur[2]:	þiſ ihorde Arthur:
aðleſt kīgē.	boldeſt alre kinke[3].
Arður wes wunſum:	Arthur was wiſman:
þer he hafde hiſ iwillen.	ware he hadde his wille.
& he wes wod[4] ſturne:	he was wonder ſteorne:
wið hiſ wiðer-iwinnen.	wiþ his wiþer-iwinne.
Arður þa liðe word iherde:	
of þan leod-kinge.	
al þat he ȝirnde:	Arthur grantete þan king:
al he hī ȝette[5].	al þat he ȝornde.

man. His mother 'I have to wife [is well born], the kings [choice] daughter of Russia. And eke each year [I] will give thee 'money,' seven thousand pounds of silver and of gold; and in every counsel be ready at thy need. This I will swear 'to thee,' upon my sword; 'the relique is in the hilt, the noblest of this land [there is a relique well choice in the hilt before]; like as me shall like, will I never be false to thee!" Arthur heard this 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Arthur was 'winsome [wise man] where he had his will, and he was exceeding stern with his enemies. Arthur 'heard the mild words of the monarch; he' granted 'him [the king] all that he

[1] ȝiuen ich? [2] *R.* Arður. [3] kinge? [4] wonder? [5] *Sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ȝilles[1] and aðes:	oþes he þare nā:
and alle hif ibodes.	and hoftageſ al ſon.
¶ Þa iherde suggen:	Þo ihorde ſegge:
foðere worden.	foþere wordes.
þe king of Orcaneie:	þe king of Organeye:
vnimete kene.	onimete kene.
Gonwaiś wes ihate:	Gongwas was ihote: [Go]nwais.
hæðene kenpe[2].	heaþene kempe.
þat Arður king wolde:	þat Arthur þe ſtronge gome:
cume to hif londe.	to his londe wolde come.
mid muchele ſcip-ferde:	
fuſen to leoden.	
Gonwaiſ hī uerde to-ȝæines:	Gongwas ȝeode to-ȝeynes:
mid wifē hif þeines.	mid wife his cnihteſ.
and fette Arðure an hond:	and fette Arthur an hond:
al Orcaneies lōd.	al Organeyes lond.
and twa and þritti æit-lond:	and two and þritti yllondes:
þe þider in liggeð.	þat þar to liggeþ.
and his mon-radene:	and his manradene:
mid muchelere menſce.	mid mochelere menſce.
And he him hafde a uoreward:	And he him hadde a foreward:
biforen al hif duȝeðe.	bi-vore alle his cnihtes.
ælche ȝere to iwitē:	eche ȝer to iwite:

yearned; 'hostages and oaths, and all his proffers [oaths he there took, and hostages also]. Then heard say sooth words the king of Orkney, exceeding keen, *who* was named Gonwais, *a* heathen warrior, that Arthur '*the* king [the strong man] would come to his land; 'with *a* mickle fleet sail to *his* country.' Gonwais proceeded towards 'him,' with his wise 'thanes [knights], and set to Arthur in hand all Orkneys land, and two and thirty islands, that 'thither in [thereto] lieth, and his homage, with much reverence. And he had (made) to him in covenant, before all his 'people [knights], each year to wit, full sixty ships at his own cost to bring

[1] *R.* ȝifles. [2] kempe?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
fulle fixti fcipen.		fulle fixti fipes.
mid his aȝere coftninge:	[c. 2.]	mid his owene coftninge: [f. 104. c. 1.]
bringē heom to Londenne.		bringen ȝam to Londene.
ifulled to iwiffe:		i-fulled mid iwiffe:
mid gode fæ fifce.		of gode fée vifce.
þif forward he iuafte:		
and ȝifles he funde.		
and aðes he swor gode:		Oþes he fwor gode:
fwiken þan[1] he nolde.		fwike þat he nolde.
& feoðden he lefe nom:		and fuþþe he lefue nam:
& forð he gon liðen.		and forþ he gan wende.
Lauerd haue wel godne dæi:		Louerd haue godne day:
ich wulle cumen wenne ich mai.		ich wolle come wan ich may.
for nu þu art mi lauerd[2]:		
leoueft alre kingen.		
þa Ardur[3] hafde þif idon:		þo Arthur hadde þif idon:
þa ȝet he wolde mare afon.		ȝet he wolde more vnder-fon.
he nom hif writen gode:		he nam his fonde:
and fenden to Gutlonde.		and fende to Gutlonde.
Doldamin. and grætte þe king Doldanim:		ād grette þane king Deldanym:
and hehte hine fone comen to him.		and hehte hine an hiȝenge come to him.
& him feolf hif mon bicume:		and him feolf his man bi-come:
and bringen him his tweien funen.		and bringe mid him his tweie fones.
And ȝif þu þ nulle:		And ȝef þou þat nolle:

them to London, filled truly with good sea-fish. 'This covenant he confirmed, and hostages he found; and' oaths he swore good, that he would not deceive. And afterwards he took leave, and forth he gan wend:—"Lord, have 'well' good day! I will come when I may; 'for now thou art my lord, dearest of all kings.'" When Arthur had done this, 'the' yet he would more undertake; he took his 'good writs [messengers], and sent to Gutlond; and greeted the king Doldanim, and bade him 'soon [in haste] come to him, and himself become his man, and bring [with] him his two sons.—"And if thou

[1] þat? [2] lauer *pr. m.* [3] *R.* Aiður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
do þat þu wulle.		do wat þou wolle.
ich þe wulle ſende:		and ich þe wolle ſende:
ſixtene þuſend.		ſixtene þouſend kempes.
heȝe here-kempen:		
to mucle þine harmen.		
scullē þi lond waſten:		þat þe ſolle þe[1] binde:
and þire leoden aſlan.		and to me bringe.
and þ lōd ſetten:		
swa heom bezſt þincheð.		
and þe ſeoluen binden:	10	and þin lond waſti:
& to me bringen.		and falle þine cnihtes.
þiſ iherde þe king:		þis ihorde þe king:
þræt þaſ kaiſeres.		of þiſſe herde þreting.
& he on uaſte iuēg:		and caſte on his rugge:
fæiere his iweden.		ſwiþe riche webbes.
hundes & hafekes:		and him nam bi-ſides:
& hiſ gode horſſes.	[f. 130. c. 1.]	hundes and hauekeſ.
muchel ſeoluer muchel gold:		moche ſeoluer and gold:
hiſ tweien sunen an hiſ hond.		and his ſones beine.
And forð he gon wenden:	20	And forþ he he[2] gan wende:
to Arðure þan kingen.		to Arthur þan kinge.
and þas word fæide:		and þeſ word ſaide:
Doldanim þe ſele.		Doldanym þe ſele.

wilt not that, do what thou wilt, [and] I will send thee sixteen thousand 'noble' warriors, 'to thy mickle harm,' [who] shall 'waste thy land, and slay thy people [bind thee, and bring to me], 'and set the land as to them best seemeth,' and 'thyself bind, and to me bring [waste thy land, and fell thy knights].'' The king heard this, '*the* threat of the kaiser, and he speedily took his fair weeds [of this hard threatening, and cast on his back exceeding rich clothes, and took to him besides] hounds and hawks, 'and his good horses'; much silver, 'much [and] gold; 'his two [and both his] sons 'in his hand.' And forth he gan wend to Arthur the king; and said these words Doldanim the good: "Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest

[1] *Sic MS.* [2] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Hail ſeo þu Ardur[1] :/
aðeleſt kingen.
Her ich bringe tweiene :/
mine ſunen beiene.
heore moder if kinges iſtreon :/
quene heo if min aȝene.
ich tache þe mine leofen ſunen :/
mi ſeolf ich wulle þi mō bicumen.
ich heo biȝat mid ræflac :/
ut of Ruſie.
And ic wulle ſende :/
gauel of mine londe.
æuer ælche ȝere :/
to ȝiueleſ[2] þingen.
ich wulle ſēden þe in to Lundene :/
ſeouen þuſend punden.
þat ic wulle ſwerien :/
þat nulle ich næuere ſwiken.
ah here ich wulle þi mon bicomen
þi monſcipe if þa mare.
ſwiken nulle ich nauere :/
swa long ſwa beoð auere.
Arður nom his sondė :/
& ſende to Winent-londe.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Haȳl beo þou Arthur :/
boldeſt alre kinge.
Her ich bringe tweie :/
mine ſones hii beoþ beȳe. [c. 2.]
hire moder his kingeſ ſtreon :/
cwene ȝeo his min owe.
here ich take hire ſones :/ [come.
and mi ſeolf ich wolle þin man bi-

And ich þe wolle ſende :/
gauel of mine londe.
euereche ȝere :/
ſoue þouſend poundes.

[come :/
And her ich wolle þin man bi-
and oþes þe ſwerie.
þat ſo lang ſo beoþ euere :/
ne ſwike ich þe neuere.
ARthur nam his ſonde :/
and ſende to Winet-londe.

of all] kings! Here I bring twain, my sons [they are] both; their mother is of kings race, she is mine own queen; 'I won her with spoil, out of Russia.' [Here] I deliver 'thee' 'my dear [her] sons, [and] myself I will become thy man. And I will send [thee] tribute of my land; every year 'as thing bestowed (?), I will send thee into London' seven thousand pounds. 'That I will swear, that I will never be false,' 'but [And] here I will become thy man,—'thy honor is the greater—[and oaths to thee swear, that] so long as is ever, I will deceive [thee] never!" Arthur took his

[1] *R.* Arður.

[2] *A plummet-mark in the margin would seem to indicate some mistake here.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
to Rumareð þan kinge:	to Rumerat þan kinge:	*Rumareð.*
and hehte him cuðen ā hiȝenge.	to cuþi him an hiȝenge.	
þat he hæfde in his hond:	þat he hadde in his hond:	
Brutlond & Scotlond.	Brutlōd and Scotlond.	
Gutlond & Irlond:	Gutlond and Irlond:	
Orcanie & Iflond. [c. 2.]	Orcaneye and Iflōd.	
He hæhte Rumareð cumen:	He hehte Rumerat come:	
and bringen him hif ældefte fune.	and bringe his huldeft fone.	
& ȝif he þ nolde:	and ȝef he þat nolde:	
he wolde hine driuē of londe.	he wolde him driue of londe.	
and ȝif he mihte afon:	and ȝef he him mihte onder-fon:	
he wolde hine flæn oðer an-hon.	he wolde him hehȝe an-hon.	
and hif lond al for-don:		
hif leoden for-demen.		
þif iherde Rumared:	þis ihorde Rumerat:	
þe rich king of Winete.	þe riche king of Winet.	
fwiðe he wes afered:	fwiþe he was afered:	
al swa þa oðere weoren arer.	al fo þe oþer were.	
laðe him weoren þa tidende:	loþ him were þe tyðinges:	
from Arðure þan kīge.	fram Arthur þan kinge.	
Noðeles þe king Rumareð:	Noþeles þe king Rumerat:	
hercnede rædes.	hercnede tidinges.	
he nom hif ældefte fune:	he nam his eldefte fone:	
and fele twælf eorles.	and oþer twealf cnihtef.	

messengers, and sent to Winetland, to Rumareth the king, 'and bade him know [to make known to him] in haste, that he had in his hand Britain and Scotland, Gutland and Ireland, Orcany and Iceland. He ordered Rumareth to come, and bring 'him' his eldest son; and if he would not *do* that, he would drive him from land; and if he might [him] capture, he would 'slay him or hang [hang him high], 'and destroy all his land; his people exterminate.' Rumareth heard this, the rich king of Winet; greatly he was afraid, all as the others were 'ere'; loath to him were the tidings from Arthur the king. Nevertheless the king Rumareth hearkened 'counsels [tidings]; he took his eldest son, and twelve 'good earls

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& ferde to Arðure:	and wende to Arthur:
þan kīge aðele.	þane bolde kinge.
and ſet æt his fotē:	and ſat hat his fote: [f. 104b, c. 1.]
and feire hine gon greten.	and faire hine gan grete.
Hæil ſeo þu Arður:	Haỳl beo þou Arthur þe king:
aðeleſt Brutten.	Bruttene deorling.
Ich hatten Rumareð:	Ich hatte Rumeret:
þe kīg of Winet-londe.	of þe londe of Winet.
inoh ich habbe iherd kenne:	inoh ich hure kenne:
of kē-ſcipe þine.	of kenſiþe þinne.
þat þu ært widē icuð:	þat þou hart wide icud:
kingen alre kenneſt.	kenneſt alre kinge.
þu haueſt moni kine-lōd:	þou haueſt manỳ kine-lond:
biȝiten al to þire hond.	a-wonne to þin owe hond.
nis na king an londe:	nis non king in londe:
þe þe maȝen ſtonde[1].	þat maȝe þe wiþ-ſtonde.
kīg ne na kaiſere: [f. 130b, c. 1.]	
in nauere nane cōpe.	
of al þat þu biȝinnest:	of al þat þou bi-ginneſt:
þu deſt þine iwille.	þou doſt þine wille.
Her ich æm to þe icume	Her ich ham to þe icome:
and broht þe mine aldeſte ſune.	and hi-broht min eldeſte ſone.
her ich ſette þe an hond:	ich ſette þe her an hond:

[other knights], and proceeded to Arthur the 'noble [bold] king, and sate at his feet, and gan him fair greet: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the king], 'noblest of Britons [Britons darling]! I hight Rumareth, 'the king of Winetland [of the land of Winet]; enow I 'have heard [hear] declared of thy valor; that thou art wide known, keenest of all kings. Thou hast won many kingdom 'all' to thine [own] hand; *there* is no king in land that may thee withstand, 'king nor kaiser, in ever any combat'; of all that thou beginnest, thou dost thy will. Here am I to thee come, and brought 'thee' my eldest son; here I set thee in hand myself and my kingdom,

[1] wið-ſtonde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
me ſeoluen and mi kine-lond.	mẏ ſeolfen and mi kinelond.
and mīne ſune leofe:	and mine ſone leue:
and mine leoden alle.	and mine men alle.
wif & mine weden:	
and alle mine wunnen.	
wiþ þat þu me griþie:	wiþ þan þat þou me griþie:
wiþ þine grim ræſen.	wiþ þine grym reaſes.
And beo þu min hæhȝe kīg:	And beo þou min hehȝe king:
and ich wulle beon þin underling.	and ich wolle beo þin onderling.
and ſenden þe to honde:	and ſende þe to honde:
fif hundred pund of golde.	fif hundred pound of golde.
þaf ȝeuen ich finde þe wulle:	fram ȝere to ȝere:
æue[1] alche ȝere.	to Londene þe ſende.
Al Arður him ȝette:	Arthur him grantede:
þat þe king ȝirde[2].	al þat he ȝornde.
and ſeoððen he heolde runen:	and ſuþþe helde rouning:
wiþ ſele his þeinen.	wiþ leoue his cnihteſ.
& ſeide þat he wolde:	þat he wolde aȝen wende:
aȝæin to þiſſe londe.	into þiſſe londe.
and iſeon Wenhaiuer:	and iſen Gwēnaifer:
þe wuneliche quene.	þe leodiſſe cwene.
Bemen he lette blawē:	Bumeſ he lette bloue:
& bonnien hiſ ferden.	and banni his ferde.
and to ſcipen wenden:	and to ſipe wende:

and my dear son, and all my 'people [men], '*my* wife and my weeds, and all my possessions,' on condition that thou give me protection against thy fierce attacks. And be thou my high king, and I will be thy underling, and send thee to hand five hundred pounds of gold; 'these gifts I will thee find, every year [from year to year to London thee send]." Arthur granted him all that 'the king [he] yearned, and afterwards 'he' held communing with his 'good thanes [dear knights], 'and said' that he would [return] again [in]to this land, and see Wenhaver, the 'comely' queen [of *the* country]. Trumpets he caused to be blown, and his army to assemble;

[1] æuere?

[2] ȝirnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
wunder bliðe þeines.	many bliþe chnihtef. [c. 2.]
Wind heom ſtod on willen:	Winde ȝam ſtod at wille:
weder alſe heo wolden.	weder aſe hii wolde.
bliðe heo weoren alle for þi:	glad hii were for þi:
[Gri]mef bi. up heo comen at Grimefbi.	vp hii come at Grimefbi.
þ iherden ſone:	Þat i-horde ſone:
þa hæhſte of þiſſen londe. [c. 2.]	þe heheſte of þiſſe londe.
and to þære quene com tidende:	and to þar cwene com tyding:
of Arðure þan kinge.	of Arthur þan king.
þat he wes iſund icumen:	þat he was iſonde icome:
& hiſ folc ō ſelen.	and his folk on ſele.
þa weoren inne Bruttene:	þo weren in Bruttaỳne:
bliſſin inoȝe.	bliſſef inowe.
her wes fiðelinge and ſong:	was her fiþeling and ſong:
her weſ harpinge imong.	her was harping a-mang.
pipen & bemen:	of alle cunneſ dremes:
murie þer sungen.	murie her ſonge.
Scopes þer ſungen:	of Arthur þā kinge:
of Arðure þan kingen.	and of his winninge.
& of þan muchele wurð-ſcipe:	of his mochele worſipe:
þe he iwunnen hafeden.	þat he a-wonne hadde.
folc cō to hirede:	folk þar was i-gadered:
of feole cunne þeode.	of mani cunne londe.
widen and ſiden:	

and to ship marched 'the thanes wondrous [many knights] blithe. *The* wind stood them at will; weather as they would; 'blithe [glad] they were 'all' therefore; up they came at Grimesby. That heard soon the highest of this land, and to the queen came tiding of Arthur the king, that he was come in safety, and his folk in prosperity. Then were in Britain joys enow! Here was fiddleing and song, here was harping among; 'pipes and trumps [of all kind of music.] sang 'there [here] merrily. 'Poets there sung' of Arthur the king, [and of his winning,] 'and' of 'the [his] great honor, that he had won. Folk 'came in concourse [was there gathered] of many kind of land; 'wide and far *the* folk was in prosperity.' All that Arthur saw, all

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

folc wes on ſelen.
Al þat Arður iſæh:
al hit him to bæh.
riche men and pouere:
ſwa þe haȝel ualleð.
nef þer nan swa wræcche Brut:
þ he nes awælȝed.
Her mon mai arede:
of Arðure þan king.
hu he twelf ȝere:
ſeoðen wuneden here.
inne griðe & inne friðe:
in alle uæȝerneſſe.
Na man him ne faht wið:
no he ne makede nan un-frið.
ne mihte nauere nan man:
bi-þenchen of bliſſen.
þat weoren in ai þeode:
mare þan i þiſſe.
ne mihte nauere mon cūne:
nan ſwa muchel wunne. [f. 131. c. 1.]
swa wes mid Arðure:
& mid his folke here.
Ich mai ſugge hu hit iwarð:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Al þat Arthur i-ſeh:
al hit him to beh.
riche and pore:
aſe þe hawel þat falleþ.
nas þar non ſo wrecche Brut:
þat he nas wel iwellid.
HEr man may reade:
of Arthur þā kene.
hou he twalf ȝere:
ſuþþe wonede here.
in griþe and bliſſe:
and in alle fairniſſe.
No man him ne faſt[1] wiþ:
ne he non oþer wiþ.
ne mihte no mam[2] bi-þenche:
of bliſſe þat were more.
in eni cunnef londe:
þane was wiþ alle. [f. 105. c. 1.]
Ich may ſegge ou hit iworþ:

it submitted to him, rich 'men' and poor, as the hail [that] falleth; was there no Briton so wretched, that he was not enriched! Here man may tell of Arthur the 'king [keen], how he afterwards dwelt here twelve years, in peace and 'in amity, [bliss, and] in all fairness. No man fought with him, nor 'made he any strife [he with any other]; might 'never any [no] man bethink of bliss that were greater in any 'country [kind of land] than 'in this [was with all]; 'might never man know any so mickle joy, as was with Arthur, and with his folk here!' I may say how it happened, won-

[1] faht?

[2] *R.* man.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
wunder þæh hit þunche.	þeh hit wonder þinche.
Hit wes in ane ȝeol-dæie :	Hit was in on holy day :
þat Arður in Lundene lai.	þat Arthur ine Londene lay.
þa weoren him to i-cumen :	þar weren to him icome :
of alle hiſ kinerichē.	of al his kineriche.
of Brutlonde : of Scotlonde :	of Brutlond of Scotlonde :
of Irlonde : of Iſlonde.	of Irlond of Iſlond.
and of al þan londe :	and of alle þan londes :
þe Arður hæfede an honde.	þat Arthur hadde an honde.
alle þa hæxte þeines :	and alle þe hexſte cnihtes :
mid horſen & mid sweiēs.	þat were mid hire ſweineſ.
þer weoren seouen kingene sunes :	þar were ſoue kingene ſones :
mid ſeouē hundred cnihten icumen.	mid ſoue hundred cnihtes.
wið uten þan hired :	wiþ oute þan folke :
þe herede Arðure.	þat Arthur hadde on hepe.
Ælc hafede an heorte :	
leches heȝe.	
and lette þat he weore :	
betere þan his iuere.	
þat folc wes of feole londe :	þat folk was .. many londe :
þer wes muchel onde.	þar was mochel onde.
for þe an hine talde hæh :	for euerech wende :
þe oðer muche herre.	be betere þan oþer.
þa bleou mon þa bemen :	Bumes .ar blewe :

drous though it seem. It was on a 'yule-day [holy day], that Arthur lay in London; 'then [there] were come to him *men* of all his kingdoms, of Britain, of Scotland, of Ireland, of Iceland, and of all the lands that Arthur had in hand; [and] all the highest 'thanes [knights], 'with horses and with [that were with their] swains. There were 'come' seven kings sons, with seven hundred knights; without the folk that 'obeyed Arthur [Arthur had in heap]. 'Each had in heart proud thoughts, and esteemed that he were better than his companion.' The folk was of many *a* land; there was mickle envy; for 'the one accounted himself high, the other much higher [every *one* weened *him* to be better than other]. 'Then [There]

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& þa bordes bradden.	bordes me wyde.
water me brohte an uloren:	water me brohte an flore:
mid guldene læflen.	mid goldene bole.
seoððen claðef soften:	suþþe cloþef fohte[1]:
al of white feolke.	al of wite folke.
Þa sat Arður adun:	Þo fat Arthur a-dun:
& bi him Wēhauer þa quene.	and Gwennaÿfer his cwene.
seoððen fete þa eorles:	suþþe feten corles:
and þer after þa beornes.	beornes and cnihtef.
seoððen þa cnihtes:	
al fwa mon heom dihte. [c. 2.]	
Þa heȝe iborne:	And þe hehȝe ibore men:
þene mete beoren.	þane mete beare.
æfne forð rihten:	euere forþrihtef:
þa to þan cnihten.	toward þe cnihtef.
þa touward þan þæinen:	ech man þare:
þa touward þan fweinen.	fareuede hif freonde.
þa touward þan bermonnen:	So lang hit wende þuf: [c. 2.]
forð at þan borden.	and fone þar after wors.
Þa duȝeðe wærð iwraððed:	þat fomme weren wel wroþ:
duntes þer weoren riue.	and duntes hii ȝefue.
æreft þa laues heo weorpen:	hereft hii louef worpen:

blew 'men the' trumpets, 'and' spread [men] 'the' tables; water men brought on floor, with golden bowls; next soft clothes, all of white silk. Then sate Arthur down, and 'by him' Wenhaver 'the [his] queen; next sate 'the' earls, 'and thereafter the barons; next the knights, all as men them disposed. [barons and knights. And] the high-born [men] bare the meat 'even [ever] forth-right 'then to [toward] the knights; 'then toward the thanes, then toward the swains, then toward the porters, forth at the board. The people became angered, *and* blows there were rife [each man there served his friend. So long it went thus, and soon thereafter worse, that some were well wrath, and blows they gave]; *at* first they

[1] fofte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa while þa heo ilæſten.	wile þat hii laſten.
and þa bollen ſeoluerne:	þo nemen hii þe bolleſ:
mid wine iuulled.	i-fulled mid wine.
& ſeodden[1] þa uuſtes:	and ſuþþe mid þā fuſtes:
uuſden to ſweoren.	ſtarcliche fohte.
þa leop þer forð a ȝung mon:	þo leop þar forþ a ȝong man:
þe ut of Winet-londe com.	þat vt of Wẏnet-londe com.
he wes iȝefen Arðuř:	he was Rumaret his ſone:
to halden to ȝiſle.	þe riche king of Wẏnet.
he wes Rumarettes ſune:	he was bi-take Arthur:
þaſ kīges of Winette.	in ſtede of hoſtage.
Þuſ ſeide þe cniht þere:	Þus ſaide þe cniht þare:
to Arðure kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
Lauerd Arður buh raðe:	Louerd Arthur wende a-non:
into þine bure.	into þine boure.
and þi quene mid þe:	and þi cwene mid þe:
& þene mæies[2] cuðe.	and þine cnihtes leue.
& we þiſ comp ſcullen to-delen:	and we þis ſiht ſolle to-deale:
wið þas uncuðe kempen.	wiþ þis on-couþe leode.
Æfne þan worde:	Efne þan worde:
he leop to þan borde.	he leop to þan borde.
þer leien þa cniuef:	þare leẏen þe cniues:

threw 'the' loaves, 'the' while that they lasted, 'and the silver [then took they the] bowls, filled with wine, and afterwards [with] the fists approached to necks [fought strongly]. Then leapt there forth a young man, who came out of Winetland; he was given to Arthur 'to hold as [instead of] hostage; he was 'Rumareths [Rumaret his] son, the [rich] king of Winet. Thus said the knight there to Arthur [the] king: "Lord Arthur, go 'quickly [anon] into thy chamber, and thy queen with thee, and thy 'known relatives [dear knights], and we shall decide this 'combat [fight] against 'these [this] foreign 'warriors [people]." Even with the words he leapt to the board, where lay the knives before the sovereign; three

[1] ſeoððen?

[2] *At first written* mæidenes, *but* den *expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bi-foren þan leod-kinge.	bi-vore þan leod-kinge.
þreo cnifes he igrap:	þreo cnifes he igrop:
and mid þan anæ he ſmat.	and mid þan one heſmat þan cniht.
i þere ſwere þe cniht:	
þe æreſt bigon þat ilke fiht.	þat ereſt bi-gan þat fiht.
þat hiſ hefued i þene flor: [f.131b.c.1.]	þat his hefued in þan flor:
hælde to grunde.	fol to þan grunde.
Sone he floh ænne oðer:	Sone he floh an oþer:
þes ilke þeines broðer.	þis ilke cniht his broþer.
ær þa sweordes comen:	here þe ſweordeſ come:
seouene he afelde.	ſouene he afulde.
þer wes fæht swiðe græt:	þar waſ fiht ſwiþe gret:
ælc mon oðer smat.	ech oþerne ſmot.
þer wes muchel blod gute:	þar waſ mochel blod iȝote: [f.105b.c.1.]
balu wes an hirede.	wowe þar was riue.
þa com þe king buȝen:	þo com þe king bouwe:
ut of his buren.	vt of his boure.
mid him ā hūdred beornen:	mid him an hundred cnihtes:
mid helmen & mid burnen.	mid helmes and mid brunieſ.
ælc bar ā his riht hond:	ech bar on his riht hond:
whit ſtelene brod[1].	one ſtlene[2] brond.
þa cleopede Arður:	þo cleope Arthur:
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre king.

knives he grasped, and with the one he smote the knight 'in the neck,' that first began the 'same' fight, *so* that his head on the floor fell to [the] ground. Soon he slew another, this same 'thanes [knight his] brother; ere the swords came, seven he felled. There was fight exceeding great; each 'man' smote other; there was much blood shed, mischief was 'among *the* folk [there rife]! Then approached the king out of his chamber; with him an hundred 'nobles [knights], with helms and with burnies; each bare in his right hand [a] 'white' steel brand. Then called Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Sit *ye*, 'sit *ye* [down] quickly, each man on his

[1] brond?

[2] *R.* ſtelene.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Sitteð fitteð swiðe:
elc mon bi hif liue.
and wa swa þat nulle don:
he ſcal for-demed beon.
Nimeð me þene ilke mon:
þa þif feht ærſt bigon.
& doð wiððe an hif sweore:
& draȝeð hine to ane more.
& doð hine in an leȳ[1] uen:
þer he ſcal liggen.
And nimeð al his nexte cun:
þa ȝe maȝen iuīden.
and swēgeð of þa hafden:
mid breoden eouwer sweorden.
þa wifmen þa ȝe maȝen ifinden:
of his nexten cunden.
kerueð of hire neoſe:
& heore wlite ga to loſe.
and ſwa ich wulle al fordon:
þat cū þat he of com.
And ȝif ich auere mare:
seoððen ihere.
þat æi of mine hirede:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Sitteþ a-dun ſwiþe:
ech man bi his liue.
and wo ſe nele þat don:
he ſal beo for-demed.
Nimeþ me þan ilke man:
þat þis fiht ereſt bi-gan.
and doþ a-boute his ſwere:
one raketeȝe.
and draȝeþ hine to on laȝe fen:
þar he ſal luggen.
And nimeþ al his nexſte cun:
þat ȝe maȝe finde.
and ſwengeþ of þe hefdes:
mid brode ȝoure ſweordeſ.
þe wimmen þat ȝe findeþ:
of hif nexſte cunne.
kerueþ of hure noſe:
and ſo hi ſolle go to loſe.
[c. 2.] and þus ich wolle fordon:
þat he of com.
An ȝef ich suþþe i-here:
eni man ſire.
more of þiſſe fihte:

life! And whoso will not that do, he shall be put to death. Take *ye* me the same man, that this fight first began, and put 'withy on [a chain about] his neck, and draw him to 'a moor, and put him in' a low fen; there he shall lie. And take *ye* all his nearest kin, that ye may find, and strike off the heads *of them* with your broad swords; the women that ye 'may' find of his nearest kindred, carve *ye* off their noses, and 'let their beauty [so they shall] go to destruction; and 'so [thus] I will 'all' destroy 'the race' that he of came. And if I 'evermore' subsequently hear, 'that any of my folk, of high or of low, eft arear strife *on account* of

[1] *At first written* waȝe, *but corrected by a second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
of heȝe na of loȝe.	eorl oþer cnihtef[1].
of þiſſen ilke ſlehte:	
æft ſake are[2].	
ne ſculde him neoðer gon fore:	ne ſal him noþer go vore:
gold ne na gærſume.	gold noþer gariſome.
hæh horſ no hære ſcrud:	
þat he ne ſculde beon ded.	þat he ne ſal be to-draȝe:
orðer[3] mid horſen to-draȝen:	
þat if elches swiken laȝen.	þat his ſwiken laȝe.
Brīgeð þene halidom:	Bringeþ þane halidom:
and ich wulle swerien þer on.	and wolle ich ſwerie þar on.
swa ȝe ſcullen cnihtes:	and ſo ȝe ſolle cnihtes:
þe weorē at þiſſen fihte.	þat weren at þan fihte.
eorles & beornes:	eorles an cnihtef:
þat ȝe hit breken nulleð.	þat ȝe hit ibreke nolleþ. [c. 2.]
Ærſt sweor Arður:	Reſt ſwor Arthur:
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
seoððen ſworen eorles:	suþþe ſworen eorles:
seoððen sweoren beornes.	ſuþþe ſworen cnihtes.
seoððen sweoren þeines:	
seoððen sweoren sweines.	
þat heo nauere mare:	þat hii neuére more:
þe sake nulde arere.	þe ſake nolde arere.

this same slaughter [any man meddle more of this fight, *be he* earl or knight], shall go for (ransom) him neither, gold 'nor any [neither] treasure, 'fine horse nor war-garment,' that he 'should [shall] not be 'dead, or with horses' drawn in pieces,—that is of 'each' traitor *the* law! Bring *ye* the reliques, and I will swear thereon; [and] so, knights, shall ye, that were at 'this [the] fight, earls and 'barons [knights], that ye will not it break." First swore Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings; then swore earls, then swore 'barons [knights]; 'then swore thanes, then swore swains,' that they nevermore the strife would arear. Men took all the dead, and 'carried

[1] cnihte? [2] arere? [3] *R.* oðer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Me nom alle þa dede:	Me nam alle þe deade:
& to leirſtowe heom ladden.	and leide ȝam on erþe.
Seoððen me bleou bemen:	Suþþe me bleu þe bumef:
mid swiðe murie dremē.	mid ſwiþe murie dremes.
weoren him leof weoren him læd[1]:	were ȝam leof were ȝam loþ:
elc þer feng water & clæd[2].	alle hii fenge water and cloþ.
& seoððen adun fetē:	and fuþþe adun fete:
sæhte to borden.	alle to þan borde.
al for Arðure æiȝe: [f. 132. c. 1.]	for Arthures heye:
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
Birles þer þūrgen[3]:	Borlef þar þronge:
gleomē þer ſungen.	glemen þar ſonge.
harpen gūnē dremen:	
duȝeðe wes on felē.	
Þus fulle ſeoueniht:	Þus folle ſoue nih.:
wes þā hirede idiht.	waſ al þat folk idiht.
Seoððen hit ſeið in þere tale:	S..þe hit ſaiþ in þare ta..:
þe king ferde to Cornwale.	þe king wende to Corn..le.
þer him com to anā:	þar him com to an..:
þat wæs a crafti weorc-man.	þat was a crafti man.
and þene king imette:	and þane king mette:
and feiere hine grætte.	and faire hine grette.
Hail ſeo þu Arður:	Haȳl beo þou Arthur:

[laid] them 'to burial-place [in earth]. Afterwards men blew [the] trumpets, with noise exceeding merry; were 'he [they] lief, were 'he [they] loath, 'each there [all they] took water and cloth, and then sate down 'reconciled [all] to [the] board, 'all' for Arthurs dread, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings. Cupbearers there thronged, gleemen there sung; 'harps gan resound, *the* people was in joy.' Thus full seven nights was [all] the folk treated. Afterwards it saith in the tale, *that* the king went to Cornwall; there came to him anon *one* that was a crafty 'work'-man, and met the king, and fair him greeted:—"Hail be thou, Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest

[1] læð? [2] clæð? [3] þrūgen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

aðeleſt kinge.
Ich æm þin aȝe mon:
moni lond ich habbe þurh-ġan.
icl cō of treo-wrekes[1]:
wunder feole craftes.
Ich iherde ſuggen:
bi-ȝeonde ſæ neowe tidende.
þ þine cnihtef:
at þine borde gunnen fihte.
a midewinteres dæi:
moni þer feollen.
for heore muchele mode:
morð-gomēn wrohten.
and for heore hehȝe cunne:
ælc wolde beon wið inne.
Ah ich þe wulle wurche:
a bord ſwiðe hende.
þat þer maȝen ſetten to:
ſixtene hundred & ma.
al turn abutē:
þat nan ne beon wið utē.
wið uten and wið inne:
mō to-ȝæines monne.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

boldeſt alre kinge.
Ich ham þin owene man:
many lond ich habbe þorþ gon.
ich con of treo-workes:
mani wonder craftes.
Ich ihorde tidynges:
of þine bolde cnihtef.
þat hii þat[2] þine borde:
ſolde ſake arere.
in on midewynteres day:
manye þar follen.

for hire heȝe cunne:
ech wolde beo wiþ ine.
Ac ich þe wolle wirche: [f. 106.c.1.]
a bord ſwiþe hende.
þat þar maȝe ſitte to:
ſixtene hondred and mo.
al teurne aboute:
þat non ne beo wiþ oute.

of all] kings! I am thine own man; through many land I have gone; I know of tree-works (carpentry) 'wondrous many [many wondrous] crafts. I heard say 'beyond *the* sea new' tidings, 'that thy knights gan to fight [of thy bold knights, that they should strife arear] at thy board; on [a] midwinters day many there fell; 'for their mickle mood (pride) wrought murderous play, and' for their high lineage each would be within. But I will thee work (make) a board exceeding fair, that thereat may sit sixteen hundred and more, all turn about, *so* that none be without; 'without and within, man against man.' [And] when thou wilt ride, with thee thou mightest it carry,

[1] treo-werkes?

[2] at?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Whenne þu wult riden :/
wiþ þe þu miht hit leden.
and fettē hit whar þu wulle :/ [c. 2.]
after þine iwille.
and ne dert þu nauere adrede :/
to þere worlde longen.
þ æuere æine modi cniht :/
at þine borde makie fiht.
for þer ſcal þe hehȝe :
beon æfne þan loȝe.
Timber me lete biwinnen :/
and þat beord bi-ginnen.
to feouwer wikene uirſte :/
þat wrec[2] wes iuorðed.
To ane heȝe dæie :/
þat hired wes ifomned.
and Arður him ſeolf beh :
ſone to þan borde.
and hehte alle his cnihtes :/
to þan borde forð rihtes.
þo alle weoren iſeten :/
cnihtes to heore mete.
þa ſpæc ælc wiþ oðer :/
alſe hit weore hiſ broðer.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

And wane þou wolt ride :/
mid þe þou miht hit leade.
and ſetten it ware þou wolle :/
after þine wille.
þanne ne þert þou neuere adrede :/
to þare worle longe.
þat euere eni modi cniht :/
at þine borde makie fiht.
for þar ſal þe heȝe :/
be efne to þan lowe.
Tymme[1] me lette bringe :/
and þat bord bi-gynne.
in four wekene firſte :/
þat worc was ihended.
He lette in one daiȝe :/
al þat folk gaderi.
and Arthur him wende :/
a-non to þan borde.
and hehte alle his cnihteſ :/
to borde forþ rihteſ.
þo alle weren iſete :/
cnihteſ to þare mete.
þo ſpac ech wiþ oþer :/
aſe hit were broþers.

and set it where thou wilt, after thy will; 'and [then] thou needest never fear, to the worlds end, that ever any moody knight at thy board may make fight, for there shall the high be even with the low." Timber was caused to be brought, and the board to be begun; in four weeks time the work was completed. 'At a high day the folk was assembled [He caused on a day all the folk to be gathered], and Arthur him' self' approached 'soon [anon] to the board, and ordered all his knights to 'the' board forth-right. When all were seated, knights to their meat, then spake each with other, as *if* it

[1] tymber?

[2] werc?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
alle heo ſeten abutē :/	alle hii ſete wiþboute[1] :/
neſ[2] þer nan wið uten.	nas þar non wiþ vte.
Æuereælches cunnes cniht :/	Euereche cunnes cniht :/
þere wes swiðe wel idiht.	þar was wel i-diht.
alle heo weoren bi ane :/	alle bi one :/
þe hehȝe & þa laȝe.	þe hehe an þe lowe.
ne mihten þer nan ȝelpē :/	
for oðere kunneſ ſcenchen.	
oðer hiſ iueren :/	
þe at þan beorde weoren.	
Þis wes þat ilke bord :/	Þis was þat ilke bord :/
þat Bruttes of ȝelpeð.	þat Brutteſ of cleopieþ.
and ſugeð feole cunne leſinge :/	and ſeggeþ mani leſinge :/
bi Arðure þan kinge.	bi Arthur þan kinge.
Swa deð auer alc mon :/	So wole ech man :/
þe oðer luuien ne[3] con.	þat oþer louie can.
ȝif he iſ him to leof :/ [f. 132b. c. 1.]	ȝef he his him to leof :/ [c. 2.]
þenne wule he liȝen.	þanne wole he leȝe.
and ſuggen on him wurð-ſcipe :/	and ſegge on him worſipe :/
mare þenne he beon wurðe.	more þan he his worþe.
ne beo he no swa luðer mon :/	
þat hiſ freond him wel ne on.	
Æft ȝif ō uolke :/	

were 'his brother [brothers]; all they sate about; was there none without. Every sort of knight was there exceeding well disposed; all 'they were' by one (seated separately), the high and the low; 'might none there boast of other kind of drink other *than* his comrades, that were at the board.' This was the same board that Britons 'boast [speak] of, and say many 'sorts of' leasing, respecting Arthur the king. So 'doth every [will each] man, that *an*other can love; if he is to him too dear, then will he lie, and say of him more honor than he is worth; 'no man is he so wicked, that his friend will not act well to him. Eft if among folk enmity areareth,

[1] aboute? [2] ne, *pr. m.* [3] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
feond-ſcipe arereð.	
an æuer æi time:	
bitweone twō monnen.	
me con bi þan læðe:	Ac euere bi þan loþe:
laſinge ſuggen.	harm me can finde.
þeh he weore þe bezſte mon:	þoh he were þe beſte man:
þe æuere æt at borde.	þat euere heat at borde.
þe mon þe him weore lað:	to wam þat he his loþ:
him cuðe laſt findē.	he can him laſt finde.
Ne al ſoh ne al lef:	Nis noht al ſoþ ne al les:
þat leod-ſcopes ſingeð.	þat many men ſeggeþ.
ah þiſ if þat ſoððe:	ac þis his þat ſoþe:
bi Arðure þan kinge.	bi Arthur þan kinge.
Nes næuer ar swulc king:	Nas neuere non ſoch king:
swa duhti þurh alle þing.	ſo mihti þorh alle þing.
for þat ſoðe ſtod[1] a þan writen:	for þat ſoþe his iwrete:
hu hit if iwurðen.	ou hit his i-worþe.
ord frō þan ænden:	orde fram þan ende:
of Ardure[2] þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge.
no mare no laſſe:	
buten alſe his laȝen weoren.	
Ah Bruttes hine luuedē ſwiðe:	Ac Brutteſ hine louede:
& ofte him on liȝeð.	and lome of him leȝede.

in ever any time between two men,' [But ever] men can 'say leasing [find harm] of the hateful *one*, though he were the best man that ever ate at board; 'the man that to him were [to whom that he is] loath, [he] can him last find! [It is] not all sooth nor all falsehood that 'minstrels sing [many men say]; but this is the sooth respecting Arthur the king. Was never 'ere' such king, so 'doughty [mighty] through all things! For the sooth 'stands in the writings [is written] how it is befallen, from beginning to the end, of Arthur the king, 'no more nor less but as his laws (*or* acts) were.' But Britons loved him 'greatly,' and oft of him 'lie [lied], and say many things re-

[1] ſtond?

[2] *R.* Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and ſuggeð feole þinges:
bi Arðure þan kinge.
þat næuere nes iwurðen:
a þiſſere weorlde-richen.
inoh he mai ſuggen:
þe soð wule uremmen.
ſeolcuðe þinges:
bi Arðure kinge.
þa wes Arður ſwiðe heh:
hiſ hired ſwiðe hende. [c.2.]
þ nas na cniht wel itald:
no of hiſ tuhlen[1] ſwiðe bald.
inne Wales no in Æglelond:
inne Scot[2] no in Irlond.
in Normandie no ine France:
inne Flandres no inne Denemarc.
no in nauere none londe:
þe a þeos halfe Mungiu ſtondeð.
þet weoren ihalde god cniht:
no his deden itald oht.
bute of[4] he cuðe of Ardure[5]:
& of aðelen hiſ hirede.
hiſ wepnē and hiſ weden:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ſeggeþ ſale þingeſ:
bi Arthur þan kinge.
þat neuer nas i-worþe:
in þiſſe worle-riche.
inoh he may finde:
þat ſoþ wole ſegge.
of many cunneſ þing:
bi Arthur þan kinge.
PO was Arthur ſwiþe heh:
his folk ſwiþe hende.
þar nas non cniht wel itold:
in Wales ne in Engelond:
ine Normandie nen[3] Franche:
in Flandref ne in Denemarche.
ne in neuere none londe:
þat a þis half Muntioye ſtondeþ.
þat were iholde god cniht:
ne his dedes itold oht.
bote he couþe of Arthur:

ſpecting Arthur the king, that never was transacted in this worlds realm! Enow may he 'say [find], who *the* sooth will 'frame [say], 'marvellous things [of many kind of thing] respecting Arthur [the] king. Then was Arthur most high, his folk most fair; '*so* that' [there] was no knight well esteemed, 'nor of his manners (*or* deeds) much assured,' in Wales nor in England, 'in Scotland nor in Ireland,' in Normandy nor in France, in Flanders nor in Denmark, nor in ever any land, that on this side of Muntgiu standeth, that were esteemed good knight, nor his deeds accounted (brave *or* aught), unless he could '*discourse* [say any speech] of Arthur, 'and of his noble court, his

[1] tuhtlen?
[2] Scotland?
[3] ne in?
[4] *Redundant?*
[5] *R.* Arðure.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

& hiſ horſ-ledē.
ſuggen and ſingen:
of Arðure þan ginge.
and of hiſ hired-cnihten:
and of heȝe heore mihten.
and of heore riche-dome:
and hu wel hit heom bicomen.
þenē weore he wilcume:
a þiſſere weorlde-richen.
come þer he come:
and þeh he weore i Rome.
al þat iherde:
of Ardure[1] telle.
heom þuhte muchel ſeollic:
of ſelen þan kinge.
And ſwa hit wes iuuren iboded:
ær he iboren weoren.
Merlin. swa him ſæide Merlin:
þe witeȝe wes mære.
þat a king ſculde cume:
of Vðere Pendragune.
þat gleomen ſculden wurchē burd:
of þaſ kiges[2] breoſten.
and þer to ſitten:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

eni ſpelle ſegge. [f. 106b, c. 1.]
and of his ſtronge cnihtes:
and of here mihteſ.
and of hire richedome:
and ou wel hit ȝam bi-come.
þanne were he welcome:
in euereche riche.
come ware he come:
þeh he were at Rome.
alle þat ihorde:
of Arthur telle.
heom þohte mochel wonder:
of ſele þan kinge.
Ac al þis was iboded:
here he i-bore were.
so him ſaẏde Merlẏn:
þat witti was an erþe.
þat þar ſolde come ſoch a ſone:
of Vther Pendragone.
þat gleomen ſolde wirche bord:
of þis kingeſ breoſte.

weapons, and his garments, and his horsemen; say and sing of Arthur the young,' and of his [strong] knights, and of their 'great' might, and of their wealth, and how well it them became. Then were he welcome 'in this worlds [in every] realm, come whereso he came, 'and' though he were at Rome; all that heard of Arthur tell, *it* seemed to them great 'marvel [wonder] of the good king! 'And so it [But all this] was 'fore'boded, ere he were born; so said him Merlin, that was 'a prophet great [witty on earth], that 'a king [such a son there] should come of Uther Pendragon; that gleemen should make *a* board of this kings breast, 'and thereto *should* sit poets most good,'

[1] *R.* Arðure. [2] *R.* kinges.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ſcopeſ swiðe ſele. [f. 133. c. 1.]	
and eten heore wullen:	and eaten hire[1]:
ær heo þenne fuſden.	hi þanne wende.
and winſcenches ut teon:	
of þeos kinges tungen.	
and drinken & dreomen:	
daies & nihtes.	
þiſ gomen heom ſculde i-laſten:	þiſ ſolde i-laſte:
to þere weorlde longe.	to þare worle lange.
And ȝet him ſeide Marlin:	And ȝet he ſaide more:
mare þat wes to comene[2].	Merlỳn þe wiſe.
þat al þat he lokede on:	þat al þat he lokede on:
to foten him ſculde buȝen.	to him ſolde aboue.
Þa ȝet him ſæide Mærlin:	And ȝet ſaide Merlỳn:
a ſellic þe wes mare.	þat waſ more.
þat ſculde beon unimete care:	þat ſolde beo onimete care:
of þas kinges forð-fare.	after þes kingeſ forþ-fare.
And of þas kinges ende:	And of his eande:
nulle hit na Brut ileue.	nele no Brut ileue.
buten hit beon þe leſte dæð:	bote hit beo þan laſte daỳ:
at þā muchele dome.	at þare mochele dome.
þenne ure drihte:	wane oure drihte:
demeð alle uolke.	alle wole deame.

and eat their will, ere they thence departed, 'and wine-draughts out draw from this kings tongue, and drink and revel day and night'; this 'game' should last 'them' to the worlds end. And yet 'said him Merlin more that was to come [he said more, Merlin the wise], that all that he looked on 'to *his* feet' to him should bow. 'The [And] yet said 'him' Merlin, 'a marvel' 'that [what] was greater, that *there* should be immoderate care (sorrow) 'at [after] this kings departure. And of 'this kings [his] end (death) will no Briton believe 'it,' except it be the last 'death [day], at the great doom, when our Lord 'judgeth [will judge] all 'folk'. 'Else [Otherwise] we

[1] *Two words belonging to this and the succeeding line are wanting.*

[2] numene, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Ælles ne cunne we demē :/
of Arðures deðen.
for he ſeolf ſæide :/
to ſele hiſ Brutten.
suð inne Cornwale :/
þer Walwain wes for-faren.
and him ſeolf wes for-wūded :/
wunder ane ſwiðe.
þat he uaren wolde :/
into Aualune.
in to þan æit-londe :/
to Argante þere hende.
for heo ſculde mid haleweie :/
helen hiſ wunden.
and þeñe he weore al hal :/
he wolde ſone com̄ heom[1].
þiſ ilefde Bruttes :/
þet he wule cumen þuf. [c. 2.]
& lokieð a whenne :/
he cume to his londe.
swa he heom bihahte :/
ar he heonne wende.
Arður wes an weorlde :/
wif kīg and riche.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Oþer weief ne con we telle :/
of þeſ kinges deaþe.
for he him ſeolf ſaide :/ [c. 2.]
to gode his Bruttus.
þar he ſtod in Cornwale :/
þar Wawein waſ for-fare.
and him seolf was for-wonded :/
wonderliche ſwiþe.
þat he vare wolde :/
in to Auelun.
in to þan ỳllonde :/
to Argane þare hende.
for ȝeo ſolde mid halewei :/
heale his wondes.
and wane he hol were :/
and[2] he wolde aȝen come here.
þis ileueþ Bruttus :/
þat he wole come þus.
and lokeþ and waiteþ :/
wane he come to londe.
aſe he ȝam bi-hehte :/
are he fram ȝam wende.

ARthur was on worle :/
wis king and riche.

cannot 'deem [tell] of 'Arthurs [this kings] death; for he [him]self said to his good Britons, 'south [where he stood] in Cornwall, where Walwain was slain, and himself was wounded wondrously much, that he would fare into Avalon, into the island, to 'Argante [Argane] the fair; for she should with balm heal his wounds; and when he were 'all' whole, he would 'soon [again] come 'to them [here]. This 'believed [believe] *the* Britons, that he will thus come, and look 'ever [and expect] when he shall come to 'his' land, as he promised them, ere he 'hence [from them] went. Arthur was in

[1] ham ? hom ? *i.e.* home. *Cf. v.* 23124.

[2] *Redundant ?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
god mon and griðful:	god man and griþfol:
hif gumen hine luueden.	his men hine louede.
Cnihtes he hafede prute:	Cnihtef he hadde proute:
and græte on heore mode.	and of grete mode.
& fpeken to þan kinge:	and fpeken to þan kinge:
of feollichen þinge.	of felliche þinge.
and þuf þat hired cleopede:	
to heȝe þan kīge.	
Lauerd Arður faren we:	Louerd Arthur wende we:
to Francene riche.	to Francene riche.
and iwinnen al þat lond:	and iwinne al þat lond:
to þire aȝere hond.	to þin owene hond.
flemen alle þa Freīfcen:	fleome þe Frence:
heore king feollen.	and hire king falle.
alle þa caftles bonien:	alle hire caftles:
and fetten heom to mid Brutten.	fette mid Bruttus.
& rixlien a þere riche:	and rixli in þan lond:
mid reȝere ftrengðe.	mid boldere ftrengþe.
þa andfwarede Arður:	þo anfwerede Arthur:
aðeleft kingē.	wifeft alre kinge.
Eouwer wille ich wulle dō:	Euere we folle wel don: [f.107.c.1.]
ah ær ich wulle to Norweiē.	ac her ich wolle to Norewei teon.
and ich wulle mid me ledē:	and ich wolle mid me leade:
Lot mīne oðem.	min oþom Loth þe kene.

the world wise king and powerful; good man and peaceful; his men him loved. Knights he had proud, and 'great in their [of great] mood; and *they* spake to the king of marvellous thing; 'and thus the assemblage said to the high king': "Lord Arthur, go we to *the* realm of France, and win all the land to thine own hand; drive away 'all' the French, [and] their king slay; all 'the [their] castles 'occupy, and' set (garrison) 'them' with Britons; and rule in the 'realm [land] with 'fierce [bold] strength. Then answered Arthur, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings: "'Your will I will [Ever we shall well] do, but ere (previously) I will [go] to Norway; and I will lead with me Loth [the keen] my brother-in-law; 'he [who] is Walwains

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
he if Wælwaẏnef[1] fader:	þat his Waweẏnes fader:
þa ich wel luuie.	wan ich moche louie.
For beoð icumen of Norweiȝe:	For me beoþ tẏdinge icome:
niwe tidende.	vt of þan londe.
Sich[elin.] þat Sichelin king þer if ded:	þat þe king of Cifille[2] his dead:
his duȝeðen bileued.	
& hæ[3] hafeð al his kineriche:	
bi-queðe her Loððe. [f. 133b. c. 1.]	
For þe kīg if al bidæled:	and eẏr naueþ he nanne.
sune & eke dohteren.	
and Lot if his fuſter sune:	Ac Loth his is foſter fone:
þe bet him ſcal iwurðe.	þat lond wole[4] to him . . . e.
for ich hine wulle in Norwæȝe:	and ich wolle in .orweẏe:
neowe king makien.	newe king makie.
and hine wæl lere:	
to witeȝen wel þa leoden.	
And þenne ich þuſ habbe idon:	And wane ich þus habbe idon:
ich wullen seoððen cumen ham.	ich wole come aȝein hom.
and ȝarkien mine ferde:	an ȝarki mine ferde:
& faren into France.	and wenden in to France.
and ȝif þe king me ſtont wiðð:	and ȝef þe king me ſtōd wiþ:
and nulle ȝeornen mi griðð.	and nele ȝeorne nan griþ.

father, whom I 'well [much] love. For 'new' tidings are come 'from Norway [to me out of the land], that Sichelin [the] king is 'there' dead, 'his people *has* left; and he hath ere bequeathed all his kingdom to Loth'. 'For the king is of all bereaved, son and eke daughter [and heir hath he none]; 'and [But] Loth is his sisters son,—'the better to him shall *it* befall,—for [the land *I* will to him give, and] I will make 'him' new king in Norway, 'and well instruct him to govern well the people.' And when I have done thus, I will 'afterwards [again] come home, and get ready my army, and pass into France; and if the king withstandeth me, and will not yearn 'my

[1] Wælneſ, *pr. m.*
[2] *Evidently a blunder.*
[3] he?
[4] ich wole? giue?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ich hine wulle mid fehte:		ich wolle hine mid fihte:
fallen to þan grunde.		falle to þā grunde.
Arður lette blawen:		Arthur lette blowe:
hornes and bemen.		hornes and bumes.
and lette beoden to fæ:		and lette beden to fée:
Bruttes swiðe balde.		cnihtef fwiþe bolde.
Scipen he hæfde gode:		Sipes he hadde gode:
bi þere fæ flode.		bi þan fée flode.
fiftene hundred:		fiftene hundred:
fufden from londe.	10	wende fram londe.
and fluȝen after þere fæ:		and wende in milde fée:
swulc heo fluht hafden.		
& buhȝen in to Norwæȝē:		in to Noreweie.
mid baldere ſtrēgðen.		
Sone swa heo comē:		Sone ſo hii comen:
hafne heo nomen.		hauene hii nemen.
mid muchelere ſtrengðe:		mid mochelere ſtrengþe:
ſtepen a þa riche.		wenden in þan londe.
Arður ſenden hif ſonde:		Arthur ſende hif ſonde:
wide ȝeond þan londe.	20	oueral þan londe. [c. 2.]
& hæhte heom cumen ſone:		hehte ȝam come ſone:
and Lot habben to kinge.		to Loth hire kinge.
& ȝif heo þat nolden:		and ȝef hii þat nolde:
alle heō he wolde a-ſlan. [c. 2.]		he ȝam wolde a-cwelle.

[any] peace, I will fell him with fight to the ground." Arthur caused to be blown horns and trumpets, and caused to be summoned to *the* sea *the* 'Britons [knights] most bold. Ships he had good by the sea-flood; fifteen hundred pushed from *the* land, and 'flew along the [proceeded on *the* calm] sea, 'as if they had flight (wings), and bent *their course*' into Norway, 'with bold strength'. *So* soon as they came, they took haven; with mickle strength *they* stept (disembarked) on the 'realm [land]. Arthur sent his messengers 'wide over [over all] the land, 'and' ordered them to come soon, 'and have Loth for [to Loth, their] king; and if they would not that, he would 'slay [kill] them 'all'. Then [they] took their messengers, '*the* Norwegian earls

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þa nomen heore ſonden:
eorles Noreniſſce.
and ſenden to þan kingen:
and hahten hine aȝain wenden.
& ȝif þu nult aȝæin faren:
forhȝen þu ſcalt habben & kare.
for lōge biŏ auere:
þat ne iwurŏ næuere.
þat we uncuŏne mon:
to kinge ſcullen hæbben.
For ȝif Sikelin if forŏ-faren:
her beoŏ oŏere icoren.
þe we maȝen bi vre iwille:
hæbben to kinge.
& þif if þat ſoŏe:
nif þer nā oŏer.
oŏer far þe awæiward:
and wēd þe riht hamward.
oŏer to dæi a ſeoueniht:
þu ſcalt habben græt fiht.
Þa eorlef Noreniſſce[3]:
nomen heom to ræde..

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þo nem[1] hii hire ſonde:
þe eorles of þan londe.
and ſende to þan kinge:
and hehten him aȝen wende.
And bote þou aȝen fare:
her þou ſalt habbe care.
for lang beoþ euere:
þat ne worþ neuere.
þat we vncouþe man:
to kinge wolleþ habbe.

Þis his þat ſoþe:
of vs naueſt þou non oþer.
oþer far þe a-weiward:
oþer[2] wend þe riht hamward.
oþer to dai a ſoueniht:
þou ſalt habbe ſwiþe ſtrang fiht.
ÞE eorlef Noreiniſſe:
nemen heom to-reade.

[the earls of the land], and sent to the king, and bade him back go,—"And 'if thou wilt not [unless thou] depart, thou shalt have [here] 'sorrow and' care; for *so* long *as* is ever, that shall never come to pass, that we 'shall raise [will have] *a* foreign man for king. 'For if Sichelin is departed (dead), here are others choice, whom we may by our will raise to *be* king. And' this is the sooth; 'there is [of us thou hast (wilt have)] no other; either move thee awayward, and turn thee right homeward, either to-day a se'nnight, thou shalt have 'great [most strong] fight." The Norwegian

[1] nemen?
[2] and?
[3] *The last two words of this line are on an erasure, by second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
þat king heo wolden habben ⁊	wat king hii wolde habbe ⁊	
of ſeoluen heore cunden.	of ſeoluere cunde.	
for al Sikelines quiden ⁊	ac al hire ſpeche ⁊	
sotſcipe heo heolden.	to ſot-ſipe ȝeode.	
And ſwa longe swa beoð æuere ⁊		
ne ſcal hit ſtonde næuere.		
ah we ſcullen nimen Riculf ⁊	We ſolle nime Riculf ⁊	*Riculf.*
þe if ſwiðe riche eorl.	and hebben hine to kinge.	
and hebben hine to kinge ⁊	þat his an eorl kene ⁊	
þif if uf iqueme.	to euereche neode.	
and ſumen ure ferde ⁊	and ſomni vre ferde ⁊	
ȝeond al þiſſen ærde.	oueral þes erþe.	
and faren to Arðure ⁊	and wende to Arthur ⁊	
& flemmen hine mid fehte.	and fleme hine mid ſihte.	
& Lot we ſcullen ſuſen ⁊	and Loth we ſollen ſuſe ⁊	
and flemē of londen.	and fleme of londe.	
oðer we mid fehtē ⁊	oþer we mid ſihte ⁊	
ſculleð hine fallen. [f. 134. c. 1.]	his cnihtef ſolle a-cwelle.	
Heo nom̄ Riculfe ⁊	Al þis was i-don ⁊	
þene eorl of Norene.	aſe hii þare demde. [f. 107ᵇ. c. 1.]	
and hefuen hine to kinge ⁊		
þeh hit neore him noht icūde.		
and ſumneden uerde ⁊	and ſomnede hire ferde ⁊	
ȝeōd Norniſce ærde.	oueral þan erþe.	

earls betook them to counsel, 'that *a* [what] king they would have of 'their' own race; 'for all Sichelins words they held *to be* [but all their speech went to] folly.—"'And so long as is ever, it shall not ever stand! But' we shall take Riculf, who is [an] earl 'exceeding powerful [keen, at every need], and raise him to *be* king,—'this is to us pleasing,'—and assemble our forces over all this country, and march *towards* Arthur, and defeat him with fight; and Loth we shall chase, and drive from land, or *else* we shall 'fell him [kill his knights] with fight." 'They took Riculf, the earl of Norway, and raised him to *be* king, though it were not to him by right [All this was done, as they there deemed]; and *they* assembled [their] host over

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

And Arður an his ende :
ȝuōd þat lond gō wende.
þat lond he þurh arnde :
burhȝes he uor-barnde.
æhte he nom inoh :
muche moncun he þer of-ſloh.
And Riculf him gon ridē :
to-ȝæines Arðure anan.
to-gædere heo fuſden :
and veht heo bigunnen.
Bruttes buȝen heom to :
balu þer wes riue.
luken vt of ſcaþe :
sweordes longe.
hefden fluȝen a þene uelde :
faluwede nebbes.
beorn aȝein beorne :
ſcaft ſette an breoſte.
burnen þer breken :
Bruttes biſie weoren.
bruſtleden ſceldes :
ſcalkes þer ueolen.
& ſwa al þene dæi-liht :
ilaſte þiſ muchele fiht.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

And Arthur þe wile :
in þan lond wende.
and hit þorh earnde :
and touneſ for-barnde.
orf he nam inoh :
and moche folk he þare ſloh.
And Riculf cō ride :
to-ȝeines Arthure a-non.
to-gadere hii wende :
and ſiht þar bi-gonne.
Bruttus ȝam wende to :
þar was wo riue.
drowen vt of ſcaþe :
ſweordes ſwiþe longe.
heuedes þar floȝe in felde :
falewede nebbes.

brunies þer breke :
Bruttus buſie were.

þus alle dai-liht :
ilaſte þat ſtronge ſiht.

'Norways [all the] land. And Arthur 'on his part, over [the while in] the land 'gan march [marched]; 'the land he [and it] through passed, [and] *the* 'burghs [towns] 'he' consumed; 'goods [cattle] he took enow, [and] much folk he there slew. And Riculf gan 'him' ride against Arthur anon; together they came, and fight 'they [there] began. *The* Britons advanced to them,—woe there was rife! Swords [exceeding] long *they* 'plucked [drew] out of sheath; heads flew 'on the [there in] field; faces paled; 'man against man set shaft to breast'; burnies there brake; *the* Britons were busy; 'shivered shields, warriors there fell!' 'And so [Thus] all 'the' daylight lasted 'this great [the strong] fight; 'moved they east, moved they

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ferden heo æſt ferden heo weſt:	ferde ou hit verde:
þer Noreine wes þa wurſe.	
ferden heo ſuð ferden heo norð:	
þe Norrene þer feollen.	þe Norreiſ euere folle.
Bruttes weoren balde:	Bruttuſ weren bolde:
þa Noreine heo aqualden.	þe Norreine hii a-cwelde.
Noreiniſce men þer feollen: [c. 2.]	fif and twenti þouſend:
fif and twenti þuſend.	hii leide to þan grunde.
and Riculf king þer wes of-flaȝen:	and Riculf king þar was of flaȝe:
and idon of lif-dæȝen.	and idon of lif-daȝe.
lutel þer eode to læue:	lute he þare lefde:
of þan leod-folke.	of þan ilke folke.
wulc swa hafuede þat wracche lif:	and woche wrecchef hadde þat lif:
ȝirde[1] Arðures grið.	hii ȝornde Arthur his griþ.
Ardur[2] biſæh a Lot:	þo cleopede Arthur:
þe leof him wes swiðe.	Loth þat he louede.
and þuf him cleopien agon:	and þus him þare faide:
Arður þe riche mō.	to his oþom deore.
Lot wend hider to me:	
þu art mi wine deore.	
Her ich þe biteche:	Here ich þe biteche:

west, there was *it* the worse to *the* Norwegians; moved they south, moved they north [fare howso it fared] the Norwegians 'there [ever] fell. *The* Britons were bold, the Norwegians they killed; '*the* Norwegian men there fell, [they laid to the ground] five and twenty thousand; and Riculf *the* king was there slain, and deprived of life-day; little there 'remained [he left] of 'the [that] folk; 'whoso had the wretched [and *those* wretches which had the] life, [they] yearned 'Arthurs [Arthur his] peace. Arthur 'looked on [then called] Loth, 'who was to him well dear [whom he loved], and thus 'gan to him to call, Arthur the rich man [said him there to his dear son-in-law]: "'Loth, wend hither to me, thou art my dear relative.' Here

[1] ȝirnde?

[2] *R.* Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
al þas kineriche.	al þis kineriche.
of me þu ſcalt halden[1]:	of me þou hit ſalt holde:
and habbē me to munde.	and habbe me in munde.
Þa wes Walwaī þider icumen:	Þo was Wowein þider icome:
Lottef ældeſte ſune.	Loth his eldeſte ſone.
of Rome from þan Pape:	fram Rome þan Pope: [c. 2.]
þe Supplice wes ihate.	þat Supplis was ihote.
þa longe him wes dihte:	he hadde þat child itaht:
and makede hine to cnihte.	and idobbid to cniht.
Wælle wel wes hit bitoȝen:	Wel wel was hit bi-toȝe:
þat Walwaī wes to monne iboren.	þat Waweýn was to manne ibore.
for Walwæin wes ful aðelmod:	for Woweýn was edmod:
an ælche þeouwe he wes god.	of eche þeue he was god.
he wes mete-cuſti:	he was mete-couſti:
and cniht mid þan bezſte.	and cniht mid þan beſte.
Al Arðures hired:	Alle þe cnihtes þorh him:
wes swiðe ifurðed[2].	were ſwiþe ibalded.
for Walwaine þan kene:	
þe icumen wes to hirede.	
and for hif fader Lote:	and for his fader þinge:
þe iloten wes to kinge.	þat hi-houe was to kinge.

I give to thee all this kingdom; of me thou shalt [it] hold, and have me for protector." Then was Walwain thither come, 'Loths [Loth his] eldest son; from the pope of Rome, who was named Supplice, 'who long had him brought up [he had the child instructed], and 'made him [dubbed] knight. Full well was it bestowed, that Walwain was born to *be* man, for Walwain was 'full noble-minded, in [gracious, of] each virtue (*or* quality) he was good; he was liberal, and knight with the best. All 'Arthurs folk was [the knights through him were] greatly emboldened, ' for Walwain the keen, that was come to *the* host'; and for his 'father Loth [fathers sake], who was 'chosen [raised] to *be* king. Then spake Arthur

[1] *Apparently written* habben *at first.*

[2] *Originally written* iforðen, *but corrected by the same hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa ſpac Arður him wið:	[f. 134b. c. 1.] Þo ſpac Arthur Loth w..
and hehte hine halden god grið.	and bad hine holde god ....
and hehte hine luuien:	
hiſ griðfulle leoden.	
& þa grið nolden halden:	and þaie þat grið nolde holde:
fallen heom to grunde.	legge heom to grunde.
Þa ȝet cleopede Arður:	Þo ſaide Arthur:
aðeleſt kingen.	to his cnihtes bolde.
Whær beo ȝe miṇe Bruttes:	
fareð nu forð rihtes.	
ȝarkieð bi þan flode:	ȝarkeþ bi þan flode:
mine ſcipen gode.	mine ſipes gode.
Al duden þa cnihtes:	All. dude þe cnihtes:
swa Arður heom hæhte.	aſe Arthur ȝam hehte.
Þa þa ſcipen weoren ȝaru:	Þo þe ſipes were ȝare:
Arður gon to ſæ faren.	Arthur gan forþ fare.
mid him he mon[1] his cnihtes:	mid him he nam forþrihteſ:
his Noreniſſce þeines.	his Noreine cnihteſ.
and balden his Bruttes:	
and bah forð mid vðes.	and wende forþ in wilde ſéé.
and þe duhtie kīg:	
com to Denenarke[2].	in to Denemarche.

with 'him [Loth], and bade him hold good peace, 'and bade him love his peaceful people,' and [those] that would not hold peace, to 'fell [lay] them to ground. 'The yet called [Then said] Arthur, 'noblest of kings [to his knights bold]: "'Where be ye, my Britons? March *ye* now forth-right'; prepare *ye* by the flood my good ships." All did the knights as Arthur them ordered. When the ships were ready, Arthur gan 'to *the* sea [forth] fare; with him he took his 'knights [forth-right] his Norwegian 'thanes [knights], 'and his bold Britons'; and proceeded forth 'with *the* waves [in *the* wild sea]; 'and the doughty king came' [in]to

[1] nom?

[2] *R.* Denemarke.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
he lette flæn teldes:	he lette flean his teldes:
wide ȝeond þa feldes.	oueral þan feldes.
bemen he lette blawen:	
and his cume bodien.	
þa wes inne Denemarke:	þo was in Denemarche:
a king of mucle mæhte.	a king of mochele mihte.
[Æſ]cil. Æſcil wes ihate:	Aſcil was ihote:
hext ouer Denene.	þe hexſte of þan londe.
he iſah þat Ardur[1] bi-won:	he iſah þat Arthur bi-wan:
al þat him wes on willen.	al þat he lokede an.
Æſcil king hine biþohte:	Aſcil king bi-þohte:
whæt he don mahte.	wat he don mhte[2].
lað him weſ to leoſen:	loþ him was leoſe:
leouen hiſ leoden.	leoue his cnihteſ.
He iſah þat[3] ſtrengðe:	He iſah þat mid ſtrengþe:
ſtonden he ne mahte.	ſtonde he ne mihte. [f.108.c.1.]
aȝain Arðure:	
mid nauere nane compe. [c.2.]	
He ſende gretinge:	He ſende gretinge:
to Arðure kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
hundes & hauekes:	hundes and hauekeſ:
& swiðe gode horſſes.	and ſwiþe heȝe horſes.
seoluer and ræd gold:	seoluer and red gold:

Denmark; he caused [his] tents to be pitched, 'wide over [over all] the fields; 'trumpets he caused to be blown, and his coming to be announced.' Then was in Denmark a king of much might; *he* was named Æscil, [the] highest 'over *the* Danes [of the land]; he saw that Arthur won all that 'was to him in will [he looked on]. Æscil *the* king bethought him what he might do; loath *it* was to him to lose his dear 'people [knights]. He saw that with strength he might not stand 'against Arthur, with ever any combat.' He sent greeting to Arthur [the] king; hounds and hawks, and horses exceeding 'good [fine]; silver and red gold, with prudent words. And yet

[1] *R.* Arður. [2] *R.* mihte. [3] þat mid?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid ræh-fulle[1] worden.
& ȝet dude mare:
Æſcil þe mære.
he ſende to þan hæxten[2]:
of Arðures hireden.
and bad heom ārdien him:
to hæhȝen þan kingen.
þat he moſte hiſ mō bicumen:
& to ȝifle bitæchen his ſune.
and ælche ȝere him ſēden:
gauel of hiſ londe.
ænne bæt mid iſunde:
from breorde to grunde.
of golde & of gæſume[3]:
& of godliche pallen.
and ſeoððen he wolde swerie:
swiken þat he nalden.
þiſ iherden Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
þat Æſcil Denene king:
wolde beon hiſ vnderling.
buten ælche nihte[4]:
he and alle his cnihtes.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid red-folle wordes.
And ȝet he dude more:
þe king of Denemarche.
he ſende to þan hexſte:
þat weren mid þā kinge.
and bad ȝam him helpe:
to þan bolde kinge.
þat he moſte his man bi-come:
and take to hoſtāge his ſone.
and eche ȝer him ſende:
gauel of his londe.
ane bot mid iſunde:
fram toppe to þan grunde.
of gold and of gariſome:
and of riche palles.
and ſuþþe ſwerie ich wolle:
ſwike þat ich nolle.
þis ihorde Arthur:
boldeſt alre kinge.
þat Aſcil Denene king:
wolde beon his onderling.
wiþ oute eni cnihte:
for-lede to þan fihte.

[he] did more, 'Æscil the great [the king of Denmark]; he sent to the highest 'of Arthurs folk [that were with the king], and prayed them to 'intercede for [help] him with the 'noble [bold] king; that he might his man become, and deliver his son for hostage, and each year send him tribute of his land, a boat of gold and of treasure, 'and of rich garments, *filled* from *the* top to *the* bottom, in safety. And afterwards 'he would [I will] swear, that 'he would [I will] not prove false. Arthur heard this, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, that Æscil, king of *the* Danes, would be his underling, without 'each (any) fight, he and all his knights [any knight leading forth to 'the

[1] ræd-fulle?
[2] hæxtent *pr. m., but* t *expuncted.*
[3] gæriſume?
[4] fihte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þa iwraðˢ iaðeled:
Arður þe riche.
and þus andſwærede:
mid aðmode worden.
Wel wurðe þan monne:
þe mid wiſdome.
biwineð him gⁱð & frið:
& freond-ſcipe to halden.
þen̄e he iſiht þet he bið:
mid ſtrengðe ibunden.
iȝarked al to leoſen:
leofue his richen.
mid liſte he mot leoðien:
luðe his bendes. [f.135.c.1.]
Arður hehte þene king cume:
and bringen hif aldeſte ſune.
and he swa dude sone:
þe king of Denemarke.
Arðures iwille:
ſone he gon fulle.
to-ſomne heo comen:
and fæhten iwurðen.
Þa ȝet cleopede Arður:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þo was igladed:
Arthur þe riche.
þus þo anſwerede:
mid milde his wordes.
Wel worþe þane man:
þat folweþ wiſdome.
and bi-winneþ loue and griþ:
and freoſipe holdeþ.
wane he ſicþ þat he his:
mid ſtrengþe ibunde.
and wendeþ al to loſe:
leoue hif freondes.
mid fleþþe he mot ſlakie:
loþe his bendes. [[c. 2.]
ARthur hehte þane king come:
and bringe his eldeſte ſone.
and he ſo dude ſone:
þe king of Denemarche.
Arthureſ wille:
al he gan fulle.
to-gadere hii comen:
and ſahnede ſone.
Þo ſaide Arthur:

fight]. Then was gladdened Arthur the rich, 'and' thus [then] answered with [his] mild words: "Well worth the man, that 'with wisdom [followeth wisdom, and] obtaineth to him 'peace and amity [love and peace], and friendship 'to hold [holdeth]! When he seeth that he is bound with strength, [and] his dear 'realm ready [friends go] all to destruction, with art he must slacken his odious bonds." Arthur ordered the king to come, and bring his eldest son; and he so did soon, the king of Denmark. Arthurs will 'soon [all] he gan to fulfill; together they came, and were reconciled [soon]. 'The yet [Then] said Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Fare I

[1] iwarð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
aðeleſt kingen.	boldeſt alre kinge.
Faren ich wulle to France:	Faren ich wolle to France:
mid muchele mire ferde.	mid bolde mine ferde.
ich wulle habben of Noreweie:	ich wolle habbe of Noreweie:
niȝe þuſend cnihtes.	niȝe þouſend cnihteſ.
& of Denemarke ich wulle leden:	and of Denemarche ich wolle leade:
niȝe þuſend of þan leodē.	niȝe þouſend of þan leode.
and of Orkaneie:	and of Orcaneye:
enleuen hūdred.	eolleue hundred.
and of Mureinen:	and of Moraine:
þreo þuſeond monnen.	þreo þouſend manne.
and of Galeweien:	and of Galeweye:
fif þuſend of þā leoden.	fif þouſend of þan leode.
and of Irlonde:	and of Irlonde:
elleuen þuſend.	eolloue þouſend.
and of Brutaine:	and of Brutayne:
mine cnihtes balde.	mine cnihtes bolde.
ſcullen þræſten bi-foren me:	ſolle þreaſte me bi-vore:
þritti þuſunde.	þrittie þouſend.
and of Gutlonde ich wulle leden:	and of Gutlond ich wolle leade:
ten þuſeond of þan leoden.	ten þouſend of þan leode.
and of Friflonde:	and of Iſlonde:
fif þuſend monnen.	fif þouſend manne.
and of Brutaine:	and of Lute Brutaine:
Howel þene balde.	Howel þan heande.
and mid ſwulche uolke:	and mid ſoche folke:
Frāce ich wulle iſechen.	France ich wolle ſeche.

will to France, with my 'mickle [bold] host. I will have of Norway nine thousand knights; and of Denmark I will lead nine thousand of the people; and of Orkney eleven hundred; and of Moray three thousand men; and of Galloway five thousand of the folk; and of Ireland eleven thousand; and of Britain my knights bold shall march before me, thirty thousand; and of Gutland I will lead ten thousand of the people; and of 'Frisland [Iceland] five thousand men; and of [Little] Britain Howel the 'bold [fair]; and with

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
And ſwa ich ibiden godes ære:	And ſo ich abide godes ore:
ȝet ich wulle haten mare.	ȝet ich wolle hote more.
þat of alle þan londē:	þat of al þan londe:
þat ſtondeþ a mire honden. [c. 2.]	þat ſtondeþ in mine honde.
ich haten ælcne ohtne[1] mon:	ich wolle hote echne man:
þe his wepnen beren con.	þat his wepne bere can.
alſe he wule liuien:	aſe he wole libbe:
and his lumen habben.	and his leomes habbe.
þat he faren wiδ me:	þat he wende wiþ me:
to fehten wiδ Frolle.	to fihte wiþ Frolle.
þat is Francene king:	þat his Francene king:
fæie he ſcal iwurδe.	fæẏ he ſal iworþe.
he wes iboren i Rome:	he was ibore in Rome: [f. 108b. c. 1.]
of Romaniſce cunne.	of Romaniſſe cunne.
Forδ ferde Arδur:	Forþ wende Arthur:
þat he com to Flandreſ.	þat he to Flandres cō.
þat lond he gon biwinnen:	þat lond he gan bi-winne:
and ſette hit mid his monnen.	and ſette hit mid his manne.
and feodδe[2] he beh þanene:	and ſuþþe he wende þanene:
in to[3]	in to Boloẏne.
Buluineſ lond:	and al Boloẏnes lond:
nō hit to hiſ aȝere hond.	nam to hiſ owene hond.
and seoδδen he nom þene wæi:	and ſuþþe he forþ þane waẏ:

such folk France I will seek. And as I expect Gods mercy, yet I will promise more; that of all the lands, that stand in my hand, I [will] order each 'brave' man, that can bear his weapons, as he would *wish to* live, and have his limbs, that he go with me, to fight with Frolle, who is king of *the* French,—slain he shall be!—he was born in Rome, of Romanish kin." Forth proceeded Arthur, until he came to Flanders; the land he gan conquer, and set it with his men. And next he marched thence, into Boulogne, and all Boulognes land took 'it' in his own hand. And afterwards he took

[1] *Written at first* ohtene, *but* e *expuncted.* [2] ſeoδδe?

[3] *A portion of two lines is here deficient, supplied by the other text.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
þe in touward France læi.		þat toward France laẏ.	
þa bed he his bod:		þo bad Arthur:	
allen hiſ beornen.		alle his cnihteſ.	
for þær heo uoren:		wende woder hii wende:	
þat na wiht heo ne ne[1] nomē.		þat noht hii ne neme.	
buten he[2] mid rihte:		bote hii mid rihte:	
hit biȝitē mihte.		hit bi-ȝete mihte.	
mid rihte chepinge:			
i þas kinges hirede.			
þat iher[3] Frolle:	10	Al þis ihorde Frolle:	
þer he wes inne France.		þar he was in France.	
of Arðures iſpede:		of Arthur his ſpede:	
and of alle hiſ deden.		and of alle his deade.	
and hu[4] al bi-wonne:		and ou he al bi-won:	
þat he lokede on.		þat he lokede an.	
and al hit him to beh:		and al hit him to beh:	
þat he mid eȝene iſah.		þat he mid heȝene iſeh.	
þa wes þe king Frolle:		þo was þe king Frolle:	
laðliche of-fered.		loþliche afered.	
A þere ilke worlde:	20	A þare ilke worle:	
þa þiſ wes iwurðen.		þo þis was iworþe.	
wes Francene lond:	[f. 135b. c. 1.]	was Francene lond:	[*Fra*]*nce.*
Gualle ihatē.		Galle ihote.	

[proceeded] the way that 'in' toward France lay. Then bade 'he [Arthur] 'his command' to all his 'men [knights], that fare wheresoever they should fare, they should take 'no whit [nought], unless they might it obtain with right; 'with just purchase, in the kings host.' Frolle heard 'that [all this], where he was in France, of 'Arthurs [Arthur his] speed (success), and of all his deeds; and how [he] all won that he looked on, and *how* it all to him submitted that he saw with eyes; then was the king Frolle horribly afraid! At the same time 'that [when] this was transacted, *the* land of *the* French was named Gaul; and Frolle was from Rome come into France,

[1] *Redundant?* [2] heo? [3] iherde? [4] hu he?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and Frolle wes from Rome:
ifaren into France.
and ælche ȝere ſende:
gauel of þan lōde.
ten hundred punde:
of seoluer and of golde.
Nu iherd Frolle:
þe ældeȓ wes of France.
of þere lond[1]-forȝe:
þe Arður dude an londe.
Sonde he ſende ſone:
an ueſt touward Rome.
and hehte Romaniſce folc:
redē heom bi-tweonen.
hu feole þuſend cnihten:
heo þider wolden ſendē[2].
þat he þa æð mihte:
wið Arðure uihte.
and ulemen of londe:
Arður þene ſtronge.
Cnihtes gunnen riden:
vt of Rom-leoden.
fif and twenti þuſēd:
ferden touward France.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and Frolle waſ fram Rome:
ifaren into Frāce.
and eche ȝer ſende:
gauel of þan londe.
ten hundred pund:
of seoluer and of golde.
Nou ihorde Frolle:
þat king was in France.
of þare mochele ſorewe:
þat Arthur dude in londe.
Sonde he ſende ſone:
towardeſ Rome.
and bad Romaniſſe folk:
readen heom bi-twine.
ou fale þouſend cnihteſ:
hii þider wolde ſende. [c. 2.]
þat he þe bet mihte:
wiþ Arthure fihte.
and fleomen of londe:
Arthur þan ſtronge.
Cnihtes gonne ride:
vt of Rom-leode.
fif and twenti þouſend:
wende toward France.

and each year sent tribute of the land, ten hundred pounds of silver and of gold. Now heard Frolle, who was 'chief of [king in] France, of the [great] sorrow that Arthur did in *the* land. He sent messengers soon '*the* nearest way' toward Rome, and bade *the* Romanish folk advise them between, how many thousand knights they thither would send, that he might the 'easier [better] fight with Arthur, and drive from *the* land Arthur the strong. Knights gan to ride out of Rome-land; five and twenty thousand proceeded toward France. Frolle heard this, with his mickle host, that the Romanish

[1] *Written originally* londe, *but* e *erased.* [2] ſen, *pr. m.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Þis iherde Frolle :/
mid muchele his ferde.
þat þe Romanisce uolc :/
riden touward londe.
Frolle & hif ferde :/
heom to-ȝeines ferde.
þa heo comẽ to-ſomne :/
kene men and wihte.
of alle þan ærde :/
vnimete uerde.
Þæt iherde Arður :/
aðeleſt kingen.
& sumnede hif ferde :/
and heõ to-ȝaines wende.
Ah næs næuere king nan :/ [c. 2.]
þa quic wes an eorðen.
þe eouere ær an uolde[1] :/
swulc folc a-walde.
for of alle þan kine-londe :/
þe Arður hafuede an hõde.
forð hę ladde mid him :/
alle þa kenneſte men.
þat nuſte he neuere[2] on weorlde :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Þis ihorde Frolle :/
mid mochele his ferde.
þat þe Romaniſſe :/
come toward londe.
Frolle and his ferde :/ [Fr]olle.
ȝam to-ȝeneſ wende.
þat hii come to-gadere :/
kene men and wiþte.
of alle þan erþe :/
onimete moche ferde.
Þ At i-horde Arthur :/
boldeſt alre king.
and ſomnede his ferde :/
and ȝam to-ȝeines wende.
Ac naſ neuere king nõ :/
þat cwik was on erþe.
þa euere her on folde :/
ſoch folk a-welde.
for of alle þan kine-londe :/
þat Arthur hadde an honde.
forþ he ladde mid him :/
þe alre kenneſte men.
þat nuſte no man þere :/

'folk' 'rode [came] toward *the* land. Frolle and his host marched against them, *so* that they came together, keen men and brave, of all the earth *an* 'immense [immensely great] force. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, and assembled his army, and advanced against them. But never was *there* any king, that was alive on earth, that ever ere on land such folk (multitude) commanded; for from all the kingdoms that Arthur had in hand, forth he led with him 'all the keenest men [the keenest men of all], *so* that 'he' knew 'never in *the* world [no man there] how many thousands

[1] *The last two words of this line are sup. ras., as are also the last three words of the next line but two, but in both cases by the original hand.*

[2] *At first written* neouere, *but* o *expuncted.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

hu feole þuſ̄d þer weoren.
Sone swa heo comen to-ſomne:
Arður & Frolle.
harliche[1] heo igrættē:
al þat heo imette.
Cnihtes swiðe ſtronge:
igripen ſperen longe.
and ræſden heō to-gædere:
mid ræhȝere ſtrēgðe.
Alle dæi þer weore:
duntes swiðe riue.
folc feol to uolden:
and fæie-ſið worhtē.
græmende ſegges:
gras-bæd iſohten.
gullen þa helmes:
ȝeoumereden eorles.
sceldeſ þær ſcenden:
ſcalkeſ gūnē reoſen.
Þa cleopede Ardur[2]:
aðeleſt kingen.
Whar beo ȝe mine Bruttes:
balde mine þaineſ.
þe dæi him forð ȝeōgeð:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ou fale þouſend þar were.
Sone ſo hii to-gadere come:
Arthur and Frolle.
heardliche hii gretten:
al þat hii metten.
Cnihteſ ſwiþe ſtronge:
igrepe ſpereſ lange.
and reaſeden ȝam to-gadere:
mid reȝere ſtrengþe.
Alle dai þar weren:
duntef ſwiþe riue.
folk ful to folde:
and þane grunde ſohte. [f. 109. c. 1.]
ȝolle þe helmef:
ȝeomerede eorles.
Þo cleopede Arthur:
boldeſt of kinges.
Ware beo ȝe mine Bruttus:
bolde mine cnihteſ.
þe dai him forþ goþ:

there were. *So* soon as they came together, Arthur and Frolle; hardily (hostilely) they greeted all that they met. Knights most strong grasped long spears, and rushed them together, with fierce strength. All day there were blows most rife; *the* folk fell to ground, and 'wrought destruction; *the* angry warriors' sought *the* grass-bed [the ground]; the helms resounded, murmured earls; 'shields there shivered, warriors gan fall.' Then called Arthur, 'noblest [boldest] of kings: "Where be ye, my Britons, my bold 'thanes [knights]? The day it forth goeth; this folk against us standeth.

[1] hardliche?

[2] *R.* Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þif folc uf aȝein ſtondeð.
lette we heom to gliden:
ſcærpe gares inoȝe.
& techen heō to riden:
þene wæi touward Romen.
Æfne þan worde:
þe Ardur[1] iſeide.
he ſprong forð an ſtede:
ſwa ſparc ded[2] of fure.
Him weore fuliende:
fifti þuſende.
hærde here-kempē:
hælden to fihte.
smiten uppen Frolle:
þær he wes on ulocke.
and brohten hine of fleme:
mid muclen hiſ folke.
þer Ardur[1] of-floh:
muchel uolc and vniuoh.
þa fleh in to Pariſe:
Frolle þe riche.
and þa ȝeten tunden:
mid teonen inoȝe.
and þa[3] word ſeide:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þif folk vs a-ȝen ſtondeþ.
lete we to ham glide:
ſarpe gares inowe.
and teche ȝam to ride:
þane wei toward Rome.
Efne þan worde:
þat Arthur þo ſaide.
he ſprong forþ an ſtedes: [f. 136. c. 1.] hii ſpronge forþ vppen ſtedes:
aſe ſparc doþ of fure.
Him weȝe folȝende:
fiftie þouſend.
and ſmiten vppe Frolle:
þar he was on flocke.
and brohte hine on fleome:
mid alle his folke.
þar Arthur of-sloh:
mochel folk and onifoh.
þo fleh in to Paris:
Frolle þe riche.
and þe ȝeatef tunde:
mid teone inowe.
and þes word ſaide:

Cause we to glide to them sharp darts enow, and teach them to ride the way toward Rome!" Even with the words that Arthur [then] said, 'he [they] sprang forth 'on steed [upon steeds], as spark doth of fire. Fifty thousand were following him; '*the* hardy warriors rushed to *the* fight,' [and] smote upon Frolle, where he was in *the* flock, and brought him to flight, with 'his mickle [all his] folk; there slew Arthur much folk and innumerable. Then fled into Paris Frolle the powerful, and fastened the gates, with grief enow; and these words said, sorrowful in heart: "Liefer

[1] *R.* Arður. [2] deð? [3] þas?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

forhful an heorte.
Leouere me weore:
þ ich iboren neore.
Paris. þa weoren inne Paris:
plihtliche spelles ful iwif.
sorhfulle iberen:
burhmen gunnen beouien.
walles heo gunnen rihten:
þa ȝæten heo gunnen dihten.
mete heo nomen:
al þat heo neh comen.
an ælchere halue:
heo heolden to burȝe.
heo uerden þider alle:
þe heolden mid Frolle.
þat iherde Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
þat inne Paris wunede Frolle:
mid unimete uerde.
and ſeiden þat he wolde:
wið Arðure ſtonden.
To Paris ferde Arður:
ærhðe bi-deled.
and bi-læi þa walles:
and arede[1] his teldes.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

forhfolle on heorte.
Leuere me were:
þat ich ibore nere.
ÞO weren in Paris:
ſori tidýnge foliwis.
sorhfolle ſpeches:
þe borhmen gonne buuie.
walles hii rihten:
ȝeateſ hii dihten.
meate hii nemen:
al þat hii neh comē.
in euereche halue:
hii ladde to borewe.
hii wenden þider alle:
þat helde mid Frolle.
þat ihorde Arthur:
wiſeſt alre kinge.
þat in Pariſ was Frolle: [c. 2.]
mid onimete ferde.
and ſaide þat he wolde:
wiþ Arthur at-ſtonde.
To Pariſ wende Arthur:
arhþe be-dealed.
and bi-lai þe walles:
and arerde his teldeſ.

were *it* to me, that I were not born!" Then were in Paris 'grievous speeches [sorry tidings], full surely, sorrowful 'cries; [speeches; the] burgh-men gan to tremble; *the* walls they 'gan repair [repaired], 'the' gates they 'gan to form [formed]; meat (provisions) they took, all that they came nigh; on 'each [every] side they carried *it* to *the* burgh; thither came they all, that held with Frolle. Arthur heard that, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings, that Frolle 'dwelt [was] in Paris, with *an* immense force, and said that he would Arthur withstand. To Paris marched Arthur, of

[1] arerde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
a feower halue he heo bi-lai:	a four halue he hine bi-lai.
fouwer wiken and enne dæi. [c. 2.]	four weke and one dai.
Auared weoren þa leden:	A-fered weren fore:
þa þere weoren wiðinnen.	þat wiþ ine were.
þa burh wes wiðinnen:	þe borh was wiþ ine:
afulled mid mōnien.	i-fulled of manne.
and æten fone þene mete:	and eote fone þane meate:
þe þer wes ifomned.	þat þar was igadered.
þa feouwer wiken weoren aȝōged:	þo four wike were agon:
þa Arður wes þær atſtōden.	þat Arthur hadde þare ibeon.
þæ wes inne burȝe:	þo was ine borwe:
vnimete forȝe.	onimete forewe.
mid wræcche þā falke[1]:	mid þan wrecche folke:
þe leie þer an hungre.	þat lai þar for-hongered.
þer wes wop þe[2] wes rop:	þar was weping ſtrong:
and reouden[3] vniuohȝe.	þar was gredinge a-mong.
Heo cleopeden to Frolle:	Hii cleopede to Frolle:
and beden hine friðwurchen.	and bede him griþ wirche.
Arðures mon bi-cumen:	Arthur his man bi-come:
and hiſ monſcipe bruken.	and his manſipe brouke.
and þēe kīedō[4] halden:	and þane kinedom holde:
of Arðure þan kenen.	of Arthur þan ſtronge.

fear void, and belay the walls, and areared his tents; on four sides he belay it (the city), four weeks and a day. 'The people' that were 'there' within were [sore] afraid; the burgh was within filled with men; and *they* ate soon the meat that was there gathered. When four weeks were gone, that Arthur 'was [had] there 'stationed [been], then was in *the* burgh sorrow extreme, with the wretched folk that lay there 'in hunger [famished]; there was weeping, 'there was lament, and distress great [strong, there was crying among]. They called to Frolle, and bade him make peace; become 'Arthurs [Arthurs his] man, and his *own* honor enjoy, and hold the kingdom of Arthur the 'keen [strong]; and let not the 'wretched' folk [that

[1] folke?
[2] *R.* þer.
[3] reouðen?
[4] *This word is sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and no lete noht þat wræcche uolk:	and lete noht for-fare mid hongre:
uor-faren al mid hungre.	þat folk þat was wiþ ine.
Þa andſwarede Frolle:	Þo anſwerede Frolle:
freo he wes an heorte.	freo man on heorte.
Nai swa me helpe god:	Nai ſe[1] me helpe god:
þæ alle domes awalt.	þat alle domeſ weldeþ.
ne ſcal ich nauere hiſ mon bicume:	ne ſal ich neuere his man bicome:
no he mi kine-lauerd.	no he min kine-louerd.
mi ſeolf ich wulle fihte:	Mi ſeolf ich wolle fihte:
a gode iſ al þat rihte.	in god his alle þe rihte.
Þa ȝet cleopede Frolle:	
freo mon an heorte.	
Næi ſwa me helpe drihten:	
þe ſcop þaſ dæies lihten.	
nulle ic nauere mare:	
ȝirnen Arðures ære.	
ah fehten ich wulle:	
butē ælche cnihte. [f. 136b. c. 1.]	
licame wið licame:	licame wiþ licame:
biforen mine leoden.	bi-vore mine cnihtes.
hond aȝain honde:	hond aȝein [honde:]
wið Arðure kīge. [wakere:	wiþ Arthur þan ſtronge. [f. 109b. c. 1.]
whaðer unkere ſwa beoð þere	
sone he bið þe laðere.	

was within] perish 'all' with hunger. Then answered Frolle,—free 'he was [man] in heart:—"Nay, so help me God, that all dooms wieldeth, shall I never his man become, nor he my sovereign! Myself I will fight; in God is all the right!" 'The yet spake Frolle, free man in heart: "Nay, so help me *the* Lord that shaped the day-light, will I nevermore yearn Arthurs grace; but fight I will, without each knight (singly),' body against body, before my 'people [knights]; hand against hand, with Arthur '*the* king [the strong]! 'Whetherso (whichsoever) of us is the weaker, soon he will be the loather; whetherso of us there may live, to his friends he

[1] ſo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
wahðer vinkere[1] ſwaþer ma luuien:	
hiſ freondē he bið þe leouere.	
and whader[2] unkere þe mæi of o-	waþer ſo may of oþer:
þat betere biwinne.	[ðere: þat betere bi-winne.
habben al þiſ oðeres lond:	habbe al þeos oþereſ lond:
and ſette hit an hiſ aȝere hond.	to his owene hond.
Þiſ ic wulle ȝirne:	Þis ich wolle onderfon:
ȝif Arður hit wule ȝetten.	ȝef Arthur hit wole don.
and þiſ ich wulle ſwerien:	and þis ich wolle ſwerie:
uppen mine ſweorden.	vppe mine ſweorde.
and ȝiſles ich wulle finden:	and ȝiſles ich wolle finde:
þreo kingene ſunen.	þreo kingene ſones.
þ ich þiſ forward wulle:	þat ich þis foreward:
faſtliche halden.	wolle faſtliche holde.
þat nulle ich hit liȝen:	þat ich hit nelle leȝe:
bi mine quike liuen.	bi mine cwike liue.
For leouere me if to liggen:	For leuere me hiſ ligge:
bi-fore mine leoden.	bi-vore mine cnihteſ.
þan ich iſeo an uolde:	þane ich ȝam here iſe:
for-faren heō mid hungre.	for-fare mid hunger.
For we habbeoð mid fehte:	For we habbeþ ine fihte:
ure cnihtes uor-farene[3].	for-lore oure cnihteſ.
ſcalkes auælled:	in þan wiþer-happes:
fifti þuſende.	fiftie þouſend.

will be the liefer; and' whether of us 'that' may of *the* other obtain the better (superiority), have *he* all this others land, 'and set it' in his own hand. This I will 'yearn [undertake], if Arthur will it 'grant [do]; and this I will swear upon my sword. And hostages I will find, three kings sons, that I will hold firmly this covenant; that I will it not violate, by my quick life! For liefer *it* is to me to lie *dead*, before my 'people [knights], than *that* I should see them 'on *the* ground [here] perish with hunger. For we have 'with [in] fight 'destroyed [lost] our knights—'men felled [in the conflicts] fifty thou-

[1] *R.* unkere. [2] whaðer? [3] forene, *pr. m., but corrected, and* uor *interlined.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and mōi ænne gode wifmon :/
iwhorht to bleðere[1] widewe.
moni child faderlæs :/
and frouēr bidaled.
and nu þif folc mid hungre :/
wunderliche ihærmede. [c. 2.]
For þi hit if betere :/
bi-twixen unke feoluen.
to-dælen and to-dihten :/
þif kine-lond mid fihte.
and habbe hit þa betere :/
and bruken hit on wunne.
Frolle nom twalf cnihtef :/
mid þiffen worden forð rihtes.
and fende heom an fonde :/
to Arðure kinge.
&[2] iwufte ȝif he wolde :/
þif forewarde halde.
and mid hif aȝere hond :/
bi-telen þat kinelond.
oðer uore-liggē :/
hif leoden to harmen.
and ȝif he hit bi-talden :/
hafde hit on[3] an onwalde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and mani child faderlef :/
frouere bi-deled.

For þi hit his betere :/
bi-twixte ous feolue.
to-dealen and to-dihte :/
þis kinelond mid fihte.
and habbe hit þe betere :/
and brouc hit mid winne.
Frolle nam twealf cnihtes :/
mid þes worde forþrihtef.
and fende ȝam on fonde :/
to Arthur þan kinge.
hi-wite ȝef he wolde :/
þif forewarde holde.
and mid his owene hond :/
bi-telle þat kinelonde.

sand; and 'many a good woman *have* made miserable widow,' many *a* child fatherless, 'and' bereaved of comfort; 'and now this folk with hunger *have* wondrously harmed.' It is better therefore betwixt ourselves to deal and to dispose of this kingdom with fight; and have it the better *man*, and possess it 'in [with] joy!" Frolle took twelve knights, with these words forth-right, and sent them in message to Arthur [the] king, to know if he would hold this covenant, and with his own hand win the kingdom, 'or lie *dead* before, to *the* harm of his people; and if he it won, should have it in *his* power.'

[1] bletere, *pr. m.* [2] *Superfluous?* [3] *Redundant?*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þat iherde Arður:
aðeleſt kingen.
næs he neuere swa bliðe:
ær an hiſ liue.
for him likede tidende:
from Frolle þan kinge.
and þaſ word ſeide:
Arður þe ſele.
Wel ſaið Frolle:
þe kīg if of France.
betere if þat wit tweie:
bitelen þas riche.
þene þer beon of-flaȝene:
ure þeines ſnelle.
Þiſ foreward ich bi-luuie:
bi-fore mine leoden.
to ane iſette dæie:
to don þat he beodeð.
þat ſcal beon tomarȝen:
biforen unker monnen.
þ fehtē wet ſcullen unc ſeoluen:
& falle þe forcuðere. [[f.137.c.1.]
And whaðer unker þe geð abake:
& þiſ feoht wulle for-ſake.
beō he in ælche londe:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þis ihorde Arthur:
baldeſt alre kinge.
nas he neuere ſo bliþe:
er on his liue. [c.2.]
for him likede þe tydinge:
fram Frolle þe kinge.
and þeos wordes ſaide:
Arthur þe ſele.
Wel ſaiþ Frolle:
þat king his of France.
betere þat we tweie:
bi-telle þes riche.
þane beon of-slaȝe:
oure cnihtef ſnelle.
Þis foreward ich wolle holde:
bi mine cwike liue.
to on i-ſeat daie:
to don þat he me biddeþ.
þat ſal beon to-morwe:
to-vore oure mannen.
þat fihte we ſolle ous ſeolue:
and falle þe forcouþere.
And waþer þat goþ a-back:
and þes foreward wolle for-ſake.
beo he in eche londe:

Arthur heard 'that, noblest of [this, boldest of all] kings; was he never so blithe ere in his life, for [the] tiding liked to him from Frolle the king; and these words said Arthur the good: "Well saith Frolle, who is king of France; better '*it* is' that we two contest this realm, than 'there' should be slain our brave 'thanes [knights]. This covenant I 'approve, before my people [will hold, by my quick life], at an appointed day to do what he [me] biddeth; that shall be to-morrow, before our men, that fight we shall *by* our selves, and fall the worst *of us*! And whether (which) 'of us' that goeth aback, and this 'fight [covenant] will forsake, be he in each land

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
iqueðe for ane ſconde.	icweþe for on ſconde.
þenne mæie me ſinge:	þanne mai me ſinge:
of ane ſwulche kīge.	of one ſwindene kinge.
þe his beot haueð imaked:	þat his beot haueþ imaked:
and hiſ cniht-ſcipe for-ſakē.	and hiſ cniht-ſipe for-ſake.
þæt iherde Frolle:	þat i-horde Frolle:
þe king wes of France.	þat king was of France.
þat Arður fehten wolden:	þat Arthur wolde fihte:
him ſeolf buten cnihte.	boute eni cniht.
Strong mon wes Frolle:	Strang man was Frolle:
and ſterc mon on mode.	and ſtarc cniht of mode.
and his beot imaked hafde:	and his beot hadde imaked:
bi-foren al hiſ duȝeðe. [chelen:	bi-vore al his cnihtes.
and ne[1] ne mihte for ſcome mu-	he ne miht for ſcame:
ſcenden hine ſeoluē.	ſynde him ſeolue.
bi-læuen hiſ balde ibeot:	
þ he i burh hafde iſeid.	
Sæide þ he ſæide:	Ac ſaide wat he ſaide:
to ſoðe he hit wende.	to ſoþe he hit wen[2].
þat Arður hit wolde for-ſaken:	þat Arthur hit wolde[3]:
and nawiht to þan fehte taken.	
for ȝif hit wuſte Frolle:	for ȝef he hit hadde hi-wiſt: [f. 110. c. 1.]
þe king wes ane[4] France,	to ſoþere þinge.

proclaimed for a recreant! Then may men sing of one 'such [worthless] king, that his brag (*or* threat) hath made, and his knighthood forsaken!" Frolle heard that, who was king of France, that Arthur would fight 'himself', without [any] knight. Strong man was Frolle, and stark 'man in [knight of] mood; and his boast *he* had made, before all his 'people [*knights*], and he might not for 'much' shame disgrace himself; 'quit his bold bragging that he had said in *the* burgh.' [But] said *he* whatever he said, in sooth he it weened, that Arthur would it forsake, and no whit take to (accept) the fight. For if 'Frolle [he], 'who was king in France,' had it

[1] he?
[2] wende?
[3] *Part of this and the whole of the next line are wanting.*
[4] an? of?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þat Arður him ȝettē wolde:
Þat he iȝirnd hafde.
don he hit nolde:
for a ſcip ful of golde.
Neoðeles wes Frolle:
to fihte ſwide[1] kene.
muche cniht & ſtrōg mon:
and modi on heortē.
and fæide Þat he wolde:
Þene dæi halde.
in Þan æit-londe: [c. 2.]
Þe mid watere if bi-ȝeōge.
Þat æit-lond ſtondeð ful iwis:
inne Þere burh of Paris.
Þer ich wulle mid fehte:
bi-tele mine irihte.
mid ſcelden[2]:
and mid cnihtes iwede.
nu to-marȝen bið Þe dæi:
habben Þe hit hit[3] biȝiten mæi.
Comen Þa tiðende:
to Arðure Þan kinge.
Þat Frolle wolde mid fæhte:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þat Arthur him grantȳ wolde:
Þat Þe he ȝornde.
don he hit nolde:
for on ſipfol of golde.
Noþeles was Frolle:
to fihte ſwiþe kene.
mochel cniht and ſtrong man:
and modi on heorte.
and faide Þat he wolde:
Þane dai holde.
in Þan ȳllonde:
Þat mid watereſ his bi-ȝonge.
Þat ȳllond ſteond foliwis:
a-midde Þan borh of Paris.
Þar ich wolle mid ſihte:
bi-telle mine rihte.
nou to morwe his Þe dai:
habbe Þat hit bi-ȝete mai.
Come Þe tȳdinge:
to Arthur Þan kinge.
Þat Frolle wol.. mid ſihte:

known [in sooth thing], that Arthur would grant him that [that] he 'had' yearned, he would not do (have done) it for a ship-ful of gold! Nevertheless was Frolle to *the* fight exceeding keen; tall knight and strong man, and moody in heart; and said that he would hold the day, in the island that with water is surrounded,—the island standeth full truly 'in [amid] the burgh of Paris.—"There I will with fight obtain my rights, 'with shield, *and with steed,* and with knights weed;' now to-morrow is the day; have *it he* that may it win!" The tiding came to Arthur the king, that Frolle

[1] ſwiðe? [2] mid ſcelden mid ſtede? [3] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
France bitellē.	bi-telle hif .....
næs he næuere ſwa bliðe ⁊	
ær an hif liue.	
and he lehȝen agon ⁊	Arthur gan to lahȝe ⁊
ludere ſtæfnenen.	loudere ſtemne.
and þas word ſeide ⁊	and þeos word ſaide ⁊
Arður þe kene.	Arthur þe kene.
Nu ich wat þat Frolle ⁊	Nou ich wot þat Frolle ⁊
wið me wulle fihte.	wole mid me fihte.
to-marȝe in þan dæie ⁊	to-morewe in þan daie ⁊
alſe he ſeolf demde.	aſe he him ſeolf demeþ.
i þan ait-londe ⁊	
þat mid watere if biſtonde.	
for hit bicumeð kinge ⁊	
þat his word ſtønde.	
Leteð blawen bemen ⁊	Leteþ blowe bumef ⁊
and bodien mine monnen.	and bodie mine manneſ.
þat æuer ælc god mon ⁊	þat euerech god man ⁊
to-niht wakien for þon.	to-niht wakie for þan.
and bidden ure drihtē ⁊	and bidde oure drihte ⁊
þe alle domes awalt.	þat alle domes weldeþ.
þat he me iſcilde ⁊	þat he me ſcilde ⁊
wið Frolle þene wilde.	fram Frolle þan wilde.
and mid hif riht hōde ⁊	and mid his riht honde ⁊
witeȝe me wið ſconde.	witie me fram ſconde.

would with fight win 'France [his *rights*]; 'was he never so blithe ere in his life!' 'And he [Arthur] gan to laugh, with loud voice; and said these words Arthur the keen: "Now I know that Frolle will with me fight, to-morrow in the day, as he [him]self 'determined [determineth], 'in the island that with water is surrounded; for it becometh *a* king, that his word should stand.' Let *the* trumpets blow, and bid my men, that every good man watch to-night for that, and pray our Lord, that all dooms wieldeth, that he preserve me from Frolle the fierce, and with his right hand protect me from disgrace. And if I may obtain this kingdom to mine own

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
And ȝif ich mæi þif kinelōd:	And ȝef ich mai þis kinelond: [c. 2.]
biȝiten to mire aȝere hon[1].	bi-ȝete to min owene hond.
auere ælche ærmen mon: [f. 137b, c. 1.]	euerech neod-fol man:
þe æð ſcal iwurðen.	þe bet ſal iworþe.
and wurchen ic wulle:	
muchel godes wille.	
Nu me uulſten þer to:	Nou me fulſte þar to:
þe alle þing mai wel don.	þe king þat al may do.
þe heȝe heueneliche king:	þe hehȝe heuenliche [king]:
ſtōde me an helping.	ſtonde me an helping.
for ich hine luuien wulle:	
þa while þe ich liuie.	
Þer wes al longe niht:	Þar was alle lange niht:
songes and[2] caldel-liht[3].	ſonges and candel-liht.
hæhliche ſungen clarckes:	hehliche ſonge clearkes:
hali godes ſalmeſ.	hehȝe godeſ phalmes[4].
Þa hit dæi we[5] amarȝen:	Þo hit dai was a morewe:
duȝeðe gunne ſturien.	þat folk gā to ſtorie.
hiſ wæpnen he nom an honden:	his wepne he nam an honde:
Arður þe ſtronge.	Arthur þan ſtrōge.
warp he an hif rugge:	warp he on his rugge:
a ræf ſwiðe deore.	a reaf ſwiþe deore.
ænne cheiſil ſcurte:	ane cheiſelne ſeorte:

hand, every 'poor [needy] man the 'easier [better] shall be, 'and work I will *the* great Gods will!' Now aid me thereto [the king] that all 'things' may 'well' do; the high heavenly king stand me in help; 'for him I will love (*or* praise), the while that I live!'" There was all *the* long night songs and candle-light; loudly sung clerks holy psalms of God. When it was day on *the* morrow, 'people [the folk] gan to stir. His weapons (armour) he took in hand, Arthur the strong; he threw on his back a garment most precious, a cheisil shirt, and a cloth kirtle; a burny exceeding

[1] hond?
[2] *At first written* an, *but* d *interlined by the same hand.*
[3] candel-liht?
[4] pſalmes?
[5] wes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

& ænne pallene curtel.
ænne burne fwiðe deore:
ibroiden of ftele.
Sette he an hefde:
ænne helm godne.
to his fide he fwende:
hif fweorde Caliburne.
hif fconken he helede:
mid hofen of ftele.
and duden on hif uoten:
fpuren fwiðe gode.
Þe kīg mid hif weden:
leop on his ftede.
me him to rehte:
ān̄e fcelde gode.
he wes al clane:
of olifantef bane.
Me falde him an honde:
enne fcaft ftronge. [c. 2.]
Þer wes a þan ænde:
a fpærere[1] swiðe hende.
hit wes imaked i Kairmeðin:
Griffin. a fmið þe hehte Griffin.
hit ahte Vðer:
þe wes ær king her.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and one pallene curtel.
ane brunie fwiþe deore:
hii-brode al of ftele.
He fette on his heued:
one helm godne.
to his fyde he fweinde:
his sweord Caliburne.
his leggef he helede:
mid hofen of ftele.
and dude on his fote:
fporef fwiþe gode.
Þe king mid his wede:
leop on his ftede.
me him to reahte:
one fceald riche.
he was al cleane:
of holifantef bone.
Me tok him an honde:
ane faft ftronge.
Þar was in þan eande:
an hefd fwiþe hende.
hit was i-maked in Ker-merþin:
a fmiþ þat hehte Griffin.

precious, embroidered [all] of steel. He set on [his] head a good helm; to his side he suspended his sword Caliburn; his legs he covered with hose of steel, and placed on his feet spurs most good. The king with his weeds leapt on his steed; men reached to him a 'good [rich] shield; it was all clean of elephants bone (ivory). Men gave him in hand a strong shaft; there was at the end a 'spear [head] most fair; it was made in Caermarthen *by* a smith that hight Griffin; 'Uther it possessed, who was ere king here.'

[1] fpære?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þa þe iwepned wes þe rahȝe:	Þo þe iwepnid was þe king:
þa gon he to uarene.	þo gan he to wende. [f. 110b. c. 1.]
he mihte þa bi-halde:	he mihte þo bi-holde:
þe þer bihalfuef weore.	þat þar bi-halues were.
þene king richne:	þane richne king:
rehliche riden.	boldeliche ride.
feoðen[1] þif weorlde wes a-ſtald:	suþþe þes worle was a-ſtald:
nes hit no whar itald.	nas hit noþware itald.
þat æuere ai mon ſwa hende:	þat euere enỳ man ſo hende:
wunden uppen horſe.	wonde vppe horſe.
swa him wes Arður:	
ſune Vðeres.	
Riden after þan kīge:	Riden after þan kinge:
balde here-ðringes.	bolde heredringeſ.
a þen feoremeſte flocke:	in þan forſte flocke:
feouwerti hundred.	fourti hondred.
heȝe here-kempē:	baldere Bruttus:
bihonged mid ſtelen.	bi-honge mid ſtele.
baldere Brutten:	
biſie mid wepnē.	
Aft[9] þan fuſden:	After þan wende:
fifti hundred.	fifti honder.
þeo Wælwain ladde:	þa Waweỳn ladde:
þe wæs a wæl-kempe.	þat was a bald kempe.

When that the 'stern *man* [king] was weaponed, then gan he to advance; then might he behold, who were there beside, the mighty king ride boldly; since this world was made, was it nowhere told, that ever any man so fair rode upon horse, 'as Arthur he was, son of Uther!' Bold chieftains rode after the king; in the 'foremost [first] flock forty hundred, 'noble warriors [bold Britons], clad in steel, 'bold Britons, busy with weapon.' After that marched fifty hundred, that Walwain led, who was a [bold] champion. Afterwards there 'gan out follow [out thronged] sixty thousand

[1] feoðden?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Seoððen þer gunnen ut ſiȝen:	Suþþe þar vt þronge:
ſixti þuſẽde.	sixti þuſend.
Bruttes swiðe balde:	Bruttus ſwiþe bolde:
þat wes þa bac-warde.	þat was þe bac-ward.
þer wes þe king Angel:	þar was þe king Angel:
þer wes Lot and Urien.	þar was Loth and Vrien.
þer wes Vrienes ſune:	þar was Vrienef ſone:
Ẏwæin ihaten.	Eþaẏn ihote.
þer wes Kæi and Beduer:	þar waſ Kaẏ and Bedewer:
and biwuſten þa uerde þer.	and bi-wiſte þe ferde þar.
þer wes þe king Howel:	þar was þe king Howel:
hah mon of Brutlond. [f. 138. c. 1.]	heh man of Brutlond.
Cador þer wes æc:	Cador þar was eke:
þe kene weſ on flocke.	þat kene was on flocke.
þer wes of Irlonde:	þar was of Ẏrlonde:
Gillomar þe ſtron[1].	Gillomar þe ſtrangge.
þer wes Gonwaiſ þe king:	þar was Gonwaẏs þe king:
Orka eſ[2] deorling.	Orcaneief deorling.
þer wes Doldamin þe kene:	þar was Doldanim þe kene:
ut of Gutlonde.	vt of Gutlonde.
	and Rumaret þe ſtronge:
	vt of Winet-londe.
þer wes Eſcil þe king:	þar was Aſcil þe king:
Denemarkes deorling.	Denemarches deorling.

Britons most bold; that was the rearward. There was the king Angel; there was Loth and Urien; there was Uriens son, named Ywain; there was Kay and Beduer, and commanded the host there; there was the king Howel, noble man of Britanny; Cador there was eke, who was keen in flock; there was from Ireland Gillomar the strong; there was Gonwais the king, Orkneys darling; there was Doldanim the keen, out of Goth-land, 'and Rumaret the strong, out of Winet-land'; there was Æscil the king, Denmarks darling. Folk there was on foot, so many thousand

[1] ſtrong?

[2] *Sic MS.: read* Orkaneies.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
Folc þer wes a fotē:	folk þar waſ a fote:
swa feole þuſend monnen.	ſo fale þouſend manne.
þat naſ nauere na ſwa wit-ful mon:	þat naſ neuere ſo wit-fol man: [c. 2.]
a þiſſere weorlde-richen.	in þiſſe worle-riche.
a nauere nane ſpelle:	in neuere none ſpelle:
þat mihte þa þuſend telle.	þat mihte þe þouſendes telle.
bute he hauede mid rihte:	
wiſdom of drihtene.	
oðer he hafde mid him:	bote he hadde mid him þe wit:
þat him hafde Mærlī.	þat hadde Merlỳn.
Arður forð gon liðe:	Arthur forþ gan wende:
mid vnimete folke.	mid ónimete folke.
þat he com fuliwif:	þat he com foliwis:
into þere burh of Paris.	into þare borh of Pariſ.
a weſt halue þā watere:	a weſt half þan watere:
mid mucle hiſ genge.	mid alle his folke.
An æſt hælf wes Frolle:	An eſt half was Frolle:
mid mucchelere ferde.	mid mochele his ferde.
ȝaru to þan fehte:	ȝaru to þan fihte:
biforen hiſ cnihtes alle.	bi-vore alle his cnihtes.
Arður nom ænne bat godne:	Arthur nam ane bot:
& bæh þer an inne.	and dude him þar ine.
mid ſcelde mid ſtede:	[mid] ſhelde and mid ſtede:
and mid alle his iwede.	and mid al his wede.
and he þat ſcip ſtronge:	and þane bot ſtronge:

men, that was never *a* man in this worlds-realm so wise, that might tell the thousands, in ever any speech, unless 'he had with right wisdom of *the* Lord, or *unless*' he had with him 'what [the wit that] Merlin 'he' had. Arthur forth gan march, with innumerable folk; until he came full surely unto the burgh of Paris; on *the* west side of the water, with 'his mickle [all his] folk. On *the* east side was Frolle, with [his] great force, ready to the fight, before all his knights. Arthur took a 'good' boat, and 'went [placed himself] therein, with shield [and] with steed, and with all his weeds (armor); and 'he' shoved the strong 'ship [boat] from the land, and stept upon the

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ſcaf from þan londe[1].
and ſtop uppen þat æit-lond:
and ladde hiſ ſtede an hiſ hond.
his men þe hine þer brohte: [c. 2.]
alſe þe king hehte.
leten þene bat buȝen:
forð mid þan vðen.
Frolle into ſcipe ferde:
þe kīg wes unuele.
þat he auere þohte:
wið Arðure to to[3] fehte.
Ferde to þan æite:
mid aðele hiſ wēpnen[4].
uppen þan æit he ſtop:
& hiſ ſtede him after droh.
þeo men þe hine þer brohten:
alſe þe king hehte.
lette þene bat fuſen:
forð mid þan vðen.
and þa kinges tweien:
ane þer wuneden.
Þa me mihte bihalden:
þe þer bihalues weoren.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

ſcaf fram þan londe.
and ſ... ..... þat ỳllond:
and la... his ſtede an his h...
... men þe hine þar brohte:
aſe þe king hehte.
lette wende þane bot:
forþ mid þan watere.
Frolle to bote wende:
þe king was onſeale[2].
þat he euere þoht:
wiþ Arthur to fihte.
He wende to þan ỳllond:
mid gode his wepne.
he ſtop vppe þat ỳllod:
and nam his ſtede on hiſ hond.
þe men þat hine þar brohte:
aſe þe king ȝam hehte.
lette þane bot wende:
forþ mid þan watere.
and þe kinges tweie: [f. 111. c. 1.]
þare ine weren beiene.

island, and led his steed in his hand; his men that brought him there, as the king commanded, let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]. Frolle went 'into ship [to boat]; the king was uneasy that he ever thought with Arthur to fight. [He] proceeded to the island, with his good weapons; he stept upon the island, and 'drew [took] his steed 'after him [in his hand]; the men that brought him there, as the king commanded [them], let the boat drive forth with the 'waves [water]; and the two kings 'alone there remained [therein were both]. Then 'men might behold, that were there beside,' *the* folk on 'the land, exceedingly [both sides were] afraid;

[1] lon, *pr. m.* [2] onfeale? [3] *Sic MS.* [4] *R.* wepnen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

folc a þan uolde:
feondliche adredde.
heo clumben uppen hallen:
heo clumben uppen wallen.
heo clūben uppen bures:
heo clumben uppe tures.
þat comp to bihalden:
of þan tweom kingen.
Arðures men beden:
mid muchele æðmoden.
godd þene gode:
and þa hali hif moder.
þat heore lauerd þere:
fiȝe moſte habben.
and þa oðere eke:
bede for heore kinge.
Arður ſtop[1] a ſtel boȝe:
and leop an his blancke.
and Frolle mid hif iwede:
leop on hif ſteden.
þe an an hif ænde:
a þan æit-londe.
and þæ oðer an hif ænde:
i þan æit-londe. [f.138b. c. 1.]

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

þo weren a-drad:
folk in boþe ſyde.
hii clemde vppe halles:
hii clemde vppe walles.
hii clemde vppe toures:
hii clemden vppe boures.
þat ſiht to bi-holde:
of þeos tweie kinges.
Arthur his men:
bede mid mochele edmode.
god þane gode:
and his holy moder.
þat hire louerd þare:
þe ouere hadde.
and þe oþ[9] eke:
bede for hire kinge.
ARthur leop þare:
vppe on his ſtede.
and Frolle mid his wede:
leop on his ſtede.

they climbed upon halls, they climbed upon walls; they climbed upon 'bowers [towers], they climbed upon 'towers [bowers], to behold the 'combat [fight] of 'the [these] two kings. 'Arthurs [Arthur his] men prayed with much humility to God the good, and 'the holy his [his holy] mother, that their lord might have there 'victory [the over *hand*]; and the others eke prayed for their king. Arthur 'stept in steel *saddle*-bow, and' leapt [there up-] on his steed; and Frolle with his weeds leapt *also* on his steed; 'the one at his end, in the island, and the other at his end, in the island';

[1] *Originally written* ſtod.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
heo quehten heore ſcaftes ⁊	hii cwehten hire ſaftes ⁊
kinewurðe cnihtes.	kineworþe knihtes.
heo græneden heore ſtedē ⁊	hii greinede hire ſtedes ⁊
gode cnihtes heo weoren.	godeli cnihteſ hii weren.
Næs he næuere ifunde ⁊	Nes he neuere ifunde ⁊
a næuere nane londe.	in neuere none londe.
nan ſwa wihtful[1] mon ⁊	nan ſo witfol man ⁊
þat hit wuſte ær þan.	þat hit wuſte er þan.
whæðer of þan kingen ⁊	waþer of þan kinges ⁊
ouer-cumen ſculde liggen.	ouer-come ſolde ligge.
for beiē heo weoren cnihtes kene ⁊	for hit were kene cnihtes ⁊
ohte men and wihte.	ohte men and wiþte.
muchele men on mihte ⁊	
and a maine swiðe ſtronge.	
Heo muneȝeden heore ſteden ⁊	Hii muneþede hire ſtedes ⁊
and toſomne gunnen riden.	to-gadere hii gonne ride.
fuſden feondliche ⁊	fuſden feondeliche ⁊
þat fur him[2] ſprōg after.	þat fur him[3] ſparng[4] after.
Arður ſmat Frolle ⁊	Arthur ſmot Frolle ⁊
mid feond ſtronge maine.	mid ſwiþe ſtronge maýne.
uppen þene ſceld hehȝe ⁊	vp þan ſeald heȝe ⁊
[5]	þat he to grunde fulle.
and þe ſtede þe wes god ⁊	and þe ſtede þat was god ⁊ [c. 2.]

they couched their shafts, *the* royal knights; they urged their steeds,—'good [goodly] knights they were. Never was he found in ever any land, any man so wise, that should know it ere that *time*, whether (which) of the kings should lie overcome; for 'both they [it] were keen knights, brave men and active, 'mickle men in might, and in force exceeding strong.' They made ready their steeds; 'and' together [they] gan ride; rushed fiercely, *so* that fire sprang after them! Arthur smote Frolle with might excessive strong, upon the high shield, [*so* that it fell to *the* ground]; and the steed that was good leapt out in the flood.

[1] wit-ful? [2] heom? [3] ham? [4] ſprang?
[5] *A line is here deficient.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

leop ut i þe ulod.
Arður ut mid his sweorde:
balu wes a þan orde.
and puinden uppen Frolle:
þer he wes an ulode.
ær heore cōp weore:
icumen to þan ænde.
Ah Frolle mid honde:
igræp hif ſpere longe.
and kept Arður anan:
alſe he aneouſt com.
and þene ſtede balde:
ſmat i þere breoſte.
þat þat ſpere þurh raf:
and Arður adun draf.
þa araf þe mon-drem:
þat þe uolde dunede a-ȝen.
aqueðen þa weolcne:
for reme of þan uolke.
þær Br^{u}ttes wolden:
ouer water buȝen.
ȝif Arður up ne ſturte:
ſtercliche ſone.
and igræp hif ſceld godne:
ileired mid golde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

leop vt in þane flod.
Arthur vp mid his ſpere:
balu was on þan orde.
and pungde vppen Frolle:
þar he was on grunde.

Ac Frolle mid his honde:
igrop his spere longe.
and kepte Arthur anon:
aſe he a-neouſte com.
and þare ſtede balde:
ſmot in þare breoſte.
þat þe ſpere þorh rof:
and Arthur a-dun drof.
þo a-roſ þe mannef drem:
þat þe wolkne dunede aȝen.

þar Bruttus wolde:
ouer water bouwe.
ȝef Arthur vp ne ſtorte:
ſtarcliche ſwiþe.
and igrop his ſeald godne:
ileȳred mid golde.

Arthur 'out [up] with his 'sword [spear],—mischief was on the point,—and struck upon Frolle, where he was 'in *the* flood [on *the* ground], 'ere their combat were come to the end.' But Frolle with [his] hand grasped his long spear, and observed Arthur anon, as he came nigh, and smote the bold steed in the breast, *so* that the spear pierced through, and Arthur down drove. Then arose the multitudes clamor, that the 'earth [welkin] dinned again, 'the welkin resounded for shout of the folk.' There would *the* Britons over *the* water pass, if Arthur had not started up very quickly, and grasped his good shield, adorned with gold, and against Frolle, with 'hostile glances

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

and to-ȝaines Frolle :/
mid feondliche lechen.
breid biforen breoſten :/
godne ſceld brade.
And Frolle him to fuſden :/
mid hiſ feond ræſe.
and hiſ ſweord up ahof :/
and a-dun riht ſloh.
and ſmat an Arðures ſceld :/
þat he wond a þene feld.
þe helm an hiſ hæuede :/
and hiſ hereburne.
gō to falſie :/
foren an hiſ hafde.
& he wunde afeng :/
feouwer unchene long.
heo ne þuhte him noht fær :/
for heo næs na mare.
þat blod orn a-dū :/
ouer al his breoſte.
Arður wes abolȝe :/
ſwiðe an hiſ heorte.
and hiſ sweord Caliburne :/
swipte mid maine. [hælm :/
and ſmat Frolle uppen þæne
þat he atwa helden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and to-ȝenes Frolle :/
mid ſtarcliche maine.
breid bi-vore breoſte :/
his gode ſeald brode.
And Frolle to him reaſde :/
mid his feond reaſes.
and vt droh his gode ſweord :/
and a-dun ſwipte.
and ſmot vp Arthur hiſ ſealde :/
þat he fleh in þane felde.
þe healm on his hefd :/
and his hereburne.
þat he gan to fauſie :/
a-forn neȝein his hefd.
and he wonde onderfeng :/
four vnchene lang.
hit ne þohte him noht for :
for þe wonde naſ na mor.
þat blod orn a-dun :/
oueral his breoſte.
Arthur was a-bolwe :/
ſwiþe on his heorte.
and his ſweord Caliburne :/ [f. 111b. c. 1.]
ſwipte mid maȳne.
and ſmot Frolle vppe þan helm :/
þat he atwo to-ȝeode.

[strong force] cast before *his* breast [his] good broad shield. And Frolle to him rushed with his fierce assault, and 'up heaved [out drew] his [good] sword, and struck down 'right,' and smote [vp]on 'Arthurs [Arthur his] shield, *so* that it 'fell [flew] on the field; the helm on his head, and his mail [that it] gan to give way, in front of his head; and he received *a* wound four inches long;—it seemed not to him sore, for 'it [the wound] was no more;—the blood ran down over all his breast. Arthur was enraged greatly in his heart, and his sword Caliburne swung with main, and smote

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þurh ut þere burne-hod:		þorh vt þane brunie-hod:
þat hit at hiſ breoſte at-ſtod.		þat at þe breoſte hit a-ſtod.
Þa feol Frolle:		Þo ful Frolle:
folde to grunde.		dun to þan grunde.
uppen þan graſ-bedde:		vp on þan graſe:
hiſ goſt he bi-læfde.		his goſt he bi-leuede.
Þa Bruttes loh3en:		Þo Bruttes lowen:
ludere ſtefuene.	[f. 139. c. 1.]	loudere ſtemne.
and leoden to fleonen:		and þat oþer folk to fleonde:
feōdliche ſwiðe.	10	feondeliche ſwiþe.
Ardur[1] þe riche:		Arthur þe riche:
wende to londe.		wende to londe.
and þus cleopien agon:		and cleopie agan:
aðeleſt kingen.		to his may Waweyn.
Whær ært þu Walwain:		
monne me leofeſt.		
Heot þas Rom-wæren alle:		Hot þis mē alle:
mid griðen liðen heonne.		mid griþe wende hinne.
ælc mō bruke hiſ ham:		ech man brouke his hom:
ſwulc godd hit him on.	20	þat god him aleneþ.
hat ælcne mon halde grið:		
uppen leome & uppen lif.		
and ich hit wulle dihten:		and ich 3am wole dihte:

Frolle upon the helm, *so* that it parted in two; throughout the burnyshood, *so* that at 'his [the] breast it (the sword) stopt. Then fell Frolle [down] to [the] ground; upon the grass-'bed' his ghost he left. Then laughed *the* Britons, with loud voice; and 'people [the other folk] *gan* to fly exceeding quickly. Arthur the powerful went to land, and 'thus' gan to call, 'noblest of kings: "Where art thou, [to his relative] Walwain, 'dearest of men to me?' Command these 'Rome'-men all with peace to depart hence; each man enjoy his home, 'as [that] God granteth 'it' him; 'order each man to hold peace, upon *pain of* limb and upon life'; and I will 'it [them] order to day a se'nnight; command 'this folk then

[1] *R.* Arður.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

to-dæi a.ſeouennihte.
hat þiſ folc þenne:
liðen al to-ſomne:
and cumen to me ſeoluen:
þæ bet heom ſcal iwurden[1].
Heo ſcullen me mō-radene:
mid moſcipe[2] frēmē.
and ich heom wulle holden:
a mine onwolden.
and ſetten i leode:
laȝen swiðe gode.
For nu ſcullen Romaniſce laȝē:
to þan grude[3] reoſen.
þa iuurn here:
ſtoden mid Frolle.
þe lið on æite of-ſlaȝen:
and idon of lif-daȝen.
Her after ful ſōe:
ſcal hiſ cun of Rome.
heren tidinge:
of Arðure þan kīge.
for ich heom wulle wið ſpeken:
and Rome walles to-breken.
& munegie heom hu king Belin:
Bruttes ladde þider in. [c. 2.]

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

to-dai a foueniht.
hot ȝam wēde hinne:
alle to-gaderef.
and comen to mi ſeolue:
þe bet ȝam ſal iworþe.
Hii ſolle hire manradene:
mid manſipe bi-take.
and ich ȝam wolle holde:
in mine onwolde.
and ſetten þan folke:
lawes ſwiþe gode.
For nou ſolle Romaniſſe lawes:
to þan grunde falle.
þat ivorn here:
ſtode mid Frolle.
þat liþ in þan ỳllond of-slawe:
and idon of lifdaȝe.
Her after ful ſone:
ſal his cun of Rome.
ihere tỳdinge:
of Arthur þan kinge.
for ich þenche wiþ ȝam ſpeke:
and Rome walles to-breke.
and munéȝi of king Belỳn: [c. 2.]
þat Bruttus ladde þider in.

to march [them to go hence] all together, and come to myself,—the better *it* shall be for them. They shall 'perform [give their] homage ' to me ' with honor, and I will hold them in my sovereignty, and set laws most good 'among *the* people [to the folk]. For now shall *the* Romanish laws fall to the ground, that before stood here with Frolle, who lieth slain in [the] island, and deprived of life-day. Hereafter full soon shall his kindred of Rome hear tidings of Arthur the king, for I 'will [think to] speak with them, and break down Rome walls, and remind 'them how [of] king Belin,

[1] iwurðen? [2] monſcipe? [3] grunde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and iwon him þa londes alle:	and alle þe londes awan:
þat ſtondeð into Rome.	þat liggeþ to Rome.
Arður beh to þan ȝæte:	Arthur wende to borewe:
forn at þere burȝe.	þar þe ȝateſ were.
comen wit-fulle men:	and[1] alle þe wit-fulle men:
þe þa burh biwuſten.	þat þane borh wiſte.
and Arður letten binnen:	and lette Arthur binne.
mid alle his monnen.	mid alle his manne.
bitahten him halles:	
bitahten him caſtles.	
bitahten him ful iwif:	hii toke him foliwis:
al þa burh of Paris.	al þe borh of Paris.
þer wes muchel bliſſce:	þar was mochel bliſſe:
mid Brutiſce uolke.	mid Bruttiſſe folke.
þe dæi fæh to burhȝe:	þe dai nehlehte:
þe Arður iſet hafde.	þat Arthur iſet hadde.
com al þa mō-weorede:	comen alle þe men:
and his men bicomen.	and his men bi-come.
Arður nom his duȝeðe:	Arthur nam his cnihtes:
and atwa heom to-dalde.	and atwo to-dealde.
and þa haluendæle:	and þat haluendeale:
Howele bitætte.	Howel he bi-tahte.
and hehte hine uaren ſone:	and bad him wende ſone:

[who] led *the* Britons in thither, and won 'to him' all the lands that 'stand unto [lie to] Rome. Arthur proceeded to 'the gate, before the burgh [*the* burgh, where the gates were; and all the] wise men (magistrates) that took charge of the burgh, came, and let Arthur within, with all his men; 'delivered to him *the* halls, delivered to him *the* castles'; [they] delivered to him, full surely, all the burgh of Paris,—there was mickle bliss with *the* British folk! The day 'came to burgh [nighed], that Arthur had set; came all the 'populace [men], and his men became. Arthur took his 'folk [knights], and divided them in two; and the half part [he] gave to Howel, and bade him march soon, with the mickle host, with *the* British men

[1] camen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

mid muchele þere uerde.
mid Brutiſce mōnen:
londes iwīnen.
Howel dude al ſwa:
alſe Arður hine hehte.
he biwon Barri:
and alle þa londes þer bi.
Angou and Turuine:
Aluerne and Gaſcunne.
and þa hafuenes alle:
þe herden to þan londes.
Guitar. Guitard þe duc hæhte:
þe Peȳtouwe ahte.
he nolde buȝen Howele:
ah heold to-ȝæines him æuere.
nolde he ȝirnen na griðe: [f. 139b. c. 1.]
ah Howel him faht wiðe.
ofte he uolc ualde:
and ofte he ulem makede.
Howel al þat lond weſte:
& of-floh þa leode.
Þa iſæh Guitard:
þe i Peitou wes lauerd.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

mid mochele þare ferde.
mid Bruttuſſe manne:
londes a-winne.
Al dude Howel:
aſe Arthur hine heahte.
he b wan[1] Berri:
and alle þe londes þar bi.
Angoiȝe and Turuine:
Aluerne and Gaſcoȳne.
and þe homes alle:
þat leieþ to þan ilke londes.
GWitard þe duk hehte:
þat Peȳto hahte.
he nolde to Howel bouwe:
ac heold hine mid fihte.
he ne ȝornde no griþ:
ac euere he faht Howel wiþ.
ofte he folk fulde:
and ofte he fleom makede.
Howel þat lon[2] weaſte:
and of-floh þe leode. [f. 112. c. 1.]
Þo iſah Gwitard:
þat in Peȳto was louerd.

to conquer lands. Howel did all 'thus' as Arthur him bade; he conquered Berry, and all the lands thereby; Anjou and Touraine, Alverne and Gascony, and all the 'havens [habitations], that 'belonged [lay] to the [same] lands. Guitard hight the duke, who possessed Poitou; he would not submit to Howel, but held 'ever against him [him with fight]; he would ask no peace, but 'Howel fought with him [ever he fought with Howel]; oft he felled *the* folk, and oft he made flight. Howel wasted 'all' the land, and slew the people. When Guitard saw, who was lord in Poitou, that all 'his

[1] *R.* bi-wan.

[2] lond?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þat alle his leoden :/
him to loſe eodē.
wiþ Howele he griþ makede :/
mid al his monweorede.
and bicom Arðures mon :/
þas aðele kingen.
Arður him warð liðe :/
and luuede hine swiðe.
& hehte hine his lond bruken :/
for he him bæh to foten.
þa hafde Howel :/
hæhliche agūnen.
Arður hafde France :/
and freoliche heo ſette.
he nō þa hiſ ferde :/
and wende ȝeōd þan ærde.
to Burguine he wēde :/
and ſette hit an his honde.
and seodðen[1] he gon liðen :/
in to Loherne.
and alle þa londes :/
ſette him ſeolue an honde.
al þat Arður iſæh :/
al hit him to bæh.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þat alle þe leode :/
him to loſe eode.
wiþ Howel he griþ makede :/
mid al his manferde.
and bi-com Arthur his man :/
baldeſt alre kinge.
Arthur him warþ liþe :/
and louede hine ſwiþe.
and hehte him hiſ lond brouki :/
for he him beh to fote.
þo hadde Howel :/
hehliche a-gonne.
ARthur hadde France :/ [F]rance.
and freoliche hit ſette.
he nam þo hiſ ferde :/
and wende oueral þan erþe.
to Borgoyne he wende :/ [B]ur-guine.
and ſette hit mid hiſ manne.
and ſuþþe he gan wende :/
into Loherenne.
and alle þe londes :/
he nam to his hondes.
al þat Arthur iſeh :/
al hit him to beh.

[the] people went him to loss, with Howel he made peace, with all his host, and became 'Arthurs [Arthur his] man, 'the noble king [boldest of all kings]. Arthur became gracious to him, and loved him greatly, and bade him enjoy his land, for (because) he bowed to his feet;—then had Howel nobly succeeded! Arthur had France, and freely it settled; he took then his host, and marched over [all] the territory; to Burgundy he proceeded, and set it 'in his hand [with his men]; and afterwards he gan fare into Loraine, and all the lands 'set to himself in hand [he took in his hands]; all that Arthur saw, all it submitted to him; and afterwards he went, full truly,

[1] seoððen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and ſeoððen he wende ful iwiſ:	and ſuþþe he wende foliwis:
aȝain hā to Paris.	aȝen in to Pariſ.
Þa hafde Arður Frāce:	Þo Arthur hadde France:
mid gode griðe aſtalde.	after his wille.
iſet and iſemed:	
þat ſel was an þeoden.	
þa hehte he þa cnihtes alden:	þo hehte he þe cnihteſ:
þa he hafde ȝare at-halden.	þat þar mid him were.
þat heo to þan kinge comen: [c. 2.]	þat lang hadde ileued:
and heore læn a-fængē.	and in fihte moche iloſed.
for heo feole ȝeren:	þat hii to him come:
hafden ibon[1] hiſ iueren.	and ȝeftes a-fenge.
Summen he ȝæf lond:	Somme he ȝaf lond:
ſummen ſeoluer and gold.	ſomme ſeoluer and gold.
ſummen he ȝæf caſtleſ:	somme he ȝaf caſtles:
ſūmen he ȝaf claðes.	ſomme he ȝaf cloþes.
hehte heom uaren an wūne:	
and beten heore ſunnen.	
for-bed heom to berne wapmen[2]:	
for ælde heom eode ouenan.	
and hehte heom luuien ſwiðe:	and bad ȝam loueie ſwiþe:
godd in þiſſen liue.	godd in þiſſe lifue. [c. 2.]
þat he an ende ful iwis:	

again 'home [in] to Paris. When Arthur had France 'established with good peace [after his will], 'settled and composed, *so* that prosperity was among *the* folk,' then ordered he the 'old' knights, that 'he had long retained [were there with him, that long had remained, and in fight much *had* lost], that they should come to 'the king [him], and receive 'their reward [gifts]; 'for they many years had been his companions.' To some he gave land, some silver and gold; to some he gave castles, some he gave clothes; 'bade them go in joy, and amend their sins; forbade them to bear weapon, because age upon them went,' and bade them love God greatly in this life, 'that he at *the* end, full surely, might give them his paradise,' that they

[1] ibeon ? [2] wapnen ?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ȝefen heom his paradis.	
þæt heo moſten bruken:	þat hii mihten brouke:
bliſſe mid ænglen.	bliſſe mid englene.
Alle þa cnihtes alde:	Alle þe cnihtes holde:
foren to heore londe.	wende to hire londe.
and þa ȝunge bilæfden:	and þe ȝonge bi-lefde:
mid leouen heore kīgen.	mid leue hire kinge.
Alle þa niȝē ȝere:	Alle þe niȝe ȝere:
Arður wuneden þere.	Arthur wonede þere.
niȝen ȝere he heold France:	niȝe ȝer he heold France:
freoliche on hōde.	freoliche an honde.
and feoðden na lengere:	and suþþe no lengere:
þat lond he ne walde.	þat lond he ne wolde.
Ah þa while þe þat kinelond:	Ac þe wile þat þe kinelond:
ſtod an Arðures hond.	ſtod in Arthures hond.
þinges ſeolcuðe:	þinges ſelcouþe:
ſiȝen to þere þeode.	come to þan folke.
monienne modfulne mon:	manẏ one godne man:
Arður makede[1] milde.	he makede milde.
and mōiēne hehne mon:	and manẏ ane hehne man:
he helde to hif foten.	he heold to his fote.
Hit wes an ane æſtere:	Hit was in on eaſter:
þat men hafden iuaſte.	þat men hadde ifaſte.
þat Arður an æſtere dæi hafde:	þat al Arthur his folk:

might enjoy bliss with *the* angels. All the old knights proceeded to their land, and the young remained with their dear king. All the nine years Arthur dwelt there; nine years he held France freely in hand, and afterwards no longer the land he governed. But the while that the kingdom stood in Arthurs hand, marvellous things came to the folk; many 'proud [a good] man 'Arthur [he] made mild, and many a high man he held at his feet! It was on an Easter, that men had fasted, that 'Arthur on Easterday had his noble men together [all Arthur his folk was gathered to him];

[1] *At first written* make, *but* de *interlined by the original hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
his aðele men at-ſomne. [f. 140. c. 1.]	to him was igadered.
al þat hæhſte mon-cun:	
þat herden ī to Francen.	
& of alle þan londen:	
þe þider in læien.	
Þer he ȝette his cnihten:	and he þare eche cnihtes:
alle heore irihten.	he[1] ȝef alle hire rihtes.
elc[2] ane he ȝif æhte:	ech one he ȝaf heahte:
alſe he iærned hafde.	aſe hii i-ſareued hadde.
Þuſ hī iquað Arður:	Þo him ſaide Arthur:
aðeleſt kingē.	baldeſt alre kinge.
Kæy. Kæi biſih þe hiderward:	Bi-ſih þe Keay hiderward:
þu ært min haxte ſtiward.	þou hart min oweſtiward.
her ich Angou ȝiue þe:	her ich Angoye þe ȝefue:
for þire wel-dede.	for þine wel deade.
and alle þa irihte:	
þe þiden[3] in beoð idihte.	
Beduer. Cneole me to Beduer:	Cneole to me Beduer:
þu art min hexte birle her.	þou hart min hexſte borle her.
þa while þa ich beo an liue:	þe wile ich ham a-liue:
luuien ich þe wulle.	louie ich þe wolle.
her ich ȝiue þe Neuſtrie:	her ich þe ȝeue Neuſtrie:
aneuſte mire riche.	nexſte mine riche.

'all the highest persons that belonged to France, and of all the lands that lay thither in'; [and] there he gave 'his knights [each knight] all their rights; to each one he gave possessions, as 'he had earned [they had deserved]. Thus 'quoth [said] him Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings: "Kay, look thee hitherward; thou art mine 'highest [own] steward; here I give thee Anjou, for thy good deeds, 'and all the rights that thither in are set.' Kneel to me, Beduer; thou art my highest cup-bearer here; the while 'that' I am alive, love thee I will. Here I give thee Neustrie, nearest to my realm." Then hight Neustrie *the land* that now hight Normandy.

[1] *Superfluous?* [2] aelc, *pr. m., but* a *erased.* [3] *R.* þider.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
Þa hehte Neuſtᵘe:	Þo hehte Neuſtrie:	*Neuſtrie.*
Þat nu hatte Normandie.	Þat nou hatte Normandie.	
Þe ilke tweien eorles weoren:	Þe ilke tweie eorles weren:	
Ardures[1] deore men.	Arthur his deore men.	
at rede and at rune:	at reade and at roune:	
an æuer ælche tune.	in euereche toune.	
Þa ȝet him ſeide Arður:	Þe ȝet him ſeide Arthur:	
aðeleſt kingen.	wiſeſt alre kinge. [f. 112ᵇ. c. 1.]	
Wend þe hider Howeldin:	Wend þe hider Holdeȳn:	*Howeldin.*
Þu ært mi mon and mi cun.	Þou hart min man and min cun.	
haue Þu Bulune:	haue Þou Boloȳne:	
and bruc his on wunne.	and brouk hit on winne.	
Cumme ner Borel:	Com me neor Borel:	*Borel.*
Þu art cniht wiſ and war.	Þou hart cniht wis and war.	
her ich Þene Mans Þe:	here ich Þe Þane Mans:	
mid monſcipe bitæche.	mid manſipe bi-take.	
and bruc Þu hiſ on wunne:	and brouc hit on winne:	
for Þire wel-dede.	for Þine wel-deade.	
Þuſ Arður Þe king delde: [c. 2.]	Þus Arthur Þe king:	
hiſ drihtliche londes.	dealde his londes.	
after heore iwurhte:	after hire deades:	
for he heom Þuhte wurðe.	for he ham wiſte worÞe.	
Þa weoren bliðe ſpelles:	Þo weren bliÞe ſpelles:	

The same two earls were 'Arthurs [Arthur his] dear men, at counsel and at communing, in every place. The yet said him Arthur, 'noblest of [wisest of all] kings: "Wend thee hither, 'Howeldin [Holdeyn]; thou art my man and my kin; have thou Boulogne, and possess it in prosperity. Come near, Borel; thou art knight wise and wary; here I deliver thee the Mans, with honor, and possess 'thou' it in prosperity, for thy good deeds." Thus Arthur the king dealt his 'lordly' lands, after their 'actions [deeds]; for he 'thought [knew] them *to be* worthy. Then were blithe speeches in 'Arthurs

[1] *R.* Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
in Arðuref hallen.	in Arthur his halles.
þer wes harepinge and ſong:	þar was harping an ſong:
þe[1] weoren bliſſen imong.	þare weren bliſſef among.
Þa æſtre wes aȝonge:	Þo eaſter was a-gon:
and Aueril eode of tune.	and Auerel eode of toune.
and þ graſ was riue:	and þat gras was riue:
and þat water wes liðe.	and þat water liþe.
and men gunnen ſpilien:	and men ſaide[2]:
þat wes Mæi at tune.	þat May was in toune.
Arður nom hiſ folc feire:	Arthur nam his ferde:
and to þere ſæ uerde.	and to fée wende.
and lette bonien hiſ ſcipen:	and lette banni his ſipes:
wel mid þan bezſten.	wel mid þan beſte.
& ferde to þiſſen londe:	and wende to þiſſc londe:
and up cō at Londen.	and vp com at Londene.
up he com at Lūdene:	
leoden to bliſſen.	
Al hit weſ bliðe:	Al hit was bliþe:
þat hine iſæh mid eȝen.	þat hine iſeh mid ehȝene.
ſone heo gunnen ſīge:	sone hii gonne ſinge:
of Arður þan kinge.	of Arthur þan kinge.
and of þere wurðſcipe muchele:	and of þe worſipe:
þe he iwunne hafde.	þat he awonne hadde.

[Arthur his] halls; there was harping and song, there were blisses among! When Easter was gone, and April went from town, and the grass was rife, and the water 'was' calm, and men 'gan to say [said in speech] that May was in town, Arthur took his 'fair folk [host], and proceeded to 'the' sea, and caused his ships to be assembled, well with the best; and sailed to this land, and came up at London; 'up he came at London, to *the* bliss of *the* people.' All it was blithe that saw him with eyes; soon they gan to sing of Arthur the king, and of the 'great' worship that he had won.

[1] *R.* þer.

[2] ſaide in roune?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
Þer cuſte uader þene ſune:	Þar cuſte fader þane ſone:
and ſeide to him welcume.	and ſaide to him wolcome.
dohter þa moder:	
broðer þene oðer.	broþer þan oþer:
ſuſter cuſte ſuſter:	ſoſter þane broþer.
þa ſoftere heom wes an heorten.	
A monie hundred ſtūden[1]:	In many hundred ſtude:
ſtoden bi þan weie.	ſtode bi þan weye.
folc frainige[2]:	þat folk axinge:
of feole cūne þīgē.	of many cunnes þing.
and cnihtes heom talden: [f.140b. c.1.]	and cnihtes ȝam tolde: [c.2.]
of heore onwalden.	of hire anwolde.
and heore ȝeolp makeden:	and hire ȝelp makede:
of muchele biȝeten.	of mochele bi-ȝeate.
Ne mihte na mon ſuggē:	Ne mihte no man ſegge:
nære he na ſwa hende mon.	in þiſſe worle-riche.
of halue þan bliſſen:	of haluendel þe bliſſe:
þa weoren mid þan Brutten.	þat were þo mid Bruttus.
Ælc ferde an hiſ neode:	
ȝeond þas kine-þeode.	
from burhȝe to burhȝe:	
mid bliſſen uniuoȝe.	
and þuſ hit ane ſtude[3]:	and þus one ſtund:

There kissed father the son, and said to him welcome; 'daughter the mother,' brother the other; sister 'kissed sister [the brother]; 'the softer *it* was to them in heart.' In many hundred places [the] folk stood by the way, asking of things of many kind; and *the* knights told them of their conquests, and made their boast of mickle booty. Might no man say, 'were he man ever so skilled [in this worlds-realm], of half the blisses that were [then] with 'the' Britons! 'Each fared at his need over this kingdom, from burgh to burgh, with great bliss'; and thus 'it' a time stood in the same *wise*,—bliss was in 'Britain [this land] with the bold king.

[1] ſtuden? [2] frainige? [3] ſtunde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

ſtod a þan ilke.
bliſſe wes on Brutene:
mid balde þan kinge.
þa æſtre wes aȝeonge:
and ſumer com to londe.
þa nom Arður his red:
wið reche hiſ mōnē.
þat he wolde inne Karliū:
bere his crune him on.
and a White-ſunedæi:
hiſ folc þer iſomnie.
A þen ilke daȝen:
mē gunnē demen.
þat nes i nane londe:
burh nan ſwa hende.
na swa wide cuð:
swa Karliun bi Uſke.
buten hit weoren þa burh riche:
þe Rome if ihaten.
þa ȝet wes mid þan kinge:
moni mon an londe.
þat quidde þa burh of Karlion:
ricchere þene Rome.
and þat Uſke weore:
ſeleſt alre wateren.
Medewes þer weoren brade:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

hit ſtod a þan ilke.
bliſſe was in þiſſe londe:
mid balde þan kýnge.
þo eaſter was agon:
and ſomer com to toune.
þo nam Arthur his read:
wiþ riche his manne.
þat he wolde in Cairlion:
beare his croune him on.
to þan Witeſonnedaý:
his folk ſolde be hi-gadered.
In þan ilke týme:
men gonne deame.
þat nas in none londe:
borh al ſo hende.
ne so couþ wide:
ſo Caýrlion bi Vſke.
bote hit were þe borh riche:
þat Rome his ihote.
And ȝet was mid þan kýnge:
maný man in londe.
þat held þe borh of Caýrlion:
richere þane Rome.
and þat Vſke were:
ſeleſt alre watere.
Medewes þar were brode:

When Easter was gone, and summer come to 'land[town], then took Arthur his counsel, with his noble men, that he would in Kaerleon bear on him his crown, 'and on [at the] Whitsunday his folk 'there assemble [should be gathered]. In 'those days [that time] men gan deem, that 'no' burgh '[all] so fair was [not] in any land, nor so widely known as Kaerleon by Usk, unless it were the rich burgh that is named Rome. 'The [And] yet many *a* man was with the king in land, that 'pronounced [held] the burgh of Kaerleon richer than Rome, and that Usk were *the* best of all waters.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
bihalues þere burhȝe. [c. 2.]	bi-halues þare borewe.
þer wes fiſc: þer wes fuȝel:	þar was fiſc þar was fowel:
and fæierneſſe inoȝe.	and biſſef[1] inowe.
þer wes wude and wilde deor:	þar was wode and wilde deor:
wunder ane monie.	wonderliche manie.
þer wes al þa murhðe:	þar was al þe murthe:
þe æi mon mihte of þenche.	þat enỳ man mihte an þinche.
Ah nauer ſeoððen Arður þider	Ac neuere ſuþþe þat Arthur þider
þa burh ſeoððe no iþæh. [bæh:	þe borh suþþe ne þeh. [f. 113. c. 1.] [beh:
no nauere ne[2] mæi: 10	ne neuere more ne maỳ:
bi-twene þiſ and domeſ-dæi.	bi-twix þiſ and domes-daỳ.
Sūme bokes ſuggeð to iwiſſe:	Somme bokes ſeggeþ to iwiſſe:
þat þa burh wes biwucched.	þat þe borh was i-wicched.
and þæt if wel iſene:	þat his wel of ſene:
foð þat hit ſunde.	foþ þat hit þinche.
I þære burh weoren:	In þare borh were:
twa munſtres ſwiðe mære.	tweie riche muneſtres.
þat an mūſtre wes of ſeint Aaron:	þe on was of ſeint Aaron: *Aaron.*
þer inne wes muchel halidō.	þar in was manỳ halidom.
þat oðer of þan martir ſeint Juliæn:	þe oþer of ſeint Julian: *Julian.*
þe heh if mid drihten. 21	þat heh his mid drihte.
þer weoren nunnen wel idon:	þar in were nonnes wel idon:

Meadows there were broad, beside the burgh; there was fish, there was fowl, and 'fairness [blisses] enow; there was wood and wild deer, wondrous many; there was all the mirth that any man might think of. But never since [that] Arthur thither came, the burgh afterwards thrived, nor ever-[more] may, 'between [betwixt] this and dooms-day. Some books say certainly that the burgh was bewitched, and that is well seen (probable), sooth that it 'be [seem]. In the burgh were two minsters 'exceeding noble [rich]; one 'minster' was of Saint Aaron; therein was 'mickle [many] relique; the other of 'the martyr' Saint Julian, who is high with *the* Lord; there[in] were nuns good, many *a* high born woman. The bishops stool was at Saint

[1] *R.* bliſſes.

[2] *Interlined by a second hand.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
moni heh iboren wifmon.	many heh bore womman.
þe biſcop ſtole wes at ſein[1] Aarō:	þe biſſopes ſtol was at ſeint Aaron:
þer wes moni ſel mon.	þar in was many canoun.
canunes þer weoren:	
þe cuð weoren widen.	
þer wes moni god clarc:	þar was mani god cleark:
þe wel cuðe a leore.	þat moche couþe of lore.
muchel heo ſerden mid þan crafte:	moche hii vſede þat craft:
to lokien in þan leofte.	to lokie in þan lufte.
to lokien i þan ſteorren:	
nehȝe and feorren.	
þe craft if ihate:	þe craft his ihote aſtronomie:
Aſtronomie.	in oþer kunnes ſpeche.
wel ofte heo þan kīge:	wel ofte hii þan kinge tolde:
ſeide of feole þinge.	of mani þinges.
heo cuddē him on leoden:	
what him ſculde ilimpē. [f. 141. c. 1.]	
Swulc wes þe burh of Karliun:	Soch was þe borh of Caẏrlion:
þer wef muchel ricchedom.	þar was moche richedom.
þer wes muchel bliſſe:	
mid biſie þan kinge.	
þe king nom hiſ ſonde:	þe king nam his ſonde:
and ſende ȝeōd hiſ londe.	and ſende to many londeſ.

Aaron; there[in] was many *a* 'good man [canon]; 'canons there were, who known were wide'; there was many *a* good clerk, who 'well [much] could (were well skilled) in learning. Much they used the craft to look in the sky; 'to look in the stars, nigh and far';—the craft is named Astronomy [in speech of other kind]. Well often they 'said [told] of many things to the king; 'they made known to him what should happen to him in *the* land.' Such was the burgh of Kaerleon; there was much wealth; 'there was much bliss with the busy king.' The king took his messengers, and sent 'over his land; [to many lands, and] bade come 'earls; [kings, and]

[1] ſeint?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.	
hæhte cumen eorlef:	and hehte come kinges:	
hehte cumen beornef.	and hehte come eorles.	
hehte cumen kinges:	biſſopes and clearkes:	
and æc here-ðringes.	cnihtes and ſweines.	
hehte cumen biſcoppes:		
hehte cumen cnihtes.		
hæhte alle þa freo-men:		
þauere[1] weoren an londe.		
bi heore life hehte heom beon:	bi hire lifue he hehte ȝam beon:	
a White-ſunedæi at Kærleon.	a Witſondaẏ at Caẏrlẏon.	*Kairlium.*
Cnihtes gūnen riden:	Cnihtes gonne ride:	
vnimete whiden.	onimete wide.	
riden touward Kairliun:	and come to Cairlẏon:	
of feole cunne londen.	of manẏ cunne londes. [c. 2.]	
To þan White-ſunedæie:	To þan Witſonedaẏ:	
þer com þe king Angel.	com þe king Angel.	*Angel.*
king of Scotlonde:	king of Scotlonde:	
mid ſceone hiſ folke.	mid kene hiſ folke.	
moni wes þe faire mon:		
þe folȝede þan kingen.		
Of Murieue kīg Vrien:	Of Moraẏne þe kin[2] Vrien:	*Vrien.*
and hiſ fæire ſune Ẏwæin.	and his faire ſone ȝeuan.	
Stater king of Suðwales:	Stater king of Suþwales:	

bade come 'barons [earls]; 'bade come kings, and eke chieftains; bade come bishops, bade come knights [bishops and clerks, knights and swains]; 'bade all the free men that ever were in *the* land'; by their life [he] bade them be at Kaerleon on Whitsunday. Knights gan to ride exceeding wide, [and] 'rode toward [came to] Kaerleon from lands of many kind. At the Whitsunday 'there' came the king Angel, king of Scotland, with his 'fair [keen] folk; 'many was the fair man that followed the king'. Of Moray [the] king Urien, and his fair son Ywain; Stater, king of South-Wales,

[1] þa euere?

[2] king?

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
	and Cadwaðlan[1] king of Norð-	and Cadwal þan king of Norþwales.
Cador.	Cador eorl of Cornwale: [wales.	Cador eorle of Cornwale:
	þa þe king luuede.	þat Arthur moche louede.
	Moruið of Glouchæſtre:	Morewiþ of Glouceſtre:
	Maurin of Winchaſtre.	Maurin of Wicheſtre[2].
Gurguint.	Gurguint eorl of Herford:	Gorgwint eorl of Hereforde:
	and Beof eorl of Oxeuord.	and Beofs eorl of Oxeneford.
	Gurſal þe balde:	Curſal þe bolde:
	from Baðe þer com ride.	fram Baþe þar com ride.
Vrgent.	Vrgent of Chaſtre: [c. 2.] 10	Vrgent of Caſtre:
	Jonataſ of Dorcheſtre.	Jonathas of Dorcheſtre.
Ar[nald.]	Ærnald of Saleſburi:	Arnold of Saluſburi:
Kinm[arc.]	and Kinmarc of Cantuare-buri.	and Kinemark of Canterburi.
	Balien of Silechæſtre:	Balien of Cireceſtre:
	Wigein of Leirchæſtre.	Wigen of Leyceſtre.
	Argal eorl of Warwic:	Argal eorl of Warewike:
	mid folk ſwiðe ſellic.	mid folke ſwiþe ſellich.
Dunw[ale.]	Dunwale Apries ſune:	Dunwale Apries ſone:
	and Kegein Elauðes ſune.	and Kekeyn Elauþes ſone.
	Kineuf þer[3] wes Coittes ſune:	Kyneuf þat was Coytef ſone:
	& Cradoc Catelles ſune. 21	and Cradoc Catellus ſone.
Ædla[n.]	Ædlein Cledaukes ſune:	Aleyn Cledaukes ſone:
	Grimarc Kinmarkes ſune.	Trimarc Kinemarkeſ ſone.

and Cadwal, the king of North-Wales; Cador, earl of Cornwall, whom 'the king [Arthur much] loved; Morvith of Gloucester; Maurin of Winchester; Gurguint, earl of Hereford, and Beof, earl of Oxford; Cursal the bold, from Bath there came riding; Urgent of Chester; Jonathas of Dorchester; Arnald of Salisbury, and Kinmare of Canterbury; Balien of 'Silchester [Cirencester]; Wigen of Leicester; Argal, earl of Warwick, with folk exceeding strange (*or* numerous); Dunwale, son of Apries, and Kegein, son of Elauth; Kineus, that was Coits son, and Cradoc, Catels son; 'Ædlein [Aleyn], Cledauks son; 'Grimarc [Trimarc], Kinmarks son;

[1] Cadwal þan?
[2] *R.* Wincheſtre.
[3] þat?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Run Margoitt & Netan:
Clofard Kīcar and Aikan.
Kerin Neton and Peredur:
Madoc Traher and Elidur.
þif weoren Arðures:
aðele eorles.
and þa haxte þeines ohte:
of alle þiffere þeode.
wið uten þan beorēn:
of Arðuref borden.
þa na man ne mihte ikennē:
ne al þat folc inemnen.
Þa weorē ærchebifcopes þreo:
inne þiffere þeode.
inne Lundē and in Eouuerwic:
and inne Karliun fein[2] Dubric.
he wes swiðe hali mon:
þurh alle þinge wel idon. [ftol:
To Lundene læi þe ærchebifcop
þe to Cantware-buri wes feoððe
feoððe Englifcemen: [idon.
þif lond heom iwunnen.
To tellen þat folc of Kairliun:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Run Margoyt Nethan: *Run.*
Gloffarc Kyngar and Aycan.
Kerỳn Neton and Peridur: *Kerin.*
Madoc Traharn and Elidur. *Madoc.*
þis weren bolde:
Arthu[1] his eorlef.
and þe hexfte men:
of al þiffe londe.
wiþ vte þe bolde:
at Arthuref borde.
þat no man ne miht kenne:
ne al þat folk nemni.
þo weren archebiffopes þreo: [f. 113b. c. 1.]
in þiffe kinelonde.
ine Londene and in Euerwich:
and ine Cayrlion feint Dubrch[3].
he was fwiþe holỳ man:
þorh alle þinge wel idon. [ftol:
To Londene laỳ þe archebiffopes
þat to Cantelburi was fuþþe idon.
þo þat Engleffe men:
þis lond hadde awonne.
To telle þat folk of Caỳrlion:

Run, Margoit, 'and' Netan; Clofard, Kincar, and Aican; Kerin, Neton, and Peredur; Madoc, Trahern, and Elidur. These were 'Arthurs noble [Arthur his bold] earls, and the highest 'thanes brave [men] of all this land, without (besides) the 'nobles of [bold *men* at] Arthurs board, that no man might ken, nor all the folk name. Then were archbishops three in this 'country [kingdom]; in London, and in York; and in Kaerleon, Saint Dubrich,—he was *a* man exceeding holy, through all things excellent! At London lay the archbishops stool, that to Canterbury was subsequently removed, 'after [when] that Englishmen had won 'to them' this land. To

[1] *R.* Arthur. [2] feint? [3] *R.* Dubrich.

	MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
	ne mihte hit na mon idon.	ne mihte no man hit don.
Gillomar.	Þer wes Gillomar þe king: [f.141b.c.1.]	Þar was Gillomar king:
	Irifce mōnen deorling.	Iriffe menne deorlyng.
	Malueruf king of Iflonde:	Maluerus king of Islond:
Doldanet.	Doldanet king of Gutlonde.	Doldanet of Gutlond.
	Kinkailin of Friflonde:	king Calin of Friffelond:
	Æfcil king of Denelōde.	Afcil king of Denenelond.
	Þer wes Loð þe kene:	Þar was Loth þe kene:
	þe kīg wes bi Norðe.	þat king was bi Norþe.
Gonwais.	and Gonwæis Orcaneie king:	and Gonwas Orcaneyes king:
	utlaȝen deorling.	and many cnihtef mid him.
	Þider com þe wilde:	Þider com þe wilde:
	þe eorl of Builuine.	þe eorl of Boloyne.
	Læȝer wes ihatē:	
	and hif leoden mid him.	
	of Flandres þe eorl Howeldin:	of Flandres þe eorl Holdein:
	of Chæftres[1] þe eorl Cherin.	of Chartref þe eorl Geryn.
	Þeof ferede mid him:	
	al þat Frenfce moncun.	
	twalf eorlef swiðe ræihe:	twealf eorles heȝe:
	þe rixleden ouer France.	þat rixlede in France.
	Guitart eorl of Peiters:	Gwitard eorl of Peyters:
	Kæi þe orl of Angerf.	Keay þe eorl of Angers.

tell (number) the folk of Kaerleon, no man might it do! There was Gillomar 'the' king, of Irish men *the* darling; Malverus, king of Iceland; Doldanet 'king' of Gutlond; 'Kinkalin [king Calin] of Frisland; *and* Æscil, king of Denmark. There was Loth the keen, who was king by *the* North; and Gonwais, king of Orkney, 'of outlaws *the* darling [and many knights with him]. Thither came the fierce *man*, the earl of Boulogne, '*who* was named Læȝer, and his people with him'; of Flanders the earl Howeldin; [of Chartres the earl Geryn]. 'This *man* brought with him all the French men'; twelve earls 'most' noble, who ruled 'over [in]

[1] Chærtres?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Beduwer[1] eorl of Normandie :/
þat lond hehte þa Neuſtrie.
of þe Māſ com þe eorl Borel :/
of Brutaine þe eorl Howel.
Howel eorl wes freo mon :/
and faire weoren his iwede.
and al þat folc Frenſce :/
bihongen weoren feire.
iwepned wel alle :/
and horſ ho[2] hafden uatte.
þer weoren bifides :/
fiftene biſcopes.
Nef na cniht ne na ſwein :/
ne oht mon þat weore þein.
from þa porz of Spaine :/ [c. 2.]
to þan tune of Alemaine.
þat þider icomen nere :/
ȝif he iboden weore.
al for Arðures æie :/
aðelef cunnef.
þa al þif hired wes icunnen[5] :/
ælc king mid hif folke.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Beduer eorl of Normandie :/
þo hehte Neuſtrie.
of þe Mans com þe eorl Borel :/
of Britaine þe eorl Howel. *Howel.*
Howel þe eorl was freoman :/
and of gode þewes.
and al þat folk Frence :/
faire weren icloþed.
and iwepned were alle :/
and mid horſen heȝe.
þar weren bi-ſides :/ [c. 2.]
fiftene biſſopes.
Nas no chniht ne no ſweyne[3] :/
ne oht man þat were þeyn.
fram þe Poche[4] of Spayne :/
to þan toune of Alemayne.
þat þider icome neore :/
ȝef he ibode were.
al for Arthur his heye :/
baldeſt alre kinge.
þo al þis folk was icome :/
aſe hii ihote were.

France. Guitard, earl of Poitiers; Kay, earl of Angers; Bedver, earl of Normandy,—'the land' then hight Neustrie;—of the Mans came the earl Borel; of Britanny the earl Howel. Howel [the] earl was free man, and 'fair were his weeds [of good qualities]. And all the French folk were clothed fair, [and were] all well weaponed, and 'horses they had fat [with fine horses]. There were besides fifteen bishops. Was *there* no knight nor any swain, nor good man that were thane, from the ports of Spain to the towns of Alemaine, that thither would not have come, if he were (had been) invited; all for 'Arthurs [Arthur his] dread, 'of noble race [boldest of all kings]. When all this folk was come; 'each king with his people

[1] Bedware, *pr. m.*
[2] heo?
[3] ſweyne?
[4] *Sic MS.*
[5] icumen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þer me mihte bihalde:	þar me mihte iſeon:
þe þer bi-halues weore.	
moni ſeolcudne[1] mon:	many ſelcuþ man.
þe iſiȝen wes to burhȝen.	
and feole cunne tiðende:	and manẏ tidẏnge:
mid Arðure þan kinge.	mid Arthur þan kinge.
þer wes moni ſellic clað:	þar was manẏ wonder cloþ:
þer wes moni cniht wrað.	þar was many chniht wroþ.
þer weoren herberȝe:	
hæhliche awurðe.	
þer þa innes weoren:	þar weren innes:
mid ſtrengðe biwunnen.	mid ſtrengþe bi-wonne.
þer weorē on uelden:	þare werē in feldes:
moni þuſend telden.	manẏ þouſend teldes.
þer com ſpic and water[2]:	þar com fleaf and wete:
and aten vnimete.	[tale: and ote onimete.
ne mai hit na mon ſuggen on hiſ	ne maẏ noman telle in tale:
of þan win and of þan ale.	of þan wẏn and of þan ale.
þer com heẏ þer com g^{a}s:	þar com heie þar cō gras:
þer com al þat god waſ.	þar com al þat neod was.
þa al þiſ folc iſomned was:	þo al þis was idon:
at ſele þan kīgge.	

[as they were bidden], there men might 'behold [see], ' who were there beside,' many *a* strange man, ' who was come to *the* burgh,' and many ' kind of ' tidings (novelties) with Arthur the king. There was many *a* marvellous cloth (garment); there was many *a* wrath knight; ' there were lodgings nobly prepared; ' there were ' the ' inns, built with strength; there were on *the* fields many thousand tents; there came 'lard [flesh] and wheat, and oats without measure; may no man 'say it [tell] in ' his ' tale, of the wine and of the ale; there came hay, there came grass; there came all that was 'good [needful]! When all this 'folk was assembled [was done] ' by the good king,' when the Whitsunday came, ' as *the* Lord it sent', 'then [there]

[1] ſelcuðne? [2] wete? whæte?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

þa com þe White-funedæi :/
alfe drihten hine fende.
þa comen þa bifcopes alle :/
biuoren heore kinge.
and þa ærchebifcopes þreo :/
biuoren Arðure.
and þene kine-helme nome :/
þa him wef icunde.
and fetten uppen his hafde :/ [f. 142. c. 1.]
mid heȝere bliffe.
swa heo hine gūnen lede :/
al mid godes rede.
Seint Dubrif eoden biuorē :/
he wes crifte icoren.
þe ærchebifcop of Lundene :/
eode an hif riht honden.
and bi hif luft fide :/
þe[1] of Eouerwike.
fiftene bifcopes biuoren :/
of feole londen icoren.
heo weoren bi-hangen alle :/
mid palle fwiðe balde.
þe weoren alle ibrufted :/
mid barninge golde.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

þo þe Witfonedai com.
þar come þe biffopes alle :/
to-vore þan bolde kinge.
and þane croune neme :/
þat him was icunde.
and fete vppe his hefd :/
mid mochelere bliffe.
and fo hii gonne him leade :/
al mid godes reade.
Seint Dubriþ ȝeode bi-vore :/
to crift he was icore.
þe archebiffop of Londene :/
wende him bi-fide.
and in þan oþer halue :/
þe ilke of Euerwike. [f. 114. c. 1.]
fiftene bi-vore :/
of fale londe icore.
hii hadde aboute ȝam alle :/
fwiþe riche palles.

came all the bishops before 'their [the bold] king, 'and the archbishops three, before Arthur'; and took the crown, that was to him *by* right, and set upon his head with great bliss; [and] so they gan him lead, all with Gods counsel. Saint Dubrich went before,—he was to Christ chosen;—the archbishop of London walked 'on his right hand [beside him], and 'by his left [on the other] side the same of York. Fifteen 'bishops' *went* before, of many lands chosen; they 'were all clothed with [had about them all] garments most rich, 'that were all embroidered with burning gold.' There

[1] þe ilke?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Þer feouwer kinges eoden :
biuoren þan kaiſeren.
heo weȝe on heore honde :
feouwer ſweord of golde.
Þuſ hehte þa an :
þe wes a ſwiðe duhti mon.
Cador. þat wes Cador þe king :
Ardures[1] deorling.
þe oðer of Scotlonde :
sweord he weide an honde.
& þe king of Norð Walles :
& þe king of Suð Wales.
& þ° heo gunnen leden :
þe king to chirechen.
þeo biſcopes gunnen ſinge :
biuoren þā leod-kinge.
bemen þer bleowen :
bellen þer ringedē.
cnihtes gunnen riden :
wifm̄ forð gliden.
To iwiſſen hit if iſaid :
and foð hit if ifūden.
þat no iſæh no mon nauer ær :

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Þar four kinges ȝeode :
bi-vore þan kaẏſere.
hii beore on hire honde :
four ſweordes longe.
Þus hehte þe on :
þat was a wel dohti man.
þat was Cador þe king :
Arthur his deorling.
þe oþ° of Scotlond :
ſweord bar an hond.
and þe king of Norþwales :
and þe king of Suþwales.
Þeos gonne leade :
þane king toward chirche.
and þe biſſopes mid ſonge :
bi-vore hire kinge.
bumes þar blewen :
belles þar rongen.
cnihtes gonne ride :
wifmen forþ glide.
To iwiſſe hit his iſaid :
and foþ hit his ifunde.
þat ne ſeh noman ear :

walked four kings before the kaiser; they bare in their hands four swords 'of gold [long]. Thus hight the one, who was a 'most [well] doughty man, that was Cador the king, 'Arthurs [Arthur his] darling; the second of Scotland, 'he' bare sword in hand; and the king of North-Wales and the king of South-Wales. 'And thus they [These] gan lead the king 'to [toward] church; [and] the bishops 'gan sing [with song] before 'the monarch [their king]; trumpets there blew; bells there rung; knights gan ride, women forth glide. In certainty it is said, and sooth it is found, that nō man 'ever' ere saw here with earthly men half 'so great [the] pomp, in

[1] *R.* Arðures.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
mid eorðliche monne her.	[c. 2.] mid erþliche manne her.
half ſwa hahne ricchedom:	half þane richedom:
a nauer nane hepen.	in neuere none heape.
swa mid Arðure waſ:	so was mid þan kinge:
aðeleſ cunneſ.	in alle ſcines[1] þinge.
Into chirchen bicom:	Into chirche bi-com:
Arður þe riche mon.	Arthur þe heȝe man.
Dubriz þe arche-biſcop:	Dubrich þe archebiſſop:
drihten him wes ful god.	
of Rome he weſ legat:	þat was of Rome legat.
and of þan hirede prelat.	
he ſong þa hali maſſe:	hee ſang þe holy maſſe:
biuoren þan leod-kinge.	bi-vore þan riche kinge.
Comen mid þere quene:	Comen mid þare cwene:
wifmē wel idone.	wifmen ſwiþe ſcene.
þere richchere mōne wif alle:	þe richeſte wifmen alle:
þe wunede on lōde.	þat were in londe.
and þere hehere monnen dohtere:	
þa quene hafden iſohte.	
al ſwa þe quene hafde ihate:	
bi hire fulle wite.	
I þere chireche i þere ſoð halue:	In þe chirches ſuþ half:
ſat Arður þe king him ſeolf.	ſat Arthur þe king him ſeolf.

ever any assembly, as was with 'Arthur, of noble race [the king, of things of all kind]. Into church came Arthur the 'rich [high] man; Dubrich the archbishop,—'*the* Lord was to him full good'; of Rome 'he [that] was legate, 'and prelate of the people,'—he sang the holy mass before the 'monarch [rich king]. Came with the queen women [most] fair; all 'wives of the rich men that dwelt [the richest women that were] in the land, 'and daughters of the noble men the queen had sought (*or* selected), all as the queen had ordered, on *pain of* their *paying* full penalty.' In the 'church, in the [churches] south half sate Arthur the king himself; by the north side

[1] alleſ cines?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
bi þere norð ſide:	bi þare norþ ſide: [c. 2.]
Wenhæiuer þa quene.	Gwenaẏfer þe cwene.
Þer comen hire bi-foren:	Þare comen hire bi-vore:
feouwer quenen icoren.	four cweanen icore.
ælc bar on luft honde:	ech bar an honde:
enne beh of rede gold.	ane ȝeord of reade golde.
& þreo ſnau-whte[1] culueren:	and þreo wite coluere:
ſentē[2] an heore ſculderen.	ſeate on hire ſoldre.
Þæt weoren þa feouwer quenē:	Þat were þe kingene wifues:
þere cnihte[3] wifen.	
þa beren an heore heonden:	Þat beare þe four sweordes:
þe feouwer sweordes of golde.	
biuorē Arðure:	bi-vore Arthur þe king:
aðeleſt kingen.	Bruttene deorling.
Moni mæide child wes þere: [f. 142b. c. 1.]	Þar was mani mayde:
mid mære þere quene.	mid þare faire cweane.
Þær wes moni pal hende:	
on faire þā uolke.	
of monies cunnef lōde:	Þar waſ mochel honde:
þer wes muchel onde.	of manicunnes londe.
for ælc wende to beon:	for ech wende to beon:
betere þene oðer.	betere þan oþer.
Feole cnihtes anan:	Manẏ cnihtes come:
comen to þere chirechen.	þreaſte to chirche.

Wenhaver the queen. There came before her four chosen queens; each bare in '*the* left' hand a 'jewel [wand, *i. e.* sceptre] of red gold, and three 'snow'-white doves sate on their shoulders; who were the 'four queens, wives of the kings [kings wives] who bare 'in their hands' the four swords 'of gold' before Arthur, 'noblest of kings [the king, Britons darling]. There was many *a* maid-'child' with the 'noble [fair] queen; there was many *a* rich garment on the fair folk; there was mickle envy from land of many kind; for each weened to be better than other. Many knights 'anon'

[1] *R.* ſnau-white. [2] ſetten? [3] kingen?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
sūme for guðinge:	
fumme for þan kinge.	
summe to bihalden:	somme to bi-holde:
þa wifmen þat weoren balde.	wifmen þat weren bolde.
Songes þer weoren murie:	Þar was ſo moche murthe:
þa ilaſte ſwiðe longe.	of alle cunnes þinge.
ich weone ȝif hit weore:	þat þeh hit hadde i-laſte:
ilaſt ſeoue ȝere.	folle ſoue ȝere.
þa ȝet heo weolden mare:	þat ȝet hii wolde more:
þe þer at weoren.	þat þar ine were.
Þa þe maſſe wes iſūgē:	Þo þe maſſe waſ iſonge:
of chircchen heo ðrunge.	of chirche hii þronge.
þe king mid hiſ folke:	þe king mid his folk:
to his mete uerde.	to his mete wende.
mid mucle hiſ duȝeðe:	
drem wes on hirede.	
Þa quene on oðer halue:	Þe cweane on oþer halue:
hire hereberwe iſohte.	hire hom ....te.
heo hafde of wifmonne:	ȝeo hadde of wifm..
wunder ane monien.	...derliche manẏe.
Þa þe king wes iſete[1]:	Þo þ. .... was iſete:
mid hiſ monnen to hiſ mete.	mid his man.. .. þe mete.
to þan kinge com þæ biſcop:	to þan kinge ... .
ſeīd[2] Dubriz þe wes swa god.	ſeint Dubrich þe holẏ man.

came [crowding] 'to the' church; some 'for gain (?); some for the king; some' to behold 'the' women that were noble. 'Songs there were merry, that lasted very long; I ween if [There was so much mirth of all kind of thing, that though] it had lasted [full] seven years, the yet they would more, that were thereat [therein]. When the mass was sung, from church they thronged; the king with his folk went to his meat, 'with his mickle folk,—joy was among *the* people.' The queen on *the* other side sought her lodging; she had of women wondrous many. When the king was set, with his men to his meat, to the king came the 'bishop [holy man] Saint

[1] *Written at first* iſeten, *but* n *expuncted.* [2] ſeint?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and nom of hiſ hafde:		and nam of his hefd:
hiſ kine-hælm hæhne.		his kinehelm heȝe.
for þan mucle golde:		for þane mochele golde:
þe king hine beren nalde.		þe king hine beare nolde.
& dude enne laſſe crune:	[c. 2.]	and dude one laſſe croune:
on þaſ kingeſ hafde.		on þan kinges hefd.
and ſeoððen he gō do:		and ſuþþe he gan do:
a þere quene al ſwo.		on þan cweane al ſo. [f. 114b. c. 1.]
Inne Troie þiſ wes laȝe[1]:		In Troye þis was lawe:
bi heore ælderne daȝe[1].	10	bi hire hilderne daie.
þa Bruttef of come:		þat Bruttus of come:
þe weoren wel idone.		þat were wel idone.
alle þa wepmen:		
at heore mete ſetē.		
sundi bi heom ſeoluen:		
þat heom þuhte wel idon.		
and al swa þa wifmen:		
heore iwune hafden.		
þa þe kīg wes iſete:		þo þe king was iſete:
mid alle hiſ duȝeðe to hiſ mete.		mid his cnihteſ to þe mete.
eorles and beornes:	21	
at borde[2] þaſ kinges.		
þe ſtiward com ſteppen:		þo com þe ſtiward ſtappe:

Dubrich, 'who was so good,' and took from his head his rich crown; on account of the mickle gold the king would not it bear; and placed a less crown on the kings head; and afterwards he gan do to the queen also (likewise). In Troy this was *the* custom in their elders days, of whom Brutus came, who were excellent *men*; 'all the men at their meat sate asunder by themselves; that to them seemed well done; and also the women their station had.' When the king was set with all his 'people [knights] to 'his [the] meat, 'earls and barons, at the kings board,' [then] came stepping the steward, who was named Kay, highest knight in land under the king,

[1] *Originally written* laȝen *and* daȝen, *but the final letters erased by the same hand.*
[2] *The last four letters of this word are by second hand, sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
þe Kæý wes ihaten.	þat Kaý was ihote.	*Kaý*
hæxt cniht on londe:	heheſt cniht on londe:	
vnder þan kinge.	onder þan kinge.	
of alle þan hæpe:		
of Arðuref hirede.		
Kaý hehte[1] him biuoren:	Kaý hadde him bi-vore:	
moni hæh mō icoren.	manÿ[2] heh man ibore.	
þer weoren a þuſen[3] cnihteſ[4] bald:	þar weren cnihteſ bolde:	
wunder wel italde.	a þouſend itolde.	
þat þeineden þan kīgē:		
& hiſ here-ðringen.		
ælc cniht hafde pal on:	ech cniht hadde pal on:	
and mid golde bigon.	and mid golde bi-gon.	
and alle heore uingeres:	and alle hire fingref:	
iriuen mid gold ringes.	fol of gold ringeſ.	
þaſ beorn þa ſunde:	þes beare þe ſondes:	
from kuchene to þan kinge.	fram kuchene to þan kinge.	
An oðer half wes Beduer:	An oþer half was Beduer:	*Beduer.*
þaſ kingeſ hæȝe birle.	þe kinges eȝe borle.	
mid him weoren eorlene ſunen:	mid him were eorlene ſones:	
of aðele cunne iboren. [[f.143.c.1.]	of ſwiþe heȝe cun icome.	
and þere hehȝe cnihtene ſunen:		
þa þider weoren icunen[5].		

'of all the assemblage of Arthurs folk.' Kay had before him many *a* noble man 'chosen [born]; there were a thousand bold knights 'wondrous well' told, 'that served the king and his chiefs'; each knight had *a* cloth on, and adorned with gold, and all their fingers 'covered with [full of] gold rings. These bare the *things* sent from *the* kitchen to the king. On *the* other side was Beduer, the kings high cup-bearer; with him were earls sons of 'noble [most high] race born, 'and the noble knights sons, who were thither come'; [and] seven kings sons, that 'with him moved [bare in *the*

[1] hafde? [2] *R.* manÿ. [3] þuſend? [4] cniht*e*, *pr. m.*
[5] *R.* icumen.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

feouen kingene ſunen:
þat mid him quehtē.
Bedeuer a uormeſt eode:
mid guldene bolle.
after him a þuſend:
þraſten to hirede.
mid alle þaſ cunneſ drenche:
þe me cuðe on biðenche.
And þa quene an hire ende:
wifmen ſwide[1] hende.
a þuſend hire eode biuorē:
riche men[2] and wel icoren.
to þæinen þere quene:
and þan þat mid hire weoren.
Nes he næuere iboren:
of nane cnihte icoren.
ilæred no læwed:
a nauere nare leode.
þe cuðe him[3] itelle:
an æieſ cunneſ ſpelle.
of halue þan richedome:
þe weſ inne Kairliune.
of feoluere and of golde:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

and ſoue kingene ſones:
þat wyn in beare.
Beduer forſt ȝeode:
mid gildene coupe.
and after him a þouſend:
come to borde.
mid alle cunnes drenche:
þat man couþe an bi-þenche.
... .e cweane on hire ean..
...men ſwiþe hende.
. .uſend hire ȝeode bi-vore:
.. hehȝe cunne hi-bore.
to ſaruy þe cweane:
and þaie þat mid hire were.
Nas he neuere icore:
ne of none wifue ibore.
leared ne lewed:
in neuere none londe.
þat hit couþe telle:
in eny cunneſ ſpelle.
of half þan richedom:
þat waſ in Caẏrlẏon. [c. 2.]
of seoluer and of golde:

wine]. Beduer went 'foremost [first], with golden 'bowl; [cup, and] after him a thousand 'pressed to*wards the* folk [came to *the* board], with drink of all 'the' kinds that men could think of. And the queen at her end, women most fair *attended*; a thousand walked before her, 'rich and well choice [of high kin born], to serve the queen, and them that were with her. Was he never 'born [chosen, nor] of any 'man chosen [woman born], clerk nor layman, in ever any land, that could tell it in speech of any kind, of half the wealth that was in Kaerleon, of silver and of gold, and 'good [of rich]

[1] ſwiðe? [2] *Sic MS.* [3] hit?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and gode iwedē.
of hehȝe iborene monnen:
þa inne hirede wuneden.
of horſen and of hafueken:
of hunden to deoren.
and of riche iweden:
þa a þan hirede weoren.
& of alle þan folke[1]:
þe wuneden þer on folde.
weſ þiſſes londeſ folk:
leodene hendeſt itald.
& al ſwa þa wimmen:
wunliche on heowen.
and hahlukeſt iſcrudde:
& alre bezſt itoȝene. [[c. 2.]
For heo hafden on iqueðen alle:
bi heore quike liue.
þat heo wolden of ane heowē:
heore claðes habben.
Sum hafde whit ſum hafdē ræd:
ſum hafde god grene æc.
and alcheſ cunneſ fah clað:
heom wes wunder ane lað.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and of riche wede.
of heȝe ibore men:
þat were þare to-gadere.

Of alle þeſ londes folk:
weren Bruttus beſt itold.
and al ſo þe wifmen:
fayreſt hii were.
and hehlokeſt iſcrud:
in euereche wiſe.
For hii were hi-hote alle:
bi hire cwike lifue.
þat hii ſolde of one hewe:
hire cloþes habbe.

weeds; of high born men that 'dwelt among *the* folk [were there together]; ' of horses, and of hawks, of hounds for deer, and of rich weeds, that were among the people. And of all the folk that dwelt there in land,' '*the* folk' of this land was accounted *the* fairest of people [Of all this lands folk were *the* Britons best accounted], and also the women, 'comely in hue [fairest they were], and most nobly clothed, 'and best of all educated [in every wise]. For they all had 'in declaration [ordered *or* promised], by their quick lives, that they 'would [should] have their clothes of one hue. ' Some had white, some had red; some had eke good green; and variegated cloth of each kind

[1] *At first written* folken, *but* n *erased.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
& elche untuhtle:	
heo taldē vnwurðe.	
þa hafde Æneglene ard:	þo hadde þis lond:
þat alre bezſte hereword.	þat heheſt hereword.
and þiſ leodiſce uolc æc:	of alle cune londeſ:
leofueſt þan kinge.	war men wonieþ.
þa wifmen heȝe iborene:	þe wifmen were ihote:
þa wuneden a þiſſen londe.	mid grettere heſte.
hafden iqueðen alle:	
ō heore quideſ foðe.	
þat nan lauerd taken nolde:	þat non take ne ſolde:
inne þiſſere leode.	louerd in londe.
næuer nænne cniht:	
neore he noht ſwa wel idiht.	
bute he icoſtned weoren:	bote he were þries:
þrie inne compe.	ifonded in fihte.
& hiſ oht-ſcipen icudde:	and his manede icud:
& ifonded hine ſeolue.	and him seolf icnowe.
baldeliche he mitte þenne:	þanne[1] mihte brude:
ȝirnen him brude.	boldeliche habbe.
For þere ilke tuhtle:	For þan ilke þinge:
cnihtes weoren ohte.	cnihtes weren ſtronge.

was to them wondrous odious; and each ill-usage they accounted unworthy.' Then had 'English [this] land the 'best [highest] fame of all [kind of lands where men dwell]; 'and this country-folk eke *was* dearest to the king.' The 'high born' women 'that dwelt in this land' had 'all' 'declared in their sooth words [ordered with strict command], that none 'would [should] take lord (husband) in 'this' land, 'never any knight, were he nought (never) so well formed,' unless he were (had been) thrice tried in 'combat [fight], and his 'courage [manhood] made known, and himself approved; then might he boldly 'ask him [have] *a* bride. For that 'usage [thing] *the* knights were 'brave [strong], 'the women excellent, and the better

[1] þanne he?.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þa wifmen wel idone:	
and þa betere biwitene.	
þa weoren i Brutene:	
bliſſen inoȝe.	
þa þe king iȝetē hafde:	þo þe kīg iȝeate hadde:
and al hiſ mon-weorede.	and alle hiſ cnihteſ.
þa buȝen ut of burhȝe:	þo wenden vt of borwe:
þeineſ ſwiðe balde.	cnihteſ ſwiþe bolde.
alle þa kinges:	alle þe kinges:
and heore hereþringes. [f. 143b. c. 1.]	and hire heredringes.
alle þa biſcopes:	
and alle þa clærckes.	
alle þa eorles:	
and alle þa beorneſ.	
alle þa þeines:	
alle þa ſweines.	
feire iſcrudde:	wandri in þan feldeſ:
helde ȝeond felde.	and pleoȳen bi þan teldes.
Summe heo gunnen ærnen:	Somme gon hors earne:
summe heo gunnen urnen.	somme afote eorne.
summe heo gunnen lepen:	somme hii gonne leape:
summe heo gunnen ſceotē.	and ſomme hii gonnen ſceate.
summe heo wræſtledē:	somme þar wraxlede:
and wiðer-gome makeden.	and wiþer-game makede.
ſumme heo on uelde:	somme in þan felde:
pleouweden vnder ſcelde.	pleoyde onder fealde.

behaved; then were in Britain blisses enow.' When the king had eaten, and all his 'people [knights], then proceeded out of *the* burgh *the* 'thanes [knights] most bold; all the kings, and their chieftains; 'all the bishops, and all the clerks; all the earls, and all the barons; all the thanes, *and* all the swains, fairly clad,' 'spread over *the* fields [to disperse in the fields, and play by the tents]. Some 'they' gan to ride [horses]; some 'they gan' to race [on foot]; some they gan to leap, [and] some they gan to shoot; some 'they [there] wrestled, and contest made; some 'they' in [the] field

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
sūme heo driuē balles ⁊	somme driuen balles ⁊ [f. 115. c. 1.]
wide ȝeond þa feldes.	oueral þan feldes.
Monianes kunnef gomen ⁊	Manione cunnef game ⁊
þer heo gunnen driuen.	þar hii gonne pleoẏe.
& wha fwa mihte iwinne ⁊	and wo fe worfipe mihte a-winne ⁊
wurðfcipe of hif gomene.	þorh eni cunnes ginne.
hine me ladde mid fonge ⁊	
at-forē þan leod-kinge.	
and þe kīg for hif gomene ⁊	þe king him folde ȝeue ⁊
ȝæf him ȝeuen gode.	ȝeftes fwiþe riche.
Alle þa quene ⁊	Alle þe cweanes ⁊
þe icumen weoren þere.	þat .comen were.
and alle þa lafdief ⁊	and alle þe leafdief ⁊
leoneden ȝeond walles.	leonede ouer walles.
to bihalden þa duȝeðen ⁊	to bi-holde þe cnihtes ⁊
and þat folc plæie.	and þat folk pleoẏe.
þif ilæfte þreo dæȝes ⁊	þis ilafte þreo daȝes ⁊
swulc gomes & fwulc plæȝes.	soch game and foch plaẏes.
þa a þā ueorðe dæie ⁊	þo in þan feorþe daiwe ⁊
þe king gon to fpekene.	
and aȝæf hif gode cnihten ⁊	þe king ȝaf his cnihtes.
al heorere[1] rihten.	
he ȝef feoluer he ȝæf gold ⁊	seoluer and read gold ⁊

played under shield; some 'they' drove balls 'wide over [over all] the fields. Games of many a kind there they gan to play; and whoso might win honor 'of his game [through art of any kind], 'men lead him with song before the sovereign, and' the king 'for his game' 'gave [should give] him gifts 'good [most rich]. All the queens, that 'there' were come, and all the ladies, leaned over *the* walls, to behold the 'people [knights], and the folk play. This lasted three days, such games and such plays. Then on the fourth day, the king 'gan to speak, and' gave his 'good' knights 'all their rights; he gave' silver, 'he gave [and red] gold; 'he gave [to some]

[1] heore?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
he ȝef horf he ȝef lond.	[c. 2.] fomme horf fomme lond.
caſtlef & claðef eke:	
hif monnen he iquende[1].	
þer wes moni bald Brut:	*þar was many bold Brut:*
biuoren Arðure.	*bi-vore Arthure.*
Nu comen to þan kinge:	*Ac nou þar come to þan kinge:*
neouwe tidinde.	*neowe tidỳinge.*
Arður þe bade[2] king:	ARthur þe bolde king:
ſat at ane borde.	ſat at one borde.
biuoren him ſeten kinges:	bi-vore him ſeate kinges:
and feole here-ðringes.	and fale heredringef.
biſcopes and clærekes:	biſſopes and clearekes:
and ſwiðe ohte cnihtes.	and ſwiþe heȝe cnihteſ.
þer comen in to halle:	þar comen into halles:
ſpelles ſeolcuðe.	ſelcouþe ſpelles.
þer comen twalf þeineſ ohte:	þar comen twealf cnihteſ:
mid palle bi-þehte.	ohte men and wihte.
hæȝe[3] here-kempen:	
hehȝe men on wepne.	
ælc hafde on heonde:	
grætne rīg of golde.	
and mid æne bende of golde:	
ælc hafde hif hæfd biuonge.	
Æuer tweie and tweie:	Euere tweine and tweỳne:

horses, 'he gave [to some] land; 'castles eke and clothes; his men he pleased,'—there was many *a* bold Briton before Arthur. [But] now came to the king new tidings! Arthur the bold king sate at a board; before him sate kings, and many chieftains; bishops and clerks, and knights most 'brave [noble]. There came into *the* hall marvellous tales!—there came twelve 'thanes [knights] bold [men and active], 'clad with pall; noble warriors, noble men with weapon; each had on hand *a* great ring of gold, and with a band of gold each had his head incircled.' Ever two and

[1] *R.* iquemde. [2] *R.* balde. [3] *The first two letters of this word are sup. ras.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
tuhte to-ſomne.	wenden i-vere.
ælc mid hiſ honde:	
heold hiſ iuere.	
and gliden ouer ulore:	and gliden ouer flore:
biuoren Arðure.	bi-foren Arthure.
ſwa longe þat heo comen:	so lang þat hii come:
bi-uoren Arðure þan leod-kinge.	bi-voren þan kinge.
Heo grætten Arður anan:	Hii grette Arthur anon:
mid aðelen heore worden.	mid bolde hire wordes.
Hal ſeo þu Arður king:	Haÿl beo þou Arthur þe king:
Bruttene deorling.	Bruttene deorling.
and hal ſeo þi duȝeðe:	
and al þi drihtliche uolc.	
We ſunden twælf cnihtes:	We beoþ twealf cnihtes: [c. 2.]
icumen her forð rihtes.	icome her forþrihtes.
riche and wel idone:	riche and wel idon:
we ſūdeð of Rome.	we beoþ ut of Rome.
Hider we ſunden icumene: [f. 144. c. 1.]	
frō ure kaiſere.	Houre kaÿſer ous ſende:
Luces iſ ihaten:	þat Luces his ihote.
þe waldoð Rome-leoden.	
he hahte uſ hider wende:	he hehte ous hider wende:
to Arðure þan kinge.	to Arthur þan kinge.
and þe hat græten:	and þe he greteþ:
mid hiſ grim worden.	mid his grame wordes.

two walked 'together [in company]; 'each with his hand held his companion'; and glided over *the* floor, before Arthur, so long that they came before 'Arthur,' the 'sovereign [king]. They greeted Arthur anon with their 'noble [bold] words: "Hail be thou, Arthur [the] king, darling of Britons; 'and hail be thy people, and all thy lordly folk!' We are twelve knights come here forthright, rich and noble; we are 'from [out of] Rome. 'Hither we are come from [Sent us] our emperor, [who] is named Luces, 'who ruleth Rome-people.' He commanded us to proceed hither, to Arthur the king, and 'bade thee to be greeted [thee he greeteth] with his

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
& ſæið[1] þat he awundred iſ:/	and ſeiþ þat he awondred his:/
wūder ane ſwiðe.	wonderliche ſwiþe.
whar þu þat mod nime:/	war þou þat mod nime:/
a þiſſe middenerde.	in þiſſe worle-riche.
þat þu derſt of Rome:/	þat þou darſt of Rome:/
wið-ſuggen æi dome.	wiþ-ſegge eni domes.
oðer hebbē up þin eȝen:/	oþer þin eȝene vp hebbe:/
aȝein ure ældrē.	to-ȝenes vre heldre.
and wha hit þe durre ræden:/	
þat þu ſwa reh ært iwurðen.	
þat þu þrattien darſt:/	
domes walden[2].	
Luces þene kaiſere:/	
hexſt of quicke monnen.	
Þu haldeſt al þi kinelond:/	Þou holdeſt al þine kinelond:/
a þire aȝere hond.	in þin owene hond.
and nult noht þene kaiſere:/	and nelt noht þine herre:/
of londe ihere.	of londe i-here.
of þan ilke londe:/	of þan ilke londe:/
þe Julius hafde an honde.	þat Julius hadde an honde.
þa inne iuur̄ daȝæn:/	þat in vorne daȝe:/
biwon hit mid fehtē.	bi-wan hit mid fihte.
and þu hit haueſt at-holde:/	and þou hit haueſt at-holde:/

grim words, and saith that he is astonished, wondrously much, where thou tookest the mood in this 'middle-earth [worlds-realm], that thou darest of Rome oppose any doom (will), or heave up thine eyes against our ancestors; 'and who dared it thee to counsel, that thou art so doughty become, that thou darest threaten *the* lord of dooms, Luces, the emperor, highest of men alive!' Thou holdest all thy kingdom in thine own hand, and wilt not serve 'the emperor [thy lord] of *the* land; of the same land that Julius had in hand, who in former days won it with fight; and

[1] ſæiðe, *pr. m.*

[2] waldend?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
a þire anwolde.	in þin anwolde.
mid balden þine cnihten:	mid bolde þine cnihtes:
binimeſt uf ure irihten.	bi-nimeſt vre rihtes.
Ah ſæi uf Arður ſone:	Ac ſaẏ ous Arthur ſone:
and word ſend to Rōe.	and word ſend to Rome.
we ſculleð bere þin ærde[1]:	we ſolle þin herende bere:
to Luces ure kaiſere.	to Luces þan kaẏſere.
ȝif þu wult icnawen:	ȝef þou wolt icnowe:
þat he if king ouer þe.	þat he his þin louerd.
and þu hif mon bicumen wulle:	
and hine for lauerd icnawen. [c. 2.]	
and don riht þan kaiſere:	and don riht þan kaiſere:
of Frolle þan kinge.	of Frolle þan kinge.
þat þu mid woȝe:	þat thou mid woȝe:
at Pariſ afloȝe.	at Pariſ of-floȝe.
& nu haldeſt al hif lond:	and nou holdeſt al þin lond:
mid unrihte a þire hond.	mid onriht in þine hond.
ȝif þu i þiſſen twælf wiken:	ȝef þou in þiſſe twealf wẏke:
temeſt to þan rihten.	temeſt to þan rihte.
and þu wult of Rome:	and þou wolle of Rome:
þolien æi dome.	þolie eni domes. [f. 115ᵇ. c. 1.]
þenne miht þu libben:	þanne miht þou libbe:
imong þine leoden.	and þine leomeſ habbe.

thou it hast retained in thy power; *and* with thy bold knights deprivest 'us' of our rights. But say us, Arthur, soon, and send word to Rome; we shall thine errand bear to Luces 'our [the] emperor, if thou wilt acknowledge that he is 'king over thee [thy lord], 'and *if* thou wilt his man become, and acknowledge him for lord,' and do right to the emperor *on account* of Frolle the king, whom thou slewest with wrong at Paris, and now holdest all 'his [thy] land with un-right in thy hand. If thou *with*in these twelve weeks turn to the right, and *if* thou wilt of Rome any doom suffer, then mightest thou live, 'among thy people [and have thy limbs].

[1] ærnde?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

and ȝif þu ſwa nult don :/
þu ſcalt wurſen vnder-fon.
þe kaiſere wule her cumē :/
ſwa king ſcal to hiſ aȝen.
king ſwiðe kene :/
and nimen þe mid ſtrengðe.
ibunden þe lede :/
biuoren Rō-leoden.
þenne moſt þu þoliē :
þat þu ærſt for-hoȝedeſt.
Æfne þiſſe wordē :/
Bruttef buȝen from borden.
þer wes Ardureſ[1] hird :/
hehliche awraððed.
and muchene að ſworē :/
uppen mære ure drihten.
þat alle heo dede weoren :/
þa þeos arunde beden[3].
mid horſen al to-draȝene :/
dæð heo ſculden þolie.
þer heo[4] buȝen to :/
Bruttes ſwiðe wraðe.
luken heom bi uaxe :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

and ȝef þou ſo nolt don :/
þou ſalt worſe onder-fon.
þe caiſere wole here come :/
aſe king ſal to his howene.
king ſwiþe kene :/
and nime þe mid ſtrengþe.
and ibunde þe leade :/
mid him to Romleode.
þanne moſt þou þolie :/
þat þou her for-hoȝedeſt.
Eafne þiſſe worde :/
Bruttes leop fram borde.
þar were Arthur his men :/
ſtranliche[2] iwraþþed.
and mochelne oþ ſwore :/
vppen oure drihte.
þat alle hii dead weren :/
þat þeos earende bearen.

þar hii leope ȝam to :/
Bruttus ſwiþe wroþe.
and tiere ȝam bi þan héére :/

And if thou wilt not so do, thou shalt receive worse, *for* the emperor will come here, as king shall to his own, king most keen; and take thee with strength, [and] lead thee bound 'before [with him to] Rome-folk;—then must thou suffer what thou erst despisedest!" At these words *the* Britons leapt from *the* board; there 'was Arthurs court exceedingly [were Arthur his men strongly] enraged; and swore mickle oath, upon our 'mighty' Lord, that they all were (should be) dead, who this errand bare; 'with horses drawn in pieces, death they should suffer.' There [they] leapt to*wards* them *the* Britons exceeding wrath; [and] tore them by [the] hair,

[1] *R.* Arðuref. [2] ſtrangliche? [3] beren? [4] heom?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and laiden heom to grūde.	and droȝe ȝam to grunde.
þer weoren men Romaniſce:	þar weren Rom-cnihtes:
reouliche atoȝene.	vuele idihte.
ȝif Arður ne leope to: [f. 144ᵇ. c. 1.]	ȝef Arthur nadde ileope to:
ſwulc hit a liun weore.	soch hit a lyon were.
and þaſ word ſeide:	and þeos word ſaide:
wiſeſt alre Brutten.	wiſeſt alre Bruttes.
Bilæueð bilaueð ſwiðe:	Bi-leueþ bi-leueþ:
þaſ cnihtes on liue.	þes cnihtes on lifue.
ne ſceollen heo on mine hirede:	ne ſolle hii in londe:
nēne harm þolien.	ſoffri none ſconde.
heo beoð hider iriden:	hii beoþ icome of Rome:
ut of Rom-leoden.	
ſwa heore lauerd heom hehte:	aſe hire louerd ȝam hehte.
Luces if ihaten.	
Ælc mon mot liðen:	Ech man mot wende:
þer hiſ lauerd hine hateð gan.	woder his louerd hoteþ.
nah[1] na man demen:	ne ſold no man deame:
erendeſ-mon to dæðen.	herendrake to deaþe.
bute he weoren ſwa ufele biwiten:	bote he were ſo for-ȝete:
þet he weore lauerd-ſwike.	þat he were louerd-ſwike.
Ah ſitteð adun ſtille:	Ac ſitteþ adun ſtille: [c. 2.]
cnihtes inne halle.	cnihtes in halle.

and 'laid [drew] them to *the* ground. There were (would have been) *the* 'Romanish men pitifully [Rome-knights evilly] treated, if Arthur had not leapt to *them*, as *if* it were a lion; and said these words,—wisest of all Britons!—"Leave *ye*, leave 'quickly' these knights alive! They shall not in 'my court [land] suffer any 'harm [disgrace]; they are 'hither ridden out of [come from] Rome, as their lord commanded them, '*who* is named Luces.' Each man must go 'where [whither] his lord biddeth 'him go'; no man 'ought to [should] sentence *a* messenger to death, unless he were so 'evilly behaved [so forgetful], that he were traitor of *his* lord. But

[1] ne ah? naht?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and ich me biræde wulle:		and ich me wolle bi-reade:
of fwulchere neode.		of fochere neode.
wulc word heo fcullen aȝen beren:		wat word hii folle a-ȝein bere:
to Luces þan kaiſeren.		to Luces þan caiſere.
Þa feten adun alle:		Þo feten hii alle:
þa duȝeðe on heore benche.		a-dun on hire benches.
and þa luding alæid:		ād þe loudinge alay:
biuoren þan leod-kīge.		for drede of þan kinge.
Þa ſtod Arður him up		þo ſtod vp Arthur:
adeleſt[1] kingen.	10	baldeſt alre kinge.
and he cleopede him to:		and cleopede to neode:
ſeouen ſune kinges.		al þat couþe of reade.
eorlef and beornef:		kingef and eorles:
& þa þe weoren baldeſt.		biſſopes and clearkes.
and alle þa wiſeſte men:		and alle þe wiſeſte men:
þa wuneden a þen folke.		þat wonede in londe.
wenden in to ane huſe:		and wende into one boure:
þe wef biclufed faſte.		þat was bi-tunde faſte.
an ald ſtanene weorc:		of hold ſtonene worc:
ſtiðe men hit wurhten.	20	witti men hit makede.
þer men[2] gunnen rune:	[c. 2.]	þar ine hii gonne rouny:
hif red-ȝeuen wife.		his readȝeuef wife.

sit *ye* down still, knights in hall; and I will me counsel of such need, what word they shall bear back to Luces the emperor. Then sate [they] all down, 'the folk' on their benches, and the clamor ceased 'before [for dread of] the 'monarch [king]. Then stood 'him' up Arthur, 'noblest of [boldest of all] kings, and he called to 'him seven sons of kings, earls and barons, and those that were boldest [need all that knew of counsel, kings and earls, bishops and clerks], and all the wisest men that dwelt in 'the folk [land; and] went into a 'house [chamber] that was fast inclosed, of old stone work,—'strong [witty] men it 'wrought [made],—there[in] they gan to

[1] aðeleſt?

[2] heo?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
wulc andſwere he ȝiuen wolde:		wat anſwere hii wolde ȝeue:
Luceſ þan kaiſere.		Luces þan caiſere.
Þa iboȝen weoren alle:		
beorneſ to benche.		
þa wes hit al ſtille:		
þat wuneden inne halle.		
þer wes vnimete æie:		
mid mære þan kinge.		
ne durſte þer na mā ſpeken:		
leſte þe king hit wolde awreken.		
Þa ſtod þer up Cador:	11	þo ſtod þar vp Cador:
þe eorl ſwiðe riche ær.		þat eorl was ſwiþe riche her.
and þaſ word ſæide:		and þeos word ſaide:
bifore þan riche kinge.		bi-vore þan kinge.
Ich þonkie mīe drihte:		Ich þonki mine drihte:
þat ſcop þeſ dæieſ lihte.		þat ſop þes daiȝes lihte.
þiſſes dæieſ ibiden:		þis daies a-bide:
þa to hirede iſ iboȝen.		
and þiſſere tidinge:		
þe icumen iſ to ure kīge.	20	þat icome his to londe.
þat we ne þuruen na mare:		þat we ne þorhfe na mare:
aſwunden liggen here.		aſwonde ligge here.
For idelneſſe iſ luðer:		For ẏdilniſſe doþ harm:
on ælchere þeode.		in euereche londe.
for idelneſſe makeð mon:		ẏdilniſſe makeþ man:

commune, his wise councillors, what answer 'he [they] would give to Luces the emperor. 'When all *the* nobles were come to bench (seated), then was it all still that dwelt in *the* hall; there was great awe with the mighty king; durst there no man speak, least the king would it punish.' Then stood there up Cador, 'the [who was] earl most rich here, and said these words before the 'rich' king: "I thank my Lord, who formed the daylight, to abide (have abode) this day, that is 'arrived to *the* folk, and this tiding that is' come to 'our king [land]; *so* that we need no more lie here inert! For idleness is 'evil [doth harm] in 'each [every] land; 'for'

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

hiſ monſcipe leoſe.
ẏdelneſſe makeð cnihte:
for-leoſen hiſ irihte.
idelneſſe græiðeð:
feole uuele craften.
idelneſſe makeð leoſen:
feole þuſend monnen.
þurh eðeliche[1] dede:
lute men wel ſpedeð.
For ȝare we habbeoð ſtille ileien:
ure wurðſcipe if þa laſſe.
ah nu ic þokie[2] drihtne:
þæ ſcop þaſ daȝeſ lihte.
þat Romaniſce leodē: [f.145.c.1.]
ſunden ſwa ræie.
& heore beot makieð:
to cumen to ure burhȝeſ.
ure king binden:
and to Rome hine bringen.
Ah ȝif hit if ſoð þat men ſaið:
alſe ſegges hit telleð.
þat Romaniſce leoden:
ſunden swa ræȝe.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

his manſipe leaſe.
ẏdelniſſe makeþ cniht:
for-leaſe al his riht.
ẏdilniſſe greiþeþ: [f.116.c.1.]
fale luþer craftes.

þorh ẏdele deade:
lute man mai ſpede.
For ȝare we habbeþ ſtille ileẏe:
vre manſipe his þe laſſe.
ac nou ich þonkie drihte:
þat ſop þas daiȝeſ-lihte.
þat Romaniſſe folk:
ſo bolde beoþ i-worþe.
and hire þret makieþ:
to come to vre borewes.
oure king binde:
and to Rome hine bringe.
Ac ȝef hit his ſoþ þat me ſeiþ:
aſe þis wiſe telleþ.
þat Romaniſſe men:
ſo bald beoþ iworþe.

idleness maketh man lose his manhood; idleness maketh knight lose [all] his rights; idleness causeth many wicked crafts; 'idleness destroyeth many thousand men'; through idle deeds little 'men well-speed [man may speed]. For long we have lain still; our honor is the less! But now I thank *the* Lord, who formed the day-light, that *the* Romanish folk are [become] so 'fierce [bold], and make their threat to come to our burghs, our king to bind, and to Rome him bring. But if it is sooth that men say, as 'people it [the wise] tell, that *the* Romanish people [men]

[1] ideliche?

[2] þonkie?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and funden swa balde:	
and fwa balufulle.	
þat heo wulleð nu liðen:	þat hii come wolle:
into ure londen.	in to oure londe.
we heom fcullen ȝarekien:	we ȝam folle teche:
ȝeomere fpellef.	Bruttiffe fpeche.
heore ræhfcipe fcal heom feoluen:	hire baldfipe fal ȝam feolue:
to reouþe iwurðen.	to moche rouþe teorne.
For nauere ne lufede ich longe:	For neuere ne louede ich lange:
grið inne mine londe.	griþ in mine londe.
for þurh griðe we beoð ibundē:	for þorh griþe we beoþ i-bunde:
and wel neh al a-fwūden.	and wel neh afwonde.
Þat iherde Walwain:	Þis i-horde Waweyn:
þe wes Ardures[1] mæi. [fwide[2]:	þat was Arthures may.
and wraððede hine wið Cador	and wreþþede hine wiþ Cador:
þa þaf word kende.	þat þes wordes faide.
and þuf andfwærede:	and þus him anfwerede:
Walwain þe fele.	Waweyn þe feale.
Cador þu ært a riche mon:	Cador þou hart riche mā:
þine ræddes ne beod[3] noht idon.	þeine reades ne buþ noht agon.
for god[4] if grið and god[4] if frið:	for godd[5] his griþ and godd[5] his
þe freoliche þer haldeð wið.	þat freoliche hit holdeþ wiþ. [friþ:

are [become] so 'fierce [bold], 'and are so bold, and so mischievous,' that they will 'now' come into our land, we shall 'prepare for [teach] them 'rueful [British] tales; their 'fierceness [boldness] shall turn to themselves to [much] sorrow. For never loved I long peace in my land; for through peace we are bound, and well nigh 'all' in swoon." 'That [This] heard Walwain, who was Arthurs relative, and angered him 'much' with Cador, who said these words; and thus answered [him] Walwain the good: "Cador, thou art *a* powerful man; thy counsels are not good; for good is peace and good is amity, who*so* freely 'therewith [with it] holdeth, and God *him-*

[1] *R.* Arðures. [2] fwiðe? [3] beoð? [4] godd, *pr. m., but* d *erased.*
[5] *There appears a mark of expunction under one of the* dd *in each instance.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.		MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.	
and godd ſulf hit makede:		and godd ſeolf hit makede:	
þurh hiſ godd-cunde.		þorh his god cunde.	
for griþ makeð godne mon:			
gode workes wurchen.			
for alle monnen biþ þa bet:			
þat lond biþ þa murgre.			
Þa iherde Arður:		Þis ihorde Arthur:	[c. 2.]
þat flit of þiſſen eorlen.		þat ſtrif of þis cnihtes.	
and þuf ſpac þe riche:		and þus ſpac þe riche:	
wiþ raȝē hiſ folke.	[c. 2.] 10	to bolde his folk.	
Sitte[1] adun ſwiðe:		Sitteþ adun alle:	
mine cnihte[2] alle.		mine cnihtes ſwiþe.	
and ælc bi hiſ lifen:		and ech bi his lifue:	
luſte mine worden.		luſte mine wordes.	
Al hit wes ſtille:		Alle hit was ſtille:	
þat wunede inne halle.		þat wonede in þe halle.	
Þa ſpak þe king balde:		Þo ſpac þe king bolde:	
to riche hiſ folke.		to leoue his folke.	
Mine eorles mine beornes:		Mine eorles mine beornes:	
balde mine þeines.	20	bolde mine cnihtes.	
mine duhti men:			
mine freond deoren.			
þurh eou ich habbe biwunnen:		þorh ȝou ich habbe a wonne:	
vnder þere ſunnen.		onder þare ſonne.	

self it made, through his divinity; 'for peace maketh *a* good man work good works, for all men are the better, *and* the land is the merrier.'" Then [This] heard Arthur, the dispute [strife] of these knights; and thus spake the mighty *man* 'with [to] his 'fierce [bold] folk: "Sit *ye* down quickly, my knights all, and each by his life listen my words!" All it was still that dwelt in [the] hall. Then spake the bold king to his 'noble [dear] folk: "My earls, my barons, my bold 'thanes [knights], 'my doughty men, my dear friends'; through you I have conquered under the sun, *so* that I

[1] Sitteþ? [2] cnihtes?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þat ich æm ſwiðe riche mon:	þat ich ham richeſt king:
reh wið mine feonden.	þat wonieþ in londes.
gold ich habbe and gærſume:	
gumenen ich æm ælder.	
no biwan ich hit noht ane:	ne wan ich hit noht one:
ah dude we alle clæne.	ac dude ȝe alle cleane.
To moni feohte ich habbe eou ilad:	To many fiht ich habbe ȝou ladde:
and æuere ȝet weoren wel irad.	and euere ȝe were wel i-rad.
swa þat feole kinelondeſ:	so þat fale cune lond:
ſtōdeð a mine honde.	ſtond in mine owe hond.
ȝe beoð gode cnihtes:	
ohte men and wihte.	
þat ich habbe iuonded:	
i wel feole londen.	
þa ȝet hī ſpac Arður:	
aðeleſt kingen.	
Nu ȝe habbeoð iherd:	Ac nou ȝeo habbeþ ihord:
hæȝe mine þeines.	heȝe mine kempes.
what Romaiſce men:	wat Romaniſſe men:
redeð heom bi-twenē.	readeþ ȝam bi-twine.
and wulc word heo ſendeð uſ here:	and wat word hii hider ſendeþ:
into ure londe.	into vre londe.
mid write & mid worde:	mid writ and mid worde:
wið grætere wræððe.	and mid grettere wreþþe.

am 'man most powerful, *and* fierce against my enemies [*the* most powerful king that dwelleth in land]; 'gold I have and treasure; of men I am ruler.' I won it not alone, but 'we [ye] did, all clean. To many *a* fight I have led you, and ever ye were well skilled, so that 'many kingdoms [lands of many kind] stand in my [own] hand. 'Ye are good knights, brave men and active; that I have proved in well many lands." The yet spake him Arthur, noblest of kings': "[But] now ye have heard, my noble 'thanes [champions], what *the* Romanish men counsel them between, and what words they send 'us' 'here [hither], into our land, with writ and with words, [and] with great wrath. Now we must bethink how we may with right defend

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

Nu we mote bi-ðenchen :/
hu we ure þeoden.
and ure muchele wurðſcipe :/ [f. 145b. c. 1.]
mid rihte maȝen biwiteȝen.
wið þiſ riche moncun :/
wið þas Rom̄-leoden.
and andſware heom ſenden :/
mid aðelen ure worden.
mid mucle wiſdome :/
vre writ ſenden to Rome.
& iwiten at þan kæiſere :/
for whan he uſ ofcunnen[2].
for whan he uſ mid þrætte :/
& mid hokere igræteð.
Swiðe fære me gromeð :/
& vninete[3] me ſcomeð.
þat he atwit uſ ure luren :/
þat we ifeor̄ habbeoð forloren.
Heo ſuggeð þ Juliuſ Ceſar hit bi-
mid compe i fehten. [won :/
Mid ſtrengðe and mid fehte :/
me deð feole vnrihte.
for Ceſar iſohte Bruttene :/

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

Nou we mote bi-þenche :/
ou we oure þeode.
and oure mochele worſipe :/
mid rihte mawe biȝete[1].
wiþ þis riche moncun :/
wiþ þis riche leode.
and anſwere heom ſende :/
mid our wiſe wordes.
mid mochele wiſdome :/
oure writ ſende to Rome.
and iwite of þan caiſere :/ [c. 116b. c. 1.]
and of þan Romaniſſe heare.
wi hii ous mid þrete :/
and mid hokere greteþ.
Swiþe fore me ſameþ :/
and onimete me grameþ.
þat hii atwiteþ ous oure lure :/
þat we ilore habbeþ.
Hii feggeþ þat Julius Ceſar :
hit awan mid ſihte.
Mid ſtrengþe and mid ſihte :/
me deaþ ſale onrihteſ.
ſo Ceſar ſohte Bruttus :/

our country and our great honor, against this powerful folk, against this 'Rome-people [powerful people], and send them answer with our 'good [wise] words; with much wisdom send our writ to Rome, and learn 'at [of] the emperor, 'for what *thing* he us hateth; for what *thing* he greets [and of the Romanish army, why they greet] us with threat and with scorn. Exceeding sorely *it* 'incenseth [shameth] me, and immoderately *it* 'shameth [incenseth], that 'he reproaches [they reproach] us our loss that we 'before' have lost (sustained). They say that Julius Cæsar won it (Britain) with 'combat in' fight. With strength and with fight men do

[1] bi-wite?
[2] ofcunnen?
[3] *R.* vnimete.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
mid baldere ſtrēgðe.	mid bolde his ſtrengþe.
no mihte Bruttef wið him:	ne mihte Bruttus wiþ him:
heore lond werien.	hire lond werie.
ah mid ſtreðe[1] heo eoden an hond:	ac mid ſtrengþe he ȝeode an hond:
and bitahten him al heore lond.	and bi-nam ȝam hire lond.
and þer after ſone:	and hii þar after ſone:
alle hif men bicome.	al his men bi-come.
Sum ure cun heo hadden iflaȝen:	Somme oure cun he hadde iflaȝe:
and ſum mid horſen to-draȝen.	and mani mid him awei idraȝe.
ſumme heo ladde ibunden:	
ut of þiſſen londen.	
and þus[2] lond biwunne:	and þus þis lond he awon:
mid unrihte and mid ſunnen.	mid onriht and mid ſunne.
& nu axeð mid icunde: [c. 2.]	and nou axeþ þorh cunde:
gauel of þiſſen londe.	truage[3] of þis londe.
Al ſwa we maȝen don:	Al ſo we mawe don:
ȝef we hit don wulleð.	ȝef we hit wolleþ.
þurh rihte icunde:	þorh rihte cūde:
of Beline kīge.	of Belyn þan kinge.
and of Brennen hif broðer:	and of Brenne his broþer:
þan duc of Burgunne.	duk of Borgoyne.
Þeos weoren ure ældre:	Þeos weren oure eoldre:

many wrongs; 'for [so] Cæsar sought 'Britain [*the* Britons] with [his] bold strength. *The* Britons might not against him defend their land, but with strength 'they [he] went in hand, and 'delivered him all [took from them] their land; and [they] thereafter soon all became his men. Some of our kin 'they [he] had slain, and 'some with horses drawn in pieces [many with him away *had* drawn]; 'some they led bound out of this land'; and thus this land [he] won with wrong and with sin, and now asketh 'by [through] right tribute of this land! All so we may do, if we it do 'will'; through right of Belin [the] king, and of Brenne, his brother, 'the' duke of Burgundy. These were our ancestors, of whom we are come; these belay

[1] ſtrengðe? [2] þus þis? [3] *A later hand has written* gaucl *in the margin.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
þa we beoð of icumene.	þat we beoþ of icome.
þeof bilæie Rome:	þes bi-leye Rome:
and þa riche al biwunnen.	and þe riche a-wonne.
& biuoren Rome þere ſtronge:	
heore ȝifles an-henge. [lond:	
and ſeoððen heo nomen al þat	and fuþþe hii neme al þat lond:
and ſetten hit an heore aȝere hond.	and ſette hit in hire owe hond.
and þuſ we mid rihte ahten:	and þus hahte Rome:
Rome uſ biriden.	beon oure cunde.
Nu ich wulle leten Belin:	Nou ich wolle bi-leue: [c. 2.]
and Brenne bilæuen.	Belyn and Brenne.
and ſpekē of þan kaiſere:	and ſpeke of þan caysere:
Coſtantin þan ſtronge.	Conſtantyn þan ſtronge.
he wes Helene ſune:	he was Eleynes ſone:
al of Brutten icume.	al of Bruttes icome.
he biwon Rome:	he bi-wan Rome:
and þa riche awelde.	and eke al þe riche.
Lete we nu of Coſtantin:	Leate we nou of Conſtantin:
þe Rome iwō al to him.	þat Rome wan al to him.
and ſpeken of Maximiæn:	and ſpeke we of Maximien:
þat waſ a ſwiðe ſtrog[1] mon.	þat waſ a ſwiþe ſtrong man.
he wes king of Brutene:	he was king here:
he biwon France.	and he a-wan France.

Rome, and the realm 'all' conquered, 'and before Rome the strong their hostages up-hung'; and afterwards they took all the land, and set it in their own hand; and thus ought we with right to besiege Rome [Rome to be our right]. Now will I let remain [leave] Belin and Brenne, and speak of the caiser, Constantine the strong; he was Helens son, all of Britons come (descended); he won Rome, and possessed [eke all] the realm. Let (leave) we now of Constantine, who won Rome all to him, and speak [we] of Maximian, who was a man most strong; he was king of Britain [here, and] he conquered France. Maximian the strong he

[1] ſtrong?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.

Maximien þe ſtronge:
Rome he nom an honde.
and Alemaine he biwon eke:
mid wūder muchele ſtrengðe.
and al from Romaẏne:
into Normandie. [f. 146. c. 1.]
And þeos weoren mine ælderen:
mine aððele uore-genglen.
and ahten alle þa leoden:
þa into Rome leien.
and þurh ſwuche dome:
ich ahte to biȝeten Rome.
Heo ȝirneð me an honde:
gauel of mine londe.
al ſwa ic wille of Rome:
ȝif ich ræd habbe.
Ich wilnie a mine þōke:
to walden al Rome.
and he wilneð me in Brutene:
to binde ſwiðe uaſte.
and flæn mine Brutteſ:
mid hiſ balu reſes.
Ah ȝif hit on mi drihtē:

MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.

Maximien þe ſtronge:
Rome nam an honde.
and Alemaine he bi-won:
mid mochelere ſtrengþe.
and al fram Romaẏne:
into Normandie.
And alle þeos weren min eldre:
of wan we beoþ i-ſpronge.
and adde alle þe londes:
þat into Rome leie.
and þorh ſoche domes:
ich hahte ohni Rome.
He ȝornt of mine lond:
truage to habbe.
and ſo ich wolle of Rome:
ȝef ȝe me readeþ.
Iich[1] ȝeorne in mine þonke:
to habbe al Rome.
and he wilneþ in þis lond:
binde me faſte.
slean mine Bruttes:
mid his wiþer reaſes.
Ac ȝef hit wole drihte:

took Rome in hand, and Alemaine (Germany) he won 'eke,' with 'wondrous' great strength, and all from Rome into Normandy. And [all] these were my ancestors, 'my noble progenitors [of whom we are descended]; and 'possessed [had] all the lands that unto Rome lay; and through such authority I ought to 'obtain [possess] Rome. 'They yearn of me in hand tribute of my land; all [He yearneth of my land tribute to have; and] so will I of Rome, if 'I have [ye me] counsel. I desire in my thoughts to 'possess [have] all Rome; and he desireth in 'Britain [this land] to bind me 'most' fast, 'and' slay my Britons, with his 'evil [hostile] attacks. But if 'my' Lord 'grant [will] it, who formed 'day and night [the day-

[1] *R.* Ich.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
þe ſcop dæiȝes and nihtten.	þat ſop þis daies lihte. •
he ſcal hiſ balde ibeot:'	he ſal for his balneſſe:'
fære abuggen.	mochel harm habbe.
& hiſ Rō-leoden:'	and his Romleode:'
þer fore ſcullen reoſen.	þar vore ſolle reoſe.
and ic wulle ræh beon:'	
þer he nu rixleð on.	
Wunieð nu ſtille alle:'	Sitteþ alle nou ſtille:' [c. 117. c. 1.
ic wulle ſuggen mine iwille.	ich wolle ſegge mine wille.
ne ſcal hit na man oðer idon:'	ne ſal no man oþer don:'
ah hit ſcal ſtonden þer on.	alle hii ſolle ſtonde þar on.
He wilneð al:' and ich wilni al:'	He wilneþ al and ich wilnẏ al:'
þæt wit beiene aȝæð.	þat we beie oweþ.
habben hit nu and aȝe:'	habbe hit nou and euere:'
þe hit æð mæȝen iwīne.	wo ſe hit maẏ a-winne.
for nu we ſcullen cūne:'	
wham hit godd unne.	
þuſ ſpac þe balde:'	þus ſpac þe bolde:'
þe Brutene hafde an onwalde.	þat Bruttes hadde in anwolde.
þat was Arður þat waſ Arður[1] þe	þat was Arthur þe king:'
Bruttene deorling. [c. 2.]	[king:' Bruttene deorling.
Setten hiſ kēpen:'	22 Sete his kempes:'
and hiſ quides luſten.	and hiſ ſpeche luſte.
sūme heo fæten ſtille:'	sonme hii ſeten ſtille:'
mucle ane ſtunde.	..... one ſtūde.

light], he shall 'sorely pay for his bold threat [have mickle harm for his boldness], and his Rome-people shall therefore perish; 'and I will be bold, wherein he now ruleth!' 'Dwell [Sit] *ye* now all still, I will say my will; no man shall do 'it' other*wise*, 'but it [all they] shall stand thereon. He desireth all, and I desire all that we both possess; have it now and ever who[so] may it 'easier' win, 'for now we shall prove to whom God will grant it!'" Thus spake the bold *king*, that had 'Britain [*the* Britons] under *his* rule, that was Arthur the king, Britains darling! His warriors sate, and to his 'words [speech] listened; some they sate still, a great

[1] *Sic MS.*

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
ſumme heo muche runen:	so... ... .uning:
ræhten heom bitweonē.	. . . . . ne.
summe hit þuhte heom god:	somme h.. ..... ȝam god:
ſumme hit mengden heore mod.	somm. ... meinde hire mod.
þa heo hafden longe:	þo hii hadde lāge:
i-luſtned þan kinge.	i-luſtned þan kinge.
þa ſpac Howel þe hende:	þo ſpac Howel:
hah mon of Brutene.	heh man of Britaine.
and hiſ quideſ ræhte:	and þeos wordes ſaide:
bi-uoren raiē þan kinge.	bi-vore þan kinge.
Lauerd king hercne me:	.ouard king hercne me:
alſe ich ær dude þe.	... ... ear dude þe.
þu hafeſt iſæid word ſoðe:	þou ha..ſt iſaid wordes:
ſeleh̄ðe þe beoð ȝifðe.	þat beoþ ſwiþe ſoþe.
Hit wes ȝare iqueðen:	for hit was ȝare iſaid:
þat we nu ſculleð cuðen.	þat nou we ſolle finde.
i þan iuurn ȝere:	
þat nu iſ iſunden here.	
Sibeli hit ſæide:	Sibilẏ hit ſaide:
hire quideſ weoren ſoðe.	hire wordes weren ſoþe.
and ſette hit on bocke:	and ſette hit in boke:
uolke to biſne.	folke to bẏſne.
þat þreo kes[1] ſculden buȝen:	þat þreo kingeſ ſolde wende:
ut of Brutlonde.	vt of Brutlonde.
þa biwinnen ſculden Rome:	þat biwinne ſolde Rome:

while; some they made much communing between them; some it seemed to them good; some it disturbed their mood. When they had long listened to the king, then spake Howel 'the fair,' noble man of Britanny, and said these words before the 'fierce' king: "Lord king, hearken to me, as I ere did to thee. Thou hast said 'sooth words [words that are most sooth],—'may fortune be given to thee!'—[For] it was of old said, what we now shall 'learn [find], 'in the years before what is now here found.' Sibeli it said; her words were sooth; and set it in book, for example to folk, that three kings should go out of Britain, who should conquer

[1] kinges?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
and al þa riche.	and alle þe riche.
and alle þa londes:	and alle þe londes:
þe rer[1] to liggeð.	þat þar to liggeþ.
Þe uorme wes Belin:	Þe vorme was Belyn:
þat weſ a Bruttiſc king.	þat was Bruttene king. [c. 2.]
þe oðer wes Coſtantin:	þe oþer was Conſtantin:
þe king weſ on Brutene.	þat Rome wan al to him.
þu ſcalt beon þe þridde:	þou ſalt beon þe þridde:
þe Rome ſcal habben.	þat Rome ſalt habbe.
And ȝif þu hit wult bi-ginnen:	ȝef þou þiſ wold bi-ginne:
þu hit ſcalt biwinnen.	þou hit ſalt awinne.
and ich wulle þer to helpe: [f. 146b, c. 1.]	and ich wole þar to helpe:
mid haȝere ſtrenðe.	mid hehȝere ſtrengþe.
ich wulle ouer ſæ ſende:	and ich wole ouer ſéé ſende:
to ſelen mine þeinẽ.	to ſele mine cnihtes.
to balden mine Brutten:	
þa bet we ſcullen ſuſen.	
Ich wulle haten alle:	and hote ȝam alle:
þa aðele of Bruttainne.	
bi leomen and bi heore liue:	bi hire cwike liſue.
ȝeond alle mine londe.	
þat heo beon ȝarewe ſone:	þat hii beo redi ſone:
mid þe uaren to Rome.	mid þe fare to Rome.
Mi lond ich wulle ſette:	Min lond ich wolle ſette:

Rome, and all the realm, and all the lands that thereto lie. The first was Belin, who was 'a British [Britains] king; the other was Constantine, who 'was king in Britain [won Rome all to him]; thou shalt be the third, that Rome shalt have. 'And' if thou 'wilt it [wouldst this] begin, thou shalt it win, and I will thereto help, with great strength; [and] I will send over sea, to my good 'thanes [knights], 'to my bold Britons,—the better we shall proceed;'—'I will [and] command [them] all, 'the noble of Britain,' 'by *their* limbs and' by their [quick] lives, 'over all my lands,' that they be ready soon with thee to march to Rome. My land I will set 'in pledge

[1] *R.* þer.

MS. Cott. Calig. A. ix.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. xiii.
to wedde for ſeoluere.	
and alle þe æhten of mine londe:	
for ſeoluere and for golde.	for seoluer and for golde.
and ſwa we ſcullen uaren to Rome:	and ſo we ſolle to Rome fare:
& ſlan Luceſ þene kaiſere.	and ſlean þane kaiſere.
& bi-tellen þine irihten:	and for to bi-ȝeten þin rihtes:
i[1] þe lede ten þuſend cnihtes.	ich leane þe ten þouſend cnihtes.
Þus Howel ſpilede:	Þuſ ſpac Howel:
hext of Brutaine.	heh man in londe.
Þa þe Howel iſeid hafde:	Þo Howel hadde i-ſaid:
þat him ſel þuhte.	wat him god þohte.
þa ſpæc Angel þe king:	þo ſpac Angel þe king:
Scotlondes deorling.	Scotlondes deorling.
and ſtod uppen ane boncke:	and ſtop vp on benche:
& beien hiſ broðeren.	and his broþers beine.
þat waſ Lot and Vrien:	þat was Loth and Vrien:
tweie ſwiðe aðele men.	tweie ſwiþe bolde men.
Þuſ Angel þe kig[2] ſeide:	
to Arðure þan kene.	
Læuerd[3] Arður ich ſugge þe:	Arthur þou ha[4] wel iſaid:
þurh ſoðe quides mine.	ercne mine wordes.
þat ilke þ Howel haf[5] iſpeken:	þat ilke þat Howel haueþ iſpeke:
ne ſcal hit na man awreken.	ne ſal hit no man a-wreke.

for silver, and all the possessions (*or* goods) of my land' for silver and for gold; and so we shall proceed to Rome, and slay 'Luces' the emperor; and [for to] win thy rights, I will 'lead [lend] to thee ten thousand knights." Thus spake Howel, 'noblest of Britanny [noble man in *the* land]. When 'that' Howel had said what seemed good to him, 'then spake Angel the king, Scotlands darling, and 'stood [stept] upon 'a' bench, and both his brothers, that was, Loth and Urien, two most 'noble [bold] men. 'Thus said Angel the king to Arthur the keen: "Lord' Arthur, 'I say to thee through my sooth [thou hast well said; hearken my] words; the same that Howel hath spoken, no man shall it avoid, but we shall perform

[1] ich? [2] king? [3] læuer, *pr. m.* [4] haueſt? [5] hafeð?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
ah we hit ſcullen ilæſten: [c. 2.]	ac we hit ſolle ileaſte:
bi ure quicke liuen.	bi oure cwike lifue.
And lauerd Arður þe hæliȝe:	And louerd Arthur þe heȝe:
luſt me ane ſtunde.	luſt me one wile.
cleope þe to ræde:	cleope þe to reade:
þine eorles riche.	þine eorles riche.
and alle þa hæxte:	and alle þe hexſte:
þa beoð in þine hirede.	þat beoþ in þine londe. [f. 117b. c. 1.]
& bide heom þe ſuggen:	and bide ȝam þe ſegge:
mid ſoðen heore worden.	mid ſoþe hire wordes.
whæt heo þe wulleð fulſte:	wat hii þe wolleþ helpe:
þine iuan to for-donne.	to winne þine rihte.
Ich þe leden wulle:	Ich þe leane wolle:
cnihteſ of mire leode.	cnihteſ of mine londe.
þreo þuſend kempen:	þreo þouſend kempes:
ohte alle icorene.	to fihte ſwiþe kene.
ten þuſend men a uote:	ten þouſend men a fote:
to uehte ſwiðe gode.	to fihte ſwiþe gode.
and fare we to Rome:	and wente[1] to Rome:
and iwinnen þa riche.	and i-win þe riche.
ful ſwiðe uſ mæi ſcomien:	fol ſore ous maý famie:
and ful ſwiðe uſ mæi gromien.	and wel ſore gramie.
þat heo ſculle ſenden ſonden:	þat hii ſolle ſende ſonde:

it by our quick lives! And, lord Arthur the noble, listen to me a while; call to thee to counsel thy earls rich, and all the highest that are in thy 'folk [land], and bid them say to thee with their sooth words, *in* what they will help thee thy 'foes to destroy [rights to win]. I will 'lead [lend] to thee knights of my land, three thousand champions 'brave, all chosen [to fight most keen]; ten thousand men on foot, to fight most good; and go we to Rome, and conquer the realm. Full 'greatly [sorely] *it* may shame us, and 'full greatly [well sorely] '*it* may us' anger, that they should send messengers after tribute 'to [of] our land. But so help us *the* Lord

[1] wend we?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

after gauele to ure londe.
Ah ſwa uf helpe drihte ⁊
þæ ſcop þaf daȝef lihte.
heo hit ſcullen abugge ⁊
mid heore bare liue.
for þenne we habbeoð Rome ⁊
and alle þa riche.
we ſcullen nimen þa londeſ ⁊
þa þer to liggeð.
Peoïle[2] and Alemaine ⁊
Lumbardie & Brutaine.
France & Normandie ⁊
þa hit hæhte Neuſtrie.
and ſwa we ſculleð meðegie ⁊
heore mod vnimete[3].
þa þe kīg iſaid hafde ⁊
þa andſwarede alle.
Iniðered wurðe þe ilke mon ⁊ [f.147. c.1.]
þe þer to nule helpen.
mid ahtē and mid wepnen ⁊
and mid alle hiſ imihten.
þa wes Arðures hired ⁊
ſturneliche awraððed.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

after gauel[1] of oure londe.
Ac ſo ouſ helpe drihte ⁊
þat ſop þis daiȝes lihte.
hii hit ſolle a-bugge ⁊
mid hire bare rugge.
for wane we habbeþ Rome ⁊
and alle þe riche.
we ſolle nime þe londes ⁊
þat þar to liggeþ.
Pullȳe and Alemaine ⁊
Lombardie and Brutaȳne.
France and Normandie ⁊
þo hit hehte Neuſtrie.
and ſo we ſolle temie ⁊
hire mod onimete.
þo he iſaid hadde ⁊
þo anſwere[4] alle.
Aneþered worþe þe ilke man ⁊
þat nele þar to helpe.
mid wepne and mid hahte ⁊
and mid al his mihte.
þo were Arthur his men ⁊
ſtranliche[5] iwreþþed.

that formed the day-light, they shall pay for it with their bare 'life [back]! For when we have Rome, and all the realm, we shall seize the lands that thereto lie; Poïlle (Apulia?) and Alemaine, Lumbardy and Britanny, France and Normandy,—then it hight Neustrie,—and so we shall tame their immoderate mood (pride)." When the king had said (spoken), then answered all: "Disgraced be that man that will not help thereto, with goods and with weapons, and with all his might!" Then was 'Arthurs folk sternly [Arthur his men strongly] incensed; knights were *so* enraged,

[1] *A second hand has written* truage *in the margin.*
[2] *At first written* Peouile, *but* u *erased.*
[3] vnnimete *pr. m.*
[4] anſwerede?
[5] ſtrangliche?

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.

cnihtes an burſte weorē :/
þat alle heo gunnen biuien.
Þa Arður iherd hafde :/
his hired iberen.
þa cleopien agō :/
þe king weſ abolȝen.
Sitteð adun ſtille :/
cnihtes inne halle.
and ich eou wulle telle :/
what ich don wulle.
Mine writen ich wulle maken :/
þa wel beon idihte.
and ſende þan kæiſere :/
mondeſ forȝe and muchel kare.
and ich wulle ful ſone :/
faren into Rome.
Nulle ich þider na gauel bringe :/
ah þane kaiſer ich wulle binden.
and feoððen ich wullen hine an-hon :/
and al þat lond ich wulle uor-don.
and foruaren þa cnihteſ alle :/
þe aȝein me ſtondeð i fehte.
Arður hiſ writ nom an honden :/
mid wiðer-fulle worden.

MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.

cnihteſ a-borſt weren :/
þat al hi gonne buuïe.
Þo Arthur ihorde hadde :/
his cnihtes bi-heſte.
þo cleopede he anon :/
þe king was a-bolwe. [c. 2.]
Sitteþ adun alle :/
cnihtes in halle.
and ich ȝou wolle telle :/
wat ich don wolle.
Mine writeſ hich wolle makie :/
and to Luces ſende.
þat ich wolle after sone :/
come toward Rome.
Nolle ich non gauel bringe :/
ac þane caÿſer ich wolle binde.
and suþþe ich wolle hine an-hon :/
and al þat lond ich wolle fordon.
and for-faren alle þe cnihtes :/
þat ..... aȝeÿn me in .....
.... his writ in ..... :/
... wiþer-foll. .....

that all they gan to be agitated. When Arthur had heard *the* 'clamor [promises] of his 'folk [knights], then 'gan he call [called he anon],—the king was angry,—" Sit *ye* down still, knights in hall, and I will you tell what I will do. My writs I will make, 'that shall be well indited,' and send to 'the emperor [Luces] 'minds sorrow and mickle care'; 'and [that] I will 'full [after] soon 'fare into [come toward] Rome. I will not 'thither' any tribute bring, but the emperor I will bind, and afterwards I will him hang; and all the land I will destroy, and all the knights put to death, that stand against me in fight!" Arthur took his writ in hand, with hostile

MS. Cott. Calig. A. IX.	MS. Cott. Otho, C. XIII.
and þan beoren[1] hit bitahte:	... hit þan cnihtes .....
þæ þa ærnde hafde ibrohte.	þat þe earende brohte.
and ſeoððe he lette heo ſcruden:	and ſuþþe he lette ȝam ſcrude:
mid ælchere pruden.	mid allere prude.
mid þan hæxte ſcrude:	
þa he hafde on bure.	
and hehte heō faren ſone: [c. 2.]	and bad ȝam wende ſone:
to Luces of Rome.	to Luces of Rome.
and he cumen after wolde:	and .e comen after wolde:
ſwa raðe ſwa he mihte.	..... ſo he mihte.

words, and delivered it to the 'men [knights], that 'had' brought the errand; and afterwards he caused them to be clothed with 'each [all] pomp, 'with the noblest garments that he had in bower,' and bade them fare soon to Luces of Rome, and he would come after *them* as quickly as he might.

[1] beonen, *pr. m.*

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,

RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.

ERRATA IN VOL. II.

p. 18. *l.* 5. *for* truth *read* troth.
— 20. *l.* *ult.* *for* þe? *read* þa?
— 22. *l.* 8. *for* Lucius *read* Livius.
— 25. *l.* 7. *for* Gallus *read* 'Gallus [Livius].
— 27. *v.* 10849. *for* luuuede *read* luuede.
— *ib.* *l.* 5. *for* books *read* book.
— 28. *v.* 10862. *for* if *read* of.
— *ib.* *l.* 6. *for* his *read* 'Gloies [Gloi his].
— 49. *l.* 10. *for* came *read* came to.
— 69. *l.* 8. *for* sore *read* sorry.
— 72. *vv.* 11915. 11922. (*sec. t.*). *These lines should be transposed, as shown by the translation.*
— 101. *l.* 9. them *should be marked by superior commas.*
— 109. *l.* 4. *for* Britain *read* Bretagne *or* Britanny.
— 111. *v.* 12835. *for* wæþmõneſ *read* wæpmõneſ.
— 114. *v.* 12898. (*sec. t.*) *for* the *read* þe.
— 115. *l.* 9. *for* Then became he *read* When he became.
— 142. *l.* 7. the *before* fire *should be in brackets, and not in italics.*
— 155. *v.* 13854. (*sec. t.*) *for* gonde *read* goude.
— 158. *v.* 13926. (*sec. t.*) *for* þane þonre *read* þane þonre.
— 159. *v.* 13952. (*sec. t.*) *for* wiþe *read* ſwiþe.
— 161. *l.* 8. *for* inn *read* inns.
— 164. *l.* 1. *for* no rrobbers *read* nor robbers.
— 165. *v.* 14099. (*sec. t.*) *for* deathe *read* deaþe.
— 167. *v.* 14137. *for* legge *read* ligge.
— *ib.* *l.* 8. *for* 'I [wę thus] are *read* 'I am [we thus are].
— 171. *l.* 9. *for* events *read* event.
— 172. *l.* 8. *for* Hengist *it* would *read* Hengist 'it' would.
— 187. *l.* 5. *the superior comma should be before* hate, *instead of before* but.
— 189. *l.* 1. *insert* word to *after* sent.
— 193. *l.* 7. *for* this *read* his.
— 194. *l.* 6. *for* Vortiger *read* Hengest.
— 195. *l.* 8. *for* Louis *read* Lupus.

p. 229. v. 15599. (sec. t.) *for* [f. 72ᵇ.] *read* [f. 73ᵇ.]
— 231. v. 15642. (sec. t.) *for* nonneric *read* nonneric.
— 232. l. 1. *insert* ' *before* with.
— 235. v. 15751. *for* feolc *read* feole.
— 236. v. 15755. *for* luſte *read* luſte.
— 239. l. 6. *for* the *read* thy.
— 240. v. 15853. (sec. t.) *for* ſurſte *read* ſurſte.
— 251. v. 16111. *for* herede *read* hirede, *and in the foot-note, for* hirede *read* herede.
— 266. v. 16481. *for* the *read* þe.
— 283–4. vv. 16885–7. 16903–4. (sec. t.) *The punctuation is faulty, and requires correction, as occasionally in some other passages.*
— 296. v. 17196. *for* ſtrēgðe *read* ſtrēgðe.
— 308. l. 9. *dele* merry, *and insert* good *before* folk, *in the next line.*
— 315. l. 2. *dele* to *before* the king.
— 317. v. 17672. (sec. t.) *for* þare *read* þane.
— 320. v. 17750. (sec. t.) *dele the hyphen in* a-cnowe.
— 330. l. 4. *dele* that *before* gan, *and insert* that *before* there.
— 332. v. 18023. *for* Whar *read* whar.
— 338. l. ult. *for* oer *read* oðer.
— 343. v. 18283. (sec. t.) *for* gonnewende *read* gonne wende.
— *ib. l.* 4. *insert* land *after* Humber.
— 348. v. 18401. *for* talleð *read* tælleð.
— 349. v. 18440. *for* auereməſte *read* auoremeſte.
— 351. v. 18477. *for* Lunde *read* Lundē.
— 359. l. 5. *insert* and *before* over.
— 368. v. 18886. *for* I scal *read* i scal.
— 371. v. 18956. (sec. t.) *for* evereideal *read* euereideal.
— *ib. l.* 1. *for* thy *before* people *read* the.
— 385. v. 19267. *for* quikemonnen *read* quike monnen.
— 393. v. 19468. *for* ſtrengðe *read* ſtrengðe.
— 394. l. 2. *for* own *read* our.
— 396. v. 19543. *for* hæfeuene *read* hæfenene.
— 400. l. 2. *for* craft *read* crafts.
— 403. l. 9. *for* ſweneninge *read* ſweueninge.
— 406. v. 19763. *for* bi-nihte *read* bi nihte.
— 409. l. 1. *for* the *before* worlds, *read* this.
— 411. v. 19888. (sec. t.) *for* while *read* wile.
— 413. l. 7. *for* gold *read* good.
— 424. l. 4. *for* When *read* Then, *and in the next line substitute a full-stop after* York.
— 427. v. 20282. (sec. t.) *for* the *read* þe.

p. 451. *v.* 20837. *for* for-uaren *read* for-uaren.
— 456. *v.* 20965. (*sec. t.*) *for* learedemen *read* learede men.
— 470. *v.* 21296. (*sec. t.*) *for* londe *read* loude.
— 498. *l.* 7. great *ought to be marked by superior commas.*
— 521. *v.* 22490. *for* þen *read* þin.
— 523. *l.* 7. *for* lieth *read* lie.
— 525. *v.* 22576. *for* þire *read* þine.
— 530. *l.* 6. *for* fiddleing *read* fiddling.
— 534. *v.* 22798. *for* þene *read* þine.
— 535. *v.* 22806. (*sec. t.*) *for* ſmat *read* ſmot.
— 543. *l.* 8. *the round bracket should be after* brave.
— 553. *v.* 23231. (*sec. t.*) *insert a hyphen in* of ſlaȝe.
— 560. *v.* 23385. *for* of *read* of.
— 578. *l.* 7. *instead of superior commas, square brackets should have been used.*
— 580. *v.* 23873. (*sec. t.*) *for* ẏllod *read* ẏllōd.
— 585. *l.* 10. *for* then *read* thence.
— 587. *l.* 24033. (*sec. t.*) *for* wit-fulle *read* wit-folle.
— 592. *v.* 24158. (*sec. t.*) *for* oweſtiward *read* owe ſtiward.
— 603. *l.* 1. *insert* the *after* Kay.
— 614. *v.* 24666. (*sec. t.*) *for* londc *read* londe.
— 625. *v.* 24926. (*sec. t.*) *dele the hyphen in* daiȝeſ-lihte.
— 627. *vv.* 24960. 24981. (*sec. t.*) *read* god-cunde *and* a-wonne.
— 631. *l.* 9. he *should be marked by superior commas.*
— 635. *l.* 7. *for* noble *read* nobles.
— 640. *v.* 25267. *for* heo *read* heō.

00052383

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 13 February, 2016